Pallaval Veera Bramhachari *Editor*

Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment

Springer

Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment

Pallaval Veera Bramhachari
Editor

Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment

Springer

Editor
Pallaval Veera Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology
Krishna University
Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

ISBN 978-981-19-3695-1 ISBN 978-981-19-3696-8 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Foreword

The microbial world is largely invisible to the human eye, but it is almost beyond imagination. There are hundreds of thousands of different kinds of bacteria (leaving aside other kinds of microbes: archaea, viruses, fungi, and protists) living in every possible environment including the deep seabed, high in the clouds, and in the boiling hot springs. Multicellular organisms created an entirely new set of habitats, in and on all those animals and plants.

Research data suggests that during the last two decades, extensive research has been carried out on endophytic fungi and several biologically active compounds have been isolated from endophytic fungi. This book makes all the reader generally conversant in the language of microbiomes and metagenomics. It also provides excellent examples of how microbial communities affect health and cure diseases and doles out typical practical examples of how medical interventions interact with the microbiome and change outcomes.

This volume, *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, published by Springer Nature is important, and I strongly believe that it will attract readers working in the field. The present volume has 16 chapters contributed by several competent academicians and scientists working on microbiome research throughout the world. I congratulate the editor of the book Dr. P.Veera Bramhachari for bringing out this volume with excellent contributions from scientists working on the microbiome and their application in understanding the microbiome interactions in agriculture and the environment.

Krishna University
Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

K. B. Chandra Sekhar

Preface

Microbiomes are vital to major biogeochemical processes on which life on earth depends—therefore knowing the microbiomes will be crucial to understanding and tackling the problems of environmental and climatic changes. Soil, plant, animal, and marine ecosystem microbiomes are critical to environmental health and a food system that provides us with highly nutritious, inexpensive, safe, and sustainable food. Research and innovation on microbiomes in the food chain are continually advancing. Providing nutritious meals for everyone and transforming the present food system to one that is more environmentally friendly will be made possible thanks to advances in our knowledge of the microbiome in the food supply chain.

Many intricate problems surrounding the intimate connections between plants and microbiomes in agriculture and the environment have limited answers to these topics. Researchers in the field of the microbiome continue to make significant and exciting advances to our knowledge of the fundamental biology of agriculture and the environment. Notably, microbiomes play a crucial role in plant tolerance to harsh circumstances, such as salt, drought, and exposure to heavy metals. Plants' resilience to salty soil can be improved by the microbiome's synthesis of phytohormones, which lessens the harmful effects of excessive soil salinity. Plants are commonly used in remediation techniques to eradicate the negative effects of these toxins, and their efficacy is ascribed to the microbiomes associated with them. These microbiomes in the consortium are capable of decomposing and stabilizing pollutants.

Several pieces of research have been dedicated to exploring the structure and function of the microbiome for plants and have discovered that plants give habitats and nutrients to the microbiota, while the microbiota supports plant development, nutrition, and defense against diseases. The microbiome dynamically interacts with the plant host to generate synergistic interactions, which, in turn, alter the host's physiology. Several investigations are motivated to examine how the microbiome is generated and what are the driving variables that alter its dynamics to shape plant performance in the ecosystem.

Microbiome research in agriculture can lead to inoculants or manipulations of the microbiome to choose more efficient bacteria groups for plant growth. Besides that, decreasing the usage of pesticides and chemical fertilizers based on an awareness of the potential of the plant microbiome is of crucial significance for promoting

sustainable farming methods. As a result, taking an all-encompassing look at the microbial communities that are connected to plants and the environment is unquestionably a novel approach. The relevance of research on plant and environment microbiomes can be seen with the high number of publications on this topic, with countless studies considering different plant compartments from the soil to plant continuum, research indicating modifications in the microbiome influenced by environmental factors and its potential benefits for agriculture. Conversely, sustainable technologies have been gathering traction in global agriculture and are considered the most devoted to conserving plant microbiomes. In this context, various research is being carried out to understand the influence of sustainable practices on the structure of the plant's microbial population.

Healthy global ecosystems benefit from the contributions of microbiomes in many different ways. Microorganisms in the water for example aid in storing carbon and they create half of the oxygen we breathe. In the soil, certain bacteria help plant development by fixing nutrients and digesting organic materials. Furthermore, microbes can contribute to energy generation by creating biogas and they are also utilized in the treatment of wastewater and the restoration of contaminated locations. Extremophiles and bioremediation microbiomes, as well as environmental microbiomes (such as mangroves, marine sponges, and corals), are critical to the global ecosystem's functionality, services, and existence. All of the significant global geochemical cycles, for instance, the crucial biogeocycles, would collapse if certain microbiomes, which are responsible for keystone phases within the cycle, were disrupted in such a manner that they fail to serve their evolved functions. Using a microbiome-led approach will help us identify where we need to concentrate our efforts to guarantee that these environmental cycles continue to uphold an ecosystem suitable for life.

Yet the practical translational applications of this fascinating and enthralling area of science are outstanding. The book also discusses that research on microbiomes provides a more comprehensive view of their interactions in agriculture and the environment. For the beginner and microbiome enthusiasts, this book may be an essential reading of its importance with existing applications in Agriculture, Environment, and Climate changes. With these aims in mind, the material of this textbook has been structured from basic to more advanced topics in a sequential progression. Finally, this book also reviews advancements from fundamental research to relationships between plant and agriculture microbiomes and the environment.

We hope that your creativity is inspired by this book and wish you luck in your experiments. This book illustrates astonishingly the urgency with which the numerous scientific brains are committed to the welfare of the scientific world. I am immensely grateful to the contributors for consistently paying attention to my request and expressing confidence in my skills. I will still be forever highly obliged to all the contributors. The worthlessness of their efforts cannot be explained by these terms.

Because of the heartfelt interest and painstaking effort of many other well-wishers whose names are not listed, but are already in our hearts, we have effectively

compiled our innovative and reflective research work. So, the reward for their sacrifices is worth it. I want to dedicate this book to my mum, S. Jayaprada (late). From the bottom of our souls, I and the contributing authors hope this book will be a good guide and guidance for scientific studies to understand the host-microbiome relationships in agriculture and the environment.

Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

Acknowledgments

My sincere thanks are extended to all the academicians and scientists who have contributed chapters and happily agreed to share their work on *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment* in this volume.

This book is a stunning reflection of the seriousness with which several scientific minds are dedicated to the research community. I am extremely thankful to the contributors for paying continuous attention to my requests and bestowing faith and confidence in my competencies and capabilities. I shall always remain highly grateful to all contributors forever. These words cannot justify the worthiness of their quintessential efforts. We appreciate the excellent work of the authors and coauthors who were invited to contribute chapters to this book. The credit for making this book a reality goes to them. The editor and the review team of the book especially appreciate sharing expertise with the contributors. Each chapter is pretty informative and written as stand-alone contributions from several research institutes so that the reader can begin reading anywhere in the book depending upon his/her interests and needs.

At the same time, I also express my deepest gratitude to my family members, especially my wife (Ramadevi Ramaswamy) and my kids (Ruthvik and Jayati) for their kind support which has prompted me to complete this assignment on time. I am also thankful to Krishna University administrative officials, and my colleagues in the Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, for their intellectual support. I am equally thankful to the Springer Nature Publishing Group for their full cooperation during the peer review and production of the volume.

I am thankful to my beloved teachers and mentors for their constant support and motivation at all stages of my progress.

Contents

1 **Unravelling the Microbiome Interactions in the Environment and Agriculture in the Era of Metagenomics** 1
Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

2 **Antimicrobial Resistance in Environmental Microbiome: An Overview** 11
Lalrokimi, Yogesh Malvi, Bhim Pratap Singh, and Zothanpuia

3 **Mechanistic Adaptation of Microbiomes in Extreme Environments** 23
K. Viswadeepika and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

4 **Mangrove Microbiomes: Biodiversity, Ecological Significance, and Potential Role in the Amelioration of Metal Stress** 45
Chanda V. Berde, Asha Giriyan, Vikrant B. Berde, and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

5 **Dynamics of the Coral Microbiome and Its Link to Climate Change** 63
Yaser A. Arafath, Aifa S. Fathima, Saqib Hassan, Ramu Meenatchi, Anushara Prabhakaran, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

6 **A Paradigm Shift in the Role of the Microbiomes in Environmental Health and Agriculture Sustainability** 83
Emmanuel Atiatorme, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, Ekamber Kariali, and Pola Sudhakar

7 **Modifications in Environmental Microbiome and the Evolution of Viruses Through Genetic Diversity** 103
Pola Sudhakar and Dhanalakshmi Padi

8 **Novel Insights into Environmental Niche Adaptations and Secondary Metabolite Biosynthesis Potential of Marine Sponge Microbiome** 113
Aifa Fathima, Yaser Arafath, Saqib Hassan, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

9 Microbiome-Based Sustainable Agriculture Targeting Plant Protection 139
Rajinikanth Mohan, Flora Zhang, Olivia Pericak, Morgan Wynkoop, Nicole Schwab, Sara Spells, Kaitlyn Stroscio, Collin Olson, Chloe Hermann, Macie Hricovec, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and Christos Zamioudis

10 Endophytic Microbiome-Assisted Drought Tolerance in Plants 185
Chandra Obul Reddy Puli, Chandra Sekhar Akila, Suresh Raju Kandi, Preetham Naik Korra Thimma Naik, Nagarathnamma Yammanuri, Krishna Kumar Guduru, Sravani Kunduru, Siva Bolupalli, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and Ramachandra Reddy Pamuru

11 The Cellulosome: A Fiber-Degrading Strategist of the Rumen Microbiome 215
Srijana Mukkala, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and Y. Harish Kumar Reddy

12 Metagenomic Approaches for Studying Plant–Microbe Interactions 243
S. Murali Mohan and Pola Sudhakar

13 Nitty-Gritty into the Plant Microbiomes: Understanding Microbial Niche Associations and Dynamics in Various Plant Parts 255
Gandham Sandeep Kumar, Sholapuri Payani, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and G. V. Swarnalatha

14 A Conceptual Framework to Explore the Functional Implications of Coral-Associated Microbiomes and Their Role in Promoting Plant Growth 271
P. S. Seethalakshmi, Saqib Hassan, Junaid Ahmad Malik, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

15 Soil Microbiome: Characteristics, Impact of Climate Change and Resilience 285
Anushara Prabhakaran, Ramu Meenatchi, Surajit Pal, Saqib Hassan, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

16 Rhizobacteriome: Plant Growth-Promoting Traits and Its Functional Mechanism in Plant Growth, Development, and Defenses 315
Reema Prakash, Ramesh Subramani, Krodi, Anusha, Chanda Vikrant Berde, Thummala Chandrasekhar, A. M. V. N. Prathyusha, Ekamber Kariali, and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

Editor and Contributors

About the Editor

Pallaval Veera Bramhachari is currently a Head and Senior Faculty member of the Department of Biotechnology at Krishna University, Machilipatnam, India. He has earlier served as a Postdoctoral research scientist at the Bacterial Pathogenesis Laboratory, Queensland Institute of Medical Research (QIMR-Berghofoer Research Center), Brisbane, Australia, and a DBT Postdoctoral fellow at the Department of Microbiology and Cell Biology, Indian Institute of Science (IISc), Bangalore. He completed his Ph.D. in Microbiology from Goa University, India. His major research interests are the investigation of the applied research in microbiology and cell biology including the biochemical mechanism of bacterial-biofilm formations, extracellular microbial polysaccharides, and the structure-function relationship of bacterial biosurfactants (glycolipids and rhamnolipids), pathogenic and virulence characteristics of bacteria, basic and translational cancer research. He has published more than 140 research articles in Scopus-indexed journals, authored and coauthored 7 international books and invited book chapters in prestigious peer-reviewed international edited volumes and presented 50 abstracts at various national and international conferences. He has served on the editorial board and as reviewer for several national and international journals. He is a member of numerous international scientific societies and organizations, most importantly, the Indian Science Congress and Society of Biological Chemists, India. He completed two major research projects from SERB, DST NRDMS, Govt of India.

He was awarded a Travel Scholarship from QIMR-2007, Australia, for attending the 4th Indo-Australian Biotechnology Conference in Brisbane, Australia, and was awarded with a young scientist travel fellowship (2007) from the DST, Govt. of India, for attending XVII Lancefield International Symposium at Porto Heli, Greece-2008. He was conferred with various prestigious awards, notably Science Education Research Board (SERB), Government of India-Young Scientist award (2011) with a research project and was nominated as Associate Fellow of Andhra Pradesh Academy of Sciences (APAS)-2016, MASTER TRAINER: Andhra Pradesh English Communications Skills Project. British Council & APSCHE 2017, Andhra Pradesh State Best Scientist award-2017, and Dr. V. Ramalingaswamy Memorial award for Biomedical Sciences-2019. He also obtained two Indian patents in 2017. He has more than 13 years of teaching and research experience at the university level.

Contributors

Chandra Sekhar Akila Molecular Genetics and Functional Genomics Laboratory, Department of Biotechnology, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Anusha Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

Yaser A. Arafath Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Emmanuel Atiatorme Department of Science and Environment, University of Education, Winneba, Ghana

Chanda V. Berde Department of Marine Microbiology, School of School of Earth, Ocean and Atmospheric Sciences (SEOAS), Goa University, Taleigao Plateau, Goa, India

Vikrant B. Berde Department of Zoology, Arts, Commerce and Science College, Lanja, Maharashtra, India

Siva Bolupalli Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Pallaval Veera Bramhachari Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

Thummala Chandrasekhar Department of Environment Science, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

K. V. Deepika Department of Botany, St. Joseph's College for Women, Visakhapatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

Aifa S. Fathima SRM Research Institute, SRM Institute of Science and Technology, Kattankulathur, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Asha Giriyan Coastal Ecology and Marine Resource Center, The Energy and Resource Institute (TERI), Tiswadi, Goa, India

Krishna Kumar Guduru Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Saqib Hassan Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India
Division of Non-Communicable Diseases, Indian Council of Medical Research (ICMR), New Delhi, India

Chloe Hermann Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

Macie Hricovec Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

Suresh Raju Kandi Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Ekamber Kariali School of Life Sciences, Sambalpur University, Sambalpur, Orissa, India

George Seghal Kiran Department of Food Science and Technology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Krodi Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

Gandham Sandeep Kumar Division of Molecular Biology, Department of Zoology, Sri Venkateswara University, Tirupati, Andhra Pradesh, India

Sravani Kunduru Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Lalrokimi Department of Biotechnology, Mizoram University, Tanhril, Mizoram, India

Junaid Ahmad Malik Department of Zoology, Govt. Degree College, Bijbehara, Jammu and Kashmir, India

Yogesh Malvi Department of Biotechnology, Mizoram University, Tanhril, Mizoram, India

Ramu Meenatchi SRM Research Institute, SRM Institute of Science and Technology, Kattankulathur, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India

Rajinikanth Mohan Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

S. Murali Mohan Department of Biotechnology, Adikavi Nannaya University, Rajamahendravaram, Andhra Pradesh, India

Srijana Mukkala Department of Microbiology, TTWR Degree College for Women, Shadnagar, India
Department of Molecular Microbiology and Biotechnology, Tel Aviv University, Ramat Aviv, Israel

Y. Nagarathnamma Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

K. T. Preetham Naik Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Collin Olson Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

Dhanalakshmi Padi Düsseldorf, North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany

Surajit Pal Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Ramachandra Reddy Pamuru Department of Biochemistry, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Sholapuri Payani Department of Biochemistry, Rayalaseema University, Kurnool, Andhra Pradesh, India
Division of Molecular Biology, Department of Zoology, Sri Venkateswara University, Tirupati, Andhra Pradesh, India

Olivia Pericak Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

Anushara Prabhakaran Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Reema Prakash Faculty of Science, Technology and Environment, School of Biological and Chemical Sciences, The University of the South Pacific, Suva, Republic of Fiji

A. M. V. N. Prathyusha Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

Chandra Obul Reddy Puli Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

Y. Harish Kumar Reddy Department of Molecular Microbiology and Biotechnology, Tel Aviv University, Ramat Aviv, Israel
Department of Vaccine Technology Development, Biological E Ltd, Hyderabad, India

Nicole Schwab Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

P. S. Seethalakshmi Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Joseph Selvin Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Bhim Pratap Singh Department of Agriculture & Environmental Sciences (AES), National Institute of Food Technology Entrepreneurship & Management (NIFTEM), Sonepat, Haryana, India

Sara Spells Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

Kaitlyn Stroscio Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

Ramesh Subramani Faculty of Science, Technology and Environment, School of Biological and Chemical Sciences, The University of the South Pacific, Suva, Republic of Fiji

Pola Sudhakar Department of Biotechnology, AUCST, Andhra University, Visakhapatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

G. V. Swarnalatha Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India
Department of Biochemistry, Rayalaseema University, Kurnool, Andhra Pradesh, India

Morgan Wynkoop Department of Biology, Colgate University, Hamilton, NY, USA

Christos Zamioudis Department of Agricultural Development, Democritus University of Thrace, Orestiada, Greece

Flora Zhang Department of Biology, Colgate University, Hamilton, NY, USA

Zothanpuia Department of Biotechnology/Life Sciences, Mizoram University, Pachhunga University College, Aizawl, Mizoram, India

Abbreviations

ACC	1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid
AHLs	*N*-acyl homoserine lactones
AI-1	Autoinducer-1
alkB	Alkane monooxygenase
AlmA	Flavin-binding monooxygenase
AMGs	Auxiliary metabolic genes
amoA	Ammonia monooxygenase subunit A
AmpC-βL	AmpC-β-lactamase genes
AMR	Antimicrobial resistance
APX	Ascorbate peroxidase
ARGs	AMR genes
ASD	Autism spectrum disorder
BMC	Beneficial Microorganism of Corals
BSC	Biological soil crusts
CA	Citric acid
CAESAR	Central Asian and Eastern European Surveillance of AMR
CAT	Catalase
CAZyme	Cellulosome enzymes and their domains
CBM	Carbohydrate-binding modules
CBM10	Cellulosome-bound genes
CCR	Cinnamoyl-CoA reductase
CD-F	Electrospun cyclodextrin fiber
CDPK	Calcium-dependent protein kinases
CE	Carboxylesterases
CMV	Cucumber mosaic virus
CRISPR/Cas9	Clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats
Cytochrome P_{450}	Cytochrome P_{450}, monooxygenase
DAPG	2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol
DAPG	4-diacetylphloroglucinol
DDR	The Distance Decay Relationship
DDS	Direct disease suppression
DNASIP	DNA stable isotope probing
DOC	Dissolved Organic Carbon

DSF	Lipid-based diffusible signal factors
EARS-Net	European AMR Surveillance Network
EBM	Ecosystem-based management
ECO-SENS	European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control
EPS	Exopolysaccharide
ESβL	Extended spectrum β-lactamase genes
ET	Ethylene signaling pathway
FDD	Fungal dockerin domain
GH	Glycoside hydrolase genes
GHG	Greenhouse gas emissions
GISAID	Global Initiative on Sharing All Influenza Data
GWAS	Genome-wide association studies
HAE	Human-assisted evolution
HCN	Hydrogen cyanide
HGT	Horizontal gene transfer
IAA	Indole-3-acetic acid
ICTV	International Committee on the Taxonomy of the Virus
IMMs	Interpolated Markov models
INPs	Ice nucleation proteins
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
ISR	Induced systemic resistance
ITS	The internal transcribed spacer region
JA	Jasmonic acid
LadA	Monooxygenase long-chain alkane
LO	Lipoxygenase
LPS	Lipopolysaccharide
LRR-RLK	Leucine-rich repeat receptor-like kinase
MAMPs	Microbe-associated molecular patterns
MAPK	Mitogen-activated protein kinases
MDR	Multidrug resistant
MHC	Major histocompatibility complex
MRSA	Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
MTI	MAMP-triggered immunity
MYB72	Root-specific transcription factor
NCDDs	Noncatalytic dockerin domains
nCoV-2019	Novel coronavirus-2019
NGPs	Next-generation proteomics
NGS	Next generation sequencing
NOx	Nitrous oxide
OA	Oxalic acid
OTU	Operational Taxonomic Unit
PAH	Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon
PAHs	Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons
PAL	Phenylalanine ammonia-lyase
PCBs	Polychlorinated biphenyls

PGP	Plant growth promoter
PGPR	Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria
PHZ	Phenazines
PL	Polysaccharide lyases
PLT	Pyoluteorin
POD	Peroxidase
POPs	Persistent organic pollutants
PPO	Polyphenol oxidase
PR	Pathogenesis-related genes
PRRs	Pattern recognition receptors
PSB	Phosphate-dissolving bacteria
PSI	Plant-soil interface
QS	Quorum sensing
QTL	Quantitative trait loci mapping
RA	Rosmarinic acid
RLKs	Receptor-like kinases
ROS	Reactive oxygen species
SA	Salicylic acid
SAR	Systemic acquired resistance
SLH	S-layer homology
SOD	Superoxide dismutase
SOS system	DNA-repair systems
SRA	NCBI Sequence Read Archive
SST	Sea surface temperature
SynComs	Synthetic communities
VLP	Virus-like particles
VOCs	Volatile organic compounds
VRE	Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci
WGS	Whole-genome shotgun sequencing
WHO	World Health Organization
WWTPs	Wastewater treatment plants

Unravelling the Microbiome Interactions in the Environment and Agriculture in the Era of Metagenomics

1

Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

Abstract

Global food security is threatened by serious agricultural difficulties. To enhance agricultural practices and the environment, microbiomes have the potential to deliver sustainable and economically advantageous solutions. To learn more about the dynamics of microbial populations and their interactions with plants and the environment, we also give information on basic microbiome research. It is now possible to link genotypes and phenotypes in complex interactions involving plants, microbes, and the environment. Additionally, we take into account the genotype of the plant, interactions amongst microbial taxa, the impact of agricultural methods, and environmental conditions that can influence the development and enrichment of microorganisms that are advantageous to plant health and growth. Ultimately, we intend to illustrate how microbial communities may be integrated into agricultural and environmental clean-up systems of the current day in order to provide a more tailored and long-term utilization of scarce resources. This review attempts to discuss the advantages and variables that modify the composition of the plant and environment microbiomes. Ultimately, a paradigm that transfers this information towards biotechnological applications will indeed be highlighted.

Keywords

Agricultural practices · Environment · Microbiomes · Biotechnological applications

P. Veera Bramhachari (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_1

1.1 Introduction

There is growing recognition that microbiomes are pervasive, hidden entities that can have a significant impact on plant and animal functioning, community assembly, biodiversity maintenance, and ecosystem function, health, and stability. Microbiomes can also effect (Cho and Blaser 2012). Because the microbiome's impacts on ecological and evolutionary processes are context-dependent, this will be a major issue in incorporating microbiome effects into ecological and evolutionary processes. A plant's "microbiome" consists of a symbiotic relationship with a variety of microorganisms. Multiple interactions between the plant's microbiome and its cells occur; certain microorganisms are helpful and aid plant growth, whereas diseases harm plants and diminish agricultural yields. Net zero carbon emission sustainable farming systems, food and energy security, and reducing the effects of climate change and land degradation may all be accomplished by utilizing the microbiomes.

The importance of microbiota in the health of all organisms and ecosystems has led to a great deal of research into the issue. Data from the microbiome must still be analysed and converted into biologically relevant findings because of the difficulty. Microbiome research can benefit from the use of network-based analytical tools, which can assist detangle of the intricate polymicrobial interactions between microbes and their hosts, as well as the microbes' interactions with the human body. A microbiological community is a group of organisms that interact with one other in a contiguous habitat, such as an ecosystem (Konopka 2009).

There has been a great upsurge in microbiome research in the last several years, spurred by technological breakthroughs and huge decreases in the cost of testing. As a result of this research, scientists have gained a plethora of information on how the microbial communities interact with each other as well as how they affect the environment around them. As more is learned about the microbiome and how it interacts with its host, as well as with other microbes, it becomes possible to develop new techniques and strategies that could be applied across a wide range of disciplines, from ecology to agriculture to medicine and from forensic science to exobiology. Microbiome research has changed our understanding of the dynamics and organization of microbial communities during the last 10 years or more. We're only just beginning to grasp the intricate webs of interdependence that these societies weave with one another and with the natural world, both biotic and abiotic. Our knowledge of the processes occurring inside microbiomes and their interactions with hosts has improved because of advances in experimental methodologies and new technologies (Goodrich et al. 2017). In this review, we explore emerging tools and methodologies in microbiome research to provide an overview of the present status of the agriculture and environment fields. To learn more about the dynamics of microbial populations and their interactions with plants and the environment, we also present information on basic microbiome research. There are several potential uses for microbial communities in modern agricultural and environment systems that might be explored in order to make the most efficient and long-term use of scarce resources possible.

1.2 From Functional Predictions to the Phenotype

Since the high-throughput study of many genomes and metagenomes provides effective tools for tackling the functional potential of individual microbes as well as communities in their natural habitat, these new possibilities have changed microbial ecology (Knight et al. 2018). Methods for researching microbiomes, or multiomics, include high-throughput isolation (culturomics), microscopy, metabarcoding of functional genes, and metagenomics, which focuses on microbial activity and metabolism (metatranscriptomics, metaproteomics, metabolomics). In recent years, the first metagenome-assembled genomes were rebuilt from environmental materials (Anantharaman et al. 2016); however, millions of bacterial genomes were thrown away without growing the organisms behind. For instance, a recent study rebuilt 154,723 microbial genomes from 9428 metagenomes of the worldwide human microbiome (Pasolli et al. 2019). In the last several years, there has been a tremendous amount of study on the microbiome and its involvement in agriculture and the environment. The importance of environmental stimuli on microbiome composition and function, and its development through time, has been shown by studies of environmental-microbe interactions, such as those that investigate microbiome diversity within communities. Many different domains, including ecology, environmental sciences and engineering, biotechnology, and computational sciences, might benefit from research into the microbiome, which can lead to the development of new tools and methodologies that could ultimately change current paradigms. Microbiome research has the potential to tackle some of humanity's greatest global concerns, such as climate change, in addition to advancing research in specific sectors. As a result of such developments, the area of microbiome study will be able to continue to thrive for future decades. As a result, bioengineers and inventors will have the tools they need to build new and better applications, unlocking the maximum potential of the microbiome.

Many of the advances now under development will be hampered by the ineffectiveness of various microbiome technologies non-real-world contexts. It is possible to apply plant microbiome technologies in conjunction with smart agriculture, synthetic biology, satellite, big data, and genomic approaches to reach their full potential in the agricultural and environmental sectors. One day, modern agriculture may incorporate the use of microbiome therapies to enhance plant productivity while simultaneously minimizing the environmental effect once these challenges are solved. If the main (core and hub) microbiota of a crop species protecting or promoting immunity against pathogens can be identified, it is possible to construct an effective intervention (e.g. microbial cocktails, probiotics, microbial transplant) to mitigate infection rates and thus enhance farm production. Plant health and performance can be improved by adjusting microbiome therapy in context-specific circumstances after this concept has been widely accepted.

1.3 Microbiome Innovation in Agriculture

By 2050, global food consumption is expected to rise by 70%, and farmers will have to contend with a changing climate, reduced soil nutrients, polluted soils, and scarcity of water (Singh and Trivedi 2017). Plant microbiomes, for example, are the most sustainable option in this situation. Microbiome research has progressed, but more has to be done to expand molecular techniques, such as the collection of DNA, extraction and amplification, the decrease in sequencing costs, and the advancement of bioinformatics, among other things. Traditional methodologies must also be supplemented with these aspects in order to gain a deeper understanding of plant microbiomes. These microorganisms can be used to create novel-mixed bioinoculants that can boost the plant's functionalities. We still need to learn more about the structure of plant microbiomes, the advantages they provide to plants, and the interactions between bioinoculants and the resident microbiota.

1.4 Microbiomes for Future Farming

Microbiomes, which are collections of many different types of microbes, have a mutually beneficial connection with plants, providing them with food and a plentiful supply of life. Plants gain greatly from these natural relationships and interactions, minimizing the need for external chemical inputs. Because of this, the soil is naturally fertilized as a result of these organisms. This robust and self-sustaining ecosystem is the result of a close and dynamic interplay between microbiomes, plants, and the surrounding environment. Non-crop plants and experimental species in controlled environments have provided most of our information concerning microbiomes and their role in protecting the environment and promoting plant development. A growing number of stakeholders are interested in working together to develop profitable bio-based solutions that will lead the way for ecologically friendly crop production paradigms, thanks to the growing interest in microbiomes. A thorough knowledge of crop-specific microbiomes is required to meet this objective. The first step towards reaching this objective is to catalogue crop-specific microbial genomes, an essential research priority. Transforming genetic information into solutions and sustainable farming management techniques would necessitate integrative and cross-disciplinary research efforts (Bandla et al. 2020).

Pesticide resistance and environmental and health concerns are spurring interest in new techniques of controlling insect pests, but there is also a rising demand for less agricultural chemical use. For decades, the function of microbes in pest management has been primarily restricted to employing entomopathogens, with just a few of microbial species being turned into natural pesticides. New technologies like high-throughput sequencing and functional omics, as well as gene editing and gene editing techniques like CRISPR/cas9, are changing the way we think about the role of microbes in complex ecosystems and how they interact with one other. Many insect features are shaped by the presence of beneficial bacteria, according to overwhelming evidence. The word "microbiome" refers to a grouping of bacteria

(both biotic and abiotic) and their genetic material. Research into the microbiomes of insects, plants, and other natural resources might help in insect pest control. It's an exciting time to learn about new bacterial or microbiome capabilities that might be put to use in the fight against insect pests. Bioactive substances may be extracted from uncultured bacteria using cutting-edge gene editing and microbial engineering techniques, as well as nanotechnology. These methods will be extremely beneficial for agricultural advancements. Despite this, research on the microbiome in less agrochemically intensive production methods including conventional farming and protected cultivation is sparse, but it has the potential to contribute significantly to the development of more agriculture practices.

Furthermore, it is impossible to articulate the many chemicals involved in communication networks between plants and microorganisms using present technologies because of the huge range of molecules involved (Singh and Trivedi 2017; Nesme et al. 2016). Molecular methods like as metatranscriptomics and metabolomics, as well as improved sensitivity of current instruments such as spectroscopies, are thus required for the identification of microbiome signalling molecules (Singh and Trivedi 2017). The isolation of microorganisms contributes to the consolidation of knowledge gained from current procedures in unique biotechnological products, such as bio-inoculants. Despite this, molecular tools are more commonly utilized in microbiome investigations (Singh and Trivedi 2017). Multidisciplinary techniques that combine cutting-edge technology with conventional methods are essential for developing plant microbiome research. As an example, the microbiota that occupies the plant's many niches may be identified using these ways.

1.5 Impact of Microbiomes on Climate-Smart Agricultural Practices

All ecological functions solely rely on microbes for their survival. Research on the use of beneficial microbes, such as plant growth-promoting fungi, endophytic microbes, to improve agricultural yields, as well as the role of climate and soil microbiomes in promoting innovative sustainable agricultural alternatives, are the focus of the latest biotechnological interventions. Climate change has a direct impact on the agricultural ecosystem, affecting both the quantity and quality of agricultural products. Microbes' physiology can be negatively or positively affected by changes in biomass, diversity, and composition due to changes in the microbial metabolism. Increasingly, understanding the impact on native microbiomes, particularly the distribution of methanogens and methanotrophs, nutritional content, and microbial biomass, is necessary to build resilience against climate change. Because of this, soil microbes play an imperative role in a variety of biogeochemical cycles and agroecosystem resilience functions, such as decreasing greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and preventing organic matter degradation. Recent studies have demonstrated that agriculture and accompanying land-use change continue to be a significant source of biogenic GHGs, such as carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane, and

nitrous oxide (NOx). It was discussed how microorganisms can impact crop output, soil carbon sequestration, GHG reduction, and adaptation to climate change in climate-smart agricultural management techniques (Ajala et al. 2022).

1.6 Mitigation of Biotic and Abiotic Challenges by Microbiomes

The ability of microbes to mitigate a variety of biotic and abiotic challenges, as well as to acquire nutrients, may be enormous. This might be a low-cost, high-efficiency, and long-term input in an agro-production ecosystem's process. Agroecosystems are being overrun by synthetic inputs created in factories, resulting in falling productivity and returns for agricultural factors. As a result, the role of microorganisms in various production systems and ecologies must be investigated in order to make it a crucial input in long-term production. New production ecologies including conservation agriculture-based production systems protected cultivation lack knowledge on microorganisms. High crop performance in these conditions, on the other hand, is clearly attributable to a distinct microbial community (Lau et al. 2022). According to these ecologies' claims, their superior yields and product quality may be attributable to bacteria or consortia that have evolved in these environments. These organisms should be studied and used as agricultural inputs. The increased proportionate impact of helpful microorganisms on plant performance in more stressful settings can be used to quantify the amount of microbial stress amelioration. These ecologies are also employed to determine microbiomes or consortia that play a key role in coping with stress, such as cold and dry deserts and salinity/alkalinity/acid-prone places. Resources are required for the isolation, purification, identification, and characterization of culturable microorganisms. The capacity of microorganisms to function in a variety of agricultural environments and be stored is also a constraint on their usage in agriculture. A key drawback of using such microbiomes on a big scale is their application approach (Porter et al. 2020).

1.7 Utilization of Beneficial Microbiome to Boost Agriculture Productivity

There has been an increase in the study of beneficial bacteria as a means of enhancing plant development and alleviating stress, thanks to increased understanding of the microbiome's role in these processes. Microbiome utilization in agriculture begins with an investigation of the many "spheres" of a healthy crop-growing environment, such as soil and water. In the pre-genomics period, microbial variety was explored by isolating microorganisms in different culture mediums and examining their phenotypic diversity. Metagenomics, a culture-independent sequencing technology that can identify all the microorganisms in an environment, has become increasingly popular in recent years. Bacteria can be used in agriculture; however, cultivability of target microbes is still a determining factor. It is possible to sell

microbiota that have been economically mass produced in order to improve resource efficiency, promote plant growth, alleviate stress, or combat insect pests (Qadri et al. 2020).

1.8 The Environmental Microbiome in a Changing World

According to environmental microbiome studies, microbial communities play an important role in forming complex ecosystem processes that have an influence on human and environmental health. Microbes are being investigated in a variety of environments, including agricultural soils, biocrusts, coral reefs, sponges, and geological settings all around the world. Researchers are now looking at how environmental microbiomes respond to climate and ecological changes and how these alterations may be utilized to address present climate change challenges. Syntrophic interactions between bacteria, plants, and animals have long been studied, but researchers have lately begun to shed light on the various syntrophic interactions that take place in environmental systems including bacteriophages, protists, and other organisms. Microorganisms' seasonal, temporal, and geographic changes may now be compared, thanks to the advent of metagenomic research. Nevertheless, the flexibility, resilience, and development of microbial ecosystems can be better understood in other ecosystems.

As a result, phenotypic plasticity can be assessed much more easily by interpreting the microbiome communities of varied habitats, which may help provide significant information about the drivers and effects of stoichiometric trait distribution in agriculture and the environment. Nutrient-organism interactions are still largely a mystery, as is how microbiome composition affects ecosystems.

1.9 Ecology and the Environment-Microbiome Nexus

The function of microbiomes in soil, marine, and human habitats is becoming more and more apparent. It is now possible to screen and identify the microbial community in environmental samples using next-generation sequencing (NGS). Deciphering the microbiomes' genomes and comparing them to the genomes of other creatures in the environment helps us understand more about microbial diversity and evolutionary relationships. Few researchers have become increasingly interested in modelling the ambient microbiome for both pollution bioremediation and human health consequences. Intricate webs of interdependence connect all living organisms, much more of which has yet to be discovered.

The microbiomes may also tend to maintain a relationship between emerging diseases and climate change. In a new model of animal sickness, the microbiome is considered. According to their results, climate warming may lead to the emergence of new infectious diseases. Changes in the microbiomes of animals, such as those caused by climate change, might lead to the emergence of novel infectious diseases. Nonetheless, the microbiomes influence whether or not an animal is infected with a

virus when it is exposed to it. Bacterial interactions in the microbiome have a role in antimicrobial resistance in agriculture and the environment. Research here will undeniably focus on how microbe interact with each other in their environment and the evolution of antibiotic resistance, as well as the various methods in which antibiotic resistance can be passed from one strain or species to another. A healthy microbiome is essential in today's fast-paced world. However, the microbiome may be changed by changes in the environment. An organism's immune system is aided by the microbiome, which strives to maintain an even population of various bacterial species.

1.10 The Way Forward

Microbial communities with specific activities can be used to improve sustainable agricultural output by enhancing crop health, combating plant diseases, and minimizing the need of fertilizer. As a means of accomplishing this aim, it is necessary to have a better knowledge of how soil and environmental microbial communities evolve through time and how they respond to environmental changes, as well as the interactions between microbes and plants within those communities. In addition, because individual bacteria are critical to the stability and structure of microbial communities, more extensive studies employing these microorganisms and associated soil and environmental microbial communities would indeed be beneficial to the area of research. As a result of this research, we can better understand how these microorganisms affect agricultural yields and disease resistance, and we can also learn how to manipulate the microbiome.

As we learn more about metagenomics and the complexity of microbiomes, this book focuses on microbiome interactions (whether within themselves or with agricultural and environmental systems) and microbial ecosystems' resilience. Short communications that would provide significant insight into the various aspects of the agriculture and environmental microbiomes: metagenomic analysis of microbiomes of novel or extreme environments, experimental research on microbial resilience or temporal fluctuations, studies on symbiosis and coevolution of the microbial community, novel microbial interactions, and the recycling of nutrients in agriculture and environmental microbiomes. Microbiome interactions in agriculture and the environment are the primary focus of this book. An ecosystem's nutrient cycle depends heavily on the microbiome of the soil, air, and water. Microbiomes in different ecosystems and their functional dynamics are covered in the following chapters, which give up-to-date information on current trends. Bioremediation, microbiomes in space, geomicrobiomes, coral microbiomes, antibiotic resistomes, and marine microbiomes are just a few of the many subjects covered in the book. Syntrophic relationships between bacteria, protists, plants, and some animals in agricultural and environmental systems are also examined in the book proposal.

This book also offers a unique perspective on how microbial ecosystems adapt, recover, and evolve. Essential subjects linked to metagenomic microbiome study of novel or severe settings, investigations on microbial resilience or temporal

variations, symbiosis and coevolution of the microbiome, and novel microbial interactions in agriculture and the environment were addressed in the chapter. Plant-agriculture microbiomes and their contribution to the sustainability of agriculture, microbiota populating the phyllosphere, endosphere, rhizosphere, and their usage might be a sustainable crop production strategy is also discussed in the book. Finally, the book reveals the enormous potential of plant and environmental microbiome structural and functional diversity through a thorough but representative description.

Acknowledgements The author thanks Krishna University Machilipatnam for constant support.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare that there is no conflict of interest.

References

Ajala OA, Ajibade FO, Oluwadipe OR, Nwogwu NA, Adelodun B, Guadie A et al (2022) Microbial impact on climate-smart agricultural practices. In: Microbiome under changing climate. Woodhead Publishing, pp 203–236

Anantharaman K, Brown CT, Hug LA, Sharon I, Castelle CJ, Probst AJ et al (2016) Thousands of microbial genomes shed light on interconnected biogeochemical processes in an aquifer system. Nat Commun 7:13219

Bandla A, Pavagadhi S, Swarup S (2020) Harnessing soil microbiomes for creating healthy and functional urban landscapes. In: Soil analysis: recent trends and applications, pp 325–338

Cho I, Blaser MJ (2012) The human microbiome: at the interface of health and disease. Nat Rev Genet 13:260–270

Goodrich JK, Davenport ER, Clark AG, Ley RE (2017) The relationship between the human genome and microbiome comes into view. Annu Rev Genet 51:413–433. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-genet-110711-155532

Knight R, Vrbanac A, Taylor BC, Aksenov A, Callewaert C, Debelius J et al (2018) Best practices for analysing microbiomes. Nat Rev Microbiol 16:410–422

Konopka A (2009) What is microbial community ecology? ISME J 3:1223–1230

Lau SE, Teo WFA, Teoh EY, Tan BC (2022) Microbiome engineering and plant biostimulants for sustainable crop improvement and mitigation of biotic and abiotic stresses. Discover Food 2(1): 1–23

Nesme J, Achouak W, Agathos SN, Bailey M, Baldrian P, Brunel D, Frostegard A, Heulin T, Jansson JK, Jurkevitch E, Kruus KL et al (2016) Back to the future of soil metagenomics. Front Microbiol 7:1–5. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2016.00073

Pasolli E, Asnicar F, Manara S, Zolfo M, Karcher N, Armanini F et al (2019) Extensive unexplored human microbiome diversity revealed by over 150,000 genomes from metagenomes spanning age, geography, and lifestyle. Cell 176:649–662

Porter SS, Bantay R, Friel CA, Garoutte A, Gdanetz K, Ibarreta K et al (2020) Beneficial microbes ameliorate abiotic and biotic sources of stress on plants. Funct Ecol 34(10):2075–2086

Qadri M, Short S, Gast K, Hernandez J, Wong ACN (2020) Microbiome innovation in agriculture: development of microbial based tools for insect pest management. Front Sustain Food Syst 4: 547751. https://doi.org/10.3389/fsufs.2020.547751

Singh BK, Trivedi P (2017) Microbiome and the future for food and nutrient security. Microb Biotechnol 10:50–53. https://doi.org/10.1111/1751-7915.12592

Antimicrobial Resistance in Environmental Microbiome: An Overview

2

Lalrokimi, Yogesh Malvi, Bhim Pratap Singh, and Zothanpuia

Abstract

Antimicrobial resistance (AMR) is a great concern worldwide distressing the health of humans and animals directly or indirectly, which is truly problematic for the clinicians in disease control. This chapter highlighted the manifestation and spread of AMR and AMR genes (ARGs) in the environment that resulted from the human intrusions. Natural environments were less reported for the outbreak of pathogenic microbes, but with the human interventions such as the effluents of hospital wastes, human and animal wastes, etc. converted them into hotspots for antimicrobial genes by providing suitable medium for the exchange of ARGs among the organisms. Moreover, they can also serve as vehicle for the transfer of pathogenic microbes between human and animals that resulted in a wider epidemiological issue. Therefore, proper surveillance of microbiological risks should be there to maintain a healthy microbiome. It is a huge task to functionally characterize environmental microbiomes by conventional isolation method, with advances in high-throughput sequencing and computational biology today permit researchers the exploration of even un-culturable microbes by using metagenomics approach, which have been used effectively not only in determining the diversity of microbes but also in the characterization of pathogenic and antibiotic resistance microorganisms that can be a great help in this regard.

Lalrokimi · Y. Malvi
Department of Biotechnology, Mizoram University, Tanhril, Mizoram, India

B. P. Singh (✉)
Department of Agriculture & Environmental Sciences (AES), National Institute of Food Technology Entrepreneurship & Management (NIFTEM), Sonepat, Haryana, India

Zothanpuia
Department of Biotechnology/Life sciences, Mizoram University, Pachhunga University College, Aizawl, Mizoram, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_2

Keywords

Environmental microbiome · AR · ARGs

2.1 Introduction

Antimicrobial agents have been successfully used for the past many years to treat and reduce infectious microbial diseases. But in time, overuse and misuse of antibiotic in the past few decades has tremendously increased the number of resistant bacteria which accounts for thousands of human deaths every year (Jørgensen et al. 2017). It has been well reported that different microorganisms including bacteria, parasites, viruses, and fungus are well capable of developing resistance which infers that the antimicrobial agents have become less effective to that particular microorganisms (Alexander et al. 2013; Mediavilla et al. 2016).

Antimicrobial resistance (AMR) is when an antimicrobial agent becomes less effective to certain microbial pathogens by losing the ability to inhibit or kill the pathogens which were previously susceptible; this leads to the persistence of the particular disease in the body. This also increases the risk of spreading to others. Infections caused by AMR bacteria may lead to morality, prolong the hospital stay, etc. (de Kraker et al. 2011). AMR is a global concern as it is known as the major problem to human and animal health with significant impact on the economy (O'Neill 2017).

The occurrence of AMR is mainly due to the overuse and misuse of the antimicrobial agents for disease control, treatment, and prevention. Antimicrobials used for growth regulators in animals and the misuse of prescribed human medicine have highly contributed to the AMR (Brinkac et al. 2017). As the usages of antimicrobials have increased, the complexities on which the bacterial pathogens exhibit the resistance mechanisms have also increased. Scientists are struggling to have control against infections, but the development of new antimicrobial agent is not manageable to cope up with the rate of increasing resistance since microorganisms evolve to have better resistance mechanism (Krause 1992).

The genes encoded for their AMR are capable of moving to other microbes through vertical and horizontal gene transfer and further incorporated into the normal microbiota of human beings, animals, and environment which includes food, sewage, soil, and water. This underlying forces and development of AMR depend on the communication linkages connecting all these ecological, biological, and genetic entities (Baquero et al. 2019).

The transmission of AMR to human is well documented, and the natural environment serves as a major passage by which transmission has occur (Davies and Davies 2010). The level at which this transmission may occur remains uncertain. It is comparatively important to understand the role of environment for the transmission of antimicrobial bacteria to humans rather than the transmission through animal carriers, food, or the flow of AMR in healthcare and community settings (Huijbers et al. 2015).

AMR bacteria are most commonly found in infirmary settings which possibly reached to different environments such as wastewater treatment plants (WWTPs) via hospital wastes and the wastewater associated with this environment (Hocquet et al. 2016). The further route for these AMR bacteria is unknown that no trace in WWTPs (Flach et al. 2018) while a number of reports have been found on AMR bacteria conceivably of hospital origin which survive the treatment process and thereby are released into recipient waters (Rizzo et al. 2013).

There are certain monitoring surveillance program setup by different networks to monitor AMR bacteria which has increased the knowledge of dissemination of resistant bacteria, for example, the European AMR Surveillance Network (EARS-Net) (European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control 2017), ECO-SENS (Kahlmeter and Poulsen 2012), and Central Asian and Eastern European Surveillance of AMR (CAESAR) (World Health Organization 2015). This chapter highlighted an overview on the manifestation and spread of AMR and ARGs in the environment that resulted from the human interventions.

2.2 Antimicrobial

Antimicrobials remain the most significant pharmaceutical products in the management of bacterial infections, both humans and animals globally (WHO); this has become a global concern with the evolution of new pathogens. Moreover, it has played a key role in the development of sustainable livestock production by giving them healthy life besides serving as food preservatives and growth regulators; they also help in the control and management of the possible risks associated with infectious diseases that are zoonotic.

2.3 Antimicrobial Resistance (AMR)

The World Health Organization defined AMR as the resistance of a microorganism to an antimicrobial drug that was originally effective for treatment of infections caused by it. The overuse and misuse of antimicrobials has caused the occurrence of resistant microorganisms and therefore gave birth to the term AMR (Davies and Davies 2010). Microorganisms are extremely adaptive organisms even under unfavourable conditions; they can undergo mutations and are able to survive in several environmental stresses. Therefore, the rise in AMR is not a surprise rather it was much predictable with the invention of the first antimicrobials. The first antimicrobial-resistant strain *Staphylococcus aureus* was isolated from a patient in British hospital in the year 1948 which was found to be resistant against Penicillin (Barber and Rozwadowska-Dowzenko 1948). Later in the same year, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* was observed to be resistant against streptomycin (Crofton and Mitchison 1948). After that in 1950s, a bunch of pathogenic bacteria such as *Escherichia coli*, *Shigella* spp., and *Salmonella enteric* showed AMR (Watanabe 1963; Olarte 1983; Cantas et al. 2013). Later on VRE (vancomycin-resistant

Enterococci), MRSA (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*) were found in the 1960s which leads to the idea of multidrug-resistant bacteria where the microbes are resistant to at least three antimicrobials (Marshall and Levy 2011).

2.4 Origin of AMR in the Environment

Different sources where the AMR is believed to be originated such as hospitals, waste water, animal farm, and agriculture (Fig. 2.1) have been reviewed and highlighted as described below. *Enterococci* was found to be the most dominant AMR organisms in the selected site followed by *S. aureus* and *E. coli.* Vancomycin resistance was found to be the most dominant antimicrobials in the selected study sites (Table 2.1).

2.4.1 Hospitals

Hospital-acquired infection which is also termed as nosocomial infections are of a serious concern with regard to AMR (Monnet et al. 1998). The normal bacteria usually commensal that becomes pathogenic when they multiply in normal sterile sites, such as the lower respiratory tract or the blood, are usually the type of bacteria that are responsible for nosocomial infection (Bonten and Weinstein 1996). For limiting nosocomial infection especially to reduce antibiotic-resistant bacteria, several measures have been taken up such as maintaining proper sanitation like frequently washing hands and barrier precautions within the hospital (Slaughter et al. 1996). The main transmission from one hospital to another hospital takes place when one hospital refers patients for various reasons to another hospital; in this way, the patient may transfer hospital-acquired pathogens between healthcare institutions.

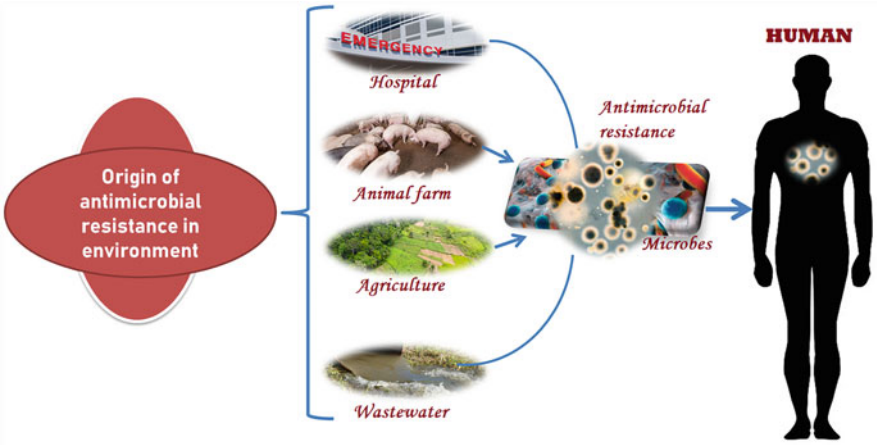


Fig. 2.1 Origin of AMR and their gene flow

Table 2.1 Selected common resistance microorganisms with antimicrobials and their origin

S. no	Origin of antimicrobial resistance	Microorganisms	Antimicrobials	References
1.	Animal farm (pig farm)	*E. coli*	Cephalosporin	Agersø and Aarestrup (2013)
2.	Animal farm (pig farm)	*E. faecium* and *E. faecalis*	Tylosin	Agersø and Aarestrup (2013)
3.	Animal farm (broiler farm)	*E. faecium*	Avilamycin	Aarestrup et al. (2001)
4.	Animal farm (chicken farm)	*E. coli* and *Salmonella enterica serovar Heidelberg*	Ceftiofur (a third-generation cephalosporin)	Dutil et al. (2014)
5.	Wastewater (hospital effluent)	*Enterococci*	Amoxicillin	Leclercq et al. (2013)
6.	Wastewater (hospital and community effluent)	*Enterococci*	Vancomycin	Caplin et al. (2008)
7.	Wastewater (sludge)	*Enterococci*	Vancomycin	Bates et al. (1994)
8.	Animal farm (poultry manure)	*Enterococci*	ESBL	Blaak et al. (2014)
9.	Soil (manure-amended)	*Staphylococcus aureus*	Methicillin	Huijbers et al. (2015)
10.	Soil (agricultural soil)	*Enterococci*	Vancomycin	Huijbers et al. (2015)
11.	Hospital (patient)	*Klebsiella pneumoniae*	Carbapenem	Zhao et al. (2019)
12.	Hospital (patient)	*Staphylococcus aureus*	Methicillin and vancomycin	Heinze et al. (2018)

Through the shared patients, different hospitals become connected (Donker et al. 2010) which eventually lead to the transmission of MDR (multidrug-resistant) pathogens like MRSA (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), VRSA (vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), etc. On the other hand, wrong or unnecessary prescription of antibiotics to patients by doctors is the major cause of AMR in hospitals. In 2010, India was the largest consumer of antibiotics when assessing total tonnage; however, their per capita usage (7.5 units per capita) was comparatively low as compared to Australia and New Zealand which recorded among the highest usage rates of 87 and 70 units per capita, respectively (Van Boeckel et al. 2014).

2.4.2 Wastewater

Wastewater coming from different sources could be a favourable habitat for resistant bacteria and resistance genes (Munir et al. 2011; Reinthaler et al. 2013). Resistant bacteria may reach the wastewater treatment plants (WWTPs) from hospital water as discussed above, since resistant bacteria are abundantly present in hospitals (Hocquet et al. 2016). Some studies have suggested the correlation between resistances rates among bacteria present in wastewater with corresponding to human population in that particular area. Therefore, basic research on the resistance rate of the indicator bacteria such as *E. coli* in wastewater is an important tool to observe the changes in the resistance pattern of the normal human intestinal microbiota (Blanch et al. 2006). For instance, *Enterococcus faecium*, i.e. a Swedish clone that carries ampicillin and fluoroquinolone resistance, could be traced from its hospital origin (Torell et al. 2003) to wastewater coming out from hospital (Iversen et al. 2002). The clone was further found in untreated water and the samples were still further found in receiving waters (Iversen et al. 2002), which is likely a source for hospital origin, antibiotic resistance bacteria colonization in human. In addition to this, a high bacterial population are found in biofilms from wastewater system especially from activated sludge of sewage treatment plants. Biofilms are also generated in surface water and drinking water distribution systems (Schwartz et al. 2003).

2.4.3 Animal Farm

Animal husbandry has extremely increased over the past five decades worldwide. According to FAO, 2018 global meat production has almost increased in fourfold, from 84 million tons in 1965 to about 335 million tons in 2018, and it is assumed that this is likely to be continued. Antimicrobials are used extensively in farm animals for the treatment of certain diseases as well as for growth regulators. Therefore, animal farms are zoonotic pathogen reservoirs, as well as sources of veterinary antimicrobials and ARGs. This kind of case happens in countries that produce antimicrobials in large amount without any essential regulation (Wellington et al. 2013). Stokstad and Jukes were the first to report the used of antimicrobials in farm animals after noticing a small doses of penicillin and tetracycline could enhance growth (Stokstad and Jukes 1950). After that, the use of antimicrobial agent in farm animals has increased. For instance, in China, antimicrobials have been used as low-dose feed additives for livestock and poultry since the mid-1970s; since then, China is currently the leading country in the production and consumption of antimicrobials for animals worldwide (Zhu et al. 2013). In many underdeveloped and developing countries, where the resources do not meet the requirement of the people, the use of antimicrobials is increasing rapidly due to the high demand for animal protein, shifting animal husbandry into large-scale industry. For example, BRICS countries were estimated to consume 99% increase of antimicrobials from 2010 to 2030 (Van Boeckel et al. 2019). In addition to this, the manure produced by

these farm animals was found to constitute a great number of antimicrobial-resistant bacteria, where the genes associated with antibiotic resistance, ribosomal protection, and enzyme inactivation mechanisms were commonly detected in such manure and the soils where applied (Cadena et al. 2018).

2.4.4 Agriculture

The extensive use of antimicrobials in animal farm has increased the number of AMR as well as antimicrobial genes inside the animal body. Reports have shown that manures collected from such farms to fertilize the soil of agricultural land has introduced novel ARGs to the soil as well as enriched the naturally present ARGs (Yu et al. 2017). Even though, samples collected and analysed from an isolated soil have suggested that ARGs also occurs naturally in the soil (Miteva et al. 2004; Bhullar et al. 2012). But ARGs are more abundant as compared to the isolated native soil, which suggested the enrichment of agricultural soil with ARGs with the application of manures (Davies and Davies 2010). From agricultural land, it will be eventually transported through the waterways and will contaminate the water quality.

2.5 Resistance Transmission

The flow of AMR and the genes associated have been observed from microorganisms to microorganisms, animal to human, and environment to human.

2.5.1 Microorganisms to Microorganisms

Occurrence of one mutation to cause resistance on microorganism is well known. In addition to that, the new mutated genetic material can be exchanged between one microorganism to another which in turn may lead to the host cell and its progeny to have new AMR genes, following different mechanisms mostly through plasmid transmission (Walsh et al. 2011; Unemo et al. 2012). The emergence of AMR is influence by antimicrobials using a selective pressure, also by inducing transfer of resistance determinants between microbes (Beaber et al. 2004).

2.5.2 Human to Human

Transmission of resistance microbes may occur between human to human contact, and this type of transmission is one of the most common ways of transmission. In the community, faecal–oral transmission is the most common route of transmission which is often due to poor sanitation. This type of transmission plays an important part especially in the transmission of resistant Enterobacteriaceae (Wellington et al.

2013). In addition, sexual encounters may also lead to the transmission of resistant bacteria, for instance, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, which leads to a widespread distribution of resistant clones (Lewis 2013). Hospital or healthcare-associated infections also play vital role in the transmission, if proper sanitation is neglected. For example, healthcare workers' hand is an important mode of transmission of resistant bacteria such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) if proper sanitation is not maintained (Chamchod and Ruan 2012).

2.5.3 Animals to Human

The transmission of antimicrobial-resistant microbes from animals to human beings, which is due to the use of antimicrobial growth promoters in farm animals, was first recognised in the 1960s (Anderson and Lewis 1965). Bacteria and mobile genetic elements consulting resistance may remain on animal skin and in faeces, and by any means, the mobile genetic elements may be transferred to bacteria, and eventually the bacteria will however direct to humans (Kruse and Sørum 1994). This intertwining of animal and human microbial population includes both commensals and opportunistic pathogens, which may include *E. coli*, *Enterococci*, and *Staphylococcus aureus*. There are certain evidences to support the transmission of resistant bacteria from animals to human beings. For instance, ESβL and AmpC-β-lactamase genes on plasmids and of *E. coli* possibly through food chain clones have been reported (Kluytmans et al. 2013).

2.5.4 Environment to Human

Environment such as soil, water, drainage system, etc. may also transmit resistant bacteria to human beings. The contribution of the environment to AMR transmission is a global concern. This existed to be confirmed by the isolation of AMR microbes in several sewage systems (Kristiansson et al. 2011). These opportunistic AMR pathogens have enormous chance of transmission to human beings. These indirect transmissions are not well studied and are a great area of research interests with the advancement of high-throughput metagenomic approaches.

2.6 Mechanism for the Development of AMR

AMR could be either innate or acquired in microorganisms. In some species of bacteria, resistance to any one class of antimicrobial agents are innate. In such cases, all the strains of that particular bacterial species are resistant to all the members of that antibacterial class. Since innate resistance is a naturally occurring process, it is of a lesser concern. The more serious concern is acquired resistance where microbes which were previously susceptible to a particular antimicrobial agent developed resistance, which means that antimicrobial agent has lesser effect on that microbe.

These resistant bacteria will proliferate and spread under the selective pressure of use of that agent. The mechanism includes the following: First step is the attainment of the genes encoding enzymes such as β-lactamases, capable of destroying antimicrobial agent before having an effect. Second step is the removal of antimicrobial agents out from the cell where the bacteria may acquire efflux pumps for forcing the antibacterial agent terminating its effect before reaching the site of action. Third step is the alteration of bacterial cell wall by acquiring several genes for a metabolic pathway modifying the binding site of that particular antimicrobial agent. There is also a possibility that bacteria may hamper the entry of antimicrobial agents inside the target cell via downregulation of porin genes by mutation. In this way, susceptible bacterial populations may attain resistance to antimicrobial agents through mutation and selection or by acquiring the resistant gene from other bacteria. Resistance to multiple classes of antimicrobial agents mainly occur due to the exchange of genetic information from one bacterium to other bacteria. Such kind of bacteria that shows resistant to at least three classes of antimicrobial agents are termed as MDR (multidrug-resistant) and have become the most critical issues and challenges, mostly in hospitals and other healthcare institutions where they tend to occur most commonly. Although a single mutation may not be enough to acquire resistance, it could reduce the susceptibility and may be the key to acquire additional mutations or additional genetic information resulting in full resistance to the antibacterial agent (McManus 1997).

2.7 Future Perspectives and Conclusions

The development of AMR is a great concern worldwide. This leads to search for alternative sources for drugs having potential to inhibit MDR pathogens. The major issue in the development of AMR is the misuse and overuse of antimicrobials. There is a need to understand the proper use of antimicrobials to avoid further development of AMR.

Acknowledgements The authors are thankful to the Department of Science and Technology (DST) for funding through the Young Scientists and Technologists (SYST) scheme to Dr. Bhim Pratap Singh with project number SP/YO/385/2018.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare that there is no conflict of interest.

References

Aarestrup FM, Seyfarth AM, Emborg HD, Pedersen K, Hendriksen RS, Bager F (2001) Effect of abolishment of the use of antimicrobial agents for growth promotion on occurrence of antimicrobial resistance in fecal *Enterococci* from food animals in Denmark. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 45:2054–2059

Agersø Y, Aarestrup FM (2013) Voluntary ban on cephalosporin use in Danish pig production has effectively reduced extended-spectrum cephalosporinase-producing Escherichia coli in slaughter pigs. J Antimicrob Chemother 68(3):569–572

Alexander BD, Johnson MD, Pfeiffer CD et al (2013) Increasing echinocandin resistance in Candida glabrata: clinical failure correlates with presence of FKS mutations and elevated minimum inhibitory concentrations. Clin Infect Dis 56:1724–1732

Anderson ES, Lewis MJ (1965) Drug resistance and its transfer in *Salmonella typhimurium*. Nature 206:579–583

Baquero F, Coque TM, Martínez J-L, Aracil-Gisbert S, Lanza VF (2019) Gene transmission in the one health microbiosphere and the channels of antimicrobial resistance. Front Microbiol 10

Barber M, Rozwadowska-Dowzenko M (1948) Infection by penicillin-resistant staphylococci. Lancet 2(6530):641–644

Bates J, Jordens JZ, Griffiths DT (1994) Farm animals given as a putative reservoir for vancomycin-resistant enterococcal infection in man. J Antimicrob Chemother 34:507–514

Beaber JW, Hochhut B, Waldor MK (2004) SOS response promotes horizontal dissemination of antibiotic resistance genes. Nature 427:72–74

Bhullar K, Waglechner N, Pawlowski A et al (2012) Antibiotic resistance is prevalent in an isolated cave microbiome. PLoS One 7:e34953

Blaak H, Hamidjaja RA, van Hoek AHAM, de Heer L, de RodaHusman AM, Schets FM (2014) Detection of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL)-producing Enterobacteriaceae in vegetables, soil and water of the farm environment in Tunisia. Int J Food Microbiol 203:86–92

Blanch AR, Belanche-Munoz L, Bonjoch X, Ebdon J, Gantzer C, Lucena F, Ottoson J, Kourtis C, Iversen A, Kühn I, Moce L, Muniesa M, Schwartzbrod J, Skraber S, Papageorgiou GT, Taylor H, Wallis J, Jofre J (2006) Integrated analysis of established and novel microbial and chemical methods for microbial source tracking. Appl Environ Microb 72(9):5915–5926

Bonten MJ, Weinstein RA (1996) The role of colonization in the pathogenesis of nosocomial infections. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 17:193–200

Brinkac L, Voorhies A, Gomez A et al (2017) The threat of antimicrobial resistance on the human microbiome. Microb Ecol 74:1001–1008

Cadena M, Durso LM, Miller DN, Waldrip HM, Castleberry BL, Drijber RA, Wortmann C (2018) Tetracycline and sulfonamide antibiotic resistance genes in soils from Nebraska organic farming operations. Front Microbiol 9:1283

Cantas L, Shah SQA, Cavaco LM et al (2013) A brief multi-disciplinary review on antimicrobial resistance in medicine and its linkage to the global environmental microbiota. Front Microbiol 4: 96

Caplin JL, Hanlon GW, Taylor HD (2008) Presence of vancomycin and ampicillin-resistant Enterococcus faecium of epidemic clonal complex-17 in wastewaters from the south coast of England. Environ Microbiol 10:885–892

Chamchod F, Ruan S (2012) Modeling methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in hospitals: transmission dynamics, antibiotic usage and its history. Theor Biol Med Model 9:25

Crofton J, Mitchison DA (1948) Streptomycin resistance in pulmonary tuberculosis. BMJ 2(4588): 1009–1015

Davies J, Davies D (2010) Origins and evolution of antibiotic resistance. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 74(3):417–433

de Kraker MEA, Davey PG, Grundmann H (2011) Mortality and hospital stay associated with resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Escherichia coli* bacteraemia: estimating the burden of antimicrobial resistance in Europe. PLoS Med 8:e1001104

Donker T, Wallinga J, Grundmann H (2010) Patient referral patterns and the spread of hospital acquired infections through national health care networks. PLoS Comput Biol 6:e1000715

Dutil L, Irwin R, Finley R, Ng LK, Avery B, Boerlin P, Bourgault AM, Cole L (2014) *Escherichia coli* on flies at poultry farms. Appl Environ Microbiol 80:239–246

European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control (2017). https://www.ecdc.europa.eu/en

Flach CF, Genheden M, Fick J, Larsson JDG (2018) A comprehensive screening of *Escherichia coli* isolates from Scandinavia's largest sewage treatment plant indicates no selection for antibiotic resistance. Environ Sci Technol 52:11419–11428

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO) (2018) Food outlook—biannual report on global food markets. Rome, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, p 104

Heinze K, Kabeto M, Martin ET, Cassone M, Hicks L, Mody L (2018) Predictors of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococci* co-colonization among nursing facility patients. Am J Infect Control

Hocquet D, Muller A, Bertrand X (2016) What happens in hospitals does not stay in hospitals: antibiotic-resistant bacteria in hospital wastewater systems. J Hosp Infect 93:395–402

Huijbers PMC, Hetty B, de Jong MCM, EAM G, Vandenbroucke G, MJE C, de Roda HAM (2015) Role of the environment in the transmission of antimicrobial resistance to humans: a review. Environ Sci Technol 49(20):11993–12004

Iversen A, Kühn I, Franklin A, Möllby R (2002) High prevalence of vancomycin resistant enterococci in Swedish wastewater. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:2838–2842

Jørgensen PS, Wernli D, Folke C, Carroll SP (2017) Changing antibiotic resistance: sustainability transformation to a pro-microbial planet. Curr Opin Environ Sustain 25:66–76

Kahlmeter G, Poulsen HO (2012) Antimicrobial susceptibility of Escherichia coli from community-acquired urinary tract infections in Europe: the ECO$SENS study revisited. Int J Antimicrob Agents 39(1):45–51

Kluytmans JAJW, Overdevest ITMA, Willemsen I et al (2013) Extended-spectrum β-lactamase-producing Escherichia coli from retail chicken meat and humans: comparison of strains, plasmids, resistance genes, and virulence factors. Clin Infect Dis 56:478–487

Krause RM (1992) The origin of plagues: old and new. Science 257:1073–1078

Kristiansson E, Fick J, Janzon A et al (2011) Pyrosequencing of antibiotic-contaminated river sediments reveals high levels of resistance and gene transfer elements. PLoS One 6:e17038

Kruse H, Sørum H (1994) Transfer of multiple drug resistance plasmids between bacteria of diverse origins in natural microenvironments. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:4015–4021

Leclercq R, Oberle K, Galopin S, Cattoir V, Budzinski H, Petit F (2013) Changes in enterococcal populations and related antibiotic resistance along a medical center wastewater treatment plant-river continuum. Appl Environ Microbiol 79:2428–2434

Lewis DA (2013) The role of core groups in the emergence and dissemination of antimicrobial-resistant N gonorrhoeae. Sex Transm Infect 89(Suppl 4):iv47–iv51

Marshall BM, Levy SB (2011) Food animals and antimicrobials: impacts on human health. Clin Microbiol Rev 24(4):718–733

McManus MC (1997) Mechanisms of bacterial resistance to antimicrobial agents. Am J Health Syst Pharm 54:1420–1433

Mediavilla JR, Patrawalla A, Chen L et al (2016) Colistin- and carbapenem-resistant Escherichia coli harboring mcr-1 and bla NDM-5, causing a complicated urinary tract infection in a patient from the United States: TABLE 1. MBio 7:e01191–ee0111

Miteva VI, Sheridan P, Brenchley J (2004) Phylogenetic and physiological diversity of microorganisms isolated from a deep Greenland glacier ice core. Appl Environ Microbiol 70: 202–213

Monnet DL, Archibald LK, Phillips L, Tenover FC, McGowan JE Jr, Gaynes RP (1998) Antimicrobial use and resistance in eight US hospitals: complexities of analysis and modeling. Intensive Care Antimicrobial Resistance Epidemiology Project and National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance System Hospitals. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 19(6):388–394

Munir M, Wong K, Xagoraraki I (2011) Release of antibiotic resistant bacteria and genes in the effluent and biosolids of five wastewater utilities in Michigan. Water Res 45(2):681–693

O'Neill J (2017) Tackling drug-resistant infections globally: final report and recommendations. Accessed 15 May 2017

Olarte J (1983) Antibiotic resistance in Mexico. APUA Newslett 1:3

Reinthaler FF, Galler H, Feierl G, Haas D, Leitner E, Mascher F, Melkes A, Posch J, Pertschy B, Winter I, Himmel W, Marth E, Zarfel G (2013) Resistance patterns of *Escherichia coli* isolated from sewage sludge in comparison with those isolated from human patients in 2000 and 2009. J Water Health 11(1):13e20

Rizzo L, Manaia C, Merlin C, Schwartz T, Dagot C, Ploy MC, Michael I, Fatta-Kassinos D (2013) Urban wastewater treatment plants as hotspots for antibiotic resistant bacteria and genes spread into the environment: a review. Sci Total Environ 447:345–360

Schwartz T, Hoffmann S, Obst U (2003) Formation of natural biofilms during chlorine dioxide and u.v. disinfection in a public drinking water distribution system. J Appl Microbiol 95(3):591–601

Slaughter S, Hayden MK, Nathan C, Hu TC, Rice T, Van Voorhis J, Matushek M, Franklin C, Weinstein RA (1996) A comparison of the effect of universal glove and gown use with glove use alone in acquisition of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in a medicinal intensive care unit. Ann Intern Med 125:448–456

Stokstad ELR, Jukes TH (1950) Further observations on the "animal protein factor". Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 73(3):523–528

Torell E, Kühn J, Olsson-Liljeauist B, Hæggman S, Hoffman BM, Lindahl C, Burman LG (2003) Clonality among ampicillin-resistant Enterococcus faecium isolates in Sweden and relationship with ciprofloxacin resistance. Clin Microbiol Infect 9(10):1011–1019

Unemo M, Golparian D, Nicholas R, Ohnishi M, Gallay A, Sednaoui P (2012) High-level cefixime and ceftriaxone-resistant *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in France: novel penA mosaic allele in a successful international clone causes treatment failure. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 56: 1273–1280

Van Boeckel TP, Gandra S, Ashok A, Caudron Q, Grenfell BT, Levin SA et al (2014) Global antibiotic consumption 2000 to 2010: an analysis of national pharmaceutical sales data. Lancet Infect Dis 14:742–750

Van Boeckel TP, Pires J, Silvester R, Zhao C, Song J, Criscuolo NG, Gilbert M, Bonhoeffer S, Laxminarayan R (2019) Global trends in antimicrobial resistance in animals in low- and middle-income countries. Science 365:944

Walsh TR, Weeks J, Livermore DM, Toleman MA (2011) Dissemination of NDM-1 positive bacteria in the New Delhi environment and its implications for human health: an environmental point prevalence study. Lancet Infect Dis 11:355–362

Watanabe T (1963) Infective heredity of multiple drug resistance in bacteria. Bacteriol Rev 27:87–115

Wellington EMH, Boxall AB, Cross P et al (2013) The role of the natural environment in the emergence of antibiotic resistance in gram-negative bacteria. Lancet Infect Dis 13:155–165

World Health Organization (2015) Central Asian and Eastern European surveillance of antimicrobial resistance. CAESAR manual 2

Yu Z, Gunn L, Wall P, Fanning S (2017) Antimicrobial resistance and its association with tolerance to heavy metals in agriculture production. Food Microbiol 64:23–32

Zhao D, Zuo Y, Wang Z, Li J (2019) Characterize carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumonia* isolates for nosocomial pneumonia and their Gram-negative bacteria neighbors in the respiratory tract. Mol Biol Rep

Zhu Y, Johnson TA, Su JQ, Qiao M, Guo GX, Stedtfeld RD, Hashsham SA, Tiedje JM (2013) Diverse and abundant antibiotic resistance genes in Chinese swine farms. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:3435–3440

Mechanistic Adaptation of Microbiomes in Extreme Environments

3

K. Viswadeepika and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

Abstract

Extreme environments are referred to as ecosystems with a constant or fluctuating exposure to one or more environmental factors such as high and low temperatures, salinity, osmolarity, UV radiation, barometric pressure, and pH. Microbiomes inhabiting these ecosystems have vast and flexible metabolic diversity combined with extraordinary physiological abilities to colonize harsh environmental conditions. Extremophilic microbes offer a variety of adaptation strategies that include structural, physiological, and metabolic changes primarily in the cell membrane, DNA, RNA, protein, and enzymes. Adaptive strategies inevitably incorporate biological and geological processes such as pigment production, cell membrane changes, or movement into solid rock layers and geological modifications. In addition, the synthesis and accumulation of small molecules in the cytoplasm, surface modifications on proteins, for instance, acidification or increase in the stable amino acid content, molecular chaperones, polyphosphates, and mobile genetic elements also lead to better survival in hostile environments. Furthermore, characterisation of cell signalling systems in these populations, horizontal gene transfer, and transcriptomic and proteomic studies along with metabolomics may be especially useful in the analysis of the possibility of adaptations at group level. Owing to the enormous potential of commercial exploitation of extremophiles in biotechnology, understanding the processes underlying the adaptation of microbes to extreme environments from both evolutionary and ecological perspectives is of fundamental importance.

K. Viswadeepika
Department of Botany, St. Joseph's College for Women, Visakhapatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. V. Bramhachari (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_3

Keywords

Extreme environments · Extremophilic microbes · Adaptive strategies · Transcriptomic and proteomic studies

3.1 Introduction

Extremophiles live in severe physical and geochemical environments that threaten life's physicochemical limitations such as high salinity, temperature, radiation, pH, desiccation, etc. This kind of harsh environmental conditions might be regarded as innate or induced factors which compel most living systems tough to survive and grow (Rothschild and Mancinelli 2001). Most of the genetic, bio, and physicochemical techniques that extremophilic microbes use are not fully explored so far. Apparently, nutritional requirements must be adapted to the availability at the particular extreme environment. Adaptation to physiological requirements may be complicated and diverse (Rampelotto 2013). Nevertheless, it was reported that some biological molecules and unusual biochemical strategies enable extremophiles to thrive, which garner great attention in the fields of biotechnology and other industrial processes.

Communication mechanisms (quorum sensing) used by these microorganisms in extreme environments are important for the survival of microorganisms (de Oliveira et al. 2015; Pérez-Rodríguez et al. 2015). Cell signalling controls many essential activities in microorganisms and can perform crucial tasks in managing diversity levels of microbes in extreme environments as well as ecological balance. Moreover, for synchronized expression of genes at elevated cell density, most bacteria rely on quorum sensing (QS) which is focused on the synthesis and recognition of autoinducer signalling molecules (Miller and Bassler 2001). Characterising cell signalling networks in these populations can present distinct ways to decipher the microbial communication associated with existence and functioning in intense climatic conditions. The most commonly reported signalling system is autoinducer-1 (AI-1) apart from thermophilic organisms since autoinducer-2 is present in them. Although peptide-based system was not common in this kind of microorganisms. Extremophiles use quorum sensing for processes such as cold adaptation, reduction of the freezing point and development of biofilms, tolerance to oxidative damage, and persistent cell development. Model organisms for all extremophile groups include *Leptospirillum ferriphilum* (acidophile) (Christel et al. 2018), *Sulfolobus solfataricus* (thermoacidophile) (Quehenberger et al. 2017), *Natronomonas pharaonis* (haloalkaliphile) (Falb et al. 2005), *Bacillus halodurans* (halophile) (Van-Thuoc et al. 2013), *Haloferax volcanii* DS2 (halophile) (Hartman et al. 2010), *Halobacterium* sp. NRC-1 (halo radiophile) (Berquist et al. 2007), *Deinococcus radiodurans* (radiophile) (Pavlopoulou et al. 2016), *Thermococcus barophilus* (piezophile) (Birien et al. 2018), *Halorubrum lacusprofundi* (psychrohalophile) (Liao et al. 2016), *Pseudoalteromonas haloplanktis* (psychrophile) (Parrilli et al. 2019), *Thermococcus kodakarensis*

(thermophile) (Atomi and Reeve 2019), *Thermus thermophilus* (thermophile) (Miyazaki and Tomariguchi 2019), and *Cronobacter sakazakii* SP291 (xerophile) (Srikumar et al. 2019).

Extremophiles are crucial not only for their exceptional ability to survive extreme conditions but also for their wide range of uses in the areas of industrial and pharmaceutical biotechnology. Microbial communities were acclimatized to remarkable stress intensities in extreme conditions. These modifications play significant role in the improvement of remediation methods for certain polluted sites of hazardous waste and acid mine drainage sites. Novel enzymes isolated from extremophiles are tailored to extremes of temperature and pH. Lastly, they help in unravelling the evolutionary record as well as promising effects of climate in near future. Dynamic metabolic processes present in extremophiles were well explained by environmental transcriptomic and proteomic studies. Nonetheless, metabolic compounds explicitly associated with the microbial physiology are not fully explored. Due to the wide range of experimental complexities related to environmental matrix, metabolomic techniques fall behind other advanced technologies. The present chapter comprehensively discusses the basic microbial adaptations of various extremophiles for their survival.

3.2 Psychrophiles

At low temperatures, enzymes will be inactive, whereas solute concentrations are elevated and become lethal (Cavicchioli 2006). In addition, ice crystals can slice the cell membranes once the water is frozen, thereby damaging cell integrity (D'Amico et al. 2006). Psychrophilic membranes (*Shewanella putrefaciens*) contain increased amounts of unsaturated fatty acids, fatty acids with cyclopropane, and short-chain fatty acids that increase further with temperature reduction to modulate membrane fluidity (Feller and Gerday 2003; D'Amico et al. 2006; Gao et al. 2019) (Fig. 3.1). Psychrophilic microbes synthesize enzymes that are cold adapted and possess increased specific activities at cold conditions (Feller and Gerday 2003). Cold-tolerant enzymes can assist transcription and translation at very low temperatures. In addition, antifreeze proteins were found in microbes adapted to cold environments (Gilbert et al. 2004). AFPs have two major functions, namely thermal hysteresis and ice recrystallisation inhibition activity (Kawahara 2008). Such proteins can attach to ice crystals with a broad corresponding surface and thus avoid ice crystals from slicing the cell membranes.

Microorganisms have developed several physiological adaptations to balance the harmful impacts of cold environment such as producing temperature-related chaperones and antifreeze molecules, such as ice nucleation proteins (INPs), that shield the RNA and protein synthesis (De Maayer et al. 2014; Godin-Roulling et al. 2015). INPs arrest the extreme cooling of water due to ice crystallisation (Kawahara 2002; Muñoz et al. 2017). Psychrophiles control membrane fluidity by increasing the amount of branched-chain or unsaturated fatty acids or by reducing the stretch of fatty-acyl chains or both. Molecular chaperones help in protein refolding and have an

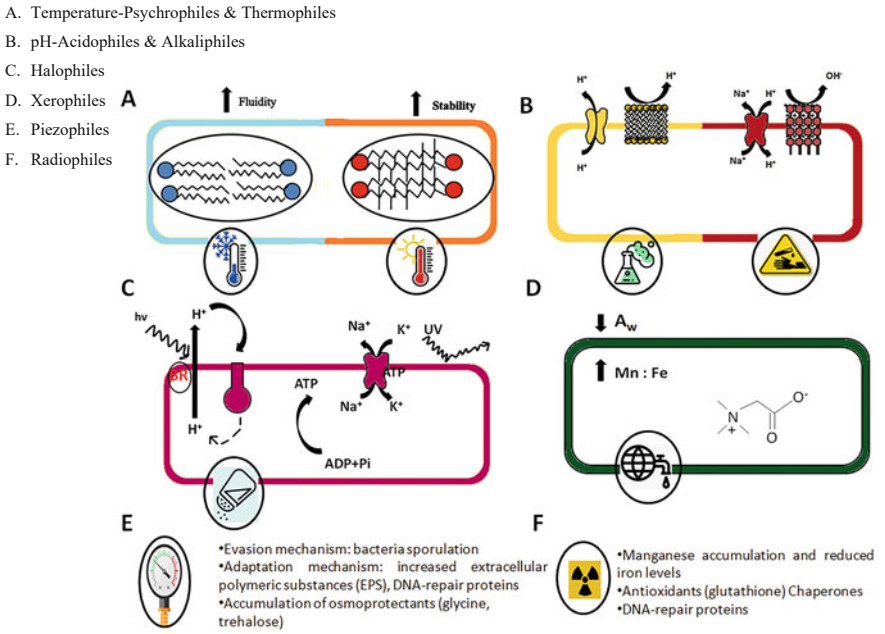


Fig. 3.1 Molecular mechanisms of extremophiles for their adaptation to extreme environmental conditions. (**a**) Temperature—psychrophiles and thermophiles. (**b**) pH—acidophiles and alkaliphiles. (**c**) Halophiles. (**d**) Xerophiles. (**e**) Piezophiles. (**f**) Radiophiles

effect on protein synthesis levels (Math et al. 2012). Prevention of UV damage to cells and reduction of cytoplasmic freezing point were achieved by aggregation of mannitol and other compatible solutes as cryoprotectants (Casanueva et al. 2010). In addition, they may probably stop protein assemblage/deterioration, stabilisation of membranes, and free radical scavenging in cold environment (Kandror et al. 2002) (Table 3.1).

The first bacterial AFP discovered from sea ice Gram-negative bacterium *Colwellia* strain SLW05 (Raymond et al. 2007). However, the earliest reported bacterial antifreeze characteristics were identified in soil bacterium *Rhodococcus erythropolis* and psychrophile *Micrococcus cryophilus* (Duman and Olsen 1993). Strikingly, *Pseudomonas fluorescens* KUAF-68 and *Pseudomonas borealis* DL7 have both ice nucleation and antifreeze activity (Kawahara et al. 2004; Wilson et al. 2006). Several types of ice nucleation proteins (i.e. InaK, InaQ, InaV, and InaZ) were reported in *Pseudomonas syringae* (Li et al. 2012). Temperature also affects structural proteins. To sustain their activities at low temperatures, enzymes have to surmount mainly two difficulties including cold distortion and slow reaction rates. Cold distortion takes place at freezing temperatures as they result in extra structured water molecules occupying the surface of protein resulting in less protein interaction and moving the system equilibrium towards the unfolded state (de Maayer et al. 2014). Other cold stress adaptations provided by EPS and cold shock proteins, in

Table. 3.1 Adaptations of extremophilic microorganisms under various climatic conditions

S. no	Type of extremophile	Microorganisms	Adaptation	Reference
1	Thermophiles	*Geobacillus* sp. TFV3	Chaperone protein DnaJ, chaperone protein DnaK, heat-shock protein GrpE, chaperone GroEL	Ching et al. (2020)
		Geobacillus, Parageobacillus	Heat-shock proteins (HSPs)	Wang et al. (2019)
		Geobacillus Thermodenitrificans ArzA-6, *Geobacillus toebii* ArzA-8 strains	EPS production	Panosyan et al. (2018)
		Thermolongibacillus, Aeribacillus, Geobacillus, Anoxybacillus	Biofilm formation	Cihan et al. (2017)
		Anoxybacillus sp. strain R4–33	EPS production	Zhao et al. (2014)
		Sulfolobus acidocaldarius, S. solfataricus, S. tokodaii	Biofilm formation	Koerdt et al. (2010)
2	Psychrophiles	*Paenisporosarcina Antarctica* CGMCC 1.6503^{T}	Fatty acid desaturases, dioxygenases, antifreeze proteins, and cold-shock proteins	Rong et al. (2020)
		Pseudoalteromonas sp. MER144	EPS production	Caruso et al. (2018)
		Colwellia psychrerythraea 34H	EPS production	Casillo et al. (2017)
		Pseudomonas mandelii	Alginate production, biofilm formation	Vásquez-Ponce et al. (2017)
		Flavobacterium frigoris PS1	Ice-binding protein (FfIBP)	Do et al. (2012)
		Pseudomonas syringae	Ice nucleation proteins (INPs) – Variant (InaQ)	Li et al. (2012)
		Sphingopyxis alaskensis	Polyhydroxyalkanoates (PHAs)	Ting et al. (2010)
		Pseudomonas putida GR12–2	Antifreeze protein (AfpA)	Muryoi et al. (2004)
		Colwellia strain SLW05	Antifreeze protein (AFP)	Raymond et al. (2007)
3	Halophiles	*Halomonas smyrnensis* K2	EPS production	Joulak et al. (2020)
		Alkalicoccus halolimnae BZ-SZ-XJ29^{T}	Ectoine biosynthesis gene cluster (ectA, ectB, and ectC)	Zhang et al. (2020a, b)

(continued)

Table. 3.1 (continued)

S. no	Type of extremophile	Microorganisms	Adaptation	Reference
		Nitriliruptoria species	K^+ influx and efflux, betaine and ectoine synthesis, and compatible solute transport	Chen et al. (2020a, b)
		Halomonas nitroreducens WB1	EPS production	Chikkanna et al. (2018)
		Salinibacter ruber	K^+ uptake via tropomyosin receptor kinase A	Oren (2002b)
		Methylarcula marina, M. terricola	Ectoine	Doronina et al. (2000)
		Halorhodospira Halochloris	Osmolyte glycine betaine	Galinski and Trüper (1982)
4	Acidophiles	*Acidithiobacillus caldus*	Ferric uptake regulator (AcFur)	Chen et al. (2020a, b)
		Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans YNTRS-40	rus operon, res operon, petI, petII, sqr, doxDA, cydAB, and cyoABCD	Zhang et al. (2020a, b)
		Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans	Proteins associated with inorganic sulphur compound (ISC) oxidation	Bellenberg et al. (2019)
		Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans	Fumarate nitrate reduction transcription factor (FNR)-like protein (FNR_{AF})	Osorio et al. (2019)
		Acidithiobacillus	Squalene–hopene cyclase (SHC) sequences	Jones et al. (2012)
		Picrophilus torridus	Potassium-transporting ATPases and other cation transporter	Fütterer et al. (2004)
		Ferroplasma Type II, *Leptospirillum* group II (*L. ferriphilum*)	Proton efflux systems (H^+ ATPases, antiporters, and symporters)	Tyson et al. (2004)
		Ferroplasma acidarmanus	Tetraether-linked membrane monolayers	Macalady et al. (2004)
5	Alkaliphiles	*Bacillus* sp. AK13	EPS production	Jung et al. (2020)
		Alcaligenes sp., *Dietzia* sp.	Biofilm formation	Rout et al. (2018)
		Alishewanella, Dietzia spp.	Biofilm formation	Charles et al. (2017)
		Cronobacter sakazakii	EPS production	Jain et al. (2012)

(continued)

Table. 3.1 (continued)

S. no	Type of extremophile	Microorganisms	Adaptation	Reference
		Vagococcus carniphilus MCM B-1018	EPS production	Joshi and Kanekar (2011)
		Bacillus pseudofirmus OF4	Plasmids, cardiolipin synthase genes, sodium-coupled Npt type phosphate transporters, toxin-antitoxin genes mazE mazF	Janto et al. (2011)
		Thioalkalimicrobium aerophilum strain AL 3^T, *Thioalkalivibrio versutus* strain ALJ 15	Accumulation of unsaturated fatty acids, cyclopropane fatty acids, organic compatible solutes, pigments	Banciu et al. (2005)
6	Piezophiles	*Salinimonas sediminis* N102T	tesA (acyl-CoA thioesterase I), tesB (acyl-CoA thioesterase II), and yciA (acyl-CoA thioesterase YciA); polyhydroxyalkanoates, rRNA operons	Xue et al. (2020)
		Colwellia	More basic and hydrophobic proteome, archaeal methyltransferase for tRNA modification, NADH ubiquinone oxidoreductase (nuo) gene cluster	Peoples et al. (2020)
		Shewanella benthica DB21MT-2	Toxin-antitoxin (TA) system	Zhang et al. (2019)
		Thermococcus barophilus	Mannosyl-glycerate (MG)	Cario et al. (2016)
		Thermococcus piezophilus $CDGS^T$	Synthesis of compatible solutes, several hydrogenase gene clusters (hydrogenases and sulfhydrogenases)	Dalmasso et al. (2016)
		Photobacterium profundum SS9	Monounsaturated fatty acid accumulation	Allen et al. (1999)
7	Radiophiles	*Deinococcus radiodurans*	Single-stranded binding proteins (DdrB and SSB)	Lockhart and DeVeaux (2013)
		Rubrobacter xylanophilus, *Rubrobacter radiotolerans*	High intracellular concentration of trehalose, Mn^{2+}	Webb and DiRuggiero (2012)

(continued)

Table. 3.1 (continued)

S. no	Type of extremophile	Microorganisms	Adaptation	Reference
		Deinococcus radiodurans	Nucleotide excision repair pathway (uvrA1B), base excision repair pathway (ung and mutY), homologous recombination pathway (recA, ruvA, ddrA, and pprA)	Makarova et al. (2001)
8	Xerophiles	*Helicobacter pylori*	Serine protease HtrA	Zarzecka et al. (2019)
		Actinopolyspora, Nocardiopsis, Saccharomonospora, Streptomonospora, Saccharopolyspora	Polyketide synthetases and non-ribosomal peptide synthetases (NRPS)	Meklat et al. (2011)
		Nostoc commune	Water stress proteins (WSP)	Gao and Ye (2007)
		Caulobacter crescentus	Chaperone systems (DnaK/DnaJ and GroES/GroEL)	Susin et al. (2006)

addition to extensive microbial decomposition and nutrient reuse potential, are also documented for microbial mat communities from ice layers of Antarctica and the Canadian High Arctic (Varin et al. 2012).

3.3 Thermophiles

The molecular mechanisms of microbial adaptations to temperature extremes were thoroughly investigated in comparison with other conditions. Enzymes denature at elevated temperatures, become inactive, and, thus, hinder the metabolic activities. Besides, increase in the membrane fluidity takes place disrupting the cell. The thermophilic microbes possess a wide range of cell modifications to avoid cell disruption. Thermophilic membrane lipids include more saturated fatty acids and straight-chain fatty acids than mesophilic organisms (15–40 °C) (Reed et al. 2013) (Fig. 3.1). These features allow thermophiles to sustain elevated temperatures and maintain membrane integrity. Improved stability of proteins isolated from thermophiles was attributed to their more basic nature and small size (Kumar and Nussinov 2001).

In addition, monovalent and divalent salts improve nucleic acid stability since they conceal the negative charges. DNA will be protected from depuration and hydrolysis by the presence of phosphate groups, KCl and $MgCl_2$ (Hickey and Singer 2004). Another way of stabilising DNA is by using DNA-binding proteins and by compression of whole genome into chromatin (Marguet and Forterre 1998). A

common mode of thermophilic microbes to protect their cell machinery at extreme temperatures is the adaptation of these proteins by modifying the primary structure amino acid composition, thus enhancing their thermal stability (Xu et al. 2018). Proteins of thermophiles have a greater proportion of short length amino acids as well as α-helices containing amino acid residues (Urbieta et al. 2015; Xu et al. 2018). Another main strategy is the presence of heat-shock proteins (HSPs), like DnaK, GroEL, and GroES chaperones in protein folding. In a recent study by Wang et al. (2019), stress-tolerant HSP genes from thermophiles *Geobacillus* and *Parageobacillus* were isolated which contributed to the increased heat and osmotic tolerance. In addition, DNA damage is effectively handled by DNA-repair systems (SOS system). They use fatty acids arranged in branched chains and polyamines (spermidine) to stabilize the membranes. Another adaptation employs the suitable solutes to stabilize cellular components (Urbieta et al. 2015). Furthermore, proteins from the glycolysis pathway (pyruvate dehydrogenase complex) supply instant energy to survive the high-temperature stress conditions (Wang et al. 2015) (Table 3.1).

Additional hydrogen bond networks, reduced surface loop length, enhanced secondary structure tendency, increased core hydrophobic nature, improved Van der Waals interactions, ionic exchanges, and better packing density, on the whole, contributed to thermal stability of protein (Brininger et al. 2018). More recently, it has been shown that cells of archaea use a structure stabilisation strategy along with aforementioned adaptations, whereas bacterial cells utilize a sequence stabilisation strategy (Berezovsky and Shakhnovich 2005). The lipid composition of the thermophilic membranes is yet another well-known adaptation. Some species have novel/specific lipids, such as *Thermotoga maritima* (15,16-dimethyl-30-glycerylox-triacontanedioic acid) (Siliakus et al. 2017). In archaea, ether-based lipids were found to be hydrolysis-resistant at high temperatures. In contrast, cells of archaeal thermophiles comprise a monolayer consisting of "fused lipid bilayer", which was shown to be resistant for hydrolysis at higher temperatures (DasSarma et al. 2009).

In thermophiles, DNA shows thermal resistance by inserting positive supertwists by reverse gyrase (Jamroze et al. 2014). In addition, an increase in GC base pairs has been shown to stabilize DNA in specific regions (stem-loops). Thermophilic archaea contain histones directly correlated to the eukaryotic core histones (H2A/B, H3, and H4). Binding of these histones was demonstrated to enhance DNA melting temperature (Stetter 1999). Besides, specific microbial adaptations to improve protein stability at extreme temperatures comprise a greater number of disulphide bridges, improved aromatic peptide interactions, and enhanced peptide hydrogen bonding (Maier and Neilson 2015).

3.4 Acidophiles

Acidic pH conditions are a threat to cellular biochemistry, as extreme low pH contributes to protein degradation. Acidophilic microbes preserve their proteins by adding additional amino acids with neutral side groups and aggressively pumping

protons out of the cell to preserve steady intracellular pH conditions (Baker-Austin and Dopson 2007). They possess a complex of cell modifications to control pH within the cell. Many exoenzymes are reported to be efficient at very low pH than the pH of cytoplasm which is isolated from acidophiles. In addition to these enzymes, other significant biomolecules like plasmids, rusticynin, and maltose-binding proteins were isolated from acidophiles.

Acidophiles have many distinguishing structural and functional features for pH control (Golyshina et al. 2000; Crossman et al. 2004). Although these species are able to live under extremely acidic conditions, they do not withstand this kind of circumstances within the cell since DNA turns uncertain; hence, they have established strategies for pumping acid out of the cell to keep neutral to weak acidic environment (pH 5–7) within the cell (Matin 1999). Furthermore, some records of several other species with acidic internal pH (Van de Vossenberg et al. 1998; Macalady et al. 2004). Other proton flux systems include primary proton pumps (symporter) and secondary proton pumps (e.g. antiporter cation/HC), as well as proton-consuming reactions. *Leptospirillum ferriphilum* was shown to contain a carbonic anhydrase and amino acid decarboxylases which assist in pH equilibrium by overwhelming protons (Christel et al. 2018). Next strategy is a reduced cell membrane permeability which suppresses the cytoplasmic proton entry. The entry of protons is constrained by KC ions produced within positive membrane potential (Christel et al. 2018). In *Leptospirillum ferriphilum,* a broad range of genes associated with biosynthesis of cell membrane has been identified that can be related with acid tolerance.

Adaptations comprise a cell membrane that is relatively proton-impermeable (Konings et al. 2002). Another mechanism is the reduced pore size of membrane channel which was demonstrated for *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* (Amaro et al. 1991). Acidophilic microbes comprise net positive charge within the cell which can offset the elevated H^+ ion concentration in their environment. They can use aggressive proton pumping, as reported in *Bacillus* and *Termoplasma* (Michels and Bakker 1985) (Fig. 3.1). Microbes should preserve a near-neutral cytoplasmic pH to allow cellular activities for their growth and metabolism (Krulwich et al. 2011; Jin and Kirk 2018). One of the first functions to evolve inside the earliest cells was possibly the balance of protons through various transporters, together with the ion-using ATP synthase (Lane and Martin 2012). Chemiosmosis is also a feature of both bacterial and archaeal cells (Lane et al. 2010).

Acidophiles may discharge organic metabolites like acetic acid and lactic acid in addition to intracellular pH, thereby modifying the nearby pH conditions (Zhang et al. 2016). Many of them consist of organic acid degradation pathways to avoid proton separation by organic acids (Baker-Austin and Dopson 2007). Archaeal members like *Ferroplasma acidiphilum* and *Sulfolobus solfataricus* were reported to contain tetrapetric lipids in the cell membrane which offer resistance to acidic pH. Advanced protein and DNA-repair systems were found in acidophiles compared to mesophiles. A pH shift from 3.5 to 1.5 externally persuades the proteins concerned with heat-shock reaction, for instance, chaperones were reported in *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* (Amaro et al. 1991).

In a study conducted by Guazzaroni et al. (2013), novel acid resistance genes from the metagenome of the Rio Tinto River were isolated including ClpXP protease, the transcriptional repressor LexA, and nucleic acid-binding proteins such as an RNA-binding protein, HU, and Dps (Table 3.1).

3.5 Alkaliphiles

Under alkaline conditions, H^+ concentrations are particularly low and cells experience trouble using ATP synthase to generate energy and precipitation of other essential ions like Mg^{2+} and Ca^{2+} from water as salts will take place (Krulwich et al. 1998). Alkaliphiles overcome these complexities by vigorously pumping in these ions and by transporting others to preserve neutral conditions. Besides, the cell wall of alkaliphiles serves as a protective shield to harsh climatic conditions (Horikoshi 2006) (Table 3.1). Alkaliphilic microbes have evolved a cell wall with negative charge, lowering the environmental pH external to the cell. They also synthesize an additional acid cell wall consisting of teichurono-peptide and teichuronic acid or polyglutamic acid. All these acids absorb H^+ and resist OH^- and probably assist in generating the proton motive force required to stimulate the synthesis of ATP. The proton motive force for ATP synthesis is driven by Na^+ or K^+ antiporters in several alkaliphilic *Bacillus* species, which catalyses an electrogenic swapping of external ions (Na^+ or K^+) and high number of entries into H^+ ions (Preiss et al. 2015). In general, alkaliphiles can use these antiporters (Na^+/H^+ and K^+/H^+) (Krulwich et al. 2011) and also generate acids to lower the inner pH when metabolism is impaired due to elevated pH levels (Moran-Reyna and Coker 2014). The transporters are regulated, possibly through a transmembrane pH sensor signalling (Krulwich 1995) (Fig. 3.1).

3.6 Halophiles

Increased salt concentrations usually deprive protein water content leading to accumulation and precipitation due to exposed hydrophobic patches binding to one another. To neutralize this, these microbes have formed a proteome consisting mostly of acidic proteins (Brininger et al. 2018), and the acid remnants (aspartic & glutamic acid) are usually located on the protein surface. They help in arranging the water molecules (H^+ of water interacts with COO^- of acidic side chain) surrounding proteins building a "water cage" which guards the proteins from dehydration and precipitation (DasSarma and DasSarma 2015; DasSarma et al. 2009).

Many halophiles retain increased concentrations of various solutes in their cytoplasm in response to the salt to maintain their interiors in osmotic equilibrium with the external world. *Halophilic archaea* maintains exceptionally high KCl in its cells (Oren 2002a, b). Halophilic proteins must be properly folded and operative in heavy salt concentrations considerably similar to the hyperthermophilic proteins which stay functional around 100 °C (Michael et al. 1999). Halophiles achieve the necessary

osmotic balance by accumulating KC in the cytoplasm as a "salt-in" strategy and combined action on bacteriorhodopsin and ATP synthase (Margesin and Schinner 2001). Other strategy observed was the exclusion of salts through the synthesis of suitable organic solutes like polyols, amino acids, sugars, and betaines. The "salt-in" strategy has only been established in a small number of halophilic microbes (e.g. *Salinibacter* and *Halanaerobiales*) that need KCl to form active proteins (Fig. 3.1). On the contrary, various halophiles using salt omission approach can withstand a variety of salt concentrations because of the synthesis of organic solutes to counteract the high salt content in the surroundings (Oren 2013). Many microorganisms need to adapt to low water activity in saline environments. It was established that freezing point of water can be considerably decreased by salts; however, solutions containing saturated salts show very low water activity. Apart from pH and salinity, water activity is the only variable that certain microbes are able to control using their metabolites capable of accumulating or captivating water (e.g. EPS proteins and polysaccharides) (Frösler et al. 2017).

Halobacillus halophilus, isolated from a salt marsh on the North Sea coast of Germany, can withstand high levels of salt content up to 3.0 M NaCl with an optimum survival rate of 38% (Roeßler and Müller 1998). *H. halophilus* adopts a hybrid osmoadaptation approach by collecting together molar chloride concentrations and suitable solutes (glutamate, glutamine, proline, ectoine, N-acetyl ornithine, and N-acetyl lysine) (Saum et al. 2013; Saum and Müller 2008). More recently, *Halomonas socia* strain CKY01 developed polyhydroxybutyrate (PHB) with genes responsible for the absorption, synthesis, and transportation of osmolytes such as betaine, choline, ectoine, carnitine, and proline as a strategy for survival (Park et al. 2020) (Table 3.1).

3.7 Xero-Tolerant Extremophiles and Oxidative Stress

Xerophiles are able to sustain in dry climatic conditions with water activity <0.75 (Connon et al. 2007; Lebre et al. 2017). Additional parameters like hot and cold temperatures, poor water activity, increased salt concentrations, poor organic carbon content, and extreme radiation, in addition to low rainfall, intensify xeric conditions, limiting existence of microbes (Dose et al. 2001; Crits-Christoph et al. 2013). Xerophiles have evolved few survival mechanisms in dry environments including environmental stress avoidance and adaptive mechanisms (Table 3.1). Avoidance of dry environment requires alteration of cells into non-replicative viable state by development of spores (Crits-Christoph et al. 2013). Adaptive strategies are related to the prevention of water loss and improved water preservation by amassing of osmoprotectants (trehalose, L-glutamate, glycine betaine), synthesis of EPS, cell membrane alterations to maintain intracellular water, DNA repair, and protein synthesis (Dose et al. 2001; Lebre et al. 2017) (Fig. 3.1). Under oxidative stress, proteins undergo conformational changes that contribute to the unfolding and aggregation of proteins. The key drivers of protein folding are DnaK and GroEL

chaperones along with other cochaperones that stabilize proteins by promoting adequate folding and preventing their self-association (Susin et al. 2006).

Desiccation tolerance is distinctive in the midst of other extreme conditions faced by microbes since the cells will not proliferate under desiccation and most of their lifespan might be used up in desiccated condition. Therefore, desiccation cycles tend to persuade survival mechanisms for the cells instead of the capability to survive under harsh conditions. As stated by Maier and Neilson (2015), well-established survival mechanisms consist of DNA protection and repair ability when exposed to UV radiation, maintaining protein stability during desiccation and preserving membrane integrity. The main survival strategy of cyanobacteria is the synthesis of EPS which controls water absorption and loss, acts as a matrix for the immobilisation of cell contents formed by cell in reaction to dehydration, and possibly shields cell walls during shrinking and swelling (Potts 1999). EPS facilitates the formation of biofilms and may be essential components of water loss prevention mechanism that seals the cell (Ortega-Morales et al. 2001). When exposed to desiccation and UV stress, the cell produces multiple molecules. They were also reported in EPS and contain UV captivating molecules such as mycosporine-like amino acids and scytonemin, carotenoids, and detoxifying enzymes or radical quenchers that defend against harsh radicals, oxygen species, and water stress proteins (WSP) (Gao and Ye 2007). WSP were found to be highly stable, and up to 70% of the soluble proteins are present in *Nostoc commune*. Additionally *N. commune* cells contain trehalose and sucrose, which are capable of stabilising proteins and maintain membrane integrity during desiccation (Maier and Neilson 2015). In pathogens like *Helicobacter pylori*, serine protease HtrA plays key role in survival under various stress conditions (thermal, osmotic and acidic) (Zarzecka et al. 2019) (Table 3.1).

3.8 Piezophiles

As the pressure increases, membranes lose fluidity and permeability since lipids arrange themselves more compactly and reach a thickening process similar to what occurs at extremely low temperatures (Bartlett 2002). Organisms avoid this problem by increasing the proportion of polyunsaturated and monounsaturated fatty acids or phosphatidylglycerol and phosphatidylcholine in their membranes, rather than phosphatidylethanolamine (Usui et al. 2012; Siliakus et al. 2017) (Table 3.1). Protein-protein interactions are responsive to high pressure leading to the dissociation of enzymes (Sharma et al. 2002). Pressure is known to modify gene expression (Nakasone et al. 1998). Further modifications may contain chaperone-encoding genes for upregulation, respiratory chain alteration, porin expression, and development of osmolytes (Oger and Jebbar 2010; Jebbar et al. 2015) (Fig. 3.1).

3.9 Radiophiles

When bacteria are exposed to perils of environmental stress as ionising (gamma) radiation and UV radiation, a series of signals were expected to trigger physiological responses. Ionising radiation is primarily accountable for double-stranded breaks in microbial genome. On the other hand, both proteins and lipids will also get damaged, and constant oxidative stress was induced upon exposure (Slade and Radman 2011). Consequently, ionising radioresistant microbes developed unique strategies like new and robust DNA repair mechanisms, antioxidant and enzymatic defence systems, and a condensed nucleoid. Rapid and effective genome repair is important for sustaining ionising radiation doses. This was demonstrated by the use of the nucleotide excision repair pathway (uvrA1B), base excision repair pathway (ung and mutY), and homologous recombination pathway (recA, ruvA, ddrA, and pprA) in *Deinococcus radiodurans* (Makarova et al. 2001). In *Halobacterium* sp. NRC-1 (genes close to Rfa) (Berquist et al. 2007) and *D. radiodurans* (DdrB and SSB) single-stranded binding proteins were reported (Cox et al. 2010; Lockhart and DeVeaux 2013; Pavlopoulou et al. 2016). The cells of *D. radiodurans* consist of many of the following mechanisms for preventing oxidative stress and resistance. The cell cleans up by removing oxidized macromolecules, selective protein defence versus oxidative injuries, and the inhibition of reactive oxygen output. It has also been shown that a condensed nucleoid facilitates the efficiency/accuracy of DNA repair (Minsky et al. 2006) and restricts the diffusion of radiation-generated DNA fragments (Daly et al. 2007).

UV radiation enhances reactive oxygen species (ROS) production, with two distinct outcomes. Initially, ROS acts as cell signals encouraging cells to defend themselves against these stressors (Caldwell et al. 2007), and later when ROS levels exceed the cell's defence mechanisms, significant cell damage and apoptosis may occur. Biofilm formation is one of the techniques formed by microorganisms to colonize areas with high levels of UV radiation. Biofilms are layers of planktonic bacteria attached to each other, forming an intricate, growing, three-dimensional structure at their surfaces. Bacteria need to communicate with each other (quorum sensing) to develop this three-dimensional colony, and polyP was proposed as the modulator of quorum sensing and development of biofilms. UV radiation subtly damages DNA through the formation of cyclobutene pyrimidine dimmers (thymine dimers) and pyrimidine-pyrimidone (6–4) photoproducts (6–4 PPs). They account for approximately 80% of photolesions induced by UV radiation (Jones and Baxter 2017) (Table 3.1).

Radiophiles generally exploit an amalgamation of photoreactivation (phr) genes, nucleotide excision repair (uvrABCD, xpf, and rad), base excision repair (mutY and nth), and homologous recombination (recA and radA/51) to restore these DNA lesions (Jones and Baxter 2017). In addition, microbes have developed a set of photoprotective strategies to defend themselves from continuous exposure to UV radiation. They incorporate carotenoids, gene duplication via polyploidy, genome composition hydroperoxidases and superoxide dismutases (Jones and Baxter 2017), effective DNA-repair machinery, chaperone induction, and dynamic protection

against oxidative stress induced by UV radiation (e.g. accumulation of glutathione) (Pérez et al. 2017). Radiation resistance has been correlated with the ability of these microorganisms to repair DNA damage, because it was reported that radiophiles aggregate elevated levels of intracellular Mn^{2+} and reduced Fe (Pikuta et al. 2007) bestowing UV radiation resistance (Paulino-Lima et al. 2016) (Fig. 3.1).

3.10 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

Life on Earth will continue to be found in a plethora of climatic conditions previously considered to be adamant from an anthropocentric viewpoint to sustain existence of life. Studying extreme environments and extremophile biology including their position will help in predicting and hypothesising theories about situations that prevailed in the course of origin and progression of life on the ground and throughout the world. In the midst of rapid innovations made over the past few decades and latest developments in "omics" tools, extremophilic world has been thoroughly investigated, and our understanding of biosphere was evolved, extending the limits of life on Earth. Extremophiles take part in many important tasks in the environment. Their robust nature to resist, sustain, and mediate catalysts under harsh environmental conditions not only make them exceptional but also promising for environmental conservation. Extremophiles like deep-sea microorganisms contribute greatly to the atmospheric geochemical cycles. They preserve the chemical equilibrium in the environment, help to lessen the greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the atmosphere, and detoxify the hazardous chemicals in the environment. Next-generation sequencing (NGS) and next-generation proteomics (NGPs) provide important strategies for gaining insight into the molecular processes concerned with extremophilic strategies for survival (Armengaud 2016). This kind of research and methodologies may illustrate the strategies that microorganisms use to acclimatize to harsh climatic conditions and are constructive in understanding the microbial evolution with respect to extreme environments.

Acknowledgements The authors thank Krishna University Machilipatnam and St. Joseph's College for Women, Visakhapatnam, and for the constant support during the work.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare that there is no conflict of interest.

References

Allen EE, Facciotti D, Bartlett DH (1999) Monounsaturated but not polyunsaturated fatty acids are required for growth of the deep-sea bacterium *Photobacterium profundum* SS9 at high pressure and low temperature. Appl Environ Microbiol 65(4):1710–1720

Amaro AM, Chamorro D, Seeger M, Arredondo R, Peirano I, Jerez CA (1991) Effect of external pH perturbations on in vivo protein synthesis by the acidophilic bacterium *Thiobacillus ferrooxidans*. J Bacteriol 173(2):910–915

Armengaud J (2016) Next-generation proteomics faces new challenges in environmental biotechnology. Curr Opin Biotechnol 38:174–182

Atomi H, Reeve J (2019) Microbe profile: *Thermococcus kodakarensis*: the model hyperthermophilic archaeon. Microbiology 165(11):1166

Baker-Austin C, Dopson M (2007) Life in acid: pH homeostasis in acidophiles. Trends Microbiol 15(4):165–171

Banciu H, Sorokin DY, Rijpstra WIC, Sinninghe Damste JS, Galinski EA, Takaichi S et al (2005) Fatty acid, compatible solute and pigment composition of obligately chemolithoautotrophic alkaliphilic sulfur-oxidizing bacteria from soda lakes. FEMS Microbiol Lett 243(1):181–187

Bartlett DH (2002) Pressure effects on in vivo microbial processes. Biochim Biophys Acta 1595(1–2):367–381

Bellenberg S, Huynh D, Poetsch A, Sand W, Vera M (2019) Proteomics reveal enhanced oxidative stress responses and metabolic adaptation in *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* biofilm cells on pyrite. Front Microbiol 10:592

Berezovsky IN, Shakhnovich EI (2005) Physics and evolution of thermophilic adaptation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102(36):12742–12747

Berquist BR, DasSarma P, DasSarma S (2007) Essential and non-essential DNA replication genes in the model halophilic Archaeon, *Halobacterium* sp. NRC-1. BMC Genet 8(1):31

Birien T, Thiel A, Henneke G, Flament D, Moalic Y, Jebbar M (2018) Development of an effective 6-methylpurine counterselection marker for genetic manipulation in *Thermococcus barophilus*. Genes 9(2):77

Brininger C, Spradlin S, Cobani L, Evilia C (2018, December) The more adaptive to change, the more likely you are to survive: protein adaptation in extremophiles. In: Seminars in cell & developmental biology, vol 84. Academic Press, pp 158–169

Caldwell MM, Bornman JF, Ballaré CL, Flint SD, Kulandaivelu G (2007) Terrestrial ecosystems, increased solar ultraviolet radiation, and interactions with other climate change factors. Photochem Photobiol Sci 6(3):252–266

Cario A, Jebbar M, Thiel A, Kervarec N, Oger PM (2016) Molecular chaperone accumulation as a function of stress evidences adaptation to high hydrostatic pressure in the piezophilic archaeon *Thermococcus barophilus*. Sci Rep 6(1):1–8

Caruso C, Rizzo C, Mangano S, Poli A, Di Donato P, Nicolaus B et al (2018) Extracellular polymeric substances with metal adsorption capacity produced by *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. MER144 from Antarctic seawater. Environ Sci Pollut Res 25(5):4667–4677

Casanueva A, Tuffin M, Cary C, Cowan DA (2010) Molecular adaptations to psychrophily: the impact of 'omic' technologies. Trends Microbiol 18(8):374–381

Casillo A, Ståhle J, Parrilli E, Sannino F, Mitchell DE, Pieretti G et al (2017) Structural characterization of an all-aminosugar-containing capsular polysaccharide from *Colwellia psychrerythraea* 34H. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 110(11):1377–1387

Cavicchioli R (2006) Cold-adapted archaea. Nat Rev Microbiol 4(5):331–343

Charles CJ, Rout SP, Patel KA, Akbar S, Laws AP, Jackson BR et al (2017) Floc formation reduces the pH stress experienced by microorganisms living in alkaline environments. Appl Environ Microbiol 83(6):e02985-16

Chen DD, Tian Y, Jiao JY, Zhang XT, Zhang YG, Dong ZY et al (2020a) Comparative genomics analysis of *Nitriliruptoria* reveals the genomic differences and salt adaptation strategies. Extremophiles 24(2):249–264

Chen XK, Li XY, Ha YF, Lin JQ, Liu XM, Pang X et al (2020b) Ferric uptake regulator provides a new strategy for acidophile adaptation to acidic ecosystems. Appl Environ Microbiol 86(11)

Chikkanna A, Ghosh D, Kishore A (2018) Expression and characterization of a potential exopolysaccharide from a newly isolated halophilic thermotolerant bacteria *Halomonas nitroreducens* strain WB1. PeerJ 6:e4684

Ching XJ, Teoh CP, Dexter JH, González-Aravena M, Najimudin N, Cheah YK et al (2020) Genome of a thermophilic bacterium *Geobacillus* sp. TFV3 from Deception Island, Antarctica. Adv Polar Sci 146–152

Christel S, Herold M, Bellenberg S, El Hajjami M, Buetti-Dinh A, Pivkin IV et al (2018) Multi-omics reveals the lifestyle of the acidophilic, mineral-oxidizing model species *Leptospirillum ferriphilum* T. Appl Environ Microbiol 84(3)

Cihan AC, Karaca B, Ozel BP, Kilic T (2017) Determination of the biofilm production capacities and characteristics of members belonging to *Bacillaceae* family. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 33(6):118

Connon SA, Lester ED, Shafaat HS, Obenhuber DC, Ponce A (2007) Bacterial diversity in hyperarid Atacama Desert soils. J Geophys Res Biogeo 112(G4)

Cox MM, Keck JL, Battista JR (2010) Rising from the ashes: DNA repair in *Deinococcus radiodurans*. PLoS Genet 6(1):e1000815

Crits-Christoph A, Robinson CK, Barnum T, Fricke WF, Davila AF, Jedynak B et al (2013) Colonization patterns of soil microbial communities in the Atacama Desert. Microbiome 1(1): 1–13

Crossman L, Holden M, Pain A, Parkhill J (2004) Genomes beyond compare. Nat Rev Microbiol 2(8):616–618

D'Amico S, Collins T, Marx JC, Feller G, Gerday C, Gerday C (2006) Psychrophilic microorganisms: challenges for life. EMBO Rep 7(4):385–389

Dalmasso C, Oger P, Courtine D, Georges M, Takai K, Maignien L, Alain K (2016) Complete genome sequence of the hyperthermophilic and piezophilic archeon *Thermococcus piezophilus* $CDGS^T$, able to grow under extreme hydrostatic pressures. Genome Announc 4(4)

Daly MJ, Gaidamakova EK, Matrosova VY, Vasilenko A, Zhai M, Leapman RD et al (2007) Protein oxidation implicated as the primary determinant of bacterial radioresistance. PLoS Biol 5(4):e92

DasSarma S, DasSarma P (2015) Halophiles and their enzymes: negativity put to good use. Curr Opin Microbiol 25:120–126

DasSarma S, Coker JA, DasSarma P (2009) Archaea. In: Encyclopedia of microbiology. Oxford Academic Press, Oxford, pp 1–23

De Maayer P, Anderson D, Cary C, Cowan DA (2014) Some like it cold: understanding the survival strategies of psychrophiles. EMBO Rep 15(5):508–517

Do H, Lee JH, Lee SG, Kim HJ (2012) Crystallization and preliminary X-ray crystallographic analysis of an ice-binding protein (FfIBP) from *Flavobacterium frigoris* PS1. Acta Crystallogr Sect F: Struct Biol Cryst Commun 68(7):806–809

Doronina NV, Trotsenko YA, Tourova TP (2000) *Methylarcula marina* gen. nov., sp. nov. and *Methylarcula terricola* sp. nov.: novel aerobic, moderately halophilic, facultatively methylotrophic bacteria from coastal saline environments. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 50(5): 1849–1859

Dose K, Bieger-Dose A, Ernst B, Feister U, Gómez-Silva B, Klein A et al (2001) Survival of microorganisms under the extreme conditions of the Atacama Desert. Orig Life Evol Biosph 31(3):287–303

Duman JG, Olsen TM (1993) Thermal hysteresis protein activity in bacteria, fungi, and phylogenetically diverse plants. Cryobiology 30(3):322–328

Falb M, Pfeiffer F, Palm P, Rodewald K, Hickmann V, Tittor J, Oesterhelt D (2005) Living with two extremes: conclusions from the genome sequence of *Natronomonas pharaonis*. Genome Res 15(10):1336–1343

Feller G, Gerday C (2003) Psychrophilic enzymes: hot topics in cold adaptation. Nat Rev Microbiol 1(3):200–208

Frösler J, Panitz C, Wingender J, Flemming HC, Rettberg P (2017) Survival of *Deinococcus geothermalis* in biofilms under desiccation and simulated space and Martian conditions. Astrobiology 17(5):431–447

Fütterer O, Angelov A, Liesegang H, Gottschalk G, Schleper C, Schepers B et al (2004) Genome sequence of *Picrophilus torridus* and its implications for life around pH 0. Proc Natl Acad Sci 101(24):9091–9096

Galinski EA, Trüper HG (1982) Betaine, a compatible solute in the extremely halophilic phototrophic bacterium *Ectothiorhodospira halochloris*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 13(4):357–360
Gao K, Ye C (2007) Photosynthetic insensitivity of the terrestrial cyanobacterium *Nostoc flagelliforme* to solar UV radiation while rehydrated or desiccated. J Phycol 43(4):628–635
Gao X, Liu W, Mei J, Xie J (2019) Quantitative analysis of cold stress inducing lipidomic changes in *Shewanella putrefaciens* using UHPLC-ESI-MS/MS. Molecules 24(24):4609
Gilbert JA, Hill PJ, Dodd CE, Laybourn-Parry J (2004) Demonstration of antifreeze protein activity in Antarctic lake bacteria. Microbiology 150(1):171–180
Godin-Roulling A, Schmidpeter PA, Schmid FX, Feller G (2015) Functional adaptations of the bacterial chaperone trigger factor to extreme environmental temperatures. Environ Microbiol 17(7):2407–2420
Golyshina OV, Pivovarova TA, Karavaiko GI, Kondratéva TF, Moore ER, Abraham WR et al (2000) *Ferroplasma acidiphilum* gen. nov., sp. nov., an acidophilic, autotrophic, ferrous-iron-oxidizing, cell-wall-lacking, mesophilic member of the *Ferroplasmaceae* fam. nov., comprising a distinct lineage of the Archaea. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 50(3):997–1006
Guazzaroni ME, Morgante V, Mirete S, González-Pastor JE (2013) Novel acid resistance genes from the metagenome of the Tinto River, an extremely acidic environment. Environ Microbiol 15(4):1088–1102
Hartman AL, Norais C, Badger JH, Delmas S, Haldenby S, Madupu R et al (2010) The complete genome sequence of *Haloferax volcanii* DS2, a model archaeon. PLoS One 5(3):e9605
Hickey DA, Singer GA (2004) Genomic and proteomic adaptations to growth at high temperature. Genome Biol 5(10):1–7
Horikoshi K (2006) Alkaliphiles: genetic properties and applications of enzymes. Springer, Berlin
Jain RM, Mody K, Mishra A, Jha B (2012) Isolation and structural characterization of biosurfactant produced by an alkaliphilic bacterium Cronobacter sakazakii isolated from oil contaminated wastewater. Carbohydr Polym 87(3):2320–2326
Jamroze A, Perugino G, Valenti A, Rashid N, Rossi M, Akhtar M, Ciaramella M (2014) The reverse gyrase from *Pyrobaculum calidifontis*, a novel extremely thermophilic DNA topoisomerase endowed with DNA unwinding and annealing activities. J Biol Chem 289(6):3231–3243
Janto B, Ahmed A, Ito M, Liu J, Hicks DB, Pagni S et al (2011) Genome of alkaliphilic *Bacillus pseudofirmus* OF4 reveals adaptations that support the ability to grow in an external pH range from 7.5 to 11.4. Environ Microbiol 13(12):3289–3309
Jebbar M, Franzetti B, Girard E, Oger P (2015) Microbial diversity and adaptation to high hydrostatic pressure in deep-sea hydrothermal vents prokaryotes. Extremophiles 19(4):721–740
Jin Q, Kirk MF (2018) pH as a primary control in environmental microbiology: 1. Thermodynamic perspective. Front Environ Sci 6:21
Jones DL, Baxter BK (2017) DNA repair and photoprotection: mechanisms of overcoming environmental ultraviolet radiation exposure in halophilic archaea. Front Microbiol 8:1882
Jones DS, Albrecht HL, Dawson KS, Schaperdoth I, Freeman KH, Pi Y et al (2012) Community genomic analysis of an extremely acidophilic sulfur-oxidizing biofilm. ISME J 6(1):158–170
Joshi AA, Kanekar PP (2011) Production of exopolysaccharide by Vagococcus carniphilus MCM B-1018 isolated from alkaline Lonar Lake, India. Ann Microbiol 61(4):733–740
Joulak I, Finore I, Poli A, Abid Y, Bkhairia I, Nicolaus B et al (2020) Hetero-exopolysaccharide from the extremely halophilic *Halomonas smyrnensis* K2: production, characterization and functional properties in vitro. 3 Biotech 10(9):1–12
Jung Y, Kim W, Kim W, Park W (2020) Complete genome and calcium carbonate precipitation of alkaliphilic Bacillus sp. AK13 for self-healing concrete :404–416
Kandror O, DeLeon A, Goldberg AL (2002) Trehalose synthesis is induced upon exposure of Escherichia coli to cold and is essential for viability at low temperatures. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99(15):9727–9732
Kawahara H (2002) The structures and functions of ice crystal-controlling proteins from bacteria. J Biosci Bioeng 94(6):492–496

Kawahara H (2008) Cryoprotectants and ice-binding proteins. In: Psychrophiles: from biodiversity to biotechnology. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 229–246
Kawahara H, Nakano Y, Omiya K, Muryoi N, Nishikawa J, Obata H (2004) Production of two types of ice crystal-controlling proteins in Antarctic bacterium. J Biosci Bioeng 98(3):220–223
Koerdt A, Gödeke J, Berger J, Thormann KM, Albers SV (2010) Crenarchaeal biofilm formation under extreme conditions. PLoS One 5(11):e14104
Konings WN, Albers SV, Koning S, Driessen AJ (2002) The cell membrane plays a crucial role in survival of bacteria and archaea in extreme environments. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81(1–4): 61–72
Krulwich TA (1995) Alkaliphiles: 'basic'molecular problems of pH tolerance and bioenergetics. Mol Microbiol 15(3):403–410
Krulwich TA, Ito M, Hicks DB, Gilmour R, Guffanti AA (1998) pH homeostasis and ATP synthesis: studies of two processes that necessitate inward proton translocation in extremely alkaliphilic *Bacillus* species. Extremophiles 2(3):217–222
Krulwich TA, Sachs G, Padan E (2011) Molecular aspects of bacterial pH sensing and homeostasis. Nat Rev Microbiol 9(5):330–343
Kumar S, Nussinov R (2001) How do thermophilic proteins deal with heat? Cell Mol Life Sci CMLS 58(9):1216–1233
Lane N, Martin WF (2012) The origin of membrane bioenergetics. Cell 151(7):1406–1416
Lane N, Allen JF, Martin W (2010) How did LUCA make a living? Chemiosmosis in the origin of life. BioEssays 32(4):271–280
Lebre PH, De Maayer P, Cowan DA (2017) Xerotolerant bacteria: surviving through a dry spell. Nat Rev Microbiol 15(5):285–296
Li Q, Yan Q, Chen J, He Y, Wang J, Zhang H et al (2012) Molecular characterization of an ice nucleation protein variant (inaQ) from *Pseudomonas syringae* and the analysis of its transmembrane transport activity in *Escherichia coli*. Int J Biol Sci 8(8):1097
Liao Y, Williams TJ, Walsh JC, Ji M, Poljak A, Curmi PMG et al (2016) Developing a genetic manipulation system for the Antarctic archaeon, *Halorubrum lacusprofundi*: investigating acetamidase gene function. Sci Rep 6:34639
Lockhart JS, DeVeaux LC (2013) The essential role of the *Deinococcus radiodurans* ssb gene in cell survival and radiation tolerance. PLoS One 8(8):e71651
Macalady JL, Vestling MM, Baumler D, Boekelheide N, Kaspar CW, Banfield JF (2004) Tetraether-linked membrane monolayers in *Ferroplasma* spp: a key to survival in acid. Extremophiles 8(5):411–419
Maier RM, Neilson JW (2015) Extreme environments. In: Environmental microbiology. Academic Press, pp 139–153
Makarova KS, Aravind L, Wolf YI, Tatusov RL, Minton KW, Koonin EV, Daly MJ (2001) Genome of the extremely radiation-resistant bacterium *Deinococcus radiodurans* viewed from the perspective of comparative genomics. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 65(1):44–79
Margesin R, Schinner F (2001) Bioremediation (natural attenuation and biostimulation) of diesel-oil-contaminated soil in an alpine glacier skiing area. Appl Environ Microbiol 67(7):3127–3133
Marguet E, Forterre P (1998) Protection of DNA by salts against thermodegradation at temperatures typical for hyperthermophiles. Extremophiles 2(2):115–122
Math RK, Jin HM, Kim JM, Hahn Y, Park W, Madsen EL, Jeon CO (2012) Comparative genomics reveals adaptation by *Alteromonas* sp. SN2 to marine tidal-flat conditions: cold tolerance and aromatic hydrocarbon metabolism. PLoS One 7(4):e35784
Matin A (1999) pH homeostasis in acidophiles. In: Novartis Foundation symposium, vol 221. Wiley, pp 152–166
Meklat A, Sabaou N, Zitouni A, Mathieu F, Lebrihi A (2011) Isolation, taxonomy, and antagonistic properties of halophilic actinomycetes in Saharan soils of Algeria. Appl Environ Microbiol 77(18):6710–6714
Michael T, Madigan M, Orent A (1999) Thermophilic and halophilic extremophiles. Curr Opin Microbiol 2(3):265–269

Michels M, Bakker EP (1985) Generation of a large, protonophore-sensitive proton motive force and pH difference in the acidophilic bacteria *Thermoplasma acidophilum* and *Bacillus acidocaldarius*. J Bacteriol 161(1):231–237

Miller MB, Bassler BL (2001) Quorum sensing in bacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 55(1):165–199

Minsky A, Shimoni E, Englander J (2006) Ring-like nucleoids and DNA repair through error-free nonhomologous end joining in *Deinococcus radiodurans*. J Bacteriol 188(17):6047–6051

Miyazaki K, Tomariguchi N (2019) Occurrence of randomly recombined functional 16S rRNA genes in *Thermus thermophilus* suggests genetic interoperability and promiscuity of bacterial 16S rRNAs. Sci Rep 9(1):1–10

Moran-Reyna A, Coker JA (2014) The effects of extremes of pH on the growth and transcriptomic profiles of three haloarchaea. F1000Research 3

Muñoz PA, Márquez SL, González-Nilo FD, Márquez-Miranda V, Blamey JM (2017) Structure and application of antifreeze proteins from Antarctic bacteria. Microb Cell Factories 16(1):138

Muryoi N, Sato M, Kaneko S, Kawahara H, Obata H, Yaish MW et al (2004) Cloning and expression of afpA, a gene encoding an antifreeze protein from the arctic plant growth-promoting rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas putida* GR12-2. J Bacteriol 186(17):5661–5671

Nakasone K, Ikegami A, Kato C, Usami R, Horikoshi K (1998) Mechanisms of gene expression controlled by pressure in deep-sea microorganisms. Extremophiles 2(3):149–154

Oger PM, Jebbar M (2010) The many ways of coping with pressure. Res Microbiol 161(10): 799–809

Oliveira GBD, Favarin L, Luchese RH, McIntosh D (2015) Psychrotrophic bacteria in milk: how much do we really know? Braz J Microbiol 46(2):313–321

Oren A (2002a) Adaptation of halophilic archaea to life at high salt concentrations. In: Salinity: environment-plants-molecules. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 81–96

Oren A (2002b) Molecular ecology of extremely halophilic archaea and bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 39:1–7

Oren A (2013) Life at high salt concentrations, intracellular KCl concentrations, and acidic proteomes. Front Microbiol 4:315

Ortega-Morales BO, López-Cortés A, Hernandez-Duque G, Crassous P, Guezennec J (2001) [27] Extracellular polymers of microbial communities colonizing ancient limestone monuments. In: Methods in enzymology, vol 336. Academic Press, pp 331–339

Osorio H, Mettert EL, Kiley P, Dopson M, Jedlicki E, Holmes DS (2019) Identification and unusual properties of the master regulator FNR in the extreme Acidophile *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans*. Front Microbiol 10:1642

Panosyan H, Di Donato P, Poli A, Nicolaus B (2018) Production and characterization of exopolysaccharides by *Geobacillus thermodenitrificans* ArzA-6 and *Geobacillus toebii* ArzA-8 strains isolated from an Armenian geothermal spring. Extremophiles 22(5):725–737

Park YL, Choi TR, Han YH, Song HS, Park JY, Bhatia SK et al (2020) Effects of osmolytes on salt resistance of *Halomonas socia* CKY01 and identification of osmolytes-related genes by genome sequencing. J Biotechnol 322:21–28

Parrilli E, Tedesco P, Fondi M, Tutino ML, Giudice AL, de Pascale D, Fani R (2019) The art of adapting to extreme environments: the model system *Pseudoalteromonas*. Phys Life Rev. 36: 137–161

Paulino-Lima IG, Fujishima K, Navarrete JU, Galante D, Rodrigues F, Azua-Bustos A, Rothschild LJ (2016) Extremely high UV-C radiation resistant microorganisms from desert environments with different manganese concentrations. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 163:327–336

Pavlopoulou A, Savva GD, Louka M, Bagos PG, Vorgias CE, Michalopoulos I, Georgakilas AG (2016) Unraveling the mechanisms of extreme radioresistance in prokaryotes: lessons from nature. Mutat Res Rev Mutat Res 767:92–107

Peoples LM, Kyaw TS, Ugalde JU, Mullane KK, Chastain RA, Yayanos AA et al (2020) Distinctive gene and protein characteristics of extremely piezophilic *Colwellia*. bioRxiv

Pérez V, Hengst M, Kurte L, Dorador C, Jeffrey WH, Wattiez R et al (2017) Bacterial survival under extreme UV radiation: a comparative proteomics study of *Rhodobacter* sp., isolated from high altitude wetlands in Chile. Front Microbiol 8:1173

Pérez-Rodríguez I, Bolognini M, Ricci J, Bini E, Vetriani C (2015) From deep-sea volcanoes to human pathogens: a conserved quorum-sensing signal in *Epsilonproteobacteria*. ISME J 9(5): 1222–1234

Pikuta EV, Hoover RB, Tang J (2007) Microbial extremophiles at the limits of life. Crit Rev Microbiol 33(3):183–209

Potts M (1999) Mechanisms of desiccation tolerance in cyanobacteria. Eur J Phycol 34(4):319–328

Preiss L, Hicks DB, Suzuki S, Meier T, Krulwich TA (2015) Alkaliphilic bacteria with impact on industrial applications, concepts of early life forms, and bioenergetics of ATP synthesis. Front Bioeng Biotechnol 3:75

Quehenberger J, Shen L, Albers SV, Siebers B, Spadiut O (2017) Sulfolobus—a potential key organism in future biotechnology. Front Microbiol 8:2474

Rampelotto PH (2013) Extremophiles and extreme environments. Life 3:482–485

Raymond JA, Fritsen C, Shen K (2007) An ice-binding protein from an Antarctic sea ice bacterium. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 61(2):214–221

Reed CJ, Lewis H, Trejo E, Winston V, Evilia C (2013) Protein adaptations in archaeal extremophiles. Archaea 2013

Roeßler M, Müller V (1998) Quantitative and physiological analyses of chloride dependence of growth of *Halobacillus halophilus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 64(10):3813–3817

Rong JC, Liu Y, Yu S, Xi L, Chi NY, Zhang QF (2020) Complete genome sequence of *Paenisporosarcina antarctica* CGMCC 1.6503 T, a marine psychrophilic bacterium isolated from Antarctica. Mar Genomics 49:100690

Rothschild LJ, Mancinelli RL (2001) Life in extreme environments. Nature 409(6823):1092–1101

Rout SP, Payne L, Walker S, Scott T, Heard P, Eccles H et al (2018) The impact of alkaliphilic biofilm formation on the release and retention of carbon isotopes from nuclear reactor graphite. Sci Rep 8(1):1–9

Saum SH, Müller V (2008) Regulation of osmoadaptation in the moderate halophile *Halobacillus halophilus*: chloride, glutamate and switching osmolyte strategies. Saline Syst 4(1):1–15

Saum SH, Pfeiffer F, Palm P, Rampp M, Schuster SC, Müller V, Oesterhelt D (2013) Chloride and organic osmolytes: a hybrid strategy to cope with elevated salinities by the moderately halophilic, chloride-dependent bacterium *Halobacillus halophilus*. Environ Microbiol 15(5): 1619–1633

Sharma A, Scott JH, Cody GD, Fogel ML, Hazen RM, Hemley RJ, Huntress WT (2002) Microbial activity at gigapascal pressures. Science 295(5559):1514–1516

Siliakus MF, van der Oost J, Kengen SWM (2017) Adaptations of archaeal and bacterial membranes to variations in temperature, pH and pressure. Extremophiles 21(4):651–670

Slade D, Radman M (2011) Oxidative stress resistance in *Deinococcus radiodurans*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 75(1):133–191

Srikumar S, Cao Y, Yan Q, Van Hoorde K, Nguyen S, Cooney S et al (2019) RNA sequencing-based transcriptional overview of xerotolerance in *Cronobacter sakazakii* SP291. Appl Environ Microbiol 85(3)

Stetter KO (1999) Extremophiles and their adaptation to hot environments. FEBS Lett 452(1–2): 22–25

Susin MF, Baldini RL, Gueiros-Filho F, Gomes SL (2006) GroES/GroEL and DnaK/DnaJ have distinct roles in stress responses and during cell cycle progression in *Caulobacter crescentus*. J Bacteriol 188(23):8044–8053

Ting L, Williams TJ, Cowley MJ, Lauro FM, Guilhaus M, Raftery MJ, Cavicchioli R (2010) Cold adaptation in the marine bacterium, *Sphingopyxis alaskensis*, assessed using quantitative proteomics. Environ Microbiol 12(10):2658–2676

Tyson GW, Chapman J, Hugenholtz P, Allen EE, Ram RJ, Richardson PM et al (2004) Community structure and metabolism through reconstruction of microbial genomes from the environment. Nature 428(6978):37–43

Urbieta MS, Donati ER, Chan KG, Shahar S, Sin LL, Goh KM (2015) Thermophiles in the genomic era: biodiversity, science, and applications. Biotechnol Adv 33(6):633–647

Usui K, Hiraki T, Kawamoto J, Kurihara T, Nogi Y, Kato C, Abe F (2012) Eicosapentaenoic acid plays a role in stabilizing dynamic membrane structure in the deep-sea piezophile *Shewanella violacea*: a study employing high-pressure time-resolved fluorescence anisotropy measurement. Biochim Biophys Acta 1818(3):574–583

Van de Vossenberg JL, Driessen AJ, Zillig W, Konings WN (1998) Bioenergetics and cytoplasmic membrane stability of the extremely acidophilic, thermophilic archaeon *Picrophilus oshimae*. Extremophiles 2(2):67–74

Van-Thuoc D, Hashim SO, Hatti-Kaul R, Mamo G (2013) Ectoine-mediated protection of enzyme from the effect of pH and temperature stress: a study using *Bacillus halodurans* xylanase as a model. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97(14):6271–6278

Varin T, Lovejoy C, Jungblut AD, Vincent WF, Corbeil J (2012) Metagenomic analysis of stress genes in microbial mat communities from Antarctica and the high Arctic. Appl Environ Microbiol 78(2):549–559

Vásquez-Ponce F, Higuera-Llantén S, Pavlov MS, Ramírez-Orellana R, Marshall SH, Olivares-Pacheco J (2017) Alginate overproduction and biofilm formation by psychrotolerant *Pseudomonas mandelii* depend on temperature in Antarctic marine sediments. Electron J Biotechnol 28:27–34

Wang L, Cheng G, Ren Y, Dai Z, Zhao ZS, Liu F, Li S, Wei Y, Xiong J, Tang XF, Tang B (2015) Degradation of intact chicken feathers by *Thermoactinomyces* sp. CDF and characterization of its keratinolytic protease. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 99(9):3949–3959

Wang J, Wang W, Wang H, Yuan F, Xu Z, Yang K et al (2019) Improvement of stress tolerance and riboflavin production of *Bacillus subtilis* by introduction of heat shock proteins from thermophilic bacillus strains. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 103(11):4455–4465

Webb KM, DiRuggiero J (2012) Role of Mn^{2+} and compatible solutes in the radiation resistance of thermophilic bacteria and archaea. Archaea 2012

Wilson SL, Kelley DL, Walker VK (2006) Ice-active characteristics of soil bacteria selected by ice-affinity. Environ Microbiol 8(10):1816–1824

Xu L, Wu YH, Zhou P, Cheng H, Liu Q, Xu XW (2018) Investigation of the thermophilic mechanism in the genus *Porphyrobacter* by comparative genomic analysis. BMC Genomics 19(1):385

Xue J, Fang J, Zhang H, Wei Y, Wang L, Liu R, Cao J (2020) Complete genome sequence of a piezophilic bacterium *Salinimonas sediminis* N102T, isolated from deep-sea sediment of the New Britain Trench. Mar Genomics 56:100807

Zarzecka U, Harrer A, Zawilak-Pawlik A, Skorko-Glonek J, Backert S (2019) Chaperone activity of serine protease HtrA of Helicobacter pylori as a crucial survival factor under stress conditions. Cell Commun Signal 17(1):1–18

Zhang L, Su F, Kong X, Lee F, Day K, Gao W et al (2016) Ratiometric fluorescent pH-sensitive polymers for high-throughput monitoring of extracellular pH. RSC Adv 6(52):46134–46142

Zhang WJ, Cui XH, Chen LH, Yang J, Li XG, Zhang C et al (2019) Complete genome sequence of *Shewanella benthica* DB21MT-2, an obligate piezophilic bacterium isolated from the deepest Mariana Trench sediment. Mar Genomics 44:52–56

Zhang Y, Qiu D, Liao Z, Zhao B (2020a) Draft genome sequence of *Alkalicoccus halolimnae* BZ-SZ-XJ29^T, a moderately halophilic bacterium isolated from a salt Lake. Microbiol Resour Announc 9(27)

Zhang Y, Zhang S, Zhao D, Ni Y, Wang W, Yan L (2020b) Complete genome sequence of *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* YNTRS-40, a strain of the ferrous iron-and sulfur-oxidizing acidophile. Microorganisms 8(1):2

Zhao S, Cao F, Zhang H, Zhang L, Zhang F, Liang X (2014) Structural characterization and biosorption of exopolysaccharides from *Anoxybacillus* sp. R4-33 isolated from radioactive radon hot spring. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 172(5):2732–2746

Mangrove Microbiomes: Biodiversity, Ecological Significance, and Potential Role in the Amelioration of Metal Stress

4

Chanda V. Berde, Asha Giriyan, Vikrant B. Berde, and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

Abstract

The mangrove ecosystem through a rich productive ecosystem with a great diversity of flora and fauna both macro and micro is under the threat of severe pollution stress due to anthropogenic interference. Continuous input of pollutants is a major threat to this ecosystem affecting the indigenous microbial community playing a major role in the biogeochemical reactions and contributing to the richness of the biome. Being exposed to inputs from riverine sources which in turn receive huge amounts of pollutants in the form of industrial effluent discharge, agricultural runoff, domestic waste, sewage, etc., the major components in these discharges are pesticides, excessive inorganic compounds, high organic content, and metals. These pollutants especially the heavy metals tend to sink, have low solubility in water, and accumulate in the mangrove sediments, which act as the sinks for the heavy metals. Sediment contamination thus ultimately diminishes the mangrove ecosystem. Exposure to the pollutants especially heavy

Chanda V. Berde, Asha Giriyan, Vikrant B. Berde and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari contributed equally with all other contributors.

C. V. Berde (✉)
Marine Microbiology, School of Earth, Ocean and Atmospheric Sciences (SEOAS), Goa University, Taleigao Plateau, Goa, India
e-mail: chanda.berde@unigoa.ac.in

A. Giriyan
Coastal Ecology and Marine Resource Center, The Energy and Resource Institute (TERI), Tiswadi, Goa, India

V. B. Berde
Department of Zoology, Arts, Commerce and Science College, Lanja, Maharashtra, India

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_4

metals results in changes in the microbial communities with the prevalence of metal-tolerant species. This chapter uncovers the ecological aspects of mangrove sediments focusing on the metal-tolerant microbiome and its role in the maintenance of the biome.

Keywords

Microbiome · Metal tolerance · Mangroves · Sediments · Pollution · Ecosystem balance

4.1 Introduction

Mangroves are wetland ecosystems with fine-grained sediment. The mangrove ecosystems function as habitats and breeding sites for a variety of fishes; mangroves are a source of timber and other plant products; they serve as carbon sinks and play role in atmospheric green gas removal by sequestering the organic contents in the water and sediments. This buried detritus in the anoxic sediments make up the coastal blue carbon (Twilley et al. 1992; Chmura et al. 2003; MacFarlane and Burchett 2002; Walters et al. 2008; Nellemann et al. 2009). The mangrove ecosystem has been identified as one of the most productive ecosystems having a very high net productivity as compared to other ecosystems (Donato et al. 2011).

During the last two decades, about 35% of mangroves globally have been known to be polluted with heavy metals (Feller et al. 2010; Gopalakrishnan et al. 2020). Accumulation of trace metals in the sediments occurs because of their lower water solubility and thus gets easily absorbed and retained in sediments, making the sediments an ultimate sink (Yu et al. 2008; Alvarez et al. 2011). The presence of heavy metals affects the microbial population, and the toxic effects are ultimately seen to reflect in the increased greenhouse emissions and carbon cycling (Nath et al. 2013; Usman et al. 2013). Though mangrove ecosystems are rich in organic matter, they are however deficient in nutrients like nitrogen and phosphorous (Vazquez et al. 2000). Despite this, they are regarded as a highly productive ecosystem because the microbiome present in the sediments is very active and productive that is responsible for nutrient cycling in the ecosystem through various geochemical processes.

The microorganisms, namely bacteria, archaea, fungi, viruses, and protists, make up the mangrove microbiome. To study the role of the microorganisms in the biogeochemical changes taking play in the mangrove sediments and correlate these with the environmental processes, hypothesis-driven studies are the need of the day. Which will help to understand the mangrove interactions at various levels and the contributions of microflora thus coming out with approaches for the protection and rehabilitation of mangrove forests? This thus calls for an urgent need to study the microbiomes of the mangrove sediments, including fungi, archaea, viruses, and protists, apart from bacteria, and understand their contribution to the ecosystem

and overall environment functioning. Even though the mangrove ecosystem is greatly beneficial to man and the environment, its importance is neglected and it suffers from anthropogenic pressures.

4.2 Ecological Assessment of Sediments of Mangrove Ecosystems

Most mangrove ecosystems have human settlements in close proximities which are a source of contamination, especially the industrial discharge into the mangroves (Alongi 2002; Kong et al. 2015; Ren et al. 2015). Mangrove ecosystems are highly influenced by these humanoid activities leading to accumulation of the pollutants especially heavy metals and recalcitrant compounds (Bodin et al. 2013). Another factor leading to the contaminants reaching the sediments is the weaker winds along the coast and hence slower water movements which cause the pollutants to sink in (Cai et al. 2009). Contamination of the sediments thus deteriorates the quality of the aquatic system. Sediment Quality Guidelines are used to determine the contamination levels in sediments for monitoring and quality management (US EPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency) n.d.; Bakan and Özkoc 2007).

4.2.1 Heavy Metal Pollution

Numerous studies have been carried out worldwide on the degradation and pollution of mangroves with trace metals, especially heavy metals (Defew et al. 2005; Fernandes et al. 2012a; Bodin et al. 2013; Usman et al. 2013; Fernández-Cadena et al. 2014; Li et al. 2016). Heavy metals in low concentrations are required for growth and are toxic at higher concentrations. The metabolism of the organisms is affected leading to changes in growth patterns as well as reproduction and ultimately causing an imbalance in the food chains (Wright and Welbourn 2002). The organisms growing in heavy metal contaminated systems accumulate the metals in their body, and humans are the final link in the food chain (Stewart 1999; Mwevura et al. 2002; Wang et al. 2015; Yin et al. 2016).

Marine sediment composition and structure impact the accumulation of heavy metals in the sediments. The presence of clays, mud, and sands leads to the formation of complexes and these interactions make the heavy metals sink in the sediments (Nobi et al. 2010; Gao and Chen 2012). In a study carried out along the Saudi Arabian sea, the presence of heavy metals was assessed and showed a high concentration of Cr followed by Cu and Ni while other metals like Pb, Cd were at a lower concentration but enough to cause damaging effects on the biota of the sediments as well as waters of the mangrove econiches (Bouillon et al. 2003). Another study on the Saudi coast of the Arabian Gulf also gave similar results when the heavy metal concentration was analyzed, with chromium being the dominant metal in the surface sediments. The authors point out that dredging, landfilling, oil pollution, reclamation, sewage disposal, etc. are the sources of the pollution

(Youssef et al. 2015; Almasoud et al. 2015; El-Sorogy et al. 2016; Almahasheer 2018). Reports by Al-Kahtany et al. (2018) and Almahasheer (2019) assessed the heavy metal concentrations in Tarut island mangroves. Similar studies carried out in the Zhangjiangkou Mangrove National Nature Reserve of China assessed sediments for the presence of heavy metal concentrations of Cu, Cd, Pb, Cr, Zn, As, and Hg along with studies of its effects on the biotic components for studying ecological risk assessment and environmental management (Wang et al. 2016).

4.2.2 Assessment of Other Parameters

The mangrove sediment is rich in organic matter content which is majorly contributed by the plant litter from the canopy above (Alongi 2002; Asaeda and Kalibbala 2009; Wang and Sousa 2009). According to reports, the highest organic carbon accumulation occurs in the mangrove forests, i.e., up to 26 Tg/year (Breithaupt et al. 2012).

The organic content of mangrove sediment was found to vary from organic matter in surface layers which receive fresh plant litter. The elemental ratio of C:N was observed to be 20–30 as against the ratio of 10 required for the growth of microorganisms (Kristensen et al. 1995; Twilley et al. 1997; Wafar et al. 1997). Thus, a rapid initial drop in carbon and increase in nitrogen is required for the degradation of litter in the initial stages. Thus, it is observed that mangrove soils are deficient in dissolved inorganic nitrogen or DIN acting as its sinks from the surroundings (Alongi 1996; Rivera-Monroy and Twilley 1996). However, mangrove sediments remain nutrient-deficient, particularly in nitrogen and phosphorus (Holguin 1992; Vazquez et al. 2000; Skov and Hartnoll 2002).

The microbiota present in the sediment degrades and utilizes the organic matter present which contains mostly tannins, polyphenols, cellulose, lignin, and lignocellulose (Lee 1998). Numerous analyses carried out in India show high organic contents of up to 37% dry weight and C: N ratios reaching 27.3 (Bouillon et al. 2003). The organic carbon stocks, which are of mangrove origin, are thus very high. This organic matter found deposited in the sediments of the mangroves is indeed a source of carbon and nitrogen to the microbiota. An increase in seawater levels has resulted in the saltwater intrusion of estuarine regions. Changes in the ionic composition are also observed due to the inflow of land wash-offs adding loads of nitrates, from agricultural sources. These nitrates may be lost to the atmosphere upon conversion to nitrous oxide (Maier et al. 2000).

4.3 Mangrove Sediment Microbiome and Its Ecological Role

The 91% biomass of the mangrove microbiome consists of bacteria and fungi, while the remaining 9% comprises algae and protozoa. Most of the bacteria and fungi are attached to particles in sediment and process the energy flow and nutrients in the ecosystem. The microbiome of the mangrove ecosystem is responsible for carrying

out all facets of biogeochemical cycling, including the transformation and degradation of pollutants. However, heavy metals being toxic even at very low concentrations, the microbiome gets affected and dominance of resistant microbiota is observed. The heavy metal sensitivity is more pronounced in the microbiome as compared to macro flora and fauna in the same environment (Zhou et al. 2013). Sediment microbiome studies carried out by Zhang et al. (2019) indicated the prevalence of prokaryotic alpha diversity in mangrove sediments. This biome harbors other prokaryotic groups also mostly belonging *Gammaproteobacteria*, *Deltaproteobacteria*, *Chloroflexi*, and *Euryarchaeota*.

In intertidal zones, the sediment microbiome is responsible for detritus decomposition and nutrient cycling (Campbell 2008). The microbiome is composed of nonrandom networks of bacteria, archaea, and fungi connected by positive, negative, and neutral relationships (Sul et al. 2013). While the active role of bacteria driving carbon fluxes is defined in mangrove sediment (Holguin et al. 2001), the role of fungi, in particular, is poorly understood, and the interactions of the different components are undescribed with many potential relationships in mangrove sediment. For example, fungi can promote habitat sharing with bacteria and vice versa (De Boer et al. 2005), and the relationship between methanogenic archaeal species and sulfate-reducing bacteria is well known in methane-rich sediments (Plugge et al. 2011).

Based on the functionality of the microorganisms present in the mangrove sediment, the microbiome composition is as below.

4.3.1 Nitrogen Fixers

In mangrove soils, diazotrophs play a major role as nitrogen fixers. The concentration of soluble nitrogen is seen to influence the scale at which the diazotrophic bacteria will carry out nitrogen fixation in the mangrove ecosystem. Due to the presence of higher soluble nitrogen concentrations as well as a lack of adequate carbon sources, nitrogen fixation rates were low (van der Valk and Attiwill 1984; Mann and Steinke 1989). Bacterial strains identified as the following genera *Azospirillum*, *Azotobacter*, *Rhizobium*, *Clostridium*, and *Klebsiella* have been characterized and shown to carry out nitrogen fixation in the mangrove ecosystems. These microorganisms along with nitrogen fixation carry out nitrogen reduction forming ammonia and thus it contributes to the overall balancing of nitrogen content in the mangrove ecosystems (Fernandes et al. 2012b).

4.3.2 Phosphate Solubilizers

Phosphate-solubilizing bacteria have the potential to convert insoluble phosphates to organic available forms. They play a vital role as suppliers of phosphorus to the mangrove plants. Conversion of inorganic phosphates to organic phosphates is favored in the mangrove sediments as the conditions are anoxic. In sediments

close to the plant roots, the conditions are oxic and allow bacteria to grow and bring about phosphate solubilization. Some of the phosphate-solubilizing bacteria isolated from mangrove sediments were identified as *Bacillus atrophaeus*, *B. amyloliquefaciens*, *B. licheniformis*, *Chryseomonas luteola*, *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *E. asburiae*, *E. taylorae, Kluyvera cryocrescens*, *Paenibacillus macerans*, *Pseudomonas stutzeri, Vibrio proteolyticus,* and *Xanthobacter agilis* (Vazquez et al. 2000). Bacteria identified as genus *Chryseomonas, Kluyvera,* and *Xanthobacter*, with phosphate-solubilizing potential have been reported by Vazquez et al. (2000), from the mangrove sediments of Mexico.

4.3.3 Sulfate Reducers

The mangrove sediments harbor sulfate-reducing bacteria that carry out the degradation of organic matter under anaerobic environments prevailing in the sediments (Nedwell et al. 1994; Sherman et al. 1998). Sulfate reduction by these anaerobic bacteria accounts for the availability of soluble iron and phosphorus as well as for the emission of carbon dioxide from the sediments (Kristensen et al. 1991). Thus, the mineralization of sulfur, the production of soluble iron in the form of FeS_2 and soluble phosphorus, is making these minerals available to the microbiome for its growth and metabolism. Apart from these roles, sulfate-reducing bacteria are also found to play a role as nitrogen fixers as seen in plant-associated as well as plant-unassociated sediments in mangroves of Florida (Zuberer and Silver 1978). Bacterial groups were more abundant in these mangrove sediments in the rhizospheres of *R. mangle* and *A. germinans* mangroves (Zuberer and Silver 1978).

In the studies carried out in Goa (India), spore-forming sulfate-reducing bacteria were found associated with mangroves (Saxena et al. 1988). Eight species of sulfate-reducing bacteria belonging to four different genera were identified from mangroves of Goa, namely *Desulfovibrio desulfuricans, Desulfovibrio desulfuricans aestuarii, Desulfovibrio salexigens, Desulfovibrio sapovorans, Desulfotomaculum orientis, Desulfotomaculum acetoxidans, Desulfosarcina variabilis,* and *Desulfococcus multivorans* (Loka Bharathi et al. 1991).

4.3.4 Methanogens

Studies on the Indian mangrove sediments showed a large variation in the methanogenic populations which were due to abiotic factors of the water and sediments (Mohanraju and Natarajan 1992) as well as biotic factors mainly the presence of sulfate-reducing bacteria (Ramamurthy et al. 1990). Methanogenic bacterial strains produce methane in the anoxic conditions of the sediment such as the methanogenic bacterium, *Methanoccoides methylutens* (Marty 1985; Mohanraju et al. 1997). This methane diffuses to the aerobic sediment layers and gets oxidized by aerobic methanotrophs. There are reports of anoxic oxidation of methane in hypersaline microbial mats (Conrad et al. 1995). Metagenomic studies showed the

presence of CH4-oxidizing genes from uncultured methanotrophs *Methylosarcina, Methylomonas,* and *Methylobacter* in mangrove soils (Lüke and Frenzel 2011). Mangrove ecosystems receiving high organic inputs due to anthropogenic activities show higher methane emissions indicative of higher methanogenic activities in the mangrove sediments (Giani et al. 1996; Strangmann et al. 1999). The presence of type I or type II methanotrophs in the mangrove sediments depends on the NaCl concentration and the alkalinity of the sediments (Bowman 2015a; Shiau et al. 2018; Ho et al. 2018). The type I methanotrophs *Methylomonas* and *Methylobacter* are mostly influenced by the pH of the saline ecosystems (Bowman 2015a, b; Shiau et al. 2017) and are responsible for the reduced methane emissions from these ecosystems.

4.3.5 Photosynthetic Anoxygenic Bacteria

Some research workers on mangrove sediments in India have reported purple sulfur and purple nonsulfur bacteria (families Chromatiaceae and Rhodospirillaceae) (Vethanayagam and Krishnamurthy 1995; Vethanayagam 1991). Dhevendaran (1984) and Chandrika et al. (1990) have reported the predominance of bacteria belonging to genera *Beggiatoa, Chloronema, Chromatium, Leucothiobacteria*, and *Thiopedia,* including some brown *Chlorobiaceae* species during studies carried out in mangrove regions of Cochin. A large proportion of the anaerobic microbiota was found to consist of phototrophic sulfur bacteria. While studies in Florida reported *Chromatium* species to be most abundant in the sediment samples (Zuberer and Silver 1978).

4.3.6 Viruses

This group of mangrove sediment microbiome is not studied much and remains highly uncharacterized. Most of the information available on mangrove soil viruses based on phylogenetic analyses does show the presence of diverse groups of viruses. These viral groups are postulated to bring about complex polysaccharide recycling and thus participate in global carbon cycling. Thus activities of the viral community in the sediment affect biogeochemical cycles through the organic carbon discharge as well as the release of nutrients from hosts. The viral auxiliary metabolic genes (AMGs) are responsible for driving biogeochemical cycles in the sediments microorganisms (Zhang et al. 2014; Anantharaman et al. 2014; Roux et al. 2016; York 2017). The prime role of the viruses in controlling the bacterial populations also affects the microbiome composition.

4.4 Characterizing Metal-Tolerant Microbiomes in Mangrove Ecosystem

The impact of climate change on the mangrove microbiome is a challenge. During the last two decades, around 35% of the world's mangrove ecosystem has been reportedly polluted with heavy metals (Feller et al. 2010; Gopalakrishnan et al. 2020). Mangrove ecosystems are vulnerable to various anthropogenic stresses that contain high levels of heavy metals (Zhang et al. 2014). Continuous exposure to heavy metals has drastic effects on mangrove ecosystems as the carbon cycling is disturbed. This is because of the toxicity of the inflowing heavy metals to the mangrove microbiota (Usman et al. 2013; Nath et al. 2013). Though mangrove ecosystems are organic matter rich, nitrogen and phosphorous deficiency are however relevant (Vazquez et al. 2000). Despite this, they are regarded as highly productive ecosystems because the microbiome present in the sediments is very active and productive that is responsible for nutrient cycling in the ecosystem through various geochemical processes. Most of the sediment bacteria and fungi process the energy flow and nutrients in the ecosystem. Though microorganisms drive vital biogeochemical processes, in the mangrove ecosystem, they are more sensitive to heavy metals than the higher level of organisms in the same environment (Zhou et al. 2013).

Natural benthic communities of the mangrove ecosystem are stable as long as there are external anthropogenic disturbances such as sewage disposal, oil spills, and exposure to high heavy metals loads from discharges from mining rejects and industrial wastes. Any disruption in sediments causes a shift of the microbial community leading to disturbed nutrient cycles with reduced nutrient availability and leaching of toxic microbial by-products, thereby affecting the ecosystem health.

An environment that is enriched with heavy metals places a great selective pressure on the microflora exposed, leading to the development of a specific microbiome that is resistant to different heavy metals. To defend or protect them from metal toxicity, the development of adaption and resistance is observed in microbes by sophisticated mechanisms. Heavy metal resistant microbiome comprises of metal resistome, the resistant microbiota. Metals are also of importance for respiration as well as other biological functions involved in carbon and nitrogen cycling (Andreote et al. 2012; Ragavan et al. 2016; Kandasamy 2000).

At present, most of the research work carried out on mangrove microbial communities and their characterization were focused on a temporal and spatial range that is important for the foundational understanding of the microbiome in this ecosystem. However, there is also a need to have more advanced technological research that would help to establish a link between mangrove microbe and the health of its ecosystems. The complexity of microbial communities and the technical constraints to identify and measure diversity has hampered our understanding of the functioning and microbial diversity. Since most of the microbes are unculturable, their abundance and diversity studies are not assessable by a conventional culture-based method. With the recent advances in next-generation sequencing (NGS) technology, few studies are being reported to understand the diversity and functional

genomics of microbiomes. A broad picture of the microbial life in the mangrove ecosystem is still not satisfactorily presented. Comparative microbiome studies of the distinct mangroves using metagenomics will considerably help to a better understanding of the mangrove microbial community structure and its dynamics.

Using NGS, studies have revealed the effect of heavy metal contamination on the microbiome in some ecosystems (Feller et al. 2010; Andreote et al. 2012), However, the knowledge regarding microbiome changes with the influence of heavy metal presence is very specific, and little is known about the core resistant microbiome and its role in the contaminated ecosystem. The taxonomical studies on mangrove soil sediments from Sundarban revealed the dominance of *Acidobacteria, Actinobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Cyanobacteria, Firmicutes, Fusobacteria, Nitrospirae,* and *Planctomycetes* based on NGS metagenomic analysis (Das et al. 2018). While in Mai Po Ramsar Wetland in Hong Kong, SAR and China studies revealed *Actinobacteria, Acidobacteria, Nitrospirae*, and *Verrucomicrobia* in inner mangrove sediments, whereas Proteobacteria and Deferribacteria were detected in outer mangrove sediments (Gopalakrishnan et al. 2020). In comparing the mangrove sediment microbiomes of India and Brazil, the richness of bacteria was observed, while the Red Sea mangrove samples showed an abundance of archaea (Usman et al. 2013; Alzubaidy et al. 2016). These differences in microbial diversity could be attributed to mangrove species, geographical location, physicochemical parameters influencing the mangrove sediments, and anthropogenic activities which influence the community compositions.

Feng et al. (2017) reported *Acidobacteria, Actinobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Chloroflexi, Desulfobacterota, Gemmatimonadetes, Myxococcota, Nitrospirae,* and *Proteobacteria* were the dominant phyla found persistently in environments polluted with heavy metals. Firmicute and Proteobacteria were ubiquitously present bacterial groups in these environments. Proteobacteria contains taxa having extensive metabolic properties, thus enabling it to colonize a range of habitats, and thus have been reported to be a predominant heavy metal-resistant phylum in many polluted environments (Zhao et al. 2019; Li et al. 2020). As they have strong adaption and tolerance, this is also confirmed by culturing methods (Gopalakrishnan et al. 2020). A literature survey carried out by Hao et al. (2021) on heavy metal-resistant bacteria from different ecosystems revealed that more than 66% of isolates are Proteobacteria, dominated by Gammaproteobacteria (52.84%) followed by *Acidobacteria*. Metagenomic studies revealed archaea to be the second most frequently found phyla in metal-contaminated mangrove ecosystems. Other major phyla found in heavy metal polluted sites are *Chloroflexi* and *Nitrospirae*, mostly involved in nitrogen cycling (Ganguli et al. 2017; Liu et al. 2018). Figure 4.1 shows the distribution of various microbial phyla in the mangrove rhizosphere.

In general, laboratory-based experiments reveal that short-term or long-term exposure to heavy metals reduces the diversity of microorganisms. The presence of a low concentration of essential metals such as copper and zinc is required for the growth of a wide range of bacteria, which eventually results in increased microbial diversity. The constant diversity indicates the strong resilience and the capacity of

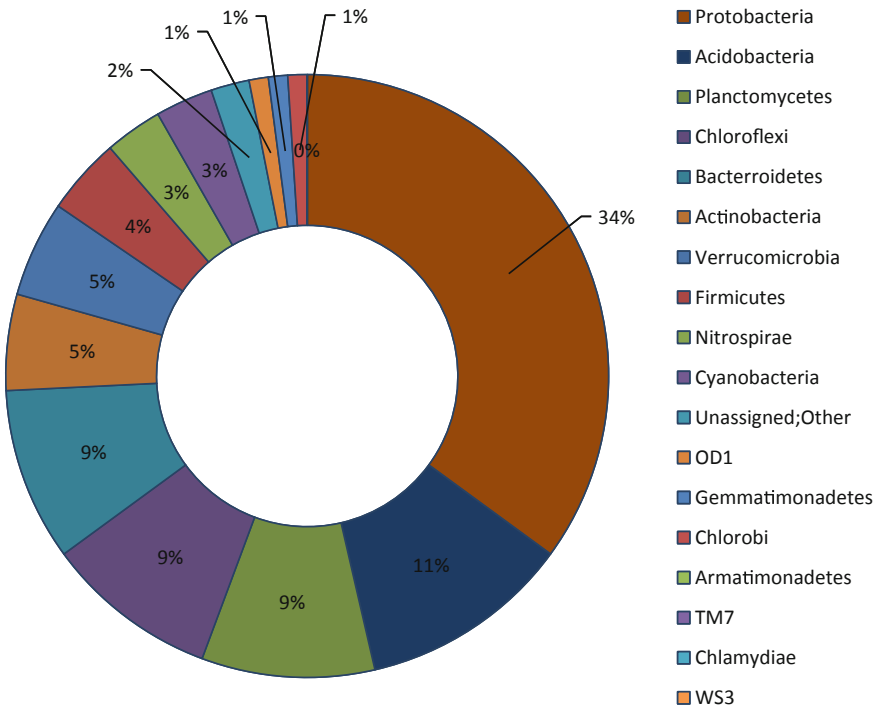


Fig. 4.1 Distribution of various microbial phylum in the mangrove rhizosphere

the microbial community to acquire resistance through horizontal gene transfer, without influencing microbial diversity (Lopez et al. 2017; Song et al. 2018).

4.5 Comparison of Microbiomes Across Diverse and Distinct Mangrove Ecosystems

Mangrove wetlands are influenced by both marine and terrestrial environments which cause gradients in salinity and organic matter in the sediments and fluctuating environmental conditions determine the microbiome in ecosystems differing significantly from others. Also, microbial diversity is influenced by mangrove species. Alzubaidy et al. (2016) reported Bacteroidetes dominance in the rhizosphere of *Avicennia* and in sediments without vegetation, *Actinobacteria* was predominant.

The heavy metal gradients can influence the microbial diversity by decreasing, increasing, or remaining constant. Mostly a decrease in the diversity is observed in studies following a severe heavy metal contamination exposure. Strong selection of microbiome occurs due to heavy metals purging sensitive taxa, leading to the enrichment of the resistant taxa but subsequently resulting in a decrease in diversity. Exposure to a low concentration of essential metals will result in a proliferation of a

wide range of bacterial groups and thus an increase in the microbial diversity of that habitat.

Several studies on the phylogenetic diversity in mangroves are located across regions such as Brazil, China, and the Red Sea mangroves of Saudi Arabia (Alzubaidy et al. 2016). Ghosh et al. (2010) reported a predominance of Proteobacteria in the mangrove areas of Sundarbans. However, in some other regions of tropical mangrove swamps, metagenomic results revealed, Deltaproteobacteria (43.88%) as the major class, followed by Alphaproteobacteria and Gammaproteobacteria dominance of *Desulfococus* spp., which is attributed to their involvement in the sulfur cycle.

Reports show that methane fluxes are largely contributed by activities of methanogens and methanotrophic communities especially in the wetlands (Cai et al. 2016; Das et al. 2018; Sierocinski et al. 2018; Yu et al. 2020). Methane production is carried out by methanogens which are placed in Euryarchaeota phylum in the archaea domain, and methane oxidation is carried out by methanotrophic communities (Deng et al. 2016), including two main groups of Gammaproteobacteria, e.g., *Methylococcaceae* and Alphaproteobacteria, e.g., *Methylocystaceae* (Yu et al. 2020). Many studies have reported the relative abundance of methanogenic communities is promoted by the presence of heavy metals (Feng et al. 2017; Giannopoulos et al. 2019). Some studies show the inhibition of carbon dioxide emissions due to heavy metal pollution thus impeding organic matter decomposition (Jaiswal and Pandey 2019; Enya et al. 2020). Overall, there seems to be a lack of understanding of the effects and long-term consequences of heavy metal pollution on the methane emission as well as carbon dioxide emissions from contaminated mangrove ecosystems.

The microbiome structure of the affected mangrove areas showed a different structure as compared to the microbiome structure of pristine areas, especially metal-contaminated mangrove ecosystems. These structural alterations were less evident in the high taxonomic groups. The observed prevalence of Proteobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Chloroflexi, and Firmicutes suggest these groups be members of the core microbiome of mangrove sediments in subtropical areas (Andreote et al. 2012; Dias et al. 2012). The Proteobacteria group is highly influenced by anthropogenically affected mangroves (Mendes and Tsai 2014).

4.6 Implications or Applications of Sediment Microbiome

Various methods used for the quantitative evaluation of heavy metal concentration help to understand the potential risk to an ecology of an ecosystem (Yuan et al. 2011). However, the application of sediment microbiota as indicators is preferable as these are sensitive environmental variation indicators. Various cultural characteristics of the microbial cells are responsible for this application which includes a large surface area to volume ratio due to their small sizes, the permeability of the cell membranes, and the ability to utilize the various nutrients available in the ecosystems (Billings and Ziegler 2008; Ikenaga et al. 2010; Troxler et al. 2012). The

ability of the microbiome to overcome numerous stress conditions also makes them preferable indicators. Some studies related to this aspect have been reported for substrate quality (Bossio and Scow 1998; Morrissey et al. 2014a), flooding (Mentzer et al. 2006; Unger et al. 2009), temperature (Zogg et al. 1997), salinity (Morrissey et al. 2014b), pollution (Córdova-kreylos et al. 2006), etc.

In particular, prokaryotic populations are highly susceptible to heavy metal pollution than eukaryotes (Frossard et al. 2017; Rajapaksha et al. 2004) in terms of biomass, activity, and diversity. Thus, the microbiota is frequently considered as potential indicators of ecological changes like monitoring them for heavy metal pollution (Li et al. 2020). The mangrove ecosystem and in particular the microbiome of the sediment contribute toward remediation of this ecosystem from metal pollutants. The heavy metals are redistributed between the sediment and the water columns above, by the metal-tolerant microbiome. The microbial community is shifted toward the dominance of the resistant genera as a result of the heavy metal pollutants in the sediments. These could be used as indicator species of environmental stress and toxicity changes in the sediment and mangrove ecosystems as a whole. Studies indicative of sea-level rise stressors, for example, showed changes in microbial diversity within weeks' duration which shows the early warning signals from the microbiomes which are indeed very useful for immediate action plan implementation (Wright and Welbourn 2002). The quality of aquatic ecosystems can be monitored by using benthic organisms because of their features like their geographical distribution, fixed lifestyle, capturing ease, and the bioturbation promotion (Cantillo et al. 1997; Nordhaus et al. 2006; Wang et al. 2015; Yin et al. 2016).

4.7 Conclusions and Fture Perspectives

The process of carbon sequestration, as well as carbon storage, is much faster in the mangrove wetlands as compared to forests or any other ecosystems. Hence, the mangrove ecosystems are the most productive and are also referred to as the blue carbon sinks. Anthropogenic activities cause disturbances in the physicochemical parameters of the econiches thus influencing the microbiota. Trace element pollution in general and heavy metal pollution, in particular, have been the focus of several studies. It is the need of the day to understand the effects of heavy metal pollution on methane, the carbon dioxide released in the atmosphere, and ultimately the variations in the associated microbial communities. This knowledge is very important to evaluate their ecological consequences and global warming implications in mangrove wetlands. Microbial biodiversity depending upon its resistivity and the concentration of the polluting heavy metal, can decrease, increase, or remain the same. There is a reduction in microbial biodiversity observed in ecosystems receiving heavy metal contamination. Strong selection of microbiome occurs due to heavy metals purging sensitive taxa, or short-term, leading to the proliferation of a few specific resistant groups and resulting in a subsequent decrease in diversity.

Acknowledgments The authors are grateful to their respective institutions for their encouragement and support.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

Al-Kahtany K, El-Sorogy A, Al-Kahtany F, Youssef M (2018) Heavy metals in mangrove sediments of the central Arabian Gulf shoreline, Saudi Arabia. Arab J Geosci 11(7):155

Almahasheer H (2018) Spatial coverage of mangrove communities in the Arabian Gulf. Environ Monit Assess 190(2):85

Almahasheer H (2019) High levels of heavy metals in Western Arabian Gulf mangrove soils. Mol Biol Rep 46(2):1585–1592

Almasoud FI, Usman AI, Al-Farraj AS (2015) Heavy metals in the soils of the Arabian Gulf coast affected by industrial activities: analysis and assessment using enrichment factor and multivariate analysis. Arab J Geosci 8(3):1691–1703

Alongi DM (1996) The dynamics of benthic nutrient pools and fluxes in tropical mangrove forests. J Mar Res 54:123–148

Alongi DM (2002) Present state and future of the world's mangrove forests. Environ Conserv 29(3): 331–349

Alvarez MB, Domini CE, Garrido M, Lista AG, Fernandez-Band BS (2011) Single-step chemical extraction procedures and chemometrics for assessment of heavy metal behaviour in sediment samples from the Bahia Blanca estuary, Argentina. J Soil Sediment 11(4):657–666

Alzubaidy H, Essack M, Malas TB, Bokhari A, Motwalli O, Kamanu FK, Jamhor SA, Mokhtar NA, Antunes A, Simões MF, Alam I, Bougouffa S, Lafi FF, Bajic VB, Archer JA (2016) Rhizosphere microbiome metagenomics of gray mangroves (*Avicennia marina*) in the Red Sea. Gene 576:626–636

Anantharaman K, Duhaime MB, Breier JA, Wendt KA, Toner BM, Dick GJ (2014) Sulfur oxidation genes in diverse deep-sea viruses. Science 344(6185):757–760

Andreote FD, Jimenez DJ, Chaves D, Dias ACF, Luvizotto DM, Dini-Andreote F (2012) The microbiome of Brazilian mangrove sediments as revealed by metagenomics. PLoS One 7:1–14

Asaeda T, Kalibbala M (2009) Modelling growth and primary production of the marine mangrove (*Rhizophora apiculate* BL): a dynamic approach. J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 371(2):103–111

Bakan G, Özkoc HB (2007) An ecological risk assessment of the impact of heavy metals in surface sediments on biota from the mid-Black Sea coast of Turkey. Int J Environ Study 64(1):45–57

Billings SA, Ziegler SE (2008) Altered patterns of soil carbon substrate usage and heterotrophic respiration in a pine forest with elevated CO_2 and N fertilization. Glob Change Biol Bioenergy 14:1025–1036

Bodin N, N'Gom-Kâ R, Kâ S, Thiaw OT, De Morais LT, Le Loc'h F, Rozuel-Chartier E, Auger D, Chiffoleau JF (2013) Assessment of trace metal contamination in mangrove ecosystems from Senegal, West Africa. Chemosphere 90(2):150–157

Bossio DA, Scow KM (1998) Impacts of carbon and flooding on soil microbial communities: phospholipid fatty acid profiles and substrate utilization patterns. Microb Ecol 35:265–278

Bouillon S, Dahdouh-Guebas F, Rao AVVS, Koedam N, Dehairs F (2003) Sources of organic carbon in mangrove sediments: variability and possible ecological implications. Hydrobiologia 495:33–39

Bowman JP (2015a) Methylobacter. In: Whitman WB (ed) Bergey's manual of systematics of archaea and bacteria. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ

Bowman JP (2015b) Methylomonas. In: Whitman WB (ed) Bergey's manual of systematics of archaea and bacteria. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ

Breithaupt JL, Smoak JM, Smith TJS, Sanders CJ, Hoare A (2012) Organic carbon burial rates in mangrove sediments: strengthening the global budget. Global Biogeochem Cycles 26:1–11

Cai M, Wang Y, Qiu C et al (2009) Heavy metals in surface sediments from mangrove zone in Zhangjiang River estuary, South China. In: Proceedings of the international conference on environmental science and information application technology (ESIAT '09), IEEE Computer Society, Wuhan, China, vol 3, pp 34–38

Cai Y, Zheng Y, Bodelier PL, Conrad R, Jia Z (2016) Conventional methanotrophs are responsible for atmospheric methane oxidation in paddy soils. Nat Commun 7:11728

Campbell C (2008) Soil microbiology, ecology, and biochemistry. Soil Sci 59:1008–1009

Cantillo AY, Lauenstein GG, Connor TPO (1997) Mollusc and sediment contaminant levels and trends in South Florida coastal waters. Mar Pollut Bull 34(7):511–521

Chandrika V, Nair PVR, Khambhadkar LR (1990) Distribution of phototrophic thionic bacteria in the anaerobic and micro-aerophilic strata of mangrove ecosystem of Cochin. J Mar Biol Assoc India 32:77–84

Chmura GL, Anisfeld SC, Cahoon DR, Lynch JC (2003) Global carbon sequestration in tidal, saline wetland soils. Glob Biogeochem Cycles 17:1111

Conrad R, Frenzel P, Cohen Y (1995) Methane emission from hypersaline microbial mats: lack of aerobic methane oxidation activity. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 16:297–306

Córdova-kreylos AL, Cao Y, Green PG et al (2006) Diversity, composition, and geographical distribution of microbial communities in California Salt Marsh Sediments. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:3357–3366

Das S, Ganguly D, Chakraborty S, Mukherjee A, Kumar De T (2018) Methane flux dynamics in relation to methanogenic and methanotrophic populations in the soil of Indian Sundarban mangroves. Mar Ecol 39(2):12493

De Boer W, Folman LB, Summerbell RC, Boddy L (2005) Living in a fungal world: impact of fungi on soil bacterial. FEMS Microbiol 29:795–811

Defew LH, Mair JM, Guzman HM (2005) An assessment of metal contamination in mangrove sediments and leaves from Punta Mala Bay, Pacific Panama. Mar Pollut Bull 50(5):547–552

Deng Y, Cui X, Dumont MG (2016) Identification of active aerobic methanotrophs in plateau wetlands using DNA stable isotope probing. FEMS Microbiol Lett 363:fnw168

Dhevendaran K (1984) Photosynthetic bacteria in the marine environment at Porto-Novo. Fish Technol 21:126–130

Dias ACF, Pereira Silva MEC, Cotta SR, Dini-Andreote F, Soares FL Jr, Salles JF et al (2012) Abundance and genetic diversity of nifH gene sequences in anthropogenically affected Brazilian mangrove sediments. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:7960–7967

Donato DC, Kauffman JB, Murdiyarso D, Kurnianto S, Stidham M, Kanninen M (2011) Mangroves among the most carbon-rich forests in the tropics. Nat Geosci 4(5):293–297

El-Sorogy AS, Tawfik M, Almadani SA, Attiah A (2016) Assessment of toxic metals in coastal sediments of the Rosetta area, Mediterranean Sea, Egypt. Environ Earth Sci 75(5):398

Enya O, Heaney N, Iniama G, Lin C (2020) Effects of heavy metals on organic matter decomposition in inundated soils: microcosm experiment and field examination. Sci Total Environ 724: 138223

Feller IC, Lovelock CE, Berger U, McKee KL, Joye SB, Ball MC (2010) Biocomplexity in mangrove ecosystems. Annu Rev Mar Sci 2:395–417

Feng J, ZhuX WH, Ning C, Lin G (2017) Distribution and ecological risk assessment of heavy metals in surface sediments of a typical restored mangrove-aquaculture wetland in Shenzhen, China. Mar Pollut Bull 124

Fernandes L, Nayak GN, Ilangovan D (2012a) Geochemical assessment of metal concentrations in mangrove sediments along Mumbai Coast, India. World Acad Sci Eng Technol 61(1):258–263

Fernandes SO, Michotey VD, Guasco S, Bonin PC (2012b) LokaBharathi, P.A. Denitrification prevails over anammox in tropical mangrove sediments (Goa, India). Mar Environ Res 74:9–19

Fernández-Cadena JC, Andrade S, Silva-Coello CL, De la Igle-sia R (2014) Heavy metal concentration in mangrove surface sediments from the north-west coast of South America. Mar Pollut Bull 82(1):221–226

Frossard A, Hartmann M, Frey B (2017) Tolerance of the forest soil microbiome to increasing mercury concentrations. Soil Biol Biochem 105:162–176

Ganguli S, Rahaman S, Bera AR, Vishal V, Malik S, Roopalakshmi K, Singh PK (2017) Rhizospheric metagenome of the terrestrial mangrove fern *Acrostichum* from Indian Sunderbans. Genomics Data 14:53–55

Gao X, Chen CTA (2012) Heavy metal pollution status in surface sediments of the coastal Bohai Bay. Water Res 46(6):1901–1911

Ghosh A, Dey N, Bera A (2010) Culture independent molecular analysis of bacterial communities in the mangrove sediment of Sundarbans, India. Saline Syst 6:1

Giani L, Bashan Y, Holguin G, Strangmann A (1996) Characteristics and methanogenesis of the Balandra lagoon mangrove soils, Baja California Sur, Mexico. Geoderma 72:149–160

Giannopoulos G, Lee DY, Neubauer SC, Brown BL, Franklin RB (2019) A simple and effective sampler to collect undisturbed cores from tidal marshes. bioRxiv 515825

Gopalakrishnan G, Wang S, Mo L, Zou J, Zhou Y (2020) Distribution determination, risk assessment, and source identification of heavy metals in mangrove wetland sediments from Qi'ao Island, South China. Reg Stud Mar Sci 33:100961

Hao X, Zhu J, Rensing C, Lui Y, Gao S, Chen W, Huang Q, Liu (2021) Recent advances in exploring the heavy metal(loid) resistant microbiome. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 19:94–109

Ho A, Mo YL, Lee HJ, Sauheitl L, Jia ZJ, Horn MAE (2018) Effect of salt stress on aerobic methane oxidation and associated methanotrophs; a microcosm study of a natural community from a non-saline environment. Soil Biol Biochem 125:210–214

Holguin G (1992) Two new nitrogen-fixing bacteria from the rhizosphere of mangrove trees: their isolation, identification and in vitro interaction with rhizosphere *Staphylococcus* sp. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 101:207–216

Holguin G, Vazquez P, Bashan Y (2001) The role of sediment microorganisms in the productivity, conservation, and rehabilitation of mangrove ecosystems: an overview. Biol Fert Soils 33:265–278

Ikenaga M, Guevara R, Dean AL et al (2010) Changes in community structure of sediment bacteria along the Florida Coastal Everglades Marsh-Mangrove-Seagrass salinity gradient. Microbial Ecol 59:284–295

Jaiswal D, Pandey J (2019) Carbon dioxide emission coupled extracellular enzyme activity at land-water interface predict C-eutrophication and heavy metal contamination in Ganga River, India. Ecol Indic 99:349–364

Kandasamy KA (2000) Review of studies on Pichavaram mangrove, Southeast India. Hydrobiologia 430:185–205

Kong Q, Wang ZB, Shu L, Miao M-S (2015) Characterization of the extracellular polymeric substances and microbial community of aerobic granulation sludge exposed to cephalexin. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 102:375–382

Kristensen E, Holmer M, Bussarawit N (1991) Benthic metabolism and sulfate reduction in a south-east Asian mangrove swamp. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 73:93–103

Kristensen E, Holmer M, Banta G, Jensen MH, Hansen K (1995) Carbon, nitrogen and sulfur cycling in sediments of the Ao Nam Bor mangrove forest, Phuket, Thailand: a review. Phuket Mar Biol Cent Res Bull 60:37–64

Lee SY (1998) Ecological role of grapsid crabs in mangrove ecosystems: a review. Mar Freshw Res 49:335–343

Li R, Chai M, Qiu GY (2016) Distribution, fraction, and ecological assessment of heavy metals in sediment—plant system in Man-grove Forest, South China Sea. PLoS One 11(1):e0147308

Li C, Yandong Q, Jiao G, Life W, Lui Z (2020) Effects of heavy metals on microbial communities in sediments and establishment of bioindicators based on microbial taxa and function for environmental monitoring and management. Sci Total Environ 749:141555

Liu YR, Delgado-Baquerizo M, Bi L et al (2018) Consistent responses of soil microbial taxonomic and functional attributes to mercury pollution across China. Microbiome 6:183

Loka Bharathi PA, Oak S, Chandramohan D (1991) Sulfate-reducing bacteria from mangrove swamps II: their ecology and physiology. Oceanol Acta 14:163–171

Lopez S, Piutti S, Vallance J, Jean-Louis M, Echevarria G, Benizri E (2017) Nickel drives bacterial community diversity in the rhizosphere of the hyperaccumulator *Alyssum murale*. Soil Biol Biochem 114:121–130

Lüke C, Frenzel P (2011) Potential of pmoA amplicon pyrosequencing for methanotroph diversity studies. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:6305

MacFarlane GR, Burchett MD (2002) Toxicity, growth and accumulation relationships of copper, lead and zinc in the grey mangrove *Avicennia marina* (Forsk.) Vierh. Mar Environ Res 54(1): 65–84

Maier RM, Pepper IL, Gerba CP (2000) Environmental microbiology. Academic Press, San Diego, CA

Mann FD, Steinke TD (1989) Biological nitrogen fixation (acetylene reduction) associated with green algal (cyanobacterial) communities in the Beachwood Mangrove Nature Reserve. 1. The effect of environmental factors on acetylene reduction activity. S Afr J Bot 55:438–444

Marty DG (1985) Description de quatresouchesmethanogenes thermotolerantesisolees de sediments marinsouintertidaux. C R Acad Sci III 300:545–548

Mendes L, Tsai S (2014) Variations of bacterial community structure and composition in mangrove sediment at different depths in Southeastern Brazil. Diversity 6:827–843

Mentzer JL, Goodman RM, Balser TC (2006) Microbial response over time to hydrologic and fertilization treatments in a simulated wet prairie. Plant Soil 284:85–100

Mohanraju R, Natarajan R (1992) Methanogenic bacteria in mangrove sediments. Hydrobiologia 247:187–193

Mohanraju R, Rajagopal BS, Daniels L, Natarajan R (1997) Isolation and characterization of a methanogenic bacterium from mangrove sediments. J Mar Biotechnol 5:147–152

Morrissey EM, Berrier DJ, Neubauer SC, Franklin RB (2014a) Using microbial communities and extracellular enzymes to link soil organic matter characteristics to greenhouse gas production in a tidal freshwater wetland. Biogeochemistry 117:473–490

Morrissey EM, Gillespie JL, Morina JC, Franklin RB (2014b) Salinity affects microbial activity and soil organic matter content in tidal wetlands. Glob Chang Biol 20:1351–1362

Mwevura H, Othman OC, Mhehe GL (2002) Organochlorine pesticide residues in sediments and biota from the coastal area of Dar es Salaam city, Tanzania. Mar Pollut Bull 45:262–267

Nath B, Birch G, Chaudhuri P (2013) Trace metal biogeochemistry in mangrove ecosystems: a comparative assessment of acidified (by acid sulfate soils) and non-acidified sites. Sci Total Environ 463–464:667–674

Nedwell DB, Blackburn TH, Wiebe WJ (1994) Dynamic nature of the turnover of organic carbon, nitrogen and sulphur in the sediments of a Jamaican mangrove forest. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 110: 223–223

Nellemann C, Corcoran E, Duarte CM, Valdrés L, Young CD, Fonseca L, Grimsditch G (2009) Blue carbon—the role of healthy oceans in binding carbon. A rapid response assessment. UN Environment, GRID-Arendal

Nobi EP, Dilipan E, Thangaradjou T, Sivakumar K, Kannan L (2010) Geochemical and geo-statistical assessment of heavy metal concentration in the sediments of different coastal ecosystems of Andaman Islands, India. Estuar Coast Shelf Sci 87(2):253–264

Nordhaus I, Wolff M, Diele K (2006) Litter processing and population food intake of the mangrove crab *Ucidescordatus* in a high intertidal forest in northern Brazil. Estuar Coast Shelf Sci 67(1–2):239–250

Plugge CM, Zhang W, Scholten JCM, Stams AJM (2011) Metabolic flexibility of sulfate-reducing bacteria. Front Microbiol 2:1–8

Ragavan P, Mohan PM, Saxena A, Jayaraj RSC, Ravichandran K, Saxena M (2016) Mangrove floristics of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands: critical review and current scenario. Mar Biodivers 48:1291–1311

Rajapaksha RM, Tobor-Kaplon MA, Baath E (2004) Metal toxicity affects fungal and bacterial activities in soil differently. Appl Environ Microbiol 70(5):2966–2973

Ramamurthy T, Raju RM, Natarajan R (1990) Distribution and ecology of methanogenic bacteria in mangrove sediments of Pitchavaram, East coast of India. Indian J Mar Sci 19:269–273

Ren Z, Zhang X, Wang X et al (2015) AChE inhibition: one dominant factor for swimming behavior changes of *Daphnia magna* under DDVP exposure. Chemosphere 120:252–257

Rivera-Monroy VH, Twilley RR (1996) The relative role of denitrification and immobilization in the fate of inorganic nitrogen in mangrove sediments (Terminos Lagoon, Mexico). Limnol Oceanogr 41:284–296

Roux S, Brum JR, Dutilh BE, Sunagawa S, Duhaime MB, Loy A, Poulos BT, Solonenko N, Lara E, Poulain J (2016) Ecogenomics and potential biogeochemical impacts of globally abundant ocean viruses. Nature 537(7622):689

Saxena D, Loka-Bharathi PA, Chandramohan D (1988) Sulfate reducing bacteria from mangrove swamps of Goa, central west coast of India. Indian J Mar Sci 17:153–157

Sherman RE, Fahey TJ, Howarth RW (1998) Soil-plant interactions in a neotropical mangrove forest: iron, phosphorus and sulfur dynamics. Oecologia 115:553–563

Shiau YJ, Cai YF, Lin YT, Jia Z, Chiu CY (2017) Community structure of active aerobic methanotrophs in Red Mangrove (*Kandelia obovata*) soils under different frequency of tides. Microb Ecol 75:761–770

Shiau YJ, Cai YF, Jia ZJ, Chen CL, Chiu CY (2018) Phylogenetically distinct methanotrophs modulate methane oxidation in rice paddies across Taiwan. Soil Biol Biochem 124:59–69

Sierocinski P, Bayer F, Yvon-Durocher G, Burdon M, Grosskopf T, Alston M, Swarbreck D, Hobbs PJ, Soyer OS, Buckling A (2018) Biodiversity-function relationships in methanogenic communities. Mol Ecol 27:4641–4651

Skov MW, Hartnoll RG (2002) Paradoxical selective feeding on a low-nutrient diet: why do mangrove crabs eat leaves? Oecologia 131:1–7

Song I, Shen Q, Wang L, Qiu G, Shi J, Xu J, Brookes P, Liu X (2018) Effects of Cd, Cu, Zn and their combined action on microbial biomass and bacterial community structure. Environ Pollut 243:510–518

Stewart AR (1999) Accumulation of Cd by a freshwater mussel (*Pyganodongrandis*) is reduced in the presence of Cu, Zn, Pb, and Ni. Can J Fish Aquat Sci 56(3):467–478

Strangmann A, Noormann M, Bashan Y, Giani L (1999) Methane dynamics in natural and disturbed mangrove soils (tropical salt marshes) in Baja California Sur, Mexico Annual meeting of the German Soil Science Society, 6-14.9.1999, Hannover, Germany

Sul WJ, Asuming-Brempong S, Wang Q, Tourlousse DM, Penton CR, Deng Y, Rodrigues JLM, Adiku SGK, Jones JW, Zhou J, Cole JR, Tiedje JM (2013) Tropical agricultural land management influences on soil microbial communities through its effect on soil organic carbon. Soil Biol Biochem 65:33–38

Troxler TG, Ikenaga M, Scinto L et al (2012) Patterns of soil bacteria and canopy community structure related to tropical peatland development. Wetlands 32:769–782

Twilley RR, Chen RH, Hargis T (1992) Carbon sinks in mangroves and their implications to carbon budget of tropical coastal ecosystems. Water Air Soil Pollut 64:265–288

Twilley RR, Pozo M, Garcia VH, Rivera-Monroy VH, Zambrano R, Bodero A (1997) Litter dynamics in riverine mangrove forests in the Guayas River estuary, Ecuador. Oecologia 111: 109–122

Unger IM, Kennedy AC, Muzika RM (2009) Flooding effects on soil microbial communities. Appl Soil Ecol 42:1–8

US EPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency) (n.d.) Contaminated sediment remediation guidance for hazardous waste sites. Office of Solid Waste and Emergency Response. EPA-540-R-05-012. OSWER, 9355:1–85

Usman AR, Alkredaa RS, Al-Wabel MI (2013) Heavy metal contamination in sediments and mangroves from the coast of Red Sea: *Avicennia marina* as potential metal bioaccumulator. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 97:263–270

van der Valk AG, Attiwill PM (1984) Acetylene reduction in an *Avicennia marina* community in Southern Australia. Aust J Bot 32:157–164

Vazquez P, Holguin G, Puente ME, Lopez-Cortes A, Bashan Y (2000) Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms associated with the rhizosphere of mangroves in a semiarid coastal lagoon. Biol Fertil Soils 30:460–468

Vethanayagam RR (1991) Purple photosynthetic bacteria from a tropical mangrove environment. Mar Biol 110:161–163

Vethanayagam RR, Krishnamurthy K (1995) Studies on anoxygenic photosynthetic bacterium *Rhodopseudomonas* sp. from the tropical mangrove environment. Indian J Mar Sci 24:19–23

Wafar S, Untawele A, Wafar M (1997) Litter fall and energy flux in a mangrove ecosystem. Estuar Coast Shelf Sci 44:111–124

Walters BB, Rönnbäck P, Kovacs JM, Crona B, Hussain SA, Badola R, Primavera JH, Barbier E, Dahdouh-Guebas F (2008) Ethnobiology, socio-economic and management of mangrove forests: a review. Aquat Bot 89(2):220–236

Wang LE, Sousa WP (2009) Distinguishing mangrove species with laboratory measurements of hyperspectral leaf reflectance. Int J Remote Sens 30(5):1267–1281

Wang L, Ren Z, Kim H, Xia C, Fu R, Chon T-S (2015) Characterizing response behavior of medaka (*Oryziaslatipes*) under chemical stress based on self-organizing map and filtering by integration. Ecol Inform 29(2):107–118

Wang J, Du H, Xu Y, Chen K, Liang J, Ke H, Cheng S-Y, Liu M, Deng H, He T, Wang W, Cai M (2016) Environmental and ecological risk assessment of trace metal contamination in mangrove ecosystems: a case from Zhangjiangkou Mangrove National Nature Reserve, China. BioMed Res Int 2016:2167053

Wright DA, Welbourn P (2002) Environmental toxicology, vol 11. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, p 656

Yin L, Yang H, Si G et al (2016) Persistence parameter: a reliable measurement for behavioral responses of medaka (Oryzias latipes) to environmental stress. Environ Model Assess 21(1): 159–167

York A (2017) Marine microbiology: algal virus boosts nitrogen uptake in the ocean. Nat Rev Microbiol 15(10):573

Youssef M, El-Sorogy A, Al Kahtany K, Al Otiaby N (2015) Environmental assessment of coastal surface sediments at Tarut Island, Arabian Gulf (Saudi Arabia). Mar Pollut Bull 96(1–2): 424–433

Yu R, Yuan X, Zhao Y, Hu G, Tu X (2008) Heavy metal pollution in intertidal sediments from Quanzhou Bay, China. J Environ Sci 20(6):664–669

Yu X, Yang X, Wu Y, Peng Y, Yang T, Xiao F, He Z (2020) *Sonneratiaapetala* introduction alters methane cycling microbial communities and increases methane emissions in mangrove ecosystems. Soil Biol Biochem 144:107775

Yuan HZ, Shen J, Liu EF, Wang JJ, Meng XH (2011) Assessment of nutrients and heavy metals enrichment in surface sediments from Taihu Lake, a eutrophic shallow lake in China. Environ Geochem Health 33:67–81

Zhang R, Wei W, Cai L (2014) The fate and biogeochemical cycling of viral elements. Nat Rev Microbiol 12(12):850

Zhang C-J, Pan J, Duan C-H, Wang Y-M, Liu Y, Sun J, Zhou H-C, Song X, Li M (2019) Prokaryotic diversity in mangrove sediments across south-eastern China fundamentally differs from that in other biomes. mSystems 4:e00442-19

Zhao XQ, Huang J, Lu J, Sun Y (2019) Study on the influence of soil microbial community on the long-term heavy metal pollution of different land use types and depth layers in mine. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 170:218–226

Zhou DN et al (2013) Effects of heavy metal pollution on microbial communities and activities of mining soils in Central Tibet, China. J Food Agric Environ 11(1):676–681

Zogg GP, Zak DR, Ringelberg DB et al (1997) Compositional and functional shifts in microbial communities due to soil warming. Soil Sci Soc Am J 61:475–481

Zuberer DA, Silver WS (1978) Biological dinitrogen fixation (acetylene reduction) associated with Florida mangroves. Appl Environ Microbiol 35:567–575

Dynamics of the Coral Microbiome and Its Link to Climate Change

5

Yaser A. Arafath, Aifa S. Fathima, Saqib Hassan, Ramu Meenatchi, Anushara Prabhakaran, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

Abstract

Coral reefs are one of the most diverse ecosystems in the world. Due to climate change and several anthropogenic activities such as overfishing, coral mining, waste disposal, marine pollution, etc., corals have been greatly affected. Corals are sessile animals that are in multipartite symbiosis with various microbes, forming the basic framework for the reef ecosystem. Microbes are considered a crucial part of the marine ecosystem as they play a key role in ecological functions, primary productivity, nutrient cycling, and producing chemical defense to protect hosts from invading microbes, etc. Coral microbiome

Y. A. Arafath · A. Prabhakaran · J. Selvin (✉)
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

A. S. Fathima
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

SRM Research Institute, SRM Institute of Science and Technology, Kattankulathur, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India

S. Hassan
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Division of Non-Communicable Diseases, Indian Council of Medical Research (ICMR), New Delhi, India

R. Meenatchi
SRM Research Institute, SRM Institute of Science and Technology, Kattankulathur, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

G. S. Kiran
Department of Food Science and Technology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_5

investigations are gaining focus in recent years by incorporating various conventional and high-throughput sequencing technologies for determining the diversity of bacteria present in corals concerning their genera, location, health status, etc., as their diversity tends to be both static as well as dynamic in nature.

Keywords

Coral ecosystem · Holobiont · Climate change · Response · Coral reef management

5.1 Introduction

Oceans are one of the most under studied environments. They have the central importance in detecting changes in structural habitat, food web, and biodiversity. There is a limited scope for sampling in the ocean environment (Smith et al. 2015). The influence of the pollutants, eutrophication, and rapid change in temperature, along with the hypoxic conditions, affect the ocean health and the microbiota living in it (Gruber 2011). Due to the increase in climatic variations, the ecosystem in all parts of the world is affected (IPCC 2014). The most biodiverse ecosystem on the planet Earth is the coral reefs (Muller-Parker et al. 2015). Due to human activities in the late eighteenth century, there has been a tremendous change in the Earth's atmosphere which leads to rise in the Earth's temperature rapidly (Trenberth et al. 2007). Most of the coral reef ecosystems are located in the vulnerable part of the Earth's atmosphere where climate change takes place very frequently (Hughes et al. 2003; Hoegh-Guldberg et al. 2007).

The coral reef ecosystem has a greater role in the persistence of Anthropocene, the species that are present in the corals are sensitive to various changes (anthropogenic disturbances) like extreme fishing, ocean pollution, coastal development, and ocean acidification. The acidification of the ocean has a direct impact on the ocean calcifiers (corals); acidification inhibits growth and limits calcification (Doney et al. 2009). It also reduces the reef's structural integrity and in turn increases the bioerosion process which leads to the destruction during severe weather like storms and cyclones (Andersson and Gledhill 2013). In 1998, >45% of the coral cover has been lost across the Indian ocean due to climate change (Hoegh-Guldberg et al. 2007). The coral community has associated microorganisms and also comprises metaorganism which is together known as coral holobiont (Rohwer et al. 2002). These bacterial communities help in the nitrogen fixation, sulfur cycling, and protection against pathogenic attacks (Glasl et al. 2016; Lema et al. 2012; Lesser et al. 2004; Raina et al. 2009; Ritchie 2006). These microbial associations with corals change with the variation in the depth allowing the corals to obtain a wide range of nutrients from the surroundings (Hernandez-Agreda et al. 2016). Heatwaves in the oceans disrupt the symbiotic relationship between the coral and its associated microbes leading to the loss in physiological function and its nature (Glynn 1984; Eakin et al. 2016; Berkelmans et al. 2004). The increase in climatic change disrupts

the natural microbiome of the coral reef leading to the destabilization and emergence of pathogenic taxa ultimately leading to host mortality (Littman et al. 2011; van Oppen and Blackall 2019). It is clear that the change in climatic conditions directly affects the coral microbiome, and it can be considered an early warning signal (Bourne et al. 2008; Glasl et al. 2017; Lee et al. 2016).

In this review, we discuss the diversity of the coral microbiome and its beneficial effects on the reef system and survival mechanism, how these beneficial microbes act and change during various stress conditions like bleaching, high temperature, carbon dioxide, lower pH, etc., and the possible ways to mitigate these conditions.

5.2 Significant Terminologies

5.2.1 Holobiont

A eukaryotic host with all its associated microbial partners. This multispecies assemblage includes viruses, phages, eubacteria, archaea, fungi, and protozoa.

5.2.2 Hologenome

Genetic information is encoded in the eukaryotic host and all of its associated partners. This collective genome forms the theoretical genetic repertoire of a holobiont (definition by Deines et al. 2017).

5.2.3 Metaorganism

In order for a holobiont to function properly, it must have a stable hologenome, which is dependent on the hologenome's associated partners, their activity, abundance, and the transcriptionally active regions of their genomes all in balance. This results in host-microbe and microbe-microbe interactions that must be maintained in homeostasis to keep the holobiont stable. To underline this extremely dynamic functional condition (capacity) of a holobiont, we will in the following use the term "metaorganism" (Deines et al. 2017).

Microbiome refers to an "ecological community of commensal, symbiotic, and pathogenic microorganisms within a given host" (Lederberg and McCray 2001).

5.3 Coral Ecosystem

5.3.1 Coral Habitats

Corals are the richest marine ecosystem on the planet Earth. These are threatened due to pollution and rapid climatic changes (Hoegh-Guldberg et al. 2007; Graham et al. 2014; Mora et al. 2016; Casey et al. 2014). They have a diverse range of bacterial associates (Brown and Bythell 2005), and some of them are species-specific (Ritchie and Smith 1997; Rohwer et al. 2002). Fossil records show that the existence of reef-building corals dates back >400 million years in which the reef-building corals are thought to emerge at the end of 250 million years (Stolarski et al. 2011). Coral-associated microbes have some important physiological and ecological roles in the coral reef ecosystem. The nitrogen fixation process of microbes present in the coral reef was first proposed in 1987 (Williams et al. 1987). When the oxygen concentration is low intracellularly, the endosymbiotic eukaryotic dinoflagellate photosynthesis takes place (Lesser et al. 2004; Kvennefors and Roff 2009). Some of the coral-associated microbes can protect the host from predation by producing antibiotics (Ritchie 2006). It is found that 30% of the coral-associated bacteria have antibiotic capabilities (Castillo et al. 2001). Coral metaorganism is a collection of bacteria, fungi, and viruses (Knowlton and Rohwer 2003; Bang et al. 2018), and they also have a symbiotic association with the algal family Symbiodiniaceae (LaJeunesse et al. 2018). For the development of the three-dimensional structure of the massive calcium carbonate skeleton system of the host coral, more than 95% of the energy is obtained by exporting photosynthates from micro-algal endosymbionts (Jones et al. 1994). The bacterial community of the coral is highly sensitive to environmental changes (Reshef et al. 2006; Santos et al. 2014, 2015, 2016; Thompson et al. 2015).

5.3.2 Coral Complexity

Generally, the coral microbiome comprises living organisms like prokaryotes, microeukaryotes, viruses, and coral polyps (Hernandez-Agreda et al. 2017; Marcelino and Verbruggen 2016). The coral prokaryotic distributions are found to be too high in the coral skeletal system by the use of metabarcoding studies. The prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms of the coral skeleton structure altogether are called endoliths (Marcelino and Verbruggen 2016; Marcelino et al. 2018). Some of the eukaryotes can create boreholes on the limestone of the coral skeleton (Marcelino and Verbruggen 2016; Yang et al. 2016; Wegley et al. 2007; Le Campion-Alsumard et al. 1995a). Among the microbiome, the endolithic algae play an important ecological role as a microbial agent for reef erosion (Tribollet 2008). Among them is the genus *Ostreobium* (*Ulvophyceae, Chlorophyta*) which is considered to be the most abundant of all (Vroom and Smith 2001). Mostly the balancing role of these algae is unknown. The microbial community changes with the change within the coral colony and also within the coral reef environment. Studies show that the community of the coral colony and reef exhibits distinct nature (Rohwer et al.

2002). The endosymbiotic dinoflagellates present on the coral polyp secretes mucus which contains the polymer of sulphated glycoprotein (mucocytes) (Brown and Bythell 2005). These mucous were made up of amino acids like serine, threonine, aspartate, glutamate, and glycine (Meikle et al. 1987, 1988). They also contain a small number of monosaccharides like arabinose and xylose which were believed to be produced during photosynthesis (Molchanova et al. 1985).

5.3.3 Coral Fungi

Several fungal species have been found in every marine habitat (Gao et al. 2010). The depth gradients and climatic conditions show variations in these types of microbes (Giovannoni and Stingl 2005; DeLong et al. 2006; Zinger et al. 2011; Barberán and Casamayor 2010). Mostly the geographical scales are limited to 100 s of km within the Pacific Gyre of North (Gao et al. 2010). Further studies showed that wood-inhabiting fungal composition is favored by temperature and salinity (Booth and Kenkel 1986). The first isolation and culturing of ascomycetes and basidiomycetes fungus were from the skeletons of hermatypic corals belonging to the Atlantic and Pacific oceans (Kendrick et al. 1982). By RNA analysis, it is found that there is a link between physiochemical properties and the active fungal composition of that particular area (Orsi et al. 2013). Endolithic coral fungi can develop resistance to environmental stress; some of them are symbiotic which helps in the nitrogen fixation to benefit the associated coral species (Wegley et al. 2007). Some of the coral-associated fungal species produce mycosporine-like amino acids which in turn prevent the corals from UV damage (Dunlap and Shick 1998). Like other marine microbes, marine fungi also has some similar qualitative biogeographic patterns even if there is a change in environment and dispersal mechanism (Duarte et al. 2016). It has been reported that the presence of various factors like temperature, and pH, helps in the strong structural development of hyphomycete morphospecies at the regional scale. Fungi can live symbiotically without harming the host coral along with associated coral microbiome.

5.3.4 Coral Algae

The skeleton of live coral contains high amount of eukaryotic green algae which is 16 times higher than that of the *Symbiodiniaceae* that is present in the coral tissue (Odum and Odum 1955). Among them are the green algae *Ostreobium* found to be present in most of the stony coral reefs (Marcelino and Verbruggen 2016). Most of the algae are found at >100 m below sea level and are also found in deep caves underwater (Odum and Odum 1955; Gonzalez-Zapata et al. 2018; Hoeksema 2012). Algae Dinoflagellate survives within the coral cells and provides the host with the energy they needed to perform most of their metabolic tasks (Muscatine 1990). Dinoflagellates belonging to the genus *Symbiodinum* commonly called zooxanthellae are referred to as reef-building corals (Freudenthal 1962).

Symbiodinums are well developed in balancing the sunlight absorbed in turn converting it into useable energy by the corals through photochemistry; thus, the fixed energy source (carbon) is utilized in the development of coral and calcification process (Goreau 1959; Muscatine 1990). More amount of oxygen is produced during the process is proportional to the calcification rate in the coral (Colombo-Pallotta et al. 2010). Fluctuations in the temperature and light condition lead to the destruction of the coral-algal symbiosis; this process is termed coral bleaching (Lesser 2011). Thus, the bleached corals are very difficult to regenerate even if they are prepopulated with the desired host *Symbiodinum* spp. (Jokiel and Coles 1977; Goreau and Macfarlane 1990; Meesters and Bak 1993; Ward et al. 2002). Records show that reef-building coral was found in the photic zone at about 165 m (Maragos and Jokiel 1986).

5.3.5 Coral Virus

The amount of virus present per milliliter of seawater is 10^6–10^8 which is higher than that of the other microbial cells present per milliliter (Wigington et al. 2016; Wommack and Colwell 2000; Fuhrman 2009). By the use of transmission electron microscopy, the virus that is present inside the cnidarian tissue was found to be 60 nm in diameter which is icosahedral in shape (Wilson and Chapman 2001). The sea anemones (stony corals) which are close relatives to the coelenterate are the first to show virus-like particles (VLP) (Wilson and Chapman 2001). Later, these viruses particles were characterized by comparing stressed and non-stressed coral animals where the normal non-stressed coral showed virus particles ranging from 30–40 to 50–60 nm in diameter, whereas stressed coral animal shows 40–50 and 60–80 nm in diameter along with more abundant viral particles (Wilson et al. 2005). Among 60 virus families, 58 of them live in corals around the world with 7 orders, 104 families, and 410 genera of viruses and were found to be recognized by the International Committee on the Taxonomy of the Virus (ICTV) (King et al. 2011). With recent advancements in data collection methods like metagenomics and transcriptomics, it is evident that all coral samples have the order *Caudovirales* with double-stranded DNA with particular three families *Siphoviridae, Podoviridae,* and *Myoviridae* (Lawrence et al. 2014). A recent investigation shows that the 24 coral reefs which were infected by the virus are mostly by temperate virus where the microbial densities are found in higher concentrations (Knowles et al. 2016). By using RNA-dependent RNA polymerase and shotgun sequencing methods, it is found that the vast majority of the ssRNA virus belongs to the family Picornaviridae, a virus that is known to affect marine protists (Culley and Steward 2007). The metagenomic analysis helps in the identification of the double-stranded DNA virus as a potential lysogen in the tropical coastal waters (McDaniel et al. 2014; Knowles et al. 2016). This virus also plays a very important role in the microbial evolution process called transduction (horizontal gene transfer method) (Rohwer and Thurber 2009; Paul and Sullivan 2005).

5.4 Coral Endoliths

5.4.1 Endolithic Algae

In the coral reef environment, endolithic microbes form the major component of the food chain (Hutchings 1986; Radtke et al. 1996). The first visible band appearance on the coral reef by an endolithic microbe was characterized in 1902 (Duerden 1902). More than 50–60% of the nitrogen available to the host coral was provided by the endolithic microbes says Ferrer and Szmant (1988). During the process of thermal bleaching, the process of translocating the photosynthetic carbon to the nearby host coral takes place (Fine and Loya 2002). Endolithic microbes are highly capable of nitrogen fixation and regeneration of nutrients to the coral reefs (Shashar et al. 1994; Cardini et al. 2014). Endolithic microbes that are associated with the coral skeleton systems include algae, fungi, bacteria, archaea, and viruses (Rosenberg et al. 2007; Schönberg and Wisshak 2012). Underneath the corals, there is a noticeable green band appearance formed by the green algae *Ostreobium* spp. (*Siphonales, Chlorophyta*) which were considered a coral symbiont (Kornmann and Sahling 1980; Del Campo et al. 2017). These are also found in the aragonite skeletons belonging to the coral reefs of the Caribbean, South Pacific, and Atlantic oceans which mainly include certain species like *Pocillopora* spp., *Stylophora* spp., *Acropora* spp., *Favia* spp., *Montastrea* spp., *Porites* spp., and *Goniastrea* spp., these organisms can penetrate dead as well as live carbonate coral substrates (Le Campion-Alsumard et al. 1995b; Zubia and Peyrot-Clausade 2001; Godinot et al. 2012; Halldal 1968). The green sulfur bacteria like *Prosthecochloris* are dominantly seen in *Isopora polifra* (coral spp.); some of the green sulfur bacteria were found in the tissue and mucus of the corals (Yang et al. 2016; Koren and Rosenberg 2006; Reis et al. 2009; Kimes et al. 2013; Li et al. 2015; Cai et al. 2017). By using the latest molecular techniques, it is found that these endolithic microalgae have varied diversity with 80 taxonomic units (Marcelino and Verbruggen 2016; Marcelino et al. 2017, 2018).

5.4.2 Endolithic Fungi

The endolithic fungi have the advantage of coral penetration and ultimately interacting with the *Ostreobium* cells; among these, the primarily isolated endolithic fungi that belong to *Ascomycota* and *Basidiomycota* are from the Caribbean and South Pacific (Le Campion-Alsumard et al. 1995b; Kendrick et al. 1982). The certain fungus will penetrate the polyp zone of the coral *Porites lobata* which in turn activates the defense mechanism resulting in the heavy deposition of the carbonate material giving a pearl-like appearance (Le Campion-Alsumard et al. 1995b). There are more than 10,000 species in the phylum Cnidaria which was studied for its abundance in fungal association (Zhang 2011). There is a threefold increase in the fungal sequence in the bleaching sample of the *A. millepora* by the metagenomic analysis method, yet the proper role of this fungi is unclear (Littman

et al. 2010). When the spatial distribution is disturbed in *A. formosa*, the fungi present in the healthy tissue develop into a new skeletal cavity (Yarden et al. 2007). Endolithic fungi exhibit a parasitic association rather than that of the saprophytic way of association with the corresponding coral by activating the defensive mechanism (Le Campion-Alsumard et al. 1995b; Golubic et al. 2005). The *Aspergillosis* of sea fans was believed to be caused by the dust-borne propagules that were introduced from the Sahara (Garrison et al. 2003). Along with the aspergillosis, it is believed that other opportunistic fungal infections of the sea fan are caused by the combination of more than one fungal species (Barrero-Canosa et al. 2013).

5.4.3 Endolithic Prokaryotes

The endolithic microbiome (prokaryotic and eukaryotic) performs various functions like providing nutrition to the coral, bioerosion, cycling of the nitrogen, etc. (Schlichter et al. 1995; Tribollet 2008; Miller et al. 2011). Based on the green band appearance on the coral skeleton and mussel shells, some of the first described marine *Cyanobacteria* are *Plectonema terebrans, Mastigocoleus testarum*, and *Halomicronema excentricum* (Le Campion-Alsumard et al. 1995b; Yamazaki et al. 2008). *Cyanobacteria* and other non-oxygenic phototrophic bacteria were present in higher abundance which can be seen by the appearance of the deeper darker green bands that were caused by the bacteriochlorophyll 2 pigments (Ralph et al. 2007; Magnusson et al. 2007). Targeted amplicon sequencing on 16SrRNA has identified more than 90 non-classified cyanobacterial operational taxonomic unit (OTUs) in 132 coral fragments (Marcelino and Verbruggen 2016). In coral *Isopora palifera*, the green sulfur bacteria *Prosthecochloris* was found to be in higher abundance (Yang et al. 2016). The distance decay relationship (DDR) measures beta diversity and heterogenicity habitat and was used to understand the decrease in the community similarity inside the skeletons of the corals (Nekola and White 1999; Anderson et al. 2011; Martiny et al. 2011).

5.5 Climatic Impact on Coral Reef

5.5.1 Effects of Climatic Change on Coral Ecosystem

There is an enormous change in the ocean temperature over the past 15 years also resulting in the disappearance of the arctic ice covers; it is also recorded that the precipitation is more variable with heavy rainfall, intense hurricanes, and early occurrence of the spring season (Johnson et al. 2011; Wernberg et al. 2011; Solomon et al. 2007). Most of these changes occur due to rapid climatic changes (Hoegh-Guldberg and Bruno 2010).

5.5.2 Bleaching-Associated Changes

The dinoflagellate symbionts zooxanthellae help the host by providing them with photosynthates along with coral calcification, due to extreme environmental conditions like radiation and high-temperature damage; this machinery leads to the overproduction of oxygen radicals leaving the symbionts to cellular damage and pigment degradation; this process is referred to as "bleaching" (Muscatine and Porter 1977; Lesser 2006). Heat stress damages the biological property of a coral holobiont (Littman et al. 2011). Once the symbionts were lost, more amount of solar radiation and the CO_2 enters the coral skeleton and helps the photosynthesis of endolithic algae which results in the harmful algal blooming during these bleaching periods (Fine and Loya 2002; Shashar and Stambler 1992; Diaz-Pulido and McCook 2002; Fine et al. 2006). The primary bleaching of the coral results in secondary bleaching of the nearby *Symbiodiniaceae* of the adjacent coral such a mechanism is called an optical feedback loop (Swain et al. 2018; Wangpraseurt et al. 2017). During these high temperatures caused by the irradiation, the lipid composition of the thylakoid membrane of the symbiont gets deteriorated; this compromises the photosystem II, paying the way for the increased production of nitric acid synthase which also tends to increase the bleaching of the coral reef (Tchernov et al. 2004; Trapido-Rosenthal et al. 2005). Metagenomic of the bleached coral microbiome shows increase in the carbohydrate utilization and processing along with the rapid increase in the virulence-associated gene (Littman et al. 2011; Thurber et al. 2009). If there is an increase in the wavelength of visible light (400–700 nm) and ultraviolet light (290–400 nm) it has also been linked to coral bleaching (Hoegh-Guldberg and Smith 1989; Brown et al. 1994; Fitt and Warner 1995).

5.5.3 Response to Climatic Disturbances

When the coral microbiome is exposed to ocean acidification or higher temperature, there is a shift from beneficial bacteria to more pathogenic ones like *Endozoicomonas* to *Alteromonadaceae* and *Vibrionaceae* (Bourne et al. 2016; Littman et al. 2011). Thus the variation in the species dominance and evenness disturbances shows the coral has undergone a stress response (van der Voort et al. 2016). It is found that not only stressor like climate or temperature changes the microbiome of the coral, but coming in close contact with macroalgal spp. tend to shift the microbiome to a macroalgal microbiome. This was well studied in *A. millepora* and *Seriatopora hystrix* microbiomes that they maintained stability even under lower pH and higher temperature, whereas the *S. hystrix*'s microbiome showed a considerable change when compared with similar taxa like *Foraminifera* and crustose coralline algae; this sudden shift leads to diseases like black band disease, yellow band disease, dark spot syndrome, etc., especially when the corals were exposed to multiple stressors (Zaneveld et al. 2016). During high temperatures, the nitrogen fixation process continues to increase, dramatically changing the nutrient balance in the coral holobiont, leading to an induced phosphate starvation state in

the *Symbiodiniaceae*; this ultimately leads to the poor translocation of photosynthates to the host coral also termed as selfish symbiont (Baker et al. 2018; Morris et al. 2019). When there is a dimension of corals at a specific reef due to bleaching, it signals a positive feedback loop which increases algal dominance (Rädecker et al. 2015). There will be increase in dissolved organic carbon (**DOC**) which interacts with temperature and accelerates the bleaching by inducing the proliferation of diazotrophs, thus increasing DOC leads to a further decline in the coral mortality by forming **hypoxic zones** (Pogoreutz et al. 2017; Rädecker et al. 2015; Silveira et al. 2017).

Changing climate results in a destabilized microbiome, dysbiosis, etc. which ultimately leads to the development of a more stable state characterized by increased mortality, bleaching events, and disease (Egan and Gardiner 2016; van Oppen and Blackall 2019). Certain corals show little resistance to stressors like lower pH and higher temperature (Meron et al. 2012; Epstein et al. 2019). Certain corals can revert to their original state once the stressor is gone, whereas some change irreversibly which can be either beneficial or detrimental to the holobiont (Bourne et al. 2008; Tracy et al. 2015). The effects of coral bleaching have been increased due to climatic change and various stress factors which tend to decrease reef framework and depress reef accumulation rates.

5.6 Coral Reef Management

5.6.1 Reef Microbiome Recovery and Restoration

Most of the coral degradation signs will show up once the coral reef has reached its advanced stage of decline; hence, it releases certain stress markers (Glasl et al. 2017). In the early decades, microbes act as an indicator system for various responses to environmental disturbances (total coliform count in drinking water (Faust et al. 2015; Glasl et al. 2019; Tallon et al. 2005). Coral reef conservation and restoration were primarily formed to prevent water quality and to handle massive coral depletion due to climate change in efforts to restore it (Hughes et al. 2017; Silveira et al. 2017). Most of the restoration practices were done by coral aquaculture gardening or by fragment transplantation onto the specific reef (Rinkevich 2008). Microorganism plays an important role in the maintenance of the coral animal and the proper functioning of the ecosystem; thus, it is important in preserving the threatened species (West et al. 2019). The recovery and loss of coral reefs from eastern pacific sites have been recorded for 10–28 years showing both 100% elimination to 100% total recovery (Wellington and Glynn 2007), whereas in costa Rica, live corals have been increased by 4–23% from 1987 to 2002 with other similar species in which is found in the pre-disturbance community utilizing sexual regeneration. In Panama, asexual regeneration has been observed in *Pocillopora elegans* and *Pavona clavus*, whereas *Acropora* which is found in the Arabian gulf regenerates sexually (Riegl 2002). Transplanting asexually regenerating colony tissue or replacing a sexually developing larva in the disturbed place tends to

increase live coral cover (Harrison and Wallace 1990; Richmond 1997). To support proper regeneration of the coral reef regrowth, it needs stable and firm lighting with relatively sediment-free substrates. Most importantly the substrates should be free from any other taxa (Bellwood et al. 2003).

Developing coral stocks with higher stress tolerance by inducing evolutionary changes to the coral microbiome community is referred to as assisted evolution (Van Oppen et al. 2017). The highly successful recovery rate was seen in *Acropora, Pocillopora,* and branching *Porites*, whereas the *Porites* spp. can survive for longer periods. When these taxa are found in the corals, they can regenerate their coral cover back to normal structure (Rogers et al. 2008). The ecosystem-based management (EBM) approach suggests removing local stressors from the affected area will increase coral health and improves coral health (Marshall and Schuttenberg 2006; Marshall et al. 2006). Certain studies demonstrated that the application of specific phages can act only over the coral pathogen and does not affect the integrity of the resident microbiota (Atad et al. 2012; Cohen et al. 2013; Efrony et al. 2009).

5.6.2 Management and Conservation of Coral Reefs

The change in the climate either has direct changes (like warming, aridity) or indirect effect (elevated carbon dioxide) on the coral microbiomes' diversity, distribution, and functions; one of the major change that occurs were the change in the nutrient cycle (Singh et al. 2010). Thus, if there is a loss in the microbial diversity, it leads to dysfunctionality, low stability, and increases in the unknown consequences (Delgado-Baquerizo et al. 2016). Apart from these changes, the microbes have an indirect effect on the environment by the production of greenhouse gases, even though there is enough evidence showing the link between climate change and the microbes involved the focus-based studies on microbes for climatic change is less studied (Cavicchioli et al. 2019). Beneficial Microorganisms of Corals (BMC) can be incorporated into coral reefs through methods like microencapsulation and nanoparticles to feed adult corals heterotrophically; the use of biodegradable substrates like alginate act as a bio-friendly encapsulation of BMC to deliver it to the respective coral (Martínez Cruz et al. 2012). Human-Assisted Evolution (HAE) helps naturally enhance their stress tolerance including random mutation, acclimatization, and also drastic changes in microbial symbiont communities (van Oppen et al. 2015). Before the field application, it is advisable to test in a controlled experimental system; it is also to be noted that the selected BMC should not be a pathogen to the microbiome (Sweet and Bulling 2017). The variation in the microbial symbiont occurs through switching of the symbiont, shuffling of the symbiont, and also through horizontal gene transfer methods; this helps in the development of the overall population fitness of the coral generations (Torda et al. 2017; Quigley et al. 2019). The proper developmental phase should be made together by marine ecologists and coral reef conservationists to know in-depth about the long-term survival, preservation, and conservation of these diverse environments (Kelly et al. 2018; West et al. 2019).

5.7 The Way Forward

The benefits of the coral holobiont for the healthy survival of the coral reef is suffering due to rapid change in the climate and other anthropogenic disturbances; when stress is high, they lose their natural tendency to benefit the environment (Hughes et al. 2017a). But the microbial response of different spots should be studied separately to get a good insight for proper long-term conservation (Hutchins et al. 2019). Advanced research methodology should be preferred to gain access to microbial diversity of the coral reef, rather than a DNA-based molecular approach; most of the findings were performed and analyzed based on 16S rRNA analysis. Combining metatranscriptomics, with advanced microscopic techniques, should be used to validate and record the response of the microbial holobiont under varying stress situations finally leading to the identification of the fluxes over the ecosystem (Trevathan-Tackett et al. 2019). Recent findings show that there is a chance of increasing the ability to resist climatic stress response by modifying microbial holobiont or by the application of coral-specific probiotics (Trevathan-Tackett et al. 2019). Lastly, the interdisciplinary approach should be preferred for the in-depth understanding of climate-linked coral reef microbiome variations.

References

Anderson MJ, Crist TO, Chase JM, Vellend M, Inouye BD, Freestone AL et al (2011) Navigating the multiple meanings of β diversity: a roadmap for the practicing ecologist. Ecol Lett 14(1): 19–28

Andersson AJ, Gledhill D (2013) Ocean acidification and coral reefs: effects on breakdown, dissolution, and net ecosystem calcification. Annu Rev Mar Sci 5:321–348

Atad I, Zvuloni A, Loya Y, Rosenberg E (2012) Phage therapy of the white plague-like disease of Favia favus in the Red Sea. Coral Reefs 31(3):665–670

Baker DM, Freeman CJ, Wong JC, Fogel ML, Knowlton N (2018) Climate change promotes parasitism in a coral symbiosis. ISME J 12(3):921–930

Bang C, Dagan T, Deines P, Dubilier N, Duschl WJ, Fraune S et al (2018) Metaorganisms in extreme environments: do microbes play a role in organismal adaptation? Zoology 127:1–19

Barberán A, Casamayor EO (2010) Global phylogenetic community structure and β-diversity patterns in surface bacterioplankton metacommunities. Aquat Microb Ecol 59(1):1–10

Barrero-Canosa J, Dueñas LF, Sánchez JA (2013) Isolation of potential fungal pathogens in gorgonian corals at the Tropical Eastern Pacific. Coral Reefs 32(1):35–41

Bellwood DR, Hoey AS, Choat JH (2003) Limited functional redundancy in high diversity systems: resilience and ecosystem function on coral reefs. Ecol Lett 6(4):281–285

Berkelmans R, De'ath G, Kininmonth S, Skirving WJ (2004) A comparison of the 1998 and 2002 coral bleaching events on the Great Barrier Reef: spatial correlation, patterns, and predictions. Coral Reefs 23(1):74–83

Booth T, Kenkel N (1986) Ecological studies of lignicolous marine fungi: a distribution model based on ordination and classification. In: The biology of marine fungi, pp 297–310

Bourne D, Iida Y, Uthicke S, Smith-Keune C (2008) Changes in coral-associated microbial communities during a bleaching event. ISME J 2(4):350–363

Bourne DG, Morrow KM, Webster NS (2016) Insights into the coral microbiome: underpinning the health and resilience of reef ecosystems. Annu Rev Microbiol 70

Brown BE, Bythell JC (2005) Perspectives on mucus secretion in reef corals. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 296:291–309

Brown BE, Le Tissier MDA, Dunne RP (1994) Tissue retraction in the scleractinian coral Coeloseris mayeri, its effect upon coral pigmentation, and preliminary implications for heat balance. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 105:209–209

Cai L, Zhou G, Tian RM, Tong H, Zhang W, Sun J et al (2017) Metagenomic analysis reveals a green sulfur bacterium as a potential coral symbiont. Sci Rep 7(1):1–11

Cardini U, Bednarz VN, Foster RA, Wild C (2014) Benthic N2 fixation in coral reefs and the potential effects of human-induced environmental change. Ecol Evol 4(9):1706–1727

Casey JM, Ainsworth TD, Choat JH, Connolly SR (2014) Farming behaviour of reef fishes increases the prevalence of coral disease associated microbes and black band disease. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci 281(1788):20141032

Castillo I, Lodeiros C, Nunez M, Campos I (2001) In vitro evaluation of antibacterial substances produced by bacteria isolated from different marine organisms. Rev Biol Trop 49(3–4): 1213–1222

Cavicchioli R, Ripple WJ, Timmis KN, Azam F, Bakken LR, Baylis M et al (2019) Scientists' warning to humanity: microorganisms and climate change. Nat Rev Microbiol 17(9):569–586

Cohen Y, Joseph Pollock F, Rosenberg E, Bourne DG (2013) Phage therapy treatment of the coral pathogen Vibrio coralliilyticus. Microbiology 2(1):64–74

Colombo-Pallotta MF, Rodríguez-Román A, Iglesias-Prieto R (2010) Calcification in bleached and unbleached Montastraea faveolata: evaluating the role of oxygen and glycerol. Coral Reefs 29(4):899–907

Culley AI, Steward GF (2007) New genera of RNA viruses in subtropical seawater, inferred from polymerase gene sequences. Appl Environ Microbiol 73(18):5937–5944

Deines P, Lachnit T, Bosch TC (2017) Competing forces maintain the Hydra metaorganism. Immunol Rev 279(1):123–136

Del Campo J, Pombert JF, Šlapeta J, Larkum A, Keeling PJ (2017) The 'other' coral symbiont: Ostreobium diversity and distribution. ISME J 11(1):296–299

Delgado-Baquerizo M, Maestre FT, Reich PB, Jeffries TC, Gaitan JJ, Encinar D et al (2016) Microbial diversity drives multifunctionality in terrestrial ecosystems. Nat Commun 7(1):1–8

DeLong EF, Preston CM, Mincer T, Rich V, Hallam SJ, Frigaard NU et al (2006) Community genomics among stratified microbial assemblages in the ocean's interior. Science 311(5760): 496–503

Doney SC, Fabry VJ, Feely RA, Kleypas JA (2009) Ocean acidification: the other CO_2 problem. Ann Rev Mar Sci 1:169–192

Duarte S, Bärlocher F, Pascoal C, Cássio F (2016) Biogeography of aquatic hyphomycetes: current knowledge and future perspectives. Fungal Ecol 19:169–181

Duerden JE (1902) Aggregated colonies in madreporarian corals. Am Nat 36(426):461–471

Dunlap WC, Shick JM (1998) Ultraviolet radiation-absorbing mycosporine-like amino acids in coral reef organisms: a biochemical and environmental perspective. J Phycol 34(3):418–430

Eakin CM, Liu G, Gomez AM, De La Cour JL, Heron SF, Skirving WJ et al (2016) Global coral bleaching 2014–2017: status and an appeal for observations. Reef Encounter 31(1):20–26

Efrony R, Atad I, Rosenberg E (2009) Phage therapy of coral white plague disease: properties of phage BA3. Curr Microbiol 58(2):139–145

Egan S, Gardiner M (2016) Microbial dysbiosis: rethinking disease in marine ecosystems. Front Microbiol 7:991

Epstein HE, Torda G, van Oppen MJ (2019) Relative stability of the Pocillopora acuta microbiome throughout a thermal stress event. Coral Reefs 38(2):373–386

Faust K, Lahti L, Gonze D, De Vos WM, Raes J (2015) Metagenomics meets time series analysis: unraveling microbial community dynamics. Curr Opin Microbiol 25:56–66

Ferrer LM, Szmant AM (1988) Nutrient regeneration by the endolithic community in coral skeletons. In: Proceedings of the 6th international coral reef symposium, vol 2, pp 1–4

Fine M, Loya Y (2002) Endolithic algae: an alternative source of photoassimilates during coral bleaching. Proc R Soc Lond Ser B Biol Sci 269(1497):1205–1210
Fine M, Roff G, Ainsworth TD, Hoegh-Guldberg O (2006) Phototrophic microendoliths bloom during coral "white syndrome". Coral Reefs 25(4):577–581
Fitt WK, Warner ME (1995) Bleaching patterns of four species of Caribbean reef corals. Biol Bull 189(3):298–307
Freudenthal HD (1962) Symbiodinium gen. nov. and Symbiodinium microadriaticum sp. nov., a zooxanthella: taxonomy, life cycle, and morphology. J Protozool 9(1):45–52
Fuhrman JA (2009) Microbial community structure and its functional implications. Nature 459(7244):193–199
Gao Z, Johnson ZI, Wang G (2010) Molecular characterization of the spatial diversity and novel lineages of mycoplankton in Hawaiian coastal waters. ISME J 4(1):111–120
Garrison VH, Shinn EA, Foreman WT, Griffin DW, Holmes CW, Kellogg CA et al (2003) African and Asian dust: from desert soils to coral reefs. Bioscience 53(5):469–480
Giovannoni SJ, Stingl U (2005) Molecular diversity and ecology of microbial plankton. Nature 437(7057):343–348
Glasl B, Herndl GJ, Frade PR (2016) The microbiome of coral surface mucus has a key role in mediating holobiont health and survival upon disturbance. ISME J 10(9):2280–2292
Glasl B, Webster NS, Bourne DG (2017) Microbial indicators as a diagnostic tool for assessing water quality and climate stress in coral reef ecosystems. Mar Biol 164(4):91
Glasl B, Bourne DG, Frade PR, Thomas T, Schaffelke B, Webster NS (2019) Microbial indicators of environmental perturbations in coral reef ecosystems. Microbiome 7(1):1–13
Glynn PW (1984) Widespread coral mortality and the 1982–83 El Niño warming event. Environ Conserv 11(2):133–146
Godinot C, Tribollet A, Grover R, Ferrier-Pagès C (2012) Bioerosion by euendoliths decreases in phosphate-enriched skeletons of living corals. Biogeosci Discuss 9:2425–2444
Golubic S, Radtke G, Le Campion-Alsumard T (2005) Endolithic fungi in marine ecosystems. Trends Microbiol 13(5):229–235
Gonzalez-Zapata FL, Gómez-Osorio S, Sánchez JA (2018) Conspicuous endolithic algal associations in a mesophotic reef-building coral. Coral Reefs 37(3):705–709
Goreau TF (1959) The physiology of skeleton formation in corals. I. A method for measuring the rate of calcium deposition by corals under different conditions. Biol Bull 116(1):59–75
Goreau TJ, Macfarlane AH (1990) Reduced growth rate of Montastrea annularis following the 1987–1988 coral-bleaching event. Coral Reefs 8(4):211–215
Graham NA, Cinner JE, Norström AV, Nyström M (2014) Coral reefs as novel ecosystems: embracing new futures. Curr Opin Environ Sustain 7:9–14
Gruber N (2011) Warming up, turning sour, losing breath: ocean biogeochemistry under global change. Philos Trans R Soc A Math Phys Eng Sci 369(1943):1980–1996
Halldal P (1968) Photosynthetic capacities and photosynthetic action spectra of endozoic algae of the massive coral Favia. Biol Bull 134(3):411–424
Harrison PL, Wallace CC (1990) Reproduction, dispersal and recruitment of scleractinian corals. In: Ecosystems of the world, vol 25, pp 133–207
Hernandez-Agreda A, Leggat W, Bongaerts P, Ainsworth TD (2016) The microbial signature provides insight into the mechanistic basis of coral success across reef habitats. MBio 7(4)
Hernandez-Agreda A, Gates RD, Ainsworth TD (2017) Defining the core microbiome in corals' microbial soup. Trends Microbiol 25(2):125–140
Hoegh-Guldberg O, Bruno JF (2010) The impact of climate change on the world's marine ecosystems. Science 328(5985):1523–1528
Hoegh-Guldberg O, Smith GJ (1989) The effect of sudden changes in temperature, light and salinity on the population density and export of zooxanthellae from the reef corals Stylophora pistillata Esper and Seriatopora hystrix Dana. J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 129(3):279–303
Hoegh-Guldberg O, Mumby PJ, Hooten AJ, Steneck RS, Greenfield P, Gomez E et al (2007) Coral reefs under rapid climate change and ocean acidification. Science 318(5857):1737–1742

Hoeksema BW (2012) Forever in the dark: the cave-dwelling azooxanthellate reef coral Leptoseris troglodyta sp. n. (Scleractinia, Agariciidae). Zookeys 228:21
Hughes TP, Baird AH, Bellwood DR, Card M, Connolly SR, Folke C et al (2003) Climate change, human impacts, and the resilience of coral reefs. Science 301(5635):929–933
Hughes TP, Kerry JT, Álvarez-Noriega M, Álvarez-Romero JG, Anderson KD, Baird AH et al (2017) Global warming and recurrent mass bleaching of corals. Nature 543(7645):373–377
Hughes TP, Barnes ML, Bellwood DR, Cinner JE, Cumming GS, Jackson JB et al (2017a) Coral reefs in the Anthropocene. Nature 546(7656):82–90
Hutchings PA (1986) Biological destruction of coral reefs. Coral Reefs 4(4):239–252
Hutchins DA, Jansson JK, Remais JV, Rich VI, Singh BK, Trivedi P (2019) Climate change microbiology—problems and perspectives. Nat Rev Microbiol 17(6):391–396
IPCC (2014) Climate change 2014 synthesis report
Johnson CR, Banks SC, Barrett NS, Cazassus F, Dunstan PK, Edgar GJ et al (2011) Climate change cascades: shifts in oceanography, species' ranges and subtidal marine community dynamics in eastern Tasmania. J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 400(1–2):17–32
Jokiel PL, Coles SL (1977) Effects of temperature on the mortality and growth of Hawaiian reef corals. Mar Biol 43(3):201–208
Jones CG, Lawton JH, Shachak M (1994) Organisms as ecosystem engineers. In: Ecosystem management. Springer, New York, pp 130–147
Kelly LW, Haas AF, Nelson CE (2018) Ecosystem microbiology of coral reefs: linking genomic, metabolomic, and biogeochemical dynamics from animal symbioses to reefscape processes. mSystems 3(2)
Kendrick B, Risk MJ, Michaelides J, Bergman K (1982) Amphibious microborers: bioeroding fungi isolated from live corals. Bull Mar Sci 32(4):862–867
Kimes NE, Johnson WR, Torralba M, Nelson KE, Weil E, Morris PJ (2013) The Montastraea faveolata microbiome: ecological and temporal influences on a Caribbean reef-building coral in decline. Environ Microbiol 15(7):2082–2094
King AM, Lefkowitz E, Adams MJ, Carstens EB (eds) (2011) Virus taxonomy: ninth report of the international committee on taxonomy of viruses, vol 9. Elsevier
Knowles B, Silveira CB, Bailey BA, Barott K, Cantu VA, Cobián-Güemes AG et al (2016) Lytic to temperate switching of viral communities. Nature 531(7595):466–470
Knowlton N, Rohwer F (2003) Multispecies microbial mutualisms on coral reefs: the host as a habitat. Am Nat 162(S4):S51–S62
Koren O, Rosenberg E (2006) Bacteria associated with mucus and tissues of the coral Oculina patagonica in summer and winter. Appl Environ Microbiol 72(8):5254–5259
Kornmann P, Sahling PH (1980) Ostreobium quekettii (Codiales, Chlorophyta). Helgoländer Meeresuntersuchungen 34(2):115–122
Kvennefors ECE, Roff G (2009) Evidence of cyanobacteria-like endosymbionts in Acroporid corals from the Great Barrier Reef. Coral Reefs 28(2):547–547
LaJeunesse TC, Parkinson JE, Gabrielson PW, Jeong HJ, Reimer JD, Voolstra CR, Santos SR (2018) Systematic revision of Symbiodiniaceae highlights the antiquity and diversity of coral endosymbionts. Curr Biol 28(16):2570–2580
Lawrence SA, Wilson WH, Davy JE, Davy SK (2014) Latent virus-like infections are present in a diverse range of Symbiodinium spp. (Dinophyta). J Phycol 50(6):984–997
Le Campion-Alsumard T, Golubic S, Hutchings P (1995a) Microbial endoliths in skeletons of live and dead corals: Porites lobata (Moorea, French Polynesia). Mar Ecol Prog Ser 117:149–157
Le Campion-Alsumard T, Golubic S, Priess K (1995b) Fungi in corals: symbiosis or disease? Interaction between polyps and fungi causes pearl-like skeleton biomineralization. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 117:137–147
Lederberg J, McCray AT (2001) Ome SweetOmics—a genealogical treasury of words. Scientist 15(7):8–8
Lee S, Davy SK, Tang SL, Kench PS (2016) Mucus sugar content shapes the bacterial community structure in thermally stressed Acropora muricata. Front Microbiol 7:371

Lema KA, Willis BL, Bourne DG (2012) Corals form characteristic associations with symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria. Appl Environ Microbiol 78(9):3136–3144
Lesser MP (2006) Oxidative stress in marine environments: biochemistry and physiological ecology. Annu Rev Physiol 68:253–278
Lesser MP (2011) Coral bleaching: causes and mechanisms. In: Coral reefs: an ecosystem in transition. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 405–419
Lesser MP, Mazel CH, Gorbunov MY, Falkowski PG (2004) Discovery of symbiotic nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria in corals. Science 305(5686):997–1000
Li ZY, Wang YZ, He LM, Zheng HJ (2015) CORRIGENDUM: metabolic profiles of prokaryotic and eukaryotic communities in deep-sea sponge Neamphius huxleyi indicated by metagenomics. Sci Rep 5
Littman RA, Bourne DG, Willis BL (2010) Responses of coral-associated bacterial communities to heat stress differ with Symbiodinium type on the same coral host. Mol Ecol 19(9):1978–1990
Littman R, Willis BL, Bourne DG (2011) Metagenomic analysis of the coral holobiont during a natural bleaching event on the Great Barrier Reef. Environ Microbiol Rep 3(6):651–660
Magnusson SH, Fine M, Kühl M (2007) Light microclimate of endolithic phototrophs in the scleractinian corals Montipora monasteriata and Porites cylindrica. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 332: 119–128
Maragos JE, Jokiel PL (1986) Reef corals of Johnston Atoll: one of the world's most isolated reefs. Coral Reefs 4(3):141–150
Marcelino VR, Verbruggen H (2016) Multi-marker metabarcoding of coral skeletons reveals a rich microbiome and diverse evolutionary origins of endolithic algae. Sci Rep 6:31508
Marcelino VR, Morrow KM, van Oppen MJ, Bourne DG, Verbruggen H (2017) Diversity and stability of coral endolithic microbial communities at a naturally high pCO2 reef. Mol Ecol 26(19):5344–5357
Marcelino VR, Van Oppen MJ, Verbruggen H (2018) Highly structured prokaryote communities exist within the skeleton of coral colonies. ISME J 12(1):300–303
Marshall P, Schuttenberg H (2006) Adapting coral reef management in the face of climate change. Coast Estuar Stud 61:223–241
Marshall PA, Schuttenberg HZ, West JM (2006) A reef manager's guide to coral bleaching
Martínez Cruz P, Ibáñez AL, Monroy Hermosillo OA, Ramírez Saad HC (2012) Use of probiotics in aquaculture. ISRN Microbiol 2012
Martiny JB, Eisen JA, Penn K, Allison SD, Horner-Devine MC (2011) Drivers of bacterial β-diversity depend on spatial scale. Proc Natl Acad Sci 108(19):7850–7854
McCook GDPLJ (2002) The fate of bleached corals: patterns and dynamics of algal recruitment. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 232:115–128
McDaniel LD, Rosario K, Breitbart M, Paul JH (2014) Comparative metagenomics: natural populations of induced prophages demonstrate highly unique, lower diversity viral sequences. Environ Microbiol 16(2):570–585
Meesters EH, Bak RP (1993) Effects of coral bleaching on tissue regeneration potential and colony survival. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 96:189–198
Meikle P, Richards GN, Yellowlees D (1987) Structural determination of the oligosaccharide side chains from a glycoprotein isolated from the mucus of the coral Acropora formosa. J Biol Chem 262(35):16941–16947
Meikle P, Richards GN, Yellowlees D (1988) Structural investigations on the mucus from six species of coral. Mar Biol 99(2):187–193
Meron D, Rodolfo-Metalpa R, Cunning R, Baker AC, Fine M, Banin E (2012) Changes in coral microbial communities in response to a natural pH gradient. ISME J 6(9):1775–1785
Miller AW, Blackwelder P, Al-Sayegh H, Richardson LL (2011) Fine-structural analysis of black band disease-infected coral reveals boring cyanobacteria and novel bacteria. Dis Aquat Org 93(3):179–190

Molchanova VI, Ovodova RG, Ovodov YS, Elkin YN, Santana VF (1985) Studies of the polysaccharide moiety of corallan, a glycoprotein from Pseudopterogorgia americana. Carbohydr Res 141(2):289–293

Mora C, Graham NA, Nyström M (2016) Ecological limitations to the resilience of coral reefs. Coral Reefs 35(4):1271–1280

Morris LA, Voolstra CR, Quigley KM, Bourne DG, Bay LK (2019) Nutrient availability and metabolism affect the stability of coral–symbiodiniaceae symbioses. Trends Microbiol 27(8): 678–689

Muller-Parker G, D'elia CF, Cook CB (2015) Interactions between corals and their symbiotic algae. In: Coral reefs in the Anthropocene. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 99–116

Muscatine L (1990) The role of symbiotic algae in carbon and energy flux in reef corals. Coral Reefs 25(1.29)

Muscatine L, Porter JW (1977) Reef corals: mutualistic symbioses adapted to nutrient-poor environments. Bioscience 27(7):454–460

Nekola JC, White PS (1999) The distance decay of similarity in biogeography and ecology. J Biogeogr 26(4):867–878

Odum HT, Odum EP (1955) Trophic structure and productivity of a windward coral reef community on Eniwetok Atoll. Ecol Monogr 25(3):291–320

Orsi W, Biddle JF, Edgcomb V (2013) Deep sequencing of subseafloor eukaryotic rRNA reveals active fungi across marine subsurface provinces. PLoS One 8(2):e56335

Paul JH, Sullivan MB (2005) Marine phage genomics: what have we learned? Curr Opin Biotechnol 16(3):299–307

Pogoreutz C, Rädecker N, Cardenas A, Gärdes A, Voolstra CR, Wild C (2017) Sugar enrichment provides evidence for a role of nitrogen fixation in coral bleaching. Glob Chang Biol 23(9): 3838–3848

Quigley KM, Willis BL, Kenkel CD (2019) Transgenerational inheritance of shuffled symbiont communities in the coral Montipora digitata. Sci Rep 9(1):1–11

Rädecker N, Pogoreutz C, Voolstra CR, Wiedenmann J, Wild C (2015) Nitrogen cycling in corals: the key to understanding holobiont functioning? Trends Microbiol 23(8):490–497

Radtke G, Le Campion-Alsumard T, Golubić S (1996) Microbial assemblages of the bioerosional. Algol Stud 83:469–482

Raina JB, Tapiolas D, Willis BL, Bourne DG (2009) Coral-associated bacteria and their role in the biogeochemical cycling of sulfur. Appl Environ Microbiol 75(11):3492–3501

Ralph PJ, Larkum AW, Kühl M (2007) Photobiology of endolithic microorganisms in living coral skeletons: 1. Pigmentation, spectral reflectance and variable chlorophyll fluorescence analysis of endoliths in the massive corals Cyphastrea serailia, Porites lutea and Goniastrea australensis. Mar Biol 152(2):395–404

Reis AMM, Araújo SD Jr, Moura RL, Francini-Filho RB, Pappas G Jr, Coelho AMA et al (2009) Bacterial diversity associated with the Brazilian endemic reef coral Mussismilia braziliensis. J Appl Microbiol 106(4):1378–1387

Reshef L, Koren O, Loya Y, Zilber-Rosenberg I, Rosenberg E (2006) The coral probiotic hypothesis. Environ Microbiol 8(12):2068–2073

Richmond RH (1997) Reproduction and recruitment in corals: critical links in the persistence of reefs. In: Life and death of coral reefs. Chapman & Hall, New York, pp 175–197

Riegl B (2002) Effects of the 1996 and 1998 positive sea-surface temperature anomalies on corals, coral diseases and fish in the Arabian Gulf (Dubai, UAE). Mar Biol 140(1):29–40

Rinkevich B (2008) Management of coral reefs: we have gone wrong when neglecting active reef restoration. Mar Pollut Bull 56(11):1821–1824

Ritchie KB (2006) Regulation of microbial populations by coral surface mucus and mucus-associated bacteria. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 322:1–14

Ritchie KB, Smith GW (1997) Physiological comparison of bacterial communities from various species of scleractinian corals. In: Proc 8th Int Coral Reef Symp, vol 1, pp 521–526

Rogers CS, Miller J, Muller EM, Edmunds P, Nemeth RS, Beets JP et al (2008) Ecology of coral reefs in the US Virgin Islands. In: Coral reefs of the USA. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 303–373
Rohwer F, Thurber RV (2009) Viruses manipulate the marine environment. Nature 459(7244): 207–212
Rohwer F, Seguritan V, Azam F, Knowlton N (2002) Diversity and distribution of coral-associated bacteria. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 243:1–10
Rosenberg E, Koren O, Reshef L, Efrony R, Zilber-Rosenberg I (2007) The role of microorganisms in coral health, disease and evolution. Nat Rev Microbiol 5(5):355–362
Santos HF, Carmo FL, Duarte G, Dini-Andreote F, Castro CB, Rosado AS et al (2014) Climate change affects key nitrogen-fixing bacterial populations on coral reefs. ISME J 8(11): 2272–2279
Santos HF, Duarte GAS, Rachid CTC, Chaloub RM, Calderon EN, Marangoni LFB et al (2015) Impact of oil spills on coral reefs can be reduced by bioremediation using probiotic microbiota. Sci Rep 5:18268
Santos HF, Carmo FL, Martirez N, Duarte GA, Calderon EN, Castro CB et al (2016) Cyanobacterial and microeukaryotic profiles of healthy, diseased, and dead Millepora alcicornis from the South Atlantic. Dis Aquat Org 119(2):163–172
Schlichter D, Zscharnack B, Krisch H (1995) Transfer of photoassimilates from endolithic algae to coral tissue. Naturwissenschaften 82(12):561–564
Schönberg CHL, Wisshak M (2012) The perks of being endolithic. Aquat Biol 17(1):1–5
Shashar N, Stambler N (1992) Endolithic algae within corals-life in an extreme environment. J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 163(2):277–286
Shashar N, Cohen Y, Loya Y, Sar N (1994) Nitrogen fixation (acetylene reduction) in stony corals: evidence for coral-bacteria interactions. Mar Ecol Prog Ser:259–264
Silveira CB, Cavalcanti GS, Walter JM, Silva-Lima AW, Dinsdale EA, Bourne DG et al (2017) Microbial processes driving coral reef organic carbon flow. FEMS Microbiol Rev 41(4): 575–595
Singh BK, Bardgett RD, Smith P, Reay DS (2010) Microorganisms and climate change: terrestrial feedbacks and mitigation options. Nat Rev Microbiol 8(11):779–790
Smith KL Jr, Messié M, Sherman AD, Huffard CL, Hobson BW, Ruhl HA, Boetius A (2015) Navigating the uncertain future of global oceanic time series. Eos, Transactions American Geophysical Union, p 96
Solomon S, Manning M, Marquis M, Qin D (2007) Climate change 2007-the physical science basis: working group I contribution to the fourth assessment report of the IPCC, vol 4. Cambridge University Press
Stolarski J, Kitahara MV, Miller DJ, Cairns SD, Mazur M, Meibom A (2011) The ancient evolutionary origins of Scleractinia revealed by azooxanthellate corals. BMC Evol Biol 11(1): 316
Swain TD, Lax S, Lake N, Grooms H, Backman V, Marcelino LA (2018) Relating coral skeletal structures at different length scales to growth, light availability to Symbiodinium, and thermal bleaching. Front Mar Sci 5:450
Sweet MJ, Bulling MT (2017) On the importance of the microbiome and pathobiome in coral health and disease. Front Mar Sci 4:9
Tallon P, Magajna B, Lofranco C, Leung KT (2005) Microbial indicators of faecal contamination in water: a current perspective. Water Air Soil Pollut 166(1–4):139–166
Tchernov D, Gorbunov MY, De Vargas C, Yadav SN, Milligan AJ, Häggblom M, Falkowski PG (2004) Membrane lipids of symbiotic algae are diagnostic of sensitivity to thermal bleaching in corals. Proc Natl Acad Sci 101(37):13531–13535
Thompson JR, Rivera HE, Closek CJ, Medina M (2015) Microbes in the coral holobiont: partners through evolution, development, and ecological interactions. Front Cell Infect Microbiol 4:176
Thurber RV, Willner-Hall D, Rodriguez-Mueller B, Desnues C, Edwards RA, Angly F et al (2009) Metagenomic analysis of stressed coral holobionts. Environ Microbiol 11(8):2148–2163

Torda G, Donelson JM, Aranda M, Barshis DJ, Bay L, Berumen ML et al (2017) Rapid adaptive responses to climate change in corals. Nat Clim Chang 7(9):627–636
Tracy AM, Koren O, Douglas N, Weil E, Harvell CD (2015) Persistent shifts in Caribbean coral microbiota are linked to the 2010 warm thermal anomaly. Environ Microbiol Rep 7(3):471–479
Trapido-Rosenthal H, Zielke S, Owen R, Buxton L, Boeing B, Bhagooli R, Archer J (2005) Increased zooxanthellae nitric oxide synthase activity is associated with coral bleaching. Biol Bull 208(1):3–6
Trenberth KE, Jones PD, Ambenje P, Bojariu R, Easterling D, Klein Tank A et al (2007) Observations: surface and atmospheric climate change. Chapter 3. In: Climate change, pp 235–336
Trevathan-Tackett SM, Sherman CD, Huggett MJ, Campbell AH, Laverock B, Hurtado-McCormick V et al (2019) A horizon scan of priorities for coastal marine microbiome research. Nat Ecol Evol 3(11):1509–1520
Tribollet A (2008) The boring microflora in modern coral reef ecosystems: a review of its roles. In: Current developments in bioerosion. Springer, Berlin, pp 67–94
van der Voort M, Kempenaar M, van Driel M, Raaijmakers JM, Mendes R (2016) Impact of soil heat on reassembly of bacterial communities in the rhizosphere microbiome and plant disease suppression. Ecol Lett 19(4):375–382
van Oppen MJ, Blackall LL (2019) Coral microbiome dynamics, functions and design in a changing world. Nat Rev Microbiol 17(9):557–567
van Oppen MJ, Oliver JK, Putnam HM, Gates RD (2015) Building coral reef resilience through assisted evolution. Proc Natl Acad Sci 112(8):2307–2313
Van Oppen MJ, Gates RD, Blackall LL, Cantin N, Chakravarti LJ, Chan WY et al (2017) Shifting paradigms in restoration of the world's coral reefs. Glob Chang Biol 23(9):3437–3448
Vroom PS, Smith CM (2001) The challenge of siphonous green algae. Am Sci 89(6):525–531
Wangpraseurt D, Holm JB, Larkum AW, Pernice M, Ralph PJ, Suggett DJ, Kühl M (2017) In vivo microscale measurements of light and photosynthesis during coral bleaching: evidence for the optical feedback loop? Front Microbiol 8:59
Ward S, Harrison P, Hoegh-Guldberg O (2002) Coral bleaching reduces reproduction of scleractinian corals and increases susceptibility to future stress. In: Proceedings of the ninth international coral reef symposium, Bali, 23–27 October 2000, vol 2, pp 1123–1128
Wegley L, Edwards R, Rodriguez-Brito B, Liu H, Rohwer F (2007) Metagenomic analysis of the microbial community associated with the coral Porites astreoides. Environ Microbiol 9(11): 2707–2719
Wellington GM, Glynn PW (2007) Responses of coral reefs to El Niñno-Southern Oscillation Sea-warming events. In: Geological approaches to coral reef ecology. Springer, New York, pp 342–385
Wernberg T, Russell BD, Moore PJ, Ling SD, Smale DA, Campbell A et al (2011) Impacts of climate change in a global hotspot for temperate marine biodiversity and ocean warming. J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 400(1–2):7–16
West AG, Waite DW, Deines P, Bourne DG, Digby A, McKenzie VJ, Taylor MW (2019) The microbiome in threatened species conservation. Biol Conserv 229:85–98
Wigington CH, Sonderegger D, Brussaard CP, Buchan A, Finke JF, Fuhrman JA et al (2016) Re-examination of the relationship between marine virus and microbial cell abundances. Nat Microbiol 1(3):15024
Williams WM, Viner AB, Broughton WJ (1987) Nitrogen fixation (acetylene reduction) associated with the living coral Acropora variabilis. Mar Biol 94(4):531–535
Wilson WH, Chapman DM (2001) Observation of virus-like particles in thin sections of the plumose anemone, Metridium senile. J Mar Biol Assoc U K 81(5):879
Wilson WH, Dale AL, Davy JE, Davy SK (2005) An enemy within? Observations of virus-like particles in reef corals. Coral Reefs 24(1):145–148
Wommack KE, Colwell RR (2000) Virioplankton: viruses in aquatic ecosystems. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64(1):69–114

Yamazaki SS, Nakamura T, Yuen YS, Yamasaki H (2008) Reef–building coral Goniastrea aspera harbour a novel filamentous cyanobacterium in their skeleton. In: Proceedings of the 11th international coral reef symposium, vol 1, pp 265–268

Yang SH, Lee ST, Huang CR, Tseng CH, Chiang PW, Chen CP et al (2016) Prevalence of potential nitrogen-fixing, green sulfur bacteria in the skeleton of reef-building coral Isopora palifera. Limnol Oceanogr 61(3):1078–1086

Yarden O, Ainsworth TD, Roff G, Leggat W, Fine M, Hoegh-Guldberg O (2007) Increased prevalence of ubiquitous ascomycetes in an acropoid coral (Acropora formosa) exhibiting symptoms of brown band syndrome and skeletal eroding band disease. Appl Environ Microbiol 73(8):2755–2757

Zaneveld JR, Burkepile DE, Shantz AA, Pritchard CE, McMinds R, Payet JP et al (2016) Overfishing and nutrient pollution interact with temperature to disrupt coral reefs down to microbial scales. Nat Commun 7(1):1–12

Zhang ZQ (2011) Animal biodiversity: an outline of higher-level classification and survey of taxonomic richness. Magnolia Press

Zinger L, Amaral-Zettler LA, Fuhrman JA, Horner-Devine MC, Huse SM, Welch DBM et al (2011) Global patterns of bacterial beta-diversity in seafloor and seawater ecosystems. PLoS One 6(9): e24570

Zubia M, Peyrot-Clausade M (2001) Internal bioerosion of Acropora formosa in Réunion (Indian Ocean): microborer and macroborer activities. Oceanol Acta 24(3):251–262

A Paradigm Shift in the Role of the Microbiomes in Environmental Health and Agriculture Sustainability

6

Emmanuel Atiatorme, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, Ekamber Kariali, and Pola Sudhakar

Abstract

In recent days, environmental pollution has been a major global setback, which emanates from the increasing human population and anthropological activities. The microbiomes are ubiquitous and have occupied every single part of our natural environment. They are very diverse in carrying out their activities in the environment such as their metabolism and association with other flora and fauna components, processing and monitoring the environment health besides upgrading our agriculture system. In this chapter, we detail the significant role of microbiomes in environmental health and agriculture sustainability. Here, we try to investigate the ability of the microbiome to transform contaminants into toxic-free or nonhazardous bioactive compounds in other to improve the health of the environment and emphasize the beneficial roles played by the microbiome in agriculture sustainability. Many authors have reported that biotransformation is one of the key elements that can be used to scan and treat contaminants in our environment. Studies reported the effectiveness of microbes in the degradation of crude oil in contaminated soil. The substantial aid of biofertilizers in improving the health of the environment and agriculture sustainability was also reported by

E. Atiatorme
Department of Science and Environment, University of Education, Winneba, Ghana

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

E. Kariali
School of Life Sciences, Sambalpur University, Sambalpur, Orissa, India

P. Sudhakar (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, AUCST, Andhra University, Visakhapatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India
e-mail: sudhakar@andhrauniversity.edu.in

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_6

many studies. Therefore, we suggest a holistic approach to solving and maintaining a healthy environment for all.

Keywords

Biotransformation · Biofertilizer · Bioremediation · Endophytes · Phyllosphere · Microbiome

6.1 Introduction

Any collection of microbiota is referred to as a microbiome. They are found everywhere, including in or on the body of an organism. All animals and plants have a microbiome that fosters key roles in their health and immediate surroundings. Microbiomes that live in symbiotic associations with organisms frequently provide their hosts with useful biological services. They are often referred to as useful microbiome because of their mentioned effect.

Now, more than ever, the productivity of plants and animals for agriculture sustainability has become the focus of utilizing microbiome natural adaptive potentials while causing the least amount of environmental disruption possible. This new strategy has the potential to replace the usage of hazardous agrochemicals with the deployment of symbiotic microbes in other to enhance crop and livestock nutrition with less environmental pollution. According to Noble and Ruaysoongnern (2010), because plants are genetically dependent on the favorable tasks supplied by their symbiotic cohabitants, it is possible microbes can be widely used in sustainable agriculture. The plant microbial symbioses have agronomic potential, which is derived from an examination of their environmental effects studied most extensively for nitrogen fixation (Franche et al. 2009). Currently, a broad array of microbial species preparations can be utilized to boost the production of crops. Beneficial symbiont impacts also have increased in tandem with their host specificity, making it ideal for nutritional types to colonize their plant-specific hosts (Provorov and Vorobyov 2009).

The microbiomes have a significant impact on reducing chemical contaminants in the environment by converting these contaminants into harmless bioactive materials (De Lorenzo 2008; Ufarté et al. 2015). In terms of mass balance, the microbial transformations are normally measured to be the most vital degradation processes, as compared to other types of transformation processes. However, there is rising proof that the increasing levels of environmental chemical pollution have a direct negative effect on the health of the environment, (Diamond et al. 2015) for example, the invertebrate biodiversity losses in streams polluted by pesticides (Beketov et al. 2013).

Given the growing need to address environmental and human health issues, microbes can no longer be relied on to reduce contaminant levels in a passive manner (Bernhardt et al. 2017). Rather, we should capitalize on their abilities to purify our environmental resources by developing engineered systems that are

optimized for effectively wiping out these anomalies or by modifying new chemicals to preserve their activities and make them easily transformable to harmless compounds in the environment. It is therefore essential to tackle environmental pollution practically and cost-effectively by employing microbial remediation, which is a process for reducing environmental contaminants by using microorganisms and their metabolites or other by-products.

The approach of next-generation sequencing (NGS) and whole metagenome shotgun (WMS), conversely, are used to investigate the overall genomic content of a sample and uncover novel metabolic functions of microorganisms. Furthermore, when compared to 16S rRNA gene sequencing-generated taxonomic profiles, a higher taxonomic resolution can be achieved (Liu et al. 2018; Megharaj et al. 2011). The thorough characterization of microbial diversity, metabolic roles of microorganisms, and other factors that influence their metabolism could help researchers figure out the genetic pool of enzymes essential for pollution tolerance and survival (González-Toril and Aguilera 2019; Techtmann and Hazen 2016). In some cases, polluted sites may already have microorganism species that tolerate or transform the contaminant. However, because of a deficiency in a suitable carbon source, those aren't necessarily the most numerous species (Techtmann and Hazen 2016).

6.2 Microbiome Pollutant Transformation

Surface runoff and wastewater treatment release environmental waste products into the environment regularly. People migrate to anaerobic conditions and aquatic environments that receive wastewater effluent. Anaerobic bacteria can alter the structure, destiny, and transit of these newly found pollutants once they reach their destination. Many of these transformed contaminants are new micropollutants that have not yet been thoroughly investigated. Their ability to retain waste product activity is a source of concern as in the case of pharmaceutical activities (Haddad et al. 2015). The phenylmethyl ether drug, known as venlafaxine, which is responsible for a serotonin-norepinephrine uptake inhibitor, has been reported to be demethylated by anaerobic microorganisms. However, its metabolite is a prescription serotonin-norepinephrine uptake inhibitor (Gasser et al. 2012). These effects point to some important roles played by the microbiome in environmental and human health.

Any advanced approaches aimed at reducing contaminants to environmental exposure will require an understanding of the causal links between contaminant removal, the key driving agents of biotransformation at reduced accumulation, and how their presence and activity are affected by environmental conditions.

Any recorded contaminant biotransformation outcome is the result of a complex interaction of multiple factors, including the pollutants' bioavailable concentrations, the composition, and capabilities of the microbial community, and the existence of suitable substrates and electron donors or acceptors (Meckenstock et al. 2015; Poursat et al. 2019). These factors are determined by various environmental factors

(e.g., redox conditions, temperature, humidity, nutrient status, chemical exposure, microbial residence time, etc.) and thus exert control over contaminant biotransformation. The extent to which each contaminant is biotransformed is determined in large part by those factors, as well as its intrinsic recalcitrance, or the ability to interact with specific enzymes which are determined by their chemical structure. Many waste products, for example, contain phenylmethyl ether substructures that determined demethylation substrates in anoxic environments. The phenylmethyl ether structure occurs naturally in lignin, and lignin metabolites containing phenylmethyl ether have long been recognized as carbon sources for anaerobic microbes (Frazer and Young 1985).

Over decades of years now, a substantial body of biotransformation knowledge has been accumulated for many major legacies in treating contaminants, primarily from the perspective of bioremediation (Tratnyek et al. 2020). Contaminants in this environment are metabolically destroyed, meaning they can be utilized by microorganisms as carbon or other nutrition sources, as well as electron donors or acceptors, and therefore drive the overall biodegradation setting.

6.2.1 Bioremediation

Among the existing environmental pollution control strategies, bioremediation technology is gaining traction and is quickly becoming a research hotspot because of its high efficacy, low cost, ease of operation and management, and lack of environmental impact. Besides, some environmentally friendly heavy metals passivation rejuvenation technologies and modern agronomic technologies can alter the occurrence of heavy metals elements in the soil to stabilize their effective state and potentially stop the migration and transformation of biologically effective means of ecological heavy metals. This has evolved as a key area of advancement for environmental in situ restoration technology. Bioremediation technology usually employs the knowledge of plants, animals, fungi, and microorganisms strategies in solving existing environmental problems.

6.2.1.1 Microbial Remediation

Microbial remediation technology employs the use of native or artificially domesticated microorganisms with specialized activities to lower the activity of contaminants or convert them into harmless chemicals using their metabolism under suitable environmental circumstances. Microbial remediation is primarily separated into bacterial and fungal remediation, with biosorption, bioconcentration, and biotransformation as the primary remedial principles.

According to prior research in the field of microorganisms, there are hundreds of different kinds of bacteria that may digest crude oil in contaminated soil. *Pseudomonas* bacteria, alkali-producing rod bacteria, colorless rod bacteria, *Trichoderma* fungi, *Penicillium* fungi, *Aspergillus* fungi, and other fungi, for example, have substantial effects. These fungal microorganisms exhibit excellent results in the cleanup of crude oil-contaminated soil. Conditions apply to the usage of

microorganisms. Only enzyme-active fungal microorganisms that disintegrate quickly and have a high level of environmental adaptability can effectively remediate polluted soil. And, according to biological specialists, the combined action of several fungal-bacteria greatly outweighs the breakdown effect of a single fungal microorganism (Yang et al. 2011). Microorganisms have the benefits of small individuals and large specific surface area, rapid reproduction and strong metabolism, a broad array of types and distribution, high adaptability, and ease of cultivation, among others. Microbial remediation includes limitations such as low genetic stability, which makes it easier for contaminants to mutate, the inability to eliminate toxins, and the need to compete with indigenous strains, which makes it easy to be influenced by the environment.

6.2.1.2 Bacteria Remediation

The most prevalent way in microbial remediation technology is to use microorganisms to clean up heavy metal-contaminated soil. There are abundant bacteria in the natural world, particularly in soil, and provide a rich source of research materials for this technique. In general, it has been shown that bacteria that can withstand high amounts of heavy metals from polluted soil may be identified and purified and engineered for soil repair (Tuo et al. 2021). Xiaoming et al. (2018) demonstrated the isolation of *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* in the oil field after improving the cultural conditions. The microorganisms were employed to treat simulated lead-contaminated soil at various pollution levels, and the most optimal temperature, pH value, and inoculums amount of the cultivation substrate were determined. Similarly, Valentina (2005) also identified microbial strains for bioremediation of hazardous heavy metals from metal-polluted soil, mud, and water.

According to the findings, first and secondary screening yielded 72 species of acidophilic thermophilic-altered microorganisms with metal resistance and biosorption capacity. PSB (phosphate-dissolving bacteria) were isolated from coral, seaweed, and mangrove and tested for their ability to detoxify heavy metals (Kailasam et al. 2018). A bacterium that makes extracellular polysaccharides was isolated using 16S rRNA to identify it as *Bacillus cereus* vk1. The bacteria can successfully adsorb Hg^{2+}, providing a bioremediation method for Hg^{2+}-polluted ecosystems. Kang and So (2016) again investigated the link between heavy metal resistance and antibiotic resistance in ureolytic bacteria and discovered that heavy metal resistance is closely associated with antibiotic resistance in these isolates.

In comparing both the chemical and the physical treatment procedures, bioaugmentation is more practical and cost-effective (Hussain et al. 2019; Tao et al. 2017). It is also noted that the addition of lipophilic bacteria can result in the achievement of bioaugmentation (Abena et al. 2019). Oleophilic bacteria can exist in an array of petroleum-contaminated habitats, including saltwater, coasts, sludge, and soil (Kumari et al. 2018). They may be able to survive, but only on hydrocarbons as a result assists in degrading or mineralizing dangerous and hazardous petroleum pollutants (Bacosa et al. 2012; Lee et al. 2018).

In various polluted situations, we can discover several species of bacteria that degrade. DNA isotope probing (DNASIP) technique is used to determine the types

and soil organisms' actions (Wang et al. 2021). *Actinomycetes* are a prevalent phylum in soil contaminated with polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. In contaminated soil in the Philippines, *Acidovorax*, *Rhodoferax*, *Hydrogenophaga*, and *Polaromonas* were discovered. In a typical contaminated soil, several hydrocarbon products and *Acidobacteria* coexist (Sui et al. 2021).

Several bacteria, such as *Rhodococcus, Pseudomonas,* and *Scedosporium species,* have been shown to break down petroleum pollutants in studies (Pi et al. 2017; Yuan et al. 2018). Bacteria break down hydrocarbons mostly through aerobic mechanisms (Wang et al. 2010). Hydrocarbon catabolism is often expedited when oxygen serves as an electron acceptor (Cao et al. 2009). Degradation is mediated in aerobic mode by utilizing redox reactions, hydroxylation, as well as dehydrogenation. Cytochrome P_{450}, monooxygenase, peroxidase, dehydrogenase, dioxygenase, and hydroxylase are some of the enzymes that aid in the biodegradation of hydrocarbons (Wang et al. 2010; Huan et al. 2019). *Rhodococcus* species, *Pseudomonas* species, and *Acinetobacter* species are the bacteria that have the greatest impact on the breakdown of petroleum pollutants. According to research, cytochrome P_{450} enzyme or non-heme iron oxygenase (AlkB) may oxidize short- and medium-chain alkanes (C5-C16). Alkane long-chain oxidation is mediated by monooxygenase putative flavin binding (AlmA) and monooxygenase long-chain alkane (LadA) (Liu et al. 2021).

6.2.1.3 Mycoremediation

In fungal remediation, the ability of some fungi in the soil ecosystem to digest contaminants is employed to clean up contaminated soil. Some fungi are super-enriched organisms that can absorb enormous amounts of heavy metal ions from the environment and store them in the fruit body to help the soil heal. Mohammadi et al. looked examined fungal populations in soil samples from lead and zinc contaminated locations in Zanian Province, Iran (2017). Microflora's cadmium, lead, and zinc effects were determined by measuring the "minimum inhibitory concentration following exposure to escalating concentrations of heavy metal chlorides," while their copper resistance was established by evaluating the total metal adsorption capacity after combustion. Heavy metal biosorption is obligate for halophilic fungus, according to Bano et al. (2018). Fungi that can clean up heavy metal-polluted soil are usually adaptable to their surroundings. They may have devised strategies to shield themselves from the dangers of heavy metal (Bazzicalupo et al. 2020).

For example, mycorrhizal fungi contain mycelia that grow into the soil, thereby increasing the surface area of plant roots (Trellu et al. 2016). Bissonnette et al. (2010) found that mycorrhizal inoculation improves the capacity to take up Cu^{2+}, Cd^{2+}, and Zn^{2+}. Endophytic mycorrhizae can aid in the development of heavy metal ion resistance in host plants. Acidification, the synthesis of chelating agents, iron transporters, organic acids, and the activation of metal phosphates are the key ways that plant-endophytic mycorrhizae synergized. When heavy metal levels in the soil approach dangerous levels, mucus generated by the fungal cell wall can mix with polyphosphate and organic acid ions in the fungal tissue to bind the heavy metal ions

and restrict mobility. It was found that arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi's adsorption capability on Mn^{2+}, Zn^{2+}, and Cd^{2+} was 1.6%, 2.8%, and 13.3% of their dry weights, respectively (Jin et al. 2018). Furthermore, after the fungus infects the plant roots, the number and composition of root exudates alter, impacting heavy metal oxidation in the rhizosphere (Niu et al. 2011).

6.2.1.4 Integrated Remediation

Some methods are developed to allow rhizosphere nitrogen-fixing bacteria and leprosy plants to thrive in varying amounts of heavy metal solutions containing Cr (VI) and Cd(II) (Sobariu et al. 2017). In the bacteria-plant system, nitrogen-fixing bacteria may increase Jatropha's seedling growth, root length, stem length, and dry biomass, while the plant's reaction to heavy metals improves, implying that the two have a good symbiotic relationship and can build a reliable joint remediation system. Alfalfa phytoremediation, pseudomonas bioremediation, and bioaugmentation facilitated phytoremediation (growing alfalfa plants in soil infected with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to jointly repair metal pollutants and hydrocarbon-contaminated soil) have the best benefits, according to Agnello et al. (2016).

The combined plant-microorganism remediation approach improves plant root systems while oxidatively degrading crude oil and other pollutants by using the complementary link between plants and soil microorganisms (Fig. 6.1). The effect of the conventional microbial remediation technique is insignificant when the amount of crude oil is too tiny to support the survival and growth of soil microbial. To some

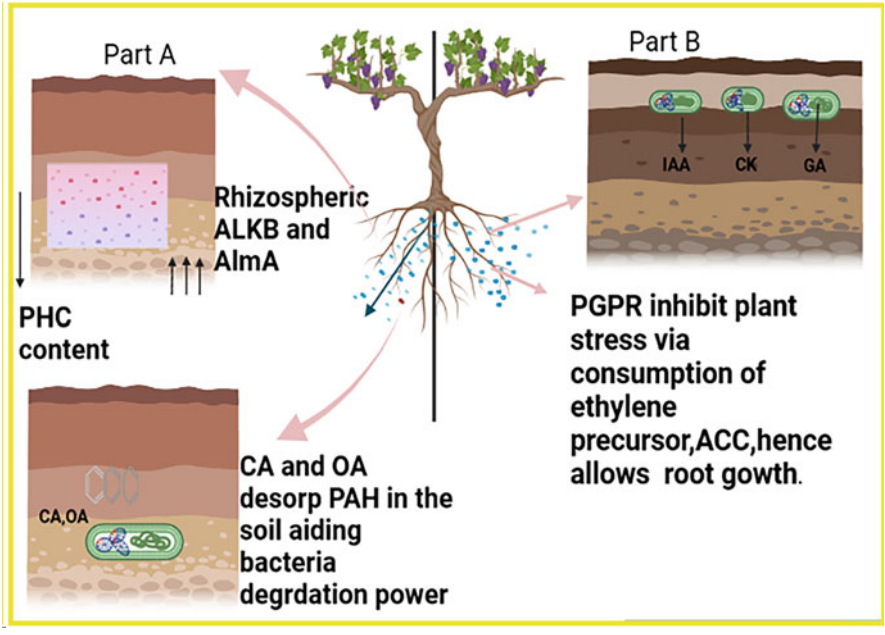


Fig. 6.1 Plant microbiome interaction

extent, the oxygen absorbed by green plants and some chemical products formed by their rhizomes can aid in the decomposition and destruction of soil microorganisms. As a result, it is possible to combine traditional biodegradation technology with integrated plant-microorganism remediation technology to boost soil remediation capabilities by combining their benefits. The effect of combined plant-microorganism remediation technology is superior to standard biodegradation technology in the same soil environment (Yue et al. 2014). The current integrated plant-microorganism remediation technology, on the other hand, has a limited application range because it only uses plants to remediate and optimize soil quality; plant growth is usually affected by climate, environment, and soil quality; soil remediation effect is poor when only one type of plant is used; recycled dead leaves and branches must be treated, and so on (Zuo et al. 2020).

During rhizoremediation, major plant-microbe interactions occur. Plant root exudates stimulate hydrocarbon-degrading bacteria and aid in the desorption of pollutants to bound to soil particles, increasing rhizobacteria's access to them in part (A). In part (B), rhizosphere microorganisms enhance plant development by producing plant hormones and degrading 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC), the precursor of the stress hormone ethylene, among other methods. PHC stands for petroleum hydrocarbons; alkB stands for alkane monooxygenase; AlmA is a flavin-binding monooxygenase; OA stands for oxalic acid; CA stands for citric acid; PAH stands for polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon; PGPR stands for plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria.

Electrospun cyclodextrin fiber (CD-F) can encapsulate bacteria for bioremediation, according to Zuo et al. (2020). They encapsulated bacteria in an electrospun cyclodextrin fiber matrix to treat wastewater as a result the bacteria/CD-F had a greater pollutant removal potential than free bacteria. The reason for this is because CD-F fiber biological composites have natural and nontoxic qualities. The substance improves the survivability of bacteria, and bacteria can use CD as an additional carbon source to help them proliferate. New bio-composite materials with bioremediation potential are developed using the notion of bacterial cell encapsulation for the treatment of heavy metal contamination.

According to a study, it is vital to use effective degrading bacteria to break down crude oil pollutants while increasing the electric charge and electric field to decompose and degrade crude oil pollutants. The crude oil pollutants may be quickly dissolved using DC voltage, which will help to improve soil quality and speed up the decomposition of crude oil pollutants (Dongyi et al. 2010).

The advantages of physical, chemical, and bioremediation methods can be integrated using a combination of the three. Physical and chemical technology can lessen the inhibitory effect of toxicity on microorganisms, while microbial restoration can reduce the remediation burden both physically and chemically. Zhi-Yong et al. (2019) and colleagues coupled EDTA-assisted electrokinetic remediation techniques with biodegradation technology to treat crude oil and lead-contaminated soil. The toxicity of EK treatment with EDTA has been reduced significantly, allowing microorganisms to continue degrading pollutants. Direct microbial treatment will limit microbial development when the original hazardous metal

concentration is high, whereas direct use of physical and chemical procedures will result in high costs and time-consuming operations; therefore, the two can be combined to achieve economic and environmental harmony.

6.3 Beneficial Microbiome Diversity: Application in Environmental Health

Extreme habitats are one-of-a-kind ecosystems that are home to a varied range of bacteria that can live in diverse situations. Microbiomes have been found in many environments, such as high and low temperatures, hypersalinity, water scarcity, and high and low pH. Extremophiles have evolved adaptive traits that allow optimal growth at one or more environmental extremes, whereas polyextremophiles grow ideally under many environments. Temperature (psychrophiles: 2–20 °C; thermophiles: 60–115 °C), salinity (2–5 M NaCl; halophiles: 2–5 M NaCl), and pH (acidophiles: 4 acidophiles; alkaliphiles: >9) are all factors that these extremophiles can thrive in. Thermal springs are unique ecological niches among different harsh settings, containing both mesophilic and thermophilic archaea and bacteria (Saxena et al. 2015; Yadav et al. 2015a, b).

Microbiota phylogenetic characterization is done for geothermal springs all around the world. In India, thermal springs like Bakreshwar, Balarampur, Chumathang, Manikaran, and Vashisht provide an uncommon environment for thermophilic microorganisms (60–100 °C), which can be potential sources of novel genes, alleles, and microbiota (Suman et al. 2015; Sahay et al. 2017). The segregation of a broad range of psychrophilic/psychrotrophic microbiomes has resulted from the exploration of low-temperature habitats. The frigid habitat of the Indian Himalayas provides a niche for the psychrotrophic microorganisms in agricultural and biotechnological industrial uses (Yadav et al. 2017a, b, c, d). Novel colors (as food additives), extracellular enzymes (amylase, cellulase, chitinase, laccase, lipase, pectinase, protease, xylanase, galactosidase, and glycosidase), exopolysaccharide synthesis, and antifreeze chemicals are all potential bioresources for psychrophilic microorganism or biocontrol agents in extreme cold and high-altitude habitats (Yadav et al. 2015a, b).

In deserts, water scarcity/low moisture conditions combined with high temperatures result in the enrichment of microbial populations that can withstand temperature and drought extremes. Poor soils with little organic content and limited levels of accessible inorganic nutrients are characteristic in such locations. Desert microbiomes are responsible not only for the neogenesis and enhancement of soil structure but also for productivity, biogeochemical element cycling, and ecosystem balance (Verma et al. 2014). Under rainfed conditions, drought-tolerant microorganisms from hot deserts were isolated and characterized as plant growth promoters (Verma et al. 2017). PH extremes have an impact on microbial population growth and enhanced soil productivity. The availability of key micronutrients such as P, Ca, Mg, and molybdenum is harmed when the soil is acidic. Mangrove ecosystems, which are typically nutrient-deficient, notably in terms of N_2 and P,

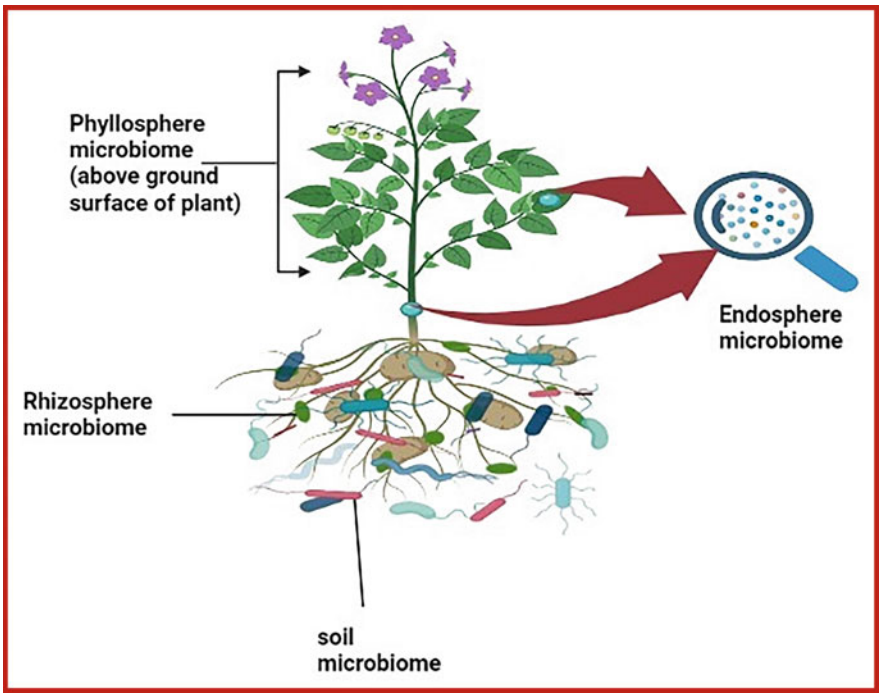


Fig. 6.2 Microbiome compositions of plants

are another useful extreme environment. However, mangroves are quite productive, because of microbial activity that results in large nutrient changes (Yadav 2017).

Rhizospheric microorganisms (dwelling near the roots in the soil), epiphytic microbes (comprising the endophytic microbes), and phyllosphere organisms are the three types of plant microbiomes. In general, three types of plant-microbe interactions are considered: epiphytic, endophytic, and rhizospheric interactions. The zone of soil is the rhizosphere where roots influence microbial activity by releasing substrates (Fig. 6.2). The ability of rhizospheric bacteria to bind to root surfaces allows them to gain the most advantage from root exudates. Several factors, for instance, soil form, soil pH, and other environmental circumstances surrounding any plants have influenced the population and abundances of rhizospheric microorganisms. From the rhizosphere of various crop plants, several microbial species from diverse genera were discovered, including *Bacillus*, *Arthrobacter*, *Aspergillus*, *Acinetobacter*, *Azospirillum*, *Enterobacter*, *Burkholderia*, *Flavobacterium*, *Haloarcula*, *Halococcus*, *Haloferax*, *Paenibacillus*, *Methylobacterium*, *Piriformospora*, and *Penicillium* (Verma et al. 2014, 2017; Yadav et al. 2017a, b, c, d; Suman et al. 2016).

Phyllosphere provides a common and unique environment for microbe-plant synergy. Plant parts, particularly leaves, are exposed to dust and air currents, resulting in the growth of characteristic flora on their surface, which is aided by

cuticles, waxes, and appendages, which aid in microbe attachment (Fig. 6.2). Phyllospheric bacteria may survive or multiply on leaves to varying degrees depending on the number of material impacts in leaf diffusates or exudates. The phyllosphere microbes may engage in an essential role in suppressing airborne infections that cause plant disease. Extremophiles are microbes that can endure extremes of temperature (5–55 °C) and UV light, such as those found on leaf surfaces. Many crop plant's phyllosphere harbors many microbes, including *Achromobacter*, *Bacillus*, *Beijerinckia*, *Burkholderia*, *Flexibacterium*, *Methylobacterium*, *Micrococcus*, *Micromonospora*, *Nocardioides*, *Pantoea*, *Streptomyces*, *Pseudomonas*, *Planomonospora*, *Penicillium*, and *Xanthomonas* (Mukhtar et al. 2010; Meena et al. 2012; Dobrovolskaya et al. 2017).

Most plants host diverse communities of microorganisms including bacteria, fungi, protists, and archaea. A variety of microbes normally colonize the above-ground parts of plants, known as epiphytes or phyllosphere microorganisms. They normally inhabit leaf surface waxes and form colonies. Endophytes (microbes recovered from inside plant tissues) are microorganisms that colonize the interior parts of plants, including the root, stem, or seeds, without causing harming the plant host. Rhizospheric microorganisms colonize soil zones where roots release substrates that influence their activities.

Endophytes (microbes recovered from inside plant tissues) are microorganisms that inhabit the inner portions of the plant, such as the inner root, stem, or seeds, without hurting the host plant (Fig. 6.2). Endophytic microorganisms penetrate host plants mostly through wounds that arise in nature and when the plant grows, as well as through the hair root and epidermal junctions. Endophytes can be passed down either vertically (from parent to child) or horizontally (from offspring to parent) (among individuals). Chemotaxis, or the movement of microbes toward root exudates, leads to attachment in the rhizosphere. The favored site of attachments and subsequent penetration is the apical root zone with a thin root layer, including the cell elongation zone and the zone of rhizosphere with small fissures generated by the formation of lateral roots. Endophytic colonization of plant roots may be aided by microbial characteristics. Microbes must create cellulolytic enzymes, such as endoglucanases and endopolygalacturonidases, to hydrolyze the exothermal walls to penetrate (Suman et al. 2016). Most plant species have entophytic microorganisms that range from symbiotic to somewhat harmful within their living tissues. From various host plants, a great number of entophytic microbes have been identified, including *Achromobacter*, *Burkholderia*, *Curtobacterium*, *Enterobacter*, *Gluconacetobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Klebsiella*, *Microbispora*, *Streptomyces*, *Pantoea*, *Pseudomonas*, *Serratia*, *Planomonospora*, and *Nocardioides* (Verma et al. 2015a, b; Rana et al. 2016; Yadav et al. 2016).

Salinity, droughts, acidification, fluctuations of low and high temperature, soil metals, and saline are all abiotic stressors that cause significant yield loss in crops. Many research on microbial diversity in severe conditions have been published, including low temperatures (Yadav et al. 2017a, b, c, d; Yadav 2015; Shukla et al. 2016), high temperatures (Yadav et al. 2015a, b; Sahay et al. 2017), saline soil, drought, acidic soil, and alkaline soil (Yadav 2015). Plant development-promoting

properties may exist in microorganisms isolated and sorted from harsh environments, allowing these abiotic stress-tolerant bacteria to be employed for plant growth under the right abiotic stress conditions.

6.4 Microbiome in Agriculture Sustainability

Bacteria, fungi, protozoa, microalgae, and viruses are some of the microbes commonly found in agricultural environments. These organisms are abundant in the soil, water, food, animal intestines, and a variety of other places. Various microbial environments show an immense variety of biochemical and metabolic properties that have evolved in microbial populations on account of genetic variation and natural selection. The knowledge of microbial variation is used in the manufacture of fermented foods like bread, yogurt, and cheese. Certain soil bacteria produce nitrogen that plants need for growth, as well as compounds that help to maintain the Earth's atmosphere in check. Other bacteria cause problems to the food supply by infecting food-producing plants and animals with illnesses that reduce productivity. Different bacteria in our bodies aid in the digestion of food, the defenses against foreign species, and the skirmishes and pitched fights with the human immune system in the natural illness process.

Obtaining a microbes full genome sequence provides important information about its biology, but it is only the first step toward understanding its biological capabilities and, if necessary, changing them for agricultural uses. Microbial biotechnology is a vital field that can help to improve, food security, food safety, nutrition in humans, animal protection, as well as agricultural science fundamental research. Microorganisms in the soil aid in the absorption of nutrients by plants. Plants and these helpful microorganisms work together to recycle nutrients. The microbes assist the plant in "absorbing" vital energy sources. Plants give their waste by-products to the microbes in exchange for food. Plant microbiomes are important agricultural bioresources because beneficial microbes can improve plant growth and nutrient uptake through, zinc, potassium, and phosphorus solubilization, fixation of nitrogen, and mechanisms such as the production of siderophore (Fe biofortification with microbial mediation in different crops). Crop yields may be increased, pollutants removed, diseases inhibited, and fixed nitrogen or new compounds produced by beneficial bacteria. Plant microflora can encourage growth through nitrogen fixation, biological control of phytopathogens through the yield of antibiotic, antifungal, or antibacterial agents, the generation of Fe-chelating compounds, nutrient competition, and the induction of procured host resistance, and the generation of plant growth regulators such as IAA, gibberellic acids, and cytokines, and biocontrol of phytopathogens through the manufacturing of antibiotic, antifungal, or antibacterial agents, and the production of plant growth regulator.

Sustainable agriculture necessitates the implementation of measures that enhance or uphold current levels of food production while minimizing environmental and human health risks. Plant microbiomes such as PGP (plant growth promoter) agents/biofertilizers are a more environmentally friendly alternative to traditional

agriculture technologies. In a variety of studies, various PGP microorganisms directly assist the growth of their plant hosts. The PGP bacteria can fix nitrogen from the air and provide it to plants. Plant microbiomes with diverse PGP abilities synthesize a variety of plant growth regulators that can aid plants at different phases of development; they may have processes for increasing the availability of Zn, P, and K for plant growth and development; and they may synthesize some lesser-known low-molecular-mass production or enzyme-modulating plant growth and development. When microorganisms produce ammonia, hydrogen cyanide, Fe-chelating chemicals (siderophores), β-1,3-glucanase, chitinases, cellulase, lipase, antibiotics, and other fluorescent pigments, they hinder the growth of other plant harmful microbes. Infection by pathogenic organisms costs the world's agriculture billions of dollars every year. The employment of microbes for disease management is the most promising technique to boost agricultural output. Nitrogen is the most significant limiting element for plant growth, and using nitrogen-fixing microorganisms as biofertilizers has proven to be the most effective and environmentally friendly way to boost crop plant growth and output. Chemical nitrogen fertilizers could be substituted with nitrogen-fixing bacteria, resulting in more productive and environmentally friendly agriculture.

6.4.1 Microbial Biofertilizers

Biofertilizers are helpful bacteria that aid plant growth and soil enrichment by increasing nutrient availability to crops. The production of healthy crops to meet the demands of the world's growing population is largely dependent on the type of fertilizers used, which are essentially used to supplement all of the nutrients in the plants. However, a greater reliance on chemical fertilizers is wreaking havoc on the environmental ecology and negatively impacting human health. As a result, using microorganisms as biofertilizers is being studied as an alternative to chemical fertilizers to improve soil fertility while also enhancing crop output. These bacteria are thought to have biopotential and to be a novel tool for offering significant agricultural advantages. These microorganisms colonize and accelerate the growth of the roots. PGP microbes have a variety of PGP characteristics that aid plant growth directly in the production of hormones and N2-fixation in plant growth, solubilization of phosphorus, potassium, and zinc and indirectly employing production of ACC deaminase, lytic enzymes, antibiotics, ammonia, siderophores, and hydrocyanic acid (Kour et al. 2017). Biofertilizers have been studied extensively, and it has been discovered that these microorganisms can give the needed nutrients to the crops at adequate levels to increase agricultural yield. Microbes with multifunctional PGP properties are environmentally benign biofertilizers for long-term agriculture (Yadav et al. 2017a, b, c, d).

Plants require both phosphorus and nitrogen to flourish. These substances are found in nature, but plants can only extract a little amount of them. Phosphate is required for crop oxidative stress, development, and quality, as well as direct and indirect nitrogen fixation. Penicillium bilaii is a fungi that aids in the release of

phosphate from the soil. It makes an organic acid, which dissolves phosphate in the soil and make it accessible to the roots. The biofertilizer of this organism is applied by immunizing seeds with the fungus or planting them directly in the ground. Rhizobium is a type of bacterium that is used to make biofertilizers. This bacterium lives in nodules on the plant's roots, which are clusters of cells. Nodules are biological factories that collect nitrogen from the air and convert it into an organic form that the plant can use.

Nature has devised this way of fertilization. The legume can use naturally occurring nitrogen instead of the pricey typical nitrogen fertilizer since it has a large population of friendly bacteria on its roots. Biofertilizers assist plants in utilizing all of the food available in the soil and air, allowing farmers to need fewer artificial fertilizers. This contributes to the long-term preservation of the ecosystem for future generations.

6.4.1.1 Biopesticides and Herbicides

Plants do not create amicable relationships with all of the soil microbes. These diseases have the ability to infect or harm plants. Scientists developed ecological "tools" that use disease-causing bacteria to control weeds and pests in an organic way. Weeds are a problem for farmers. They compete for water, nutrients, sunlight, and space with crops, as well as harboring insect and disease pests, clogging drainage and irrigation systems, denigrating crop quality, and stashing weed seeds into agricultural harvests. Bio-herbicides are an alternative to synthetic herbicides for weed management that do not have the same environmental dangers. Invasive genes in the bacteria can assault the weeds' protection genes, causing them to die. Bioherbicides have the advantage of lasting a long time in the environment, allowing them to infect additional weeds the next growth season. It has the potential to dramatically reduce farming costs if properly handled because it is less expensive than synthetic pesticides. It's also less harmful to the environment than standard herbicides, and it doesn't harm nontarget creatures.

6.4.1.2 Microbial Bioinsecticides

Biotechnology can also aid in the development of alternatives to synthetic insecticides to combat insect pests, as well as soil microorganisms that attack fungus, viruses, or bacteria that cause root diseases. To safeguard the plant during the vital seedling stage, formulas for seed coverings (inoculants) that convey these helpful organisms can be devised. Bioinsecticides do not last long in the environment with minimized shelf lives. They are efficient in minute amounts and are safer for humans and animals than insecticides, They are very specific, frequently affecting only a single insect species, and have a very specific mode of action; they are slow to act and the timing of their application is relatively critical; they are slow to act and the timing of their application is relatively critical.

6.4.1.3 Fungal Bioinsecticides

Fungi-infected diseases are reported in more than 200 species of insects, and their disease-causing features are employed in the production of bioinsecticides. Fungi are

mass produced using fermentation technology. Spores are gathered and packed before being spread across insect-infested areas. The spores utilize enzymes to attack the outer skin of the insects' bodies when they are applied. They begin to develop once inside and eventually die. Some experts believe that fungal agents have the best long-term insect control potential. This is because bioinsecticides attack in multiple ways at the same time, making insect resistance extremely difficult.

6.4.1.4 Virus-Based Bioinsecticides

Insect pests such as aphids, potato beetles, corn borers, and flea beetles are affected by baculoviruses. Bertha armyworms infect, flax, vegetable, canola, and crops, and one strain is utilized as a control agent. Traditional insecticides do not kill the worm until it reaches this stage, by which time it has already done a lot of damage.

6.5 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

The microbiome is now recognized as an integral part of our environment, according to research. The number of studies looking at the microbiome from the background of environmental toxicology is rapidly growing, and there are unique challenges for toxicology when it comes to understanding the role of the microbiome in environmental health and agriculture, such as issues with the initiation of their metabolites and toxins, the mechanism of pollutant transformation, and how environmental factors like drought and acidification affect their activities. We must not overlook the critical role they play in agriculture's long-term viability. Bacteria and algae, for example, make up the majority of epiphytic microorganisms that colonize the lower surface of floating plants. Bacterial biofilms are responsible for the removal of organics, inorganic, and metals from environmental systems. The nature and variety of bacteria are influenced by plant species and pollution concentrations in the environment. In addition, nutrient accessibility affects bacteria metabolism as well as the efficacy of pollutant removal. Endophytes and the rhizosphere both play an important role in pollution removal.

The rhizosphere microbes remove contaminants in the root complex, while the endophytes are responsible for removing pollutants within the shoots and roots. By relieving pollutant stress, increasing tolerance to environmental changes, and regulating plant growth through direct and indirect processes, a community of endophytic and rhizospheric bacteria improves the pollution removal process. Using bacteria to inoculate plant roots enable certain bacteria strains to help speed up the removal of the pollutant process. The importance of plant-microbe interaction in the pollution removal process in the environment is obvious from this knowledge. Environmental parameters such as temperature, pH, and nutrient availability contain a major effect on microbes' ability to remove pollutants. As a result, we recommend that agriculture and environmental protection organizations should plant their feet firmly on the ground to aid in the safeguarding of our ecosystem.

Acknowledgments The authors are grateful to their respective institutions for their encouragement and support.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

Abena MTB, Li T, Shah MN, Zhong W (2019) Biodegradation of total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH) is highly contaminated soils by natural attenuation and bioaugmentation. Chemosphere 234:864–874

Agnello AC, Bagard M, van Hullebusch ED, Esposito G, Huguenot D (2016) Comparative bioremediation of heavy metals and petroleum hydrocarbons co-contaminated soil by natural attenuation, phytoremediation, bioaugmentation and bioaugmentation-assisted phytoremediation. Sci Total Environ 563:693–703

Bacosa HP, Suto K, Inoue C (2012) Bacterial community dynamics during the preferential degradation of aromatic hydrocarbons by a microbial consortium. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 74:109–115

Bano A, Hussain J, Akbar A, Mehmood K, Anwar M, Hasni MS, Ali I (2018) Biosorption of heavy metals by obligate halophilic fungi. Chemosphere 199:218–222

Bazzicalupo AL, Ruytinx J, Ke YH, Coninx L, Colpaert JV, Nguyen NH et al (2020) Fungal heavy metal adaptation through single nucleotide polymorphisms and copy-number variation. Mol Ecol 29(21):4157–4169

Beketov MA, Kefford BJ, Schäfer RB, Liess M (2013) Pesticides reduce regional biodiversity of stream invertebrates. Proc Natl Acad Sci 110(27):11039–11043

Bernhardt ES, Rosi EJ, Gessner MO (2017) Synthetic chemicals as agents of global change. Front Ecol Environ 15(2):84–90

Bissonnette L, St-Arnaud M, Labrecque M (2010) Phytoextraction of heavy metals by two Salicaceae clones in symbiosis with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi during the second year of a field trial. Plant Soil 332(1):55–67

Cao B, Nagarajan K, Loh KC (2009) Biodegradation of aromatic compounds: current status and opportunities for biomolecular approaches. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85(2):207–228

De Lorenzo V (2008) Systems biology approaches to bioremediation. Curr Opin Biotechnol 19(6): 579–589

Diamond ML, de Wit CA, Molander S, Scheringer M, Backhaus T, Lohmann R, Zetzsch C (2015) Exploring the planetary boundary for chemical pollution. Environ Int 78:8–15

Dobrovolskaya OB, Krasnikov AA, Popova KI, Martinek P, Watanabe N (2017) Study on early inflorescence development in bread wheat (T. aestivum L.) lines with non-standard SCR-morphotype. Vavilovskij Zbreve˜ urnal Genetiki i Selekcii/Vavilov J Genet Breed 21(2): 222–226

Dongyi F, Yu C, Bai Y (2010) Research of microbial-phytoremediation on petroleum-contaminated soil [j]. Environ Ecol Three Gorges 32(6):57–60

Franche C, Lindström K, Elmerich C (2009) Nitrogen-fixing bacteria are associated with leguminous and non-leguminous plants. Plant Soil 321(1):35–59

Frazer AC, Young LY (1985) A gram-negative anaerobic bacterium that utilizes O-methyl substituents of aromatic acids. Appl Environ Microbiol 49(5):1345–1347

Gasser G, Pankratov I, Elhanany S, Werner P, Gun J, Gelman F, Lev O (2012) Field and laboratory studies of the fate and enantiomeric enrichment of venlafaxine and O-desmethylvenlafaxine under aerobic and anaerobic conditions. Chemosphere 88(1):98–105

González-Toril E, Aguilera Á (2019) Microbial ecology in extremely acidic environments: use of molecular tools. In: Microbial diversity in the genomic era. Academic Press, pp 227–238

Haddad T, Baginska E, Kümmerer K (2015) Transformation products of antibiotic and cytostatic drugs in the aquatic cycle that result from effluent treatment and abiotic/biotic reactions in the environment: an increasing challenge calling for higher emphasis on measures at the beginning of the pipe. Water Res 72:75–126

Huan TN, Dalla Corte DA, Lamaison S, Karapinar D, Lutz L, Menguy N et al (2019) Low-cost high-efficiency system for solar-driven conversion of CO2 to hydrocarbons. Proc Natl Acad Sci 116(20):9735–9740

Hussain I, Puschenreiter M, Gerhard S, Sani SGAS, Reichenauer TG (2019) Differentiation between physical and chemical effects of oil presence in freshly spiked soil during the rhizoremediation trial. Environ Sci Pollut Res 26(18):18451–18464

Jin Y, Luan Y, Ning Y, Wang L (2018) Effects and mechanisms of microbial remediation of heavy metals in soil: a critical review. Appl Sci 8(8):1336

Kailasam S, Sundaramanickam A, Shekhar S, Meena M, Sathishkumar RS, Balasubramanian T (2018) Biosorption of multi-heavy metals by coral associated phosphate solubilising bacteria Cronobacter muytjensii KSCAS2. J Environ Manag 222:396–401

Kang C-H, So J-S (2016) Heavy metal and antibiotic resistance of ureolytic bacteria and their immobilization of heavy metals. J Ecol Eng 97:304–312

Kour D, Rana KL, Verma P, Yadav AN, Kumar V, Singh DH (2017) Biofertilizers: eco-friendly technologies and bioresources for sustainable agriculture. In: Proceeding of an international conference on innovative research in engineering science and technology, vol 14

Kumari S, Regar RK, Manickam N (2018) Improved polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon degradation in crude oil by individuals and a consortium of bacteria. Bioresour Technol 254:174–179

Lee DW, Lee H, Kwon BO, Khim JS, Yim UH, Kim BS, Kim JJ (2018) Biosurfactant-assisted bioremediation of crude oil by indigenous bacteria isolated from Taean beach sediment. Environ Pollut 241:254–264

Liu J, Chen X, Shu HY, Lin XR, Zhou QX, Bramryd T, Huang LN (2018) Microbial community structure and function in sediments from e-waste contaminated rivers in Guiyu area of China. Environ Pollut 235:171–179

Liu J, Zhao B, Lan Y, Ma T (2021) Enhanced degradation of different crude oils by defined engineered consortia of Acinetobacter venetianus RAG-1 mutants based on their alkane metabolism. Bioresour Technol 327:124787

Meckenstock RU, Elsner M, Griebler C, Lueders T, Stumpp C, Aamand J, van Breukelen BM (2015) Biodegradation: updating the concepts of control for microbial cleanup in contaminated aquifers. Environ Sci Technol 49(12):7073–7081

Meena KK, Kumar M, Kalyuzhnaya MG, Yandigeri MS, Singh DP, Saxena AK, Arora DK (2012) Epiphytic pink-pigmented methylotrophic bacteria enhance germination and seedling growth of wheat (Triticum aestivum) by producing phytohormone. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 101(4): 777–786

Megharaj M, Ramakrishnan B, Venkateswarlu K, Sethunathan N, Naidu R (2011) Bioremediation approaches for organic pollutants: a critical perspective. Environ Int 37(8):1362–1375

Mukhtar I, Khokhar I, Mushtaq S, Ali A (2010) Diversity of epiphytic and endophytic microorganisms in some dominant weeds. Pak J Weed Sci Res 16(3)

Niu ZX, Sun LN, Sun TH (2011) The bioabsorption of cadmium and lead by bacteria in root exudates culture. Soil Sediment Contam Int J 20(8):877–891

Noble AD, Ruaysoongnern S (2010) The nature of sustainable agriculture. In: Soil microbiology and sustainable crop production. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 1–25

Pi Y, Chen B, Bao M, Fan F, Cai Q, Ze L, Zhang B (2017) Microbial degradation of four crude oil by biosurfactant producing strain Rhodococcus sp. Bioresour Technol 232:263–269

Poursat BA, van Spanning RJ, de Voogt P, Parsons JR (2019) Implications of microbial adaptation for the assessment of environmental persistence of chemicals. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 49(23):2220–2255

Provorov NA, Vorobyov NI (2009) Host plant as an organizer of microbial evolution in the beneficial symbioses. Phytochem Rev 8(3):519

Rana KL, Kour D, Yadav AN, Kumar V, Dhaliwal HS (2016) Endophytic microbes from wheat: diversity and biotechnological applications for sustainable agriculture. In: Proceeding of 57th

association of microbiologist of India & International symposium on "microbes and biosphere: what's new what's next", vol 453
Sahay H, Yadav AN, Singh AK, Singh S, Kaushik R, Saxena AK (2017) Hot springs of Indian Himalayas: potential sources of microbial diversity and thermostable hydrolytic enzymes. 3 Biotech 7(2):1–11
Saxena AK, Kaushik R, Yadav AN, Gulati S, Sharma D (2015) Role of Archaea in the sustenance of plants in extreme saline environments. In: Proceeding of 56th annual conference of association of microbiologists of India and international symposium on "emerging discoveries in microbiology". https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.1.2073.9925
Shukla L, Suman A, Yadav AN, Verma P, Saxena AK (2016) Syntrophic microbial system for ex-situ degradation of paddy straw at low temperature under controlled and natural environment. J App Biol Biotechnol 4(2):30–37
Sobariu DL, Fertu DIT, Diaconu M, Pavel LV, Hlihor RM, Drăgoi EN, Gavrilescu M (2017) Rhizobacteria and plant symbiosis in heavy metal uptake and its implications for soil bioremediation. New Biotechnol 39:125–134
Sui X, Wang X, Li Y, Ji H (2021) Remediation of petroleum-contaminated soils with microbial and microbial combined methods: advances, mechanisms, and challenges. Sustainability 13(16): 9267
Suman A, Verma P, Yadav AN, Saxena AK (2015) Bioprospecting for extracellular hydrolytic enzymes from culturable thermotolerant bacteria isolated from Manikaran thermal springs. Res J Biotechnol 10:33–42
Suman A, Yadav AN, Verma P (2016) Endophytic microbes in crops: diversity and beneficial impact for sustainable agriculture. In: Microbial inoculants in sustainable agricultural productivity. Springer, New Delhi, pp 117–143
Tao K, Liu X, Chen X, Hu X, Cao L, Yuan X (2017) Biodegradation of crude oil by a defined co-culture of indigenous bacterial consortium and exogenous Bacillus subtilis. Bioresour Technol 224:327–332
Techtmann SM, Hazen TC (2016) Metagenomic applications in environmental monitoring and bioremediation. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 43(10):1345–1354
Tratnyek PG, Edwards E, Carpenter L, Blossom S (2020) Environmental occurrence, fate, effects, and remediation of halogenated (semi) volatile organic compounds. Environ Sci: Processes Impacts 22(3):465–471
Trellu C, Mousset E, Pechaud Y, Huguenot D, van Hullebusch ED, Esposito G, Oturan MA (2016) Removal of hydrophobic organic pollutants from soil washing/flushing solutions: a critical review. J Hazard Mater 306:149–174
Tuo T, Shi C, Wang P, Liu J, Zhan L (2021, March) A review of bioremediation techniques for heavy metals pollution in soil. In: IOP conference series: earth and environmental science, vol 687, no 1. IOP Publishing, p 012012
Ufarté L, Laville É, Duquesne S, Potocki-Veronese G (2015) Metagenomics for the discovery of pollutant degrading enzymes. Biotechnol Adv 33(8):1845–1854
Valentina UV (2005) Bioremediation of toxic heavy metals using acidothermophilic autotrophes. Bioresour Technol 97(10):1237–1242
Verma P, Yadav AN, Kazy SK, Saxena AK, Suman A (2014) Evaluating the diversity and phylogeny of plant growth-promoting bacteria associated with wheat (Triticum aestivum) growing in the central zone of India. Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci 3(5):432–447
Verma P, Yadav AN, Khannam KS, Panjiar N, Kumar S, Saxena AK, Suman A (2015a) Assessment of genetic diversity and plant growth-promoting attributes of psychrotolerant bacteria allied with wheat (Triticum aestivum) from the northern hills zone of India. Ann Microbiol 65(4):1885–1899
Verma P, Yadav AN, Shukla L, Saxena AK, Suman A (2015b) Hydrolytic enzymes production by thermotolerant Bacillus altitudinis IARI-MB-9 and Gulbenkianiamobilis IARI-MB-18 isolated from Manikaran hot springs. Int J Adv Res 3:1241–1250
Verma P, Yadav AN, Kumar V, Kumar K, Dhaliwal HS (2017) Microbes mediated biofortification of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) for micronutrients by Fe-chelating and Zn-solubilizing

bacteria. In: Proceeding of a national conference on advances in food science and technology, pp 199–200

Wang L, Wang W, Lai Q, Shao Z (2010) Gene diversity of CYP153A and AlkB alkane hydroxylases in oil-degrading bacteria isolated from the Atlantic Ocean. Environ Microbiol 12(5):1230–1242

Wang B, Teng Y, Yao H, Christie P (2021) Detection of functional microorganisms in benzene [a] pyrene-contaminated soils using DNA-SIP technology. J Hazard Mater 407:124788

Xiaoming W, Junxing Y, Wei S (2018) Pollution status of agricultural land in China: impact of land use and geographical position. Soil Water Res

Yadav AN (2015) Bacterial diversity of cold deserts and mining of genes for low-temperature tolerance. IARI/BIT, New Delhi/Ranchi, p 234

Yadav AN (2017) Agriculturally important microbiomes: biodiversity and multifarious PGP attributes for the amelioration of diverse abiotic stresses in crops for sustainable agriculture. Biomed J Sci Tech Res 1(4):861–864

Yadav AN, Sachan SG, Verma P, Saxena AK (2015a) Prospecting cold deserts of the northwestern Himalayas for microbial diversity and plant growth-promoting attributes. J Biosci Bioeng 119(6):683–693

Yadav AN, Verma P, Kumar M, Pal KK, Dey R, Gupta A, Saxena AK (2015b) Diversity and phylogenetic profiling of niche-specific Bacilli from extreme environments of India. Ann Microbiol 65(2):611–629

Yadav AN, Rana KL, Kumar V, Dhaliwal HS (2016) Phosphorus solubilizing endophytic microbes: potential application for sustainable agriculture. EU Voice 2(1):21–22

Yadav AN, Kumar R, Kumar S, Kumar V, Sugitha T, Singh B, Saxena AK (2017a) Beneficial microbiomes: biodiversity and potential biotechnological applications for sustainable agriculture and human health. J Appl Biol Biotechnol 5(6):45–57

Yadav AN, Verma P, Kour D, Rana KL, Kumar V, Singh B, Dhaliwal HS (2017b) Plant microbiomes and their beneficial multifunctional plant growth promoting attributes. Int J Environ Sci Nat Resour 3(1):1–8

Yadav AN, Verma P, Kumar R, Kumar V, Kumar K (2017c) Current applications and prospects of eco-friendly microbes. EU Voice 3(1):1–3

Yadav AN, Verma P, Sachan SG, Saxena AK (2017d) Biodiversity and biotechnological applications of psychrotrophic microbes isolated from Indian Himalayan regions. EC Microbiol ECO 1:48–54

Yang F, Zhong M, Bai P, Ma H (2011) Research Progress on the degradation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and the bioremediation via soil microorganism [j]. Liaoning Agric Sci 4

Yuan X, Zhang X, Chen X, Kong D, Liu X, Shen S (2018) Synergistic degradation of crude oil by an indigenous bacterial consortium and exogenous fungus Scedosporium boydii. Bioresour Technol 264:190–197

Yue M, Liu B, Wei X, Hu P (2014) Adaptive sliding-mode control of spherical robot with estimated rolling resistance. Cybern Syst 45(5):407–417

Zhi-Yong D, Zhang K, Yao RH (2019) Degradation of refractory pollutants by hydrodynamic cavitation: key parameters to degradation rates. J Hydrodyn 31(4):848–856

Zuo X, Li C, Zhang J, Ma G, Chen P (2020) Geochemical characteristics and depositional environment of the Shahejie Formation in the Binnan Oilfield, China. J Geophys Eng 17(3): 539–551

Modifications in Environmental Microbiome and the Evolution of Viruses Through Genetic Diversity

7

Pola Sudhakar and Dhanalakshmi Padi

Abstract

The microbiome present in the environment is changing due to climate, chemical composition, biodiversity, and also even human activities. Biodiversity is vital for the maintenance of a healthy ecosystem and environment, and this includes genetic diversity which helps to maintain the gene variations among species and also aids in the evolution of better species that can withstand the changing environment. Therefore, genetically diverse species are more resistant to infectious pathogens, which cause dreadful diseases.

Keywords

Microbiome · Biodiversity · Genetic diversity · Major histocompatibility (MHC) · Evolution · Biogeography

7.1 Introduction

7.1.1 Modifications in Environmental Microbiome

Microbes are ubiquitous on the Earth; they can be found on the surface and in the deeper layers of the Earth. Microbes can also be found in the air and even in higher altitudes. The environmental microbes are continuously changing due to many factors such as climatic changes, chemical composition, and biodiversity. Also,

P. Sudhakar (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, AUCST, Andhra University, Visakhapatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India
e-mail: sudhakar@andhrauniversity.edu.in

D. Padi
Düsseldorf, North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_7

human activities like plant and animal extinction may lead to the loss of useful microbial strains; therefore, this affects the microbes present in the environment. The richest amounts of microbes are found in the soil because it has all kinds of nutrients that are necessary for the growth of microbes (Bardgett and Van Der Putten 2014). Microbes help modulate the biogeochemistry; therefore, the chemical composition and properties in the Earth are due to the integrated microbial action. Microbes cause many diseases to humans and their secondary metabolites such as antibiotics have medicinal properties (Zhu and Penuelas 2020).

7.1.2 Microbiome Diversity

The changes that occurred due to biodiversity are necessary for evolutionary development; however, the Earth's microbiome is highly redundant and extremely diverse. Biodiversity is useful for a healthy ecosystem; it balances all the living organisms on the earth. Biodiversity is divided into three main categories; they are genetic diversity, species diversity, and ecosystem diversity.

- **Genetic diversity**: This focuses on the variations of genetic material (DNA) among individuals.
- **Species diversity**: In this category, different types of species in a particular area have been included.
- **Ecosystem diversity**: Differences in the ecosystem, which is within a geographical location, are focused on.

At these three levels of variations, the balances in nature are maintained and thus play an important role. The diversity in genes, species, and ecosystem among individuals, communities, and areas is helpful in evolutionary development. A wild variety of species is necessary for high biodiversity. However, the advent of molecular and genomic tools and techniques plays a crucial role in studying microbial diversity.

The depletion of biodiversity may affect the environment and the ecosystem. These effects on biodiversity impact the emergence and evolution of microbes (Rodríguez-Nevado et al. 2018). Biodiversity help in the development of human well-being, a better ecosystem, and sustainable development (Tydecks et al. 2018). European Environment Agency initiated the program to manage and protect biodiversity globally (Barbault 2011).

Low biodiversity affects the climate change and weather of the environment, which, in turn, affects the living organisms and ecosystem (Mawdsley et al. 2009). The journal, *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* mentioned that the species which are introduced show resistance to the parasite's prevalence. In contrast to that, global homogenization increases the susceptibility to diseases (Young et al. 2017). Review literature by the researcher Jessica says that the pathogens are increased due to the agricultural practices, and the domestic animals play a crucial role in spreading the diseases by pathogens to humans. Also, it is said that modification in the environment affected the ecology and thus laid a path to the development and emergence of pathogens, which causes infectious diseases (Pearce-Duvet 2006).

Human-made changes are also the reason for the evolution and emergence of pathogens; the two significant changes which were mentioned in the journal *Vector-Borne and Zoonotic Diseases*, by the researcher Loh et al., depicted the land-use changes and the agricultural industry changes. Also, climate changes and medical industry changes made humans susceptible to emerging infectious diseases (Loh et al. 2013).

7.2 Genetic Diversity Drifted Through Evolution

Genetic diversity covers the areas of genomics, ecology, and evolutionary biology, which are useful for a better understanding of biodiversity. The difference in the genes among species or organisms is known as genetic diversity; thus, these differences make two individuals look different from each other. Variations in a gene are caused when mutations occur; a mutation can show a positive or negative effect on a species. However, the selection of the mutated genes is dependent on the flow of those genes. The positive mutation or the addition of the valuable genes in the genome of the reproductive genes can be carried along with the generations (Wright 2005).

Microbial biogeography occurred when microorganisms developed an ability to acquire foreign DNA; therefore, the movement of genes occurred through the ecosystems. The microbes which can withstand the genetic changes can pass these genes to other organisms (Gillings 2017; Reed et al. 2014). Newly discovered viruses are developed and implemented with new standards and transformed for our understanding of microbial ecology, evolution, and biogeochemical cycles. These are also useful in leading innovative paths in many diverse fields such as environmental, agricultural, and biomedical sciences (Call et al. 2021).

Genetic polymorphism spreads among species; the two or different forms of traits in an entire genome are drifted through evolution (Ellegren and Galtier 2016). Genetic variations can be seen in the wild species, whereas the domesticated species have a low level of genetic diversity because mankind selects few traits. The organisms which are naturally selected are highly resistant to the artificially chosen organisms.

Genetic diversity is beneficial for the evolution of a better species which can adapt to the changing environment (Frankham 2005). The species with the potential to adapt to the environment can fight off bacteria and viruses. These can pass on the favorable characteristics to the generations, whereas the susceptible organisms cannot carry on their genes further (Doehring 2020).

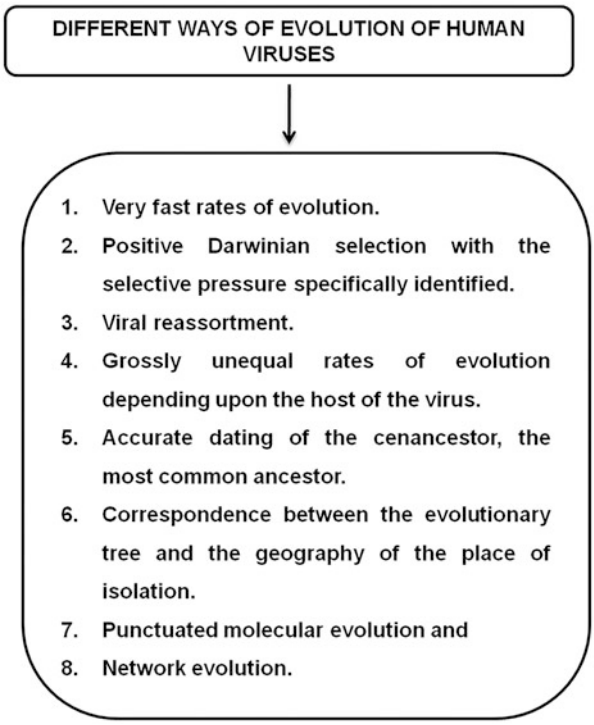
The viruses or bacteria can easily infect the species which are artificially selected as they have similar genes; therefore, the wild variety species possess genes that are diverse and can show resistance to pathogenic viruses and bacteria. Every organism has the blueprint of its genome, and thus, they vary from every individual. The genetically diverse species are more resistant to the changing environment and can quickly adapt to the changes. Therefore, these species can withstand adverse conditions.

7.3 Evolution of Viruses Through Genetic Diversity

Pathogens such as viruses, particularly RNA viruses, have the potential to reemerge and can infect multiple hosts. These pathogens cause infectious diseases, which can be a dangerous threat to human lives and economies (Cleaveland et al. 2001). There are mainly three different types of evolutionary paths for the RNA viruses (Reanney 1982); they are positive-sense single-stranded viruses, negative-sense single-stranded viruses, and double-stranded RNA viruses. Among these RNA viruses, single-stranded RNA viruses share the genes during their evolution, whereas double-stranded RNA viruses have a different evolutionary line (Baltimore 1980).

In the article, *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*, the mechanism of viral mutation are explained. It was mentioned that the RNA viruses (Lauring and Andino 2010) are more prone to mutations when compared to the DNA viruses, and single-stranded viruses undergo mutations faster than double-stranded viruses. Also, some viruses can adapt to the new environment and the host quickly, and therefore, their potentiality for quick adaptation is based on the generation of de novo diversity (Sanjuán and Domingo-Calap 2016) (Fig. 7.1).

In 1996, Walter M. Fitch in the article *Molecular Phylogenetics and Evolution* mentioned the different ways of the evolution of human viruses (Fitch 1996). They included:



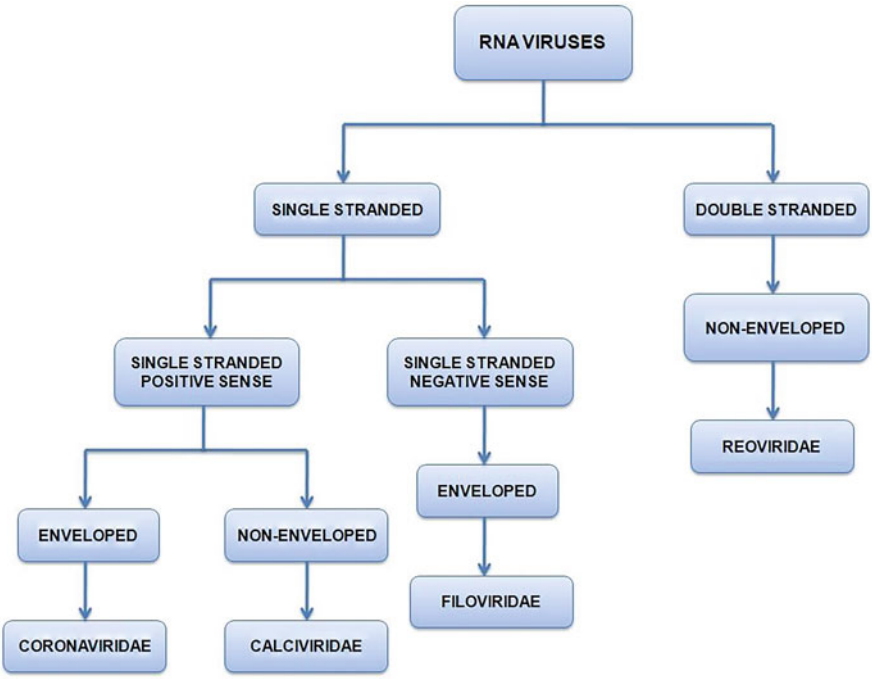


Fig. 7.1 Different types of evolutionary paths in the evolution of RNA viruses. The three major evolutionary lines are positive-sense single-stranded viruses, negative-sense single-stranded viruses, and double-stranded viruses

The rate of viral mutations and their genetic diversity depend on the multiple viruses and the host-dependent processes; also there are some selective processes involved in the development of mutations (Domingo and Holland 1997). The changes in the nucleotide bases caused the evolution and reemergence (Wang et al. 2020) of SARS-CoV-2, and many types of research are carried out to find out the mutations that occurred in the virus.

The researcher Phan. T of the University of Pittsburgh Medical Centre, USA, conducted genetic analyses on 86 genomes of SARS-CoV-2, which were collected from the source GISAID (Global Initiative on Sharing All Influenza Data) (https://www.gisaid.org/) and mentioned that they have revealed 93 mutations overall the entire genomes of SARS-CoV-2. Therefore, these analyses provided the data regarding the mutations and deletions in the coding and noncoding region of SARS-CoV-2 and also gave the evidence for the evolution of the novel coronavirus-2019 (nCoV-2019) (Phan 2020a, b).

The emergence and reemergence of infectious viruses need to understand better to overcome the global issues related to outbreaks and pandemics. The researches covering the areas such as evolutionary biology, epidemiology, and genomics need to be focused more. The advanced genome technologies and computational biology are useful to sort out the problems and, however, focus on the evolutionary

emergence of viruses to be increased. Various methods and challenges need to be fulfilled in controlling the disease. Also, the further possible reemergence of infectious viruses to be studied thoroughly to avoid future outbreaks (Pybus et al. 2015).

7.4 The Role of MHC (Major Histocompatibility) in the Evolution

Jones and Partridge in 1983 in the *Nature* journal explained that the MHC system is used primarily for sexual selection, and thus to achieve gene recombination, the inbreeding of the species has been avoided. These selections of the MHC genes can be detectable when a series of selective pressure is applied for a short time (Garrigan and Hedrick 2003). MHC gene sequence's role in the reproduction, mate selection, and fitness to survive in the changing environment is also reviewed in many research papers (Zhu et al. 2019). The gene organization of MHC complexes is different among species in terms of size, complexity, and gene order (Flajnik and Kasahara 2001).

MHC diversity plays an essential role in the genetic drift of the traits and is thus involved in evolution (Kaufman 2018). The genetic drift is useful in shaping the genetic diversity and population, whereas the limited gene flow may cause massive differentiation in the genetic variations of the MHC complex (Lan et al. 2019). MHC variant molecules are useful in making the population resistant to pathogens. The pathogens are rapidly mutating and evolving; therefore, they can flow easily through the species with similar genes. Thus, the variants of MHC molecules are helpful for not passing the pathogens further.

7.5 MHC Diversity in Humans Makes Resistance Against Evolving Pathogens

In vertebrates, MHC genes, especially antigen-presenting cells, i.e., class-I and class-II MHC molecules, are highly variable. Pathogen-mediated selection has been focused more on because they play a crucial role in the selection of MHC genes (Hughes 2002). For instance, the two MHC types and the two MHC variants can produce ten different types of genotypes, which are resistant to the pathogens. The alleles of the different genotypes of MHC genes encode the different proteins; thus, the population with these genotypes shows resistance against the rapidly mutating pathogens (Fig. 7.2).

Also, during the inheritance of the haplotypes of MHC gene sequences to the offspring, the gene conversion and the gene recombination (Schaschl et al. 2006) make the MHC gene sequences polymorphic, and thus the new variants of MHC molecules are produced during the inheritance of haplotypes (Yamaguchi and Dijkstra 2019). The MHC genotypes, which are produced in response to the pathogens, are having the genes which show the phenotypic character fitness to the pathogens (Wegner et al. 2003).

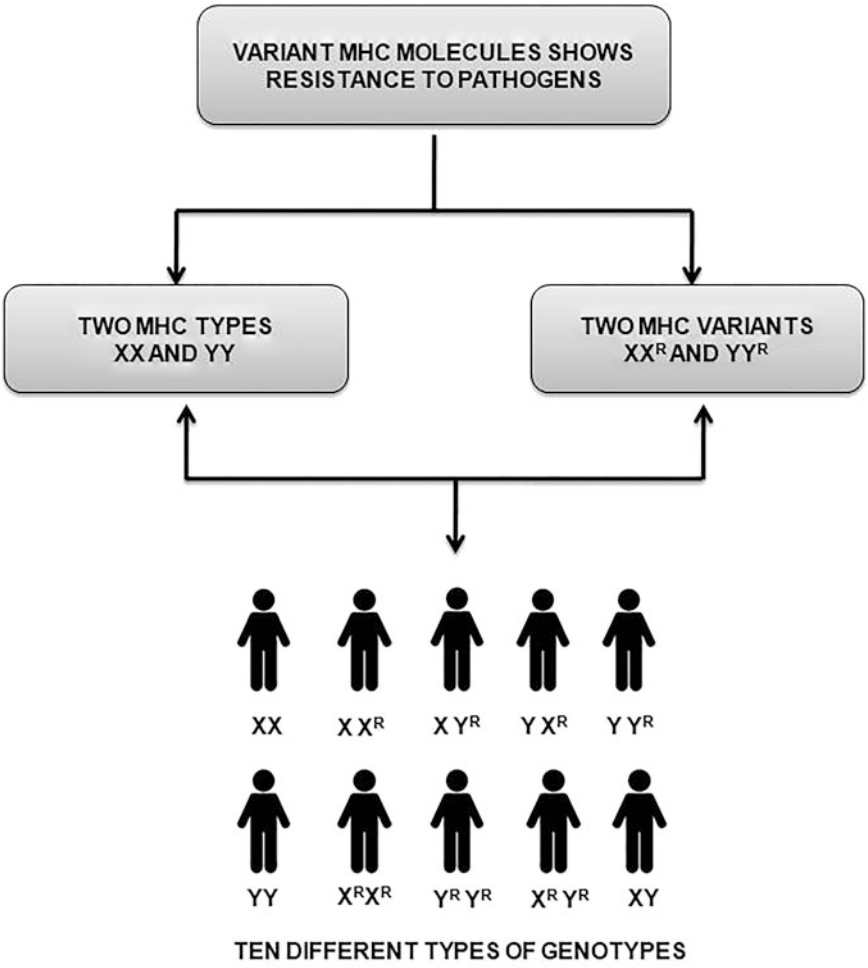


Fig. 7.2 Variant MHC molecules that are produced during the evolution show resistance to the pathogens. Ten different types of genotypes which are produced from two MHC types and two MHC variants help to avoid the infection caused by the viruses among species of similar genes

MHC complexes are mainly involved in the recognition of the foreign particles that invade our immune system; these genes at the MHC loci produce antibodies by activating the immune responses to fight against antigens (Dawkins and Lloyd 2019). MHC is represented by the immune cells and acts as a stalk that anchors the pathogens to the cells and, therefore, produces antibodies against them (Altuvia and Margalit 2004; Kelly and Trowsdale 2019).

7.6 Concluding Remarks

From this review, we conclude that the changes in the environmental microbiome need to be controlled as it affects the helpful bacteria in the environment. Also, maintenance of biodiversity is essential for sustainable development, and also genetic diversity is necessary among the species to stop the reemergence of infectious disease. Genetic diversity also makes the species to be fit and resistant to emerging pathogens. Thus, the research should be more focused on the areas of epidemiology, evolutionary biology, and genomics, which help us to be prepared for the subsequent outbreaks or pandemics.

References

Altuvia Y, Margalit H (2004) A structure-based approach for prediction of MHC-binding peptides. Methods 34:454–459

Baltimore D (1980) Evolution of RNA viruses. Ann N Y Acad Sci 354:492–497. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1749-6632.1980.tb27988.x

Barbault R (2011) 2010: a new beginning for biodiversity? C R Biol 334(5–6):483–488. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.crvi.2011.02.002

Bardgett RD, Van Der Putten WH (2014) Belowground biodiversity and ecosystem functioning. Nature 515(7528):505–511. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature13855

Call L, Nayfach S, Kyrpides NC (2021) Illuminating the virosphere through global metagenomics. Annu Rev Biomed Data Sci 4:369–391. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-biodatasci-012221-095114

Cleaveland S, Laurenson MK, Taylor LH (2001) Diseases of humans and their domestic mammals: pathogen characteristics, host range and the risk of emergence. Philos Trans R Soc Lond Ser B Biol Sci 356(1411):991–999. https://doi.org/10.1098/rstb.2001.0889

Dawkins RL, Lloyd SS (2019) MHC genomics and disease: looking back to go forward. Cell 8(9): 944

Doehring J (2020) What is genetic diversity? https://www.wisegeek.com/what-is-genetic-diversity.htm

Domingo E, Holland JJ (1997) RNA virus mutations and fitness for survival. Annu Rev Microbiol 51:151–178

Ellegren H, Galtier N (2016) Determinants of genetic diversity. Nat Rev Genet 17(7):422–433. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrg.2016.58

Fitch WM (1996) The variety of human virus evolution. Mol Phylogenet Evol 5(1):247–258. https://doi.org/10.1006/mpev.1996.0018

Flajnik MF, Kasahara M (2001) Comparative genomics of the MHC: glimpses into the evolution of the adaptive immune system. Immunity 15(3):351–362. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1074-7613(01)00198-4

Frankham R (2005) Genetics and extinction. Biol Conserv 126(2):131–140. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2005.05.002

Garrigan D, Hedrick PW (2003) Perspective: detecting adaptive molecular polymorphism: lessons from the MHC. Evolution 57:1707–1722

Gillings MR (2017) Lateral gene transfer, bacterial genome evolution, and the Anthropocene. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1389(1):20–36. https://doi.org/10.1111/nyas.13213

Hughes AL (2002) Natural selection and the diversification of vertebrate immune effectors. Immunol Rev 190:161–168

Kaufman J (2018) Unfinished business: evolution of the MHC and the adaptive immune system of jawed vertebrates. Annu Rev Immunol 36:383–409

Kelly A, Trowsdale J (2019) Genetics of antigen processing and presentation. Immunogenetics 71(3):161–170

Lan H, Zhou T, Wan QH, Fang SG (2019) Genetic diversity and differentiation at structurally varying MHC haplotypes and microsatellites in bottlenecked populations of endangered crested ibis. Cell 8(4):377

Lauring AS, Andino R (2010) Quasispecies theory and the behavior of RNA viruses. PLoS Pathog 6:e1001005. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1001005

Loh EH, Zambrana-Torrelio C, Olival KJ, Bogich TL, Johnson CK, Mazet JAK, Karesh W, Daszak P (2013) Targeting transmission pathways for emerging zoonotic disease surveillance and control. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 1:432–437. https://doi.org/10.1089/vbz.2013.1563

Mawdsley JR, O'Malley R, Ojima DS (2009) A review of climate-change adaptation strategies for wildlife management and biodiversity conservation. Conserv Biol 23(5):1080–1089. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1523-1739.2009.01264.x

Pearce-Duvet JMC (2006) The origin of human pathogens: evaluating the role of agriculture and domestic animals in the evolution of human disease. Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc 81(3):369–382. https://doi.org/10.1017/S1464793106007020

Phan T (2020a) Genetic diversity and evolution of SARS-CoV-2. Infect Genet Evol 81:104260. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.meegid.2020.104260

Phan T (2020b) Novel coronavirus: from discovery to clinical diagnostics. Infect Genet Evol 79: 104211

Pybus OG, Tatem A, Lemey P (2015) Virus evolution and transmission in an even more connected world. Proc Biol Sci 282(1821):20142878. https://doi.org/10.1098/rspb.2014.2878

Reanney DC (1982) The evolution of RNA viruses. Annu Rev Microbiol 36:47–73. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.mi.36.100182.000403

Reed DC, Algar CK, Huber JA, Dick GJ (2014) Gene-centric approach to integrating environmental genomics and biogeochemical models. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(5):1879–1884. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1313713111

Rodríguez-Nevado C, Lam TT-Y, Holmes EC, Pagán I (2018) The impact of host genetic diversity on virus evolution and emergence. Ecol Lett 21(2):253–263. https://doi.org/10.1111/ele.12890. Epub 2017 Dec 5

Sanjuán R, Domingo-Calap P (2016) Mechanisms of viral mutation. Cell Mol Life Sci 73(23): 4433–4448. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00018-016-2299-6

Schaschl H, Wandeler P, Suchentrunk F, Obexer-Ruff G, Goodman SJ (2006) Selection and recombination drive the evolution of MHC class II DRB diversity in ungulates. Heredity 97: 427–437

Tydecks L, Jeschke JM, Wolf M, Singer G, Tockner K (2018) Spatial and tropical imbalances in biodiversity research. PLoS One 13(7):e0199327. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0199327

Wang R, Zhang X, Irwin DM, Shen Y (2020) Emergence of SARS-like coronavirus poses new challenge in China. J Infect 80(3):350–371. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jinf.2020.01.017

Wegner KM, Kalbe M, Kurtz J, Reusch TBH, Milinski M (2003) Parasites selection for immunogenetic optimality. Science 301:1343

Wright AF (2005) Genetic variations: polymorphisms and mutations. In: Encyclopedia of life sciences. https://doi.org/10.1038/npg.els.0005005

Yamaguchi T, Dijkstra JM (2019) Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) genes and disease resistance in fish. Cell 8(4):378

Young HS, Parker IM, Gilbert GS, Guerra AS, Nunn CL (2017) Introduced species, disease ecology, and biodiversity—disease relationships. Trends Ecol Evol 32(1):41–54. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tree.2016.09.008

Zhu Y-G, Penuelas J (2020) Changes in the environmental microbiome in the Anthropocene. Glob Chang Biol 26(6):3175–3177. https://doi.org/10.1111/gcb.15086

Zhu Y, Wan QH, Zhang HM, Fang SG (2019) Reproductive strategy inferred from major histocompatibility complex-based inter-individual, sperm-egg, and mother-fetus recognitions in giant pandas (*Ailuropoda melanoleuca*). Cell 8(3):257

8 Novel Insights into Environmental Niche Adaptations and Secondary Metabolite Biosynthesis Potential of Marine Sponge Microbiome

Aifa Fathima, Yaser Arafath, Saqib Hassan, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

Abstract

The microbial diversity of the sponge differs from a very rich non-polluted site to polluted sites; it is unclear whether the intra-species variation changes with the change in the environment. Sponges are a collection of species with close association and having complex interactions in which the host-microbiome has been less characterized when compared to host species. Based on the environment the sponge-associated microbiome varies. The microbiome of sponges isolated from contaminated sites has low diversity and higher intra-species dispersion when compared to the microbiome of sponges from a rich environment. The microbiome of the sponge has abundant biotechnological applications along with the range of other inhibitory substances; the role of these substances was unclear, especially with regard to their ecological roles. Sponges which are

A. Fathima
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

SRM Research Institute, SRM Institute of Science and Technology, Kattankulathur, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India

Y. Arafath · J. Selvin (✉)
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

S. Hassan
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Division of Non-Communicable Diseases, Indian Council of Medical Research (ICMR), New Delhi, India

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

G. S. Kiran
Department of Food Science and Technology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_8

less complex in nature that thrive under degrading environmental conditions have more variable microbiomes following the ecological paradigm that correlates community diversity and environmental degradation. Operational taxonomic units (OTUs) are shared between the microbiome of sponge within the same family or order. These OTUs show great variation between different sponge families and orders. These taxonomic units of a particular sponge can be taken as their signature identity. Eighty percent of these are present in uncultured microbiota in a vast amount. Studying these OTUs reveals a deeper understanding between host specificity of the sponge microbiome and the hidden sponge-associated microbial resources.

Keywords

Sponge · Microbiome · Diversity · Environmental · Marine

8.1 Introduction to Sponges

The phylum Porifera contains filter feeding and sessile animals which help the benthic environment worldwide (Van Soest et al. 2012). It mainly includes four classes: Calcarea, Demospongiae, Hexactinellida and Homoscleromorpha (Gazave et al. 2012). Hexactinellida are characterized by hexactin-structured siliceous spikes and syncytial tissue organization. Demospongiae is a diverse community of the non-monophytic group (Boury-Esnault 2006). They usually have a mineral skeleton made of siliceous spikes, but like the usual bath sponge, many species do not have a mineral skeleton, but rather a network of fibres. Modern sponge phylogeny also incorporates molecular approaches and sponge morphological characteristics, but sponge spikes remain the most important features for the discovery of sponges and the discovery of sponges in fossil records.

Most of the sponge species dwell in marine environments (9162 species), the world Porifera database also contains 248 species in freshwater (van Soest et al. 2019). Despite their numerical abundance, domination of biomass and durability in many ecosystems, their practical importance often continues to be underrated. However, sponge ecologists have long recognized the functional importance of sponge organisms in the benthic climate (Rützler 1975, 1978; Ruetzler 2004; Rützler and Macintyre 1978; Diaz and Rützler 2001; Wulff 2006).

Over 6000 described species were found in both freshwater and marine environments in the tropical, temperate and polar regions (somewhat more limited) (Hooper and Van Soest 2002). Sponges have received a lot of attention recently due to the following two fundamental (and sometimes interrelated) factors: (1) their association with varied microorganisms and (2) the presence of richer metabolites. The design of the sponge is distinct from any other taxon, and the anatomy of the sponge greatly influences other areas of sponge biology, including encounters with microorganisms. The general structure of the body consists of many separate layers of cells (Simpson 1984). The exterior portion (pinacoderm) comprises pinacocytes

(epithelial cells). Via pores (ostia) on the surface of the sponge, these cells often spread along the internal channels of the sponge, through the ostia (pores) located on the surface of the sponge, which also spreads along the internal channels of the sponge. In these galleries, collectively called the choanoderm, the flagellated choanocytes beat to pump water through the ostia and along the complex aquifer structures of the sponge (Taylor et al. 2007a, b). The choanocytes filter food particles (including bacteria and microalgae) and transfer it to the mesohyl, a large layer of connective tissue. The food particles are digested in the mesohyl by another group of sponge cells, the archaeocytes, via phagocytosis. These totipotent cells can differentiate into any other type of sponge cells. The sponge mesohyl layer contains a huge microbial community (Friedrich et al. 1999; Wilkinson 1978).

Sponges and other marine invertebrates (corals and sea squirts) rely heavily on chemical production as a natural defence mechanism against enemies, such as predators and competitors (Taylor et al. 2007a, b). In this respect, marine sponges have attracted particularly intensive scrutiny, with a wide range of natural sponge products to date. Each year various bioactive metabolites are obtained from marine sponges (Munro et al. 1999; Blunt et al. 2006). These compounds have also been proposed for various environmental roles, including defence against predators (Becerro et al. 2003; Chanas et al. 1997; Pawlik et al. 1995), competitors (Thacker et al. 1998; Turon et al. 1996; Engel and Pawlik 2000), fouling organisms (Sears et al. 1990; Willemsen 1994) and microbes (Thakur et al. 2005; Newbold et al. 1999; Becerro et al. 1994).

Sponges are known to be a prolific source of biologically active metabolites with a unique structure. They are known to produce a wide variety of secondary metabolites. They are therefore more relevant in recent studies.

8.2 Contrasting Environment

Since Pre-Cambrian times, microbes have been intimate partners of sponges (Willemsen 1994). In some sponge species, they can account for up to 50% of the volume of the microbial sponge holobiont (Uriz et al. 2012) which are taxonomically and metabolically diverse (Weisz et al. 2007; Thomas et al. 2016a, b). Therefore, regardless of the bacterial microbiome that accompanies them, it is difficult to imagine the causes of sponge success or failure. Their microbial imbalances cause widespread mortality in the Mediterranean (Webster et al. 2008; Cebrian et al. 2011) and Red Sea (Gao et al. 2014).

Contrary to the spatial and temporal variations reported for microbial communities in seawater (Zeglin 2015; Glasl et al. 2017), there is no significant change in the sponge microbiome by geographical and bathymetrical ranges or over temperature, eutrophication, or irradiance shifts (Hentschel et al. 2002; Erwin et al. 2012; Pita et al. 2013a, b; Luter et al. 2014; Strand et al. 2017). While numerous experimental studies have reported microbial change in some host species subject to severe environmental changes (Mohamed et al. 2008; Fan et al. 2013; Lesser et al. 2016; Webster and Reusch 2017; Pineda et al. 2017; Weigel and Erwin 2017;

Ramsby et al. 2018; Glasl et al. 2018), there will be short-term changes in the sponge microbiome in response to environmental stress.

8.2.1 Responses of Sponge Microbiomes with Environmental Stresses

The sponge microbiome is complex and host-specific in nature, affected by a variety of environmental conditions (Cleary et al. 2013). Variations in extent linked to seasonal changes were reported when the same individuals were examined repeatedly over a period of time (Wichels et al. 2006; Anderson et al. 2010). Schmitt et al. (2012) studied 32 sponge species located in different regions with varied geographical locations. The results showed that their microbial communities shared a small percentage of the core bacterial taxa and a large percentage of the species-specific taxa (Schmitt et al. 2012). It was also proved by another study by Schmitt et al. (2011) on other sponge species. These studies showed that the response of the sponge microbiome to different environmental conditions comes from the following reasons: sponges are highly stable and have specific microbial communities; in terms of their diversity and structure, sponges have highly variable microbial communities supported by environmental factors or stresses (Yang et al. 2019).

The stability of sponge-microbe associations and their response to different environmental conditions contribute to the significant ecological and economic role of symbionts in nature and society. Further research has revealed that the sponge-associated bacterial population is stable not just across biogeographical regions, but also across time, as seen by seasonal shifts (Yang et al. 2019).

Other recent studies report that driving shifts in the microbial sponge community can be caused by certain environmental factors, including places and living conditions. For example, an ecologically important sponge species, *Carteriospongia foliascens*, has been studied to understand how its microbial community responds to variations between coastal and offshore sites (Luter et al. 2015). The biomass of Cyanobacteria increased steadily over Bacteroides in the locations examined, suggesting that the *C. foliascens* were induced by specific environmental factors. The sponges *Hymeniacidon heliophila, Paraleucilla magna* and *Petromica citrina* were examined by Turque et al. (2010) in two settings with varied amounts of pollution. The diversity and composition of seawater and sponge-related archaea were compared. The complexity of the archaeal community for sponges in the inland seawater bay was higher than that of the *Cagarras Archipelago*, according to the findings. In sponges living in polluted locations, *Crenarchaeota* displayed more diversity, which might be explained by the altered structure of their associated microbial communities that reflect their approach to adapting to the damaged surroundings (Yang et al. 2019).

Some sponge microbiomes have habitat- and host-related differences, implying that host phylogeny and living circumstances are both important in influencing microbial community composition and structure. Two sponge species, for example, have been chosen to assess their microbial makeup in both marine lakes and nearby

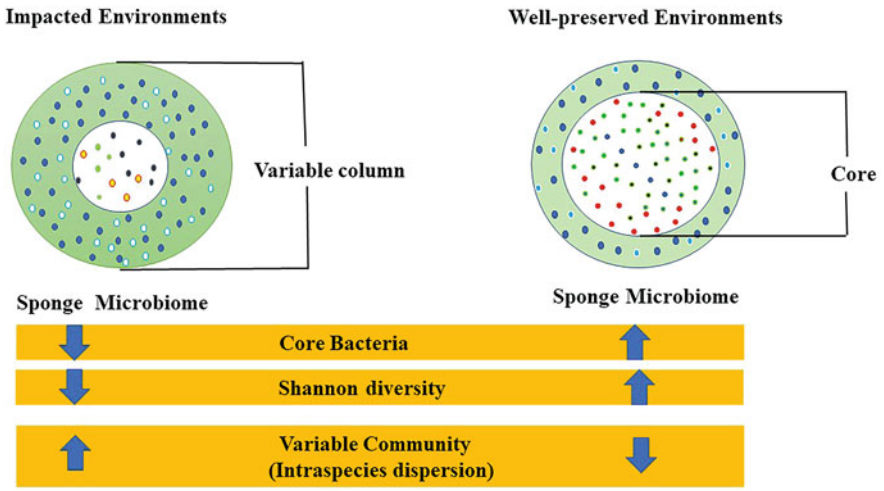


Fig. 8.1 The figure shows the nature of the sponge microbiome in well-preserved and impacted environments. The green area represents the variable community and the white part represents the core community. The coloured dots represent single bacterial species. (Adapted and modified from Turon et al. 2019)

open coastal systems (*Suberites diversicolor* and *Cinachyrella australiensis*) (Cleary et al. 2013). They found a significant difference in microbial diversity between the species. Within *S. diversicolor*, their bacterial populations somewhat differed between samples from inside and outside the lakes. In contrast, habitat variation in *C. australiensis* has resulted in a significant shift in the associated microbial communities. As a result, sponges residing in the same environment had a microbial community that was distinct to the host species rather than the shared living conditions; different sponge species in different environments responded to environmental influences to varying degrees (Yang et al. 2019) (Fig. 8.1).

8.2.2 Temperature Fluctuation

In order to better understand specific symbiotic connections, stability correlations with temperature fluctuations were investigated in addition to the generalized biogeographic stability of tropical and temperate sponge-microbe partnerships. Shifts in symbiotic microbial communities will influence sponge health, growth rates and their ability to defend themselves against predation, fouling and illness as a result of climate change or environmental stress. Meanwhile, sponges' ability to adapt to changing environmental conditions may be aided by the adjustment response of microbial populations (Rohwer et al. 2002; Reshef et al. 2006), although little is known about the sponge-microbe association's ability to adapt.

In this century, sea surface temperature (SST) was predicted to rise to 4 °C (Solomon et al. 2007), which is a significant environmental threat to coral reef populations and marine sponge populations (Hoegh-Guldberg et al. 2007). Because elevated SST could induce changes in the microbial community associated with sponges with regard to its diversity, function and structure (Webster and Blackall 2009), it could directly/indirectly damage the body of the sponge (López-Legentil et al. 2008, 2010; Lemoine et al. 2007). Sponge health is typically linked to the characteristics and stability of sponge symbionts over time and geographic and environmental gradients, as well as during vertical transfer from generation to generation (Webster et al. 2010; Steger et al. 2008). The Crenarchaeota population associated with the gigantic barrel sponge *Xestospongia muta* appears to be stable during sponge mortality, with a composition comparable to seawater and ambient sediments. This shift revealed a link between the drop in sponge health and a decrease in the richness of microbial populations (Lopez-Legentil et al. 2010).

Webster et al.'s (2008) study revealed that *Rhopaloeides odorabile* was exposed to temperature in the range of 27–33 °C. They investigated that sponge was considered highly vulnerable to the impact of global climate change, as a 1 °C increase in temperature could lead to a rapid decline in host health due to loss of symbionts. Sponge larvae therefore allow for a highly stable symbiosis in the face of changes in seawater temperatures up to those predicted under current climatic conditions (Yang et al. 2019). Sponge microbiomes are very susceptible to environmental stress (Webster et al. 2008). It was discovered that environmental change (e.g. increased temperature) can irreversibly destroy the symbiosis in the sponge-microbe community with similar highly dependent microbial members, with major implications for host health (Yang et al. 2019).

8.2.3 Irradiance and Depth Variation

Erwin et al. (2012) studied the sponge *Ircinia* sp. to determine their microbial community response to changing irradiance. This showed that the microbial community maintained species-specific stability over the monitoring period with significant fluctuation of irradiance. A recent study analysed the microbial communities of three species of sponges collected from regions of the Caribbean over a depth range of 10–100 m (Olson and Gao 2013). The results showed that the stability and specificity of associated microbial communities varied with host phylogeny, but that each species supported a separate population, implying that various sponge species have different degrees of stability in their associated microbial communities with depth. Over a wide range of depths, each sponge species shared "core" microbial taxa, with the composition of the remaining community potentially modified by biotic and abiotic variables (Yang et al. 2019).

During sponge culture, the microbial communities' stability varies depending on the host species. Because of the variable quantities of nutrients and the chemistry of the seawater, the microbial community of sponges kept in big aquarium systems differed (Yang et al. 2019).

8.2.4 Chemical Variance: Heavy Metals and Nutrients

Based on their adaptation ability to changing environmental conditions, sponges are called "dynamic multicellular systems" (Gaino and Magnino 1999). In addition, there is evidence that sponge-symbiotic microbes play an important role in sponge-microbe-associated nutrition and secondary metabolite biosynthesis (Taylor et al. 2007a, b). Marine sponges were proposed as heavy metal pollutant sentinels (Perez et al. 2005; Patel et al. 1985; De Mestre et al. 2012). Some studies have shown that they can accumulate high quantities of metals depending on the contamination in their environment (Cebrian et al. 2007; Hansen et al. 1995). The sponge *Rhopaloeides odorabile* has shown a decrease in the density and diversity of its total microbial community under cupric ion (Cu^{2+}) treatment, particularly for bacteria with high copper tolerance (Webster et al. 2001a, b).

The sponge *Haliclona cymaeformis* has shown its associated microbial community a selective response to copper treatment (Tian et al. 2014). Two dominant associated microbial taxa such as sulphur-oxidizing Ectothiorhodospiraceae and photosynthetic Cyanobacteria were significantly reduced after treatment with a high concentration of copper. The change in the microbial community associated with copper-entrained sponges has been revealed in terms of restructuring their composition and functional diversity. Some microbial taxa have been enriched to reorganize the community for copper stress survival. It has also been reported that the cultured bacterial community associated with sponges tolerates heavy metals (Bauvais et al. 2015; Mangano et al. 2014; Wanick et al. 2013). Metal tolerance is often considered relevant for antibiotic resistance and can also affect microbial biochemical activities. Furthermore, the comparison of the heavy metal and antibiotic resistance patterns at the phylogenetic level of the associated microbes revealed various characteristics. Interestingly, the different strains vary between growth patterns to affect a distinct tolerance of heavy metals. Hence the patterns of heavy metal sponge tolerance are more likely to be specific to the symbiotic microbial community.

In addition to the high tolerance to environmental heavy metals, sponge-microbe associations also have a high nutrient concentration threshold, such as the microbial communities of the sponges *Aplysina cauliformis* (Gochfeld et al. 2012), *Rhopaloeides odorabile* (Simister et al. 2012a, b), *Ircinia fasciculata* (Pita et al. 2013a, b) and *I. oros* (Pita et al. 2013a, b), as well as *Cymbastela stipitata* (Luter et al. 2014).

8.3 Microbial Community Changes in Disease Affected Sponges

Sponges not only protect themselves but also protect other beneficial microbes through the production of bioactive compounds (Cebrian et al. 2007). Interestingly, the symbiotic microbes can also help the host defence (Lee and Qian 2003). In addition, the sponges' innate immune systems are also thought to play a role in

preventing microbial invasion (Taylor et al. 2007a, b). Numerous studies focused on the shifts in microbial and chemical patterns during an outbreak of sponge disease (Yang et al. 2019).

By analysing affected and unaffected portions of the diseased sponge *Aplysina aerophoba*, the microbial community composition was evaluated to determine the role of microbes in the disease process (Webster et al. 2008). Microbial diversity was found to be higher in diseased sponges than in healthy sponges. Only diseased sponge tissues were found to have Deltaproteobacteria, Epsilonproteobacteria and Firmicutes. In disease-affected sponges, the bacteroidetes and prokaryote communities showed significant differences and increased abundance. The first disease affecting the *Geodia barretti* deepwater sponge was described by Luter et al. (2017). Between different health states, very different community profiles were discovered, with distinct community changes involving higher relative abundances of Bacteroidetes, Firmicutes and Deltaproteobacteria in sick people. Furthermore, three OTUs (operational taxonomic units) were missing in sick people but were found in disease lesions and apparently healthy tissue from sick people, suggesting a non-localized infection.

Besides the complexity of defence mechanisms, sponges host a wide range of microbial communities, which could form stable symbiotic associations and help host sponge maintain healthy growth (Taylor et al. 2007a, b; Thacker and Freeman 2012). Importantly, the majority of the bioactive secondary metabolites that protect sponges from predation were in fact produced by their symbiotic microbes (Esteves et al. 2013). The sponge carries out multiple defence mechanisms to protect itself from a wide range of potential predators, such as *Paracentrotus lividus* and some fish, including *Chromis chromis*, *Oblada melanura* and *Diplodus vulgaris* (Yang et al. 2019).

8.4 Sponge Microbiome

Marine sponges often contain microbial communities that are highly diverse and include bacteria, archaea fungi and microalgae. Sometimes these microbial associates account for as much as 40% of the volume of sponge and can significantly contribute to host metabolism (e.g. through photosynthesis or nitrogen fixation) (Taylor et al. 2007a, b). The first in-depth study, looking at 81 species of sponges, found that the sponge microbiomes cover at least 39 microbial phyla and some candidate phyla (Thomas et al. 2016a, b).

Phyla Proteobacteria (Gamma- and Alphaproteobacteria), Actinobacteria, Chloroflexi, Nitrospirae, Cyanobacteria and Candidatus Poribacteria belong to the most dominant bacterial symbiont groups, while Thaumarchaea is the dominant archaeal group (Moitinho-Silva et al. 2017; Thomas et al. 2016a, b). The microbial communities are mostly species-specific, but are composed of both generalist microbes as have been reported in most sponge species from different geographical regions and specialist microbes as have been found to be enriched in particular

species as these are rare or completely absent in other species (Gili and Coma 1998; Thomas et al. 2016a, b).

Generally, in 16S rRNA gene sequencing studies of sponges, the most frequently reported sequences include those from acid bacteria, Actinobacteria and Chloroflexi (Hentschel et al. 2006). Members of several bacterial phyla, namely, "Actinobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Cyanobacteria, Firmicutes, Planctomycetes, Proteobacteria and Verrucomicrobia", have also been isolated from marine sponges (Enticknap et al. 2006; Hentschel et al. 2001; Kim et al. 2005; Lafi et al. 2005; Lee et al. 2006; Lopez et al. 1999; Montalvo et al. 2005; Olson et al. 2000; Pimentel-Elardo et al. 2003; Santavy et al. 1990; Webster et al. 2001a, b). Unlike marine sponges, available (limited) information suggests that bacterial diversity and abundance are substantially lower in freshwater species.

Eukaryotic microbes have also been reported to be associated with sponges. There have been reports of sponge-inhabiting dinoflagellates (Garson et al. 1998; Hill 1996; Hill and Wilcox 1998; Sara and Liaci 1964; Scalera-Liaci et al. 1999; Schönberg and Loh 2005; Steindler et al. 2001; Webster et al. 2004; Wilkinson 1992) and diatoms (Totti et al. 2005; Webster et al. 2004; Taylor et al. 2004; Gaino et al. 1994; Cerrano et al. 2000), with the latter apparently most prevalent in polar regions (Bavestrello et al. 2000; Cerrano et al. 2000; Totti et al. 2005; Webster et al. 2004; Gaino et al. 1994). Sponges in freshwater often contain endosymbiotic microalgae, mainly zoochlorellae (Bil et al. 1999; Frost et al. 1997; Jensen and Pedersen 1994). Wilkinson (1992) has reported cryptomonads in sponges, whereas marine sponge-associated fungi receive more attention because of their biotechnological applications (Wilkinson 1992). Of the 681 fungal strains isolated from 16 sponge species worldwide, the majority of these belonged to genera that are omnipresent in terrestrial habitats (e.g. *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium*) (König et al. 2006; Höller et al. 2000; Bugni and Ireland 2004). In most cases, therefore, it remains unclear whether such fungi are consistently associated with the source sponge, or dwell as an independent marine species (Höller et al. 2000).

Complex host-associated microbial communities are divided into a core microbiome with "members of the microbial community that are highly prevalent in all host individuals of the same species" and a variable microbiome with "members of the microbial community that are only recovered from some individuals or vary in relative abundance" in terms of community structure (Hester et al. 2016). Surveys on different environmental conditions (e.g. geographic distance (Pita et al. 2013a, b), season (Erwin et al. 2012, 2015), depth (Steinert et al. 2016) and habitat (Cárdenas et al. 2014)) have consistently observed that sponges harbour species-specific and stable microbiomes at different taxonomic prokaryotic levels (Steinert et al. 2017) and prevalence thresholds (Astudillo-García et al. 2017) (Fig. 8.2).

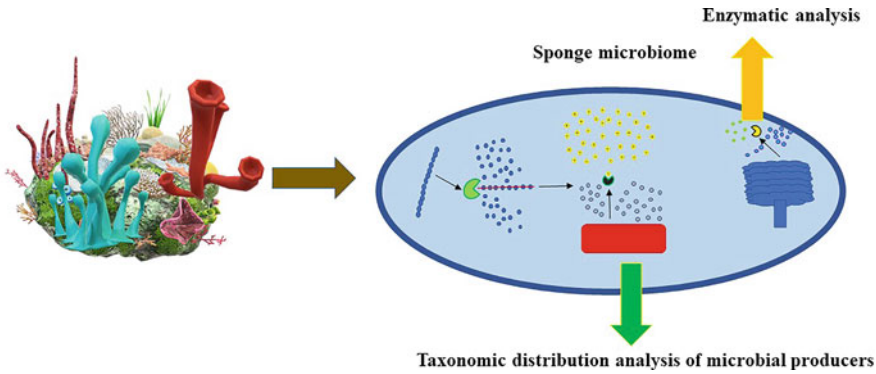


Fig. 8.2 The figure shows the diverse capability of the sponge microbiome which harbours various enzymes with different distribution of microbial populations. (Adapted and modified from De Oliveira et al. 2020)

8.4.1 Sponge Microbiome Diversity

The sponge microbiome is well known to protect the host from external agents like predators and epibionts by synthesizing various secondary bioactive compounds; this forms the major basis of success for sponge survival (Hentschel et al. 2012). The sponge-based microbiomes are not yet fully characterized; however, some of them have been analysed with the help of 16S rRNA sequencing technology (Reveillaud et al. 2014). The 16S rRNA gene reveals the distinctive nature of the OUT (operational taxonomic unit) richness (Ghyselinck et al. 2013). Most of the sponge microbiomes are host-specific in nature and can thrive well under varied climatic conditions, whereas some showed community shifts under varied locations and seasons (Luter et al. 2015).

Microbes have been found to have an association with sponges from the Pre-Cambrian time. Any sudden change in the microbial symbiosis can lead to the death of the specific sponge (Cebrian et al. 2011). In *Demospongiae*, most of the orders have large numbers of bacteria. In *Aplysina cavernicola* and *Ceratoporella nicholsoni*, more than 56% of the volume is taken up by the bacteria (Willenz and Hartman 1989). It has been reported that sponges *A. aerophoba* constituting $6.4 \pm 4.6 \times 10^8$ g^{-1} and *Rhopaloeides odorabile* 8.3×10^9 mL^{-1} bacterial counts from sponge tissue sample have microbial counts that are much higher than that which is present in seawater (Webster and Hill 2001). The microbial diversity of the sponges has been categorized into 14 bacterial phyla (Hentschel et al. 2001). Denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis reveals the bacterial phyla using 16S rRNA, which include Acidobacteria, Actinobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Chloroflexi, Cyanobacteria, Deinococcus-Thermus, Firmicutes, Gemmatimonadetes, Nitrospira, Planctomycetes, Proteobacteria (Alpha, Beta, Delta and Gammaproteobacteria), Spirochaetota and Verrucomicrobia (Althoff et al. 1998). Certain sponges bear sponge-specific phyla, e.g. "*Poribacteria*".

The reported archaea in marine sponges belongs to the phylum Crenarchaeota, which is also reported in artic sponges (Holmes and Blanch 2007). The most abundant sponge derived archaeal sequences belongs to *Crenarchaeota*, which is more prevalent in the marine environment (Karner et al. 2001). The sponge *Axinella mexicana* has 65% volume of the "Candidatus *Cenarchaeum symbiosum*" (Hallam et al. 2006).

8.4.2 Sponge-Specific Microbes

Based on electron microscopy and laboratory cultivation methods, the sponge-associated microbes are categorized into three: (a) larger population of microbe in the sponge mesohyl, (b) smaller population occurring intracellularly, and (c) bacteria from the surrounding seawater (Wilkinson 1978). Both molecular-based study and cultivation-based approach revealed unique bacterial communities between sponges and surrounding seawater (Hill et al. 2006). According to Hentschel et al. (2002), some sponge-specific microbes have been identified and they belong to Acidobacteria, Actinobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Chloroflexi, Cyanobacteria, Nitrospira and Proteobacteria. The 16S rRNA sequence results from the Indonesian sponge 01IND 35 have 50% gene sequence similarities which were closer to genes obtained from other sponges, which include species belonging to Acidobacteria, Nitrospira, Bacteroidetes and Proteobacteria (Hill 2003).

There are 16 bacterial phyla and two main archaeal lineages (*Crenarchaeota* and *Euryarchaeota*) that are recovered from marine sponges, the microbes which are sponge-specific in nature are present in larger quantity due to the presence of the very rich microbial communities (high microbial abundance sponges) (Hentschel et al. 2006). The superphylum Planctomycetes-Verrucomicrobia-Chlamydiae (PVC) consists of some variable associations during phylogenetic analysis, and such sequences containing the sponge species are *Agelas dilatata, Aplysina aerophoba, Discodermia dissoluta* and *Theonella swinhoei* (Taylor et al. 2007a, b). Caribbean, sponges such as *Agelas dilatata, Discodermia dissoluta, Plakortis* sp. and *Xestospongia muta*, *Xestospongia testudinaria* from Indonesia, *Theonella swinhoei* from the Red Sea and *Dysidea avara* from the South China Sea contain 54 sequences of sponge-specific clusters Acidimicrobiaceae (Taylor et al. 2007a, b).

8.4.3 A Generalized Pattern of Sponge-Associated Microbes

There is a generalized pattern of how these sponge-associated microbes localize themselves to the sponge. The light-exposed outer surface generally consists of Cyanobacteria (*Aphanocapsa* sp., *Synechocystis* sp., *Prochloron* sp.) and eukaryotic algae. *Aphanocapsa feldmanni* is the most abundant and is present in at least 19 different sponge species along with *A. aerophoba*. Then the inner part of the sponge is populated by heterotrophic bacteria occupying the mesohyl layer of the sponge, which are located in the extracellular layer within the mesohyl. Some of the

known bacteria are *Astrosclera willeyana* and *Petrosia ficiformis*. Lysis takes place inside the sponge vacuole, in healthy sponges in the canal system, and the outer surface area is free from bacterial growth. The sponge *A. aerophoba* has a large number of filamentous bacteria that are present within the sponge nuclei; the number of bacteria present is correlated to its pathogenicity of the host. Similarly, the bacteria belonging to the genus *Holospora* infect eukaryotic ciliate *Paramecium* (Görtz and Brigge 1998).

When compared to planktonic variations, most of the sponges have very little difference within their communities. When compared to the human microbiome (Firmicutes, Bacteroidetes, Actinobacteria and Proteobacteria), in sponges the phylum Proteobacteria (class Alpha and Gammaproteobacteria) was found to be in higher amount, with Chloroflexi, Cyanobacteria and Crenarchaeota rarely showing relative abundances (Thomas et al. 2016a, b). There is an estimation that between 9000 and 20,000 operational taxonomic units (OUTs) have been identified from the surface of the seawater using 16S rRNA sequencing of the V6 region by pyrosequencing (Zinger et al. 2011). A single-sponge species can harbour a large number of OUTs from its surrounding seawater, sponge species like Carteriospongiafoliascens and *Ircinia variabilis* harbour more than 12,000 OUTs, and the same results were seen in other sponges like *Cliona delitrix, Ircinia strobilina, Ircinia oros, Mycale laxissima, Plakortis halichondrioides, Sarcotragus fasciculatus, Xestospongia* sp. (Zinger et al. 2011).

8.4.4 Sponge Microbiome-Associated Natural Products

Since 1960 the number of natural products that were discovered mostly come from marine sources, with sponges being on the top of the list (Blunt et al. 2011). Each year, more than 5000 different natural products from sponges have been reported along with 180 metabolites (Laport et al. 2009). Some of the important sponge metabolites with profound pharmacological activities include halichondrins, discodermolide, hemiasterlins and arenastatin A, which are used in the treatment of tumours, inflammation and several other diseases. Some of the derived substances have not been derived from sponges but from the sponge-associated microbes that can be either present in them or transported in through the filter-feeding mechanism (Proksch et al. 2002).

8.4.4.1 Manzamine Alkaloids

They form about one-quarter of the 25,000 products that were reported from the ocean. The manazamine alkaloids were first reported in sponge *Haliclona* (Okinawan sponge) with cytotoxic activity against the leukaemia cell line P388 showing activity of IC50 of 0.07 mg/mL (0.13 mM) (Sakai et al. 1986). The alkaloids ircinols A and B which were isolated from sponge *Amphimedon* comparatively have opposite configurations against ircinals A (2) and B (3) from the Okinawan sponge *Ircinia* sp. (Tsuda et al. 1994). They have a wide range of activities like cytotoxicity, insecticidal and antibacterial as well as curative activity

against malaria in vivo (Ang et al. 2000). The compound zamamidines A-C(13-15) isolated from the sponge *Amphimedon* showed inhibitory activity against parasite *Trypanosoma brucei brucei* (IC50 values: 1.4, 1.4, 0.4 and 0.07 mM) as well as against the malarial parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* (IC50: 9.6, 16.3, 0.8 and 1.8 mM) (Yamada et al. 2009).

8.4.4.2 Bromopyrrole Alkaloids

These are compounds (Oroidin 17) that are found especially in marine sponges, first isolated in 1971 from sponge *Agelas oroides* (Forenza et al. 1971). Due to the presence of the pyrrole-imidazole part in bromopyrrole alkaloids, it can be considered as the metabolic derivative of oroidin. They exhibit good activity against predators in the Caribbean reef sponges *Agelas* (Wilson et al. 1999). Compounds such as Hymenidin (2-debromooroidin), clathrodin (2,3-debromooroidin), sventrin (pyrrole N-methyloroidin) were obtained from marine sponges like Hymeniacidon, and the Caribbean sponges *Agelas clathrodes* and *A. sventres* (Rosa et al. 1992). The compounds oroidin, hymenidin and clathrodin were found to have anticholinergic and antiserotonergic activities. The compound tauroacidin A (28) and B (29) from sponge *Hymeniacidon* sp. and taurodispacamide (30) from *Agelas oroides* showed an inhibitory activity over EGF receptor kinase and c-erbB-2 kinase activities (IC50 ¼ 20 mg/mL), whereas the compound taurodispacamide showed antihistaminic activity, and the debromo derivative from the sponge *Axinella verrucosa* has been shown to act as a glutamate and serotonin antagonist (Aiello et al. 2006). The compound hymenin (46), which acts as an alpha-adrenoceptor antagonist, was isolated from the sponge *Hymeniacidon* sp. has antibacterial activity against *Bacillus subtilis* and *Escherichia coli* (Kobayashi et al. 1986).

The compound hymenialdisine has inhibitory activity against CDKs, GSK-3b, CK1 and Chk1, which helps in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease, type II diabetes and cancer (Martinez et al. 2002). The compound agelastatin A (41) was obtained from *Agelas dendromorpha* and from *Cymbastela* sp.; they exhibit higher antiproliferative activity against cancer cell lines (D'Ambrosio et al. 1996). The bioactive compounds belonging to nagelamides have a broad range of activity against bacterial and fungal pathogens like *Bacillus subtilis, Escherichia coli, Micrococcus luteus, Staphylococcus aureus, Trichophyton mentagrophytes, Cryptococcus neoformans, Candida albicans and Aspergillus niger*, having an MIC range of 7.7 and 38.4 mM (Endo et al. 2004).

8.4.4.3 Bromotyrosine Derivatives

The first reported compound of the bromotyrosine derivative is (+)-aeroplysinin-1 (100) obtained from the sponge coming under the order Verongida (*Verongia aerophoba*) in 1970; later on, it was isolated from different sponges like *Psammoposilla purpurea, Aplysina laevis, Aplysina caissara*, whereas the isomer of this compound was isolated from *Ianthella ardis* (Fulmor et al. 1970). This aeroplysinin-1 (100) is highly antiproliferative against cancer cell lines such as Hela, L5178Y, human mammary cell lines and colon carcinoma cell lines (Koulman et al. 1996). It also inhibits the growth of BAECs (bovine aortic endothelial cells)

with apoptotic cell death. The cytotoxic compound aplysinones A–D (124–127) was isolated from the sponge *Aplysinagerardogreeni* has been reported to show cytotoxic activity against MDA-MB-231 (breast adenocarcinoma), IC50 values between 3.0 and 7.6 mM, A-549 (lung carcinoma) and HT-29 (colon adenocarcinoma) (Hernández-Guerrero et al. 2007). Aplysinones A (124), B (125) and D (127) have proven cytotoxic activity against HT-29 cells (colon adenocarcinoma) with corresponding IC50 values of 9.1, 3.0 and 11.3 mM (Hernández-Guerrero et al. 2007). The compound bastadins isolated from the sponge *Ianthella basta* has shown higher antibacterial activity against gram-positive bacteria, anti-inflammatory activity, topoisomerase II, dihydrofolate reductase, inosine 5′-phosphate dehydrogenase, and 12- and 15-human lipoxygenases (Jaspars et al. 1994).

8.4.4.4 Sponge-Microbiome-Derived Peptides

The sponge-microbial-derived peptides have a unique structure when compared to other source peptides. They also contain unusual linkage between amino acids *kapakahines* from sponge *Cribrochalinaolemda* (Nakao et al. 2003). The first bioactive peptide discodermin A (142) was isolated from the sponge *Discodermia kiiensis*; discodermins A–D (142–145) possess antibacterial activity, and phospholipase A2 (PLA2) inhibitor activity (Ryu et al. 1994). The discodermins F–H (146–148) shows cytotoxic activity against murine leukaemia cells resulting in IC50 values of 0.6, 0.23 and 0.6 mM, discobahamins A and B show mild antifungal activity against *Candida albicans* (Gunasekera et al. 1994). The peptide polydiscamide A helps in the inhibitory activity of the A549 (cancer cell line of the lungs) ($IC_{50} = 0.4$ μM) and also inhibits the growth of the bacterium *Bacillus subtilis* (MIC of 1.8 μM) (Gulavita et al. 1992). The peptide jaspamide (150) has a broad range of activity that includes antifungal, antihelminthic, insecticidal and cytotoxic, and there are 16 derivatives of jaspamide (B–H and J–R) that have been isolated from the marine sponge *Jaspis splendens* (Zampella et al. 1999). Almost all these derivatives show antiproliferative activity with IC_{50} values 0.01–10 μM when tested against MCF-7 human breast adenocarcinoma, HT-29 colon carcinoma, or L5178Y muse lymphoma cell lines (Gala et al. 2009).

The bioactive peptide hemiasterlin (157) is an antimitotic tripeptide that was primarily isolated along with geodiamolide TA in 1994 from the sponge *Hemiasterella minor*; it has cytotoxic activity against the P388 leukaemia cell line with an IC_{50} value of 0.02 μM (Talpir et al. 1994). The bioactive peptide halipeptin A (176) has an anti-inflammatory activity which can inhibit 60% of oedema in a mouse model when it was given a dosage of about 0.3 mg/kg (i.p.) when compared with the known indomethacin and naproxen (ED_{50} of 12 and 40 mg/kg) (Randazzo et al. 2001). The bioactive compound theonellamide F (177) has a wide range of antifungal activity against *Candida* sp., *Trichophyton* sp. and *Aspergillus* sp. With MIC values 1.8 and 7.3 μM, it also has cytotoxic activity on L1210 and P388 leukaemia cells with IC50 values of 1.9 and 1.6 μM (Matsunaga et al. 1989).

8.4.4.5 Industrial Enzymes from Sponge Microbiome

The metaproteome of the Mediterranean sponge *Aplysinia aerophoba* comprises 3.6% of the CAZymes. They play a major role in metabolising chitin, and N-acetylglucosamine also helps in the bioconversion of the complex polysaccharides (glycoproteins and glycolipids) (De Mares et al. 2018). The enzyme carboxylesterases that was derived from the marine source has been utilized for various purposes like the food industry, leather industry, textile industry, pharmaceutical production and biofuel production. After CAZymes (polysaccharide-degrading enzymes), the enzyme carboxylesterases are the most characterised enzyme that was obtained from the sponge microbiome (Navvabi et al. 2018). The bacterial strain *Pseudomonas* sp. MSI057 obtained from *Dendrilla nigra* shows elevated relative activity even in the presence of low detergent concentrations like Triton-X and SDS, and the sponge *Halichondria rugose* yields a mild lipase active enzyme from the *Bacillus pumilus* B106 strain (Zhang et al. 2009). The novel esterase 7N9 isolated from *Stelletta normani* (deep-sea sponge), which has slight alkaliphily, salt tolerance and reactivity to metal ions, and mainly, psychrophily highlighted its potentiality for low-temperature processes (Borchert et al. 2017).

8.4.4.5.1 Proteolytic Enzymes

A collagenolytic enzyme isolated from the bacterial strain *Pseudoalteromonas agarivorans* NW4327 that belongs to the sponge *Rhopaloeides odorabile* has a pathogenic activity which was proved by the Azocoll-degrading assay and electron microscopic study, which was later purified and tested against gelatine, casein, bird feather and collagenous spongin obtained from different demosponge skeletons. Interestingly the enzyme production reached the max when a natural source of seawater along with host-specific spongin was used later with the help of structural prediction, and functional sequence analysis was used to identify them as the U32 peptidase family (Bhattacharya et al. 2018, 2019).

The collagenase enzyme-producing *Pseudoalteromonas* strain was successfully used in the process of meat tenderization and also helps in the production of antioxidant hydrolysates from seafood waste (Yang et al. 2017).

Many of the isolated protease enzymes from the marine source (sponge microbiome) shows similar activity when compared with previously isolated protease enzymes. A heat-stable alkaline protease was isolated from the *Fasciospongia cavernosa* sponge which was produced by a gelatinolytic strain *Roseobacter* strain which shows 92% activity at pH 9.0 and 50 °C (Shanmughapriya et al. 2008). A fibrinolytic protease was isolated from the bacteria *Streptomyces radiopugnans* strain, which can degrade casein plasminogen and also has the potential to release the red blood cells at greater efficiency (91%, 100% and 100% at 10, 20 and 30 in, respectively) when compared to the known drug streptokinase (87%, 94% and 100% at 10, 20 and 30 min, respectively) by performing clot lysis assay which can be used as a thrombolytic agent for cardiovascular disorders, such as acute myocardial infarction and stroke (Dhamodharan 2019).

8.5 Environmental Factors and Sponge Microbiome

The sponge microbiome is resilient to most of the environmental factors like starvation and exposure to various physical and chemical agents. Sometimes the process of translocation to *Aplysina aerophoba* and *Aplysina cavernicola* shows only a few changes in their microbiome composition (Thoms et al. 2003). Bacterial profiling of the three sponge species *Lubomirskia baicalensis, Baikalospongia intermedia* and *Swartschewskia papyracea* by pyrosequencing shows the richness of Cyanobacteria. The microbiome diversity of *S. papyracea* is richer when compared to other sponges such as *L. baicalensis* and *B. intermedia*, especially when the Actinobacteria is in enormous amount (Seo et al. 2016).

The increase in the temperature can cause the sponge microbiome to shift or even decline in its overall health. A sudden decline in the microbiome population in *Rhopaloeides odorabile* was noticed when the temperature shifts from 31–32 to 33 °C, leading to sponge tissue necrosis and decline in the microbial symbiont (Simister et al. 2012a, b). The process of eutrophication also leads to changes in the sponge microbiome, due to a sudden increase in the nutrients such as nitrogen and phosphorus which indeed increases the phytoplankton population thus creating a biological oxygen demand situation (BOD) and higher sedimentation rate (Nogales et al. 2011). At the starting stages of nutrient influx, in Chesapeake Bay the dominant groups of the microbiome are the SAR11, SAR86 and picocyanobacteria, due to continued depletion in the oxygen causing a drastic shift in the community to anaerobes Firmicutes, Bacteroidetes and sulphur-oxidizing Gammaproteobacteria (West et al. 2016)

8.6 Conclusion

The marine sponge microbiome has a richer source of microbial community that is useful in many applications. The role of microbiome dynamics has important functions in the synthesis of bioactive compounds and protection against predation. Most of the high-potency enzymes were isolated from the sponge or sponge-associated microbiome, whereas in the sponge *Spongia officinalis* growing in polluted areas, it harbours a very rich source of microbial diversity when compared to its surrounding seawater. By applying advanced techniques like metagenomic analysis, transcriptomic analysis brings out the unexplored part of the sponge-microbiome interaction and its potential.

References

Aiello A, D'Esposito M, Fattorusso E, Menna M, Mueller WEG, Perović-Ottstadt S, Schröeder HC (2006) Bioorg Med Chem 14:17

Althoff K, Schütt C, Steffen R, Batel R, Mueller WE (1998) Evidence for a symbiosis between bacteria of the genus Rhodobacter and the marine sponge Halichondria panicea: harbor also for putatively toxic bacteria? Mar Biol 130(3):529–536

Anderson SA, Northcote PT, Page MJ (2010) Spatial and temporal variability of the bacterial community in different chemotypes of the New Zealand marine sponge Mycale hentscheli. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 72(3):328–342

Ang KK, Holmes MJ, Higa T, Hamann MT, Kara UA (2000) In vivo antimalarial activity of the beta-carboline alkaloid manzamine A. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 44(6):1645–1649

Astudillo-García C, Bell JJ, Webster NS, Glasl B, Jompa J, Montoya JM, Taylor MW (2017) Evaluating the core microbiota in complex communities: a systematic investigation. Environ Microbiol 19(4):1450–1462

Bauvais C, Zirah S, Piette L, Chaspoul F, Domart-Coulon I, Chapon V et al (2015) Sponging up metals: bacteria associated with the marine sponge *Spongia officinalis*. Mar Environ Res 104: 20–30

Bavestrello G, Arillo A, Calcinai B, Cattaneo-Vietti R, Cerrano C, Gaino E et al (2000) Parasitic diatoms inside Antarctic sponges. Biol Bull 198(1):29–33

Becerro MA, Lopez NI, Turon X, Uriz MJ (1994) Antimicrobial activity and surface bacterial film in marine sponges. J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 179(2):195–205

Becerro MA, Thacker RW, Turon X, Uriz MJ, Paul VJ (2003) Biogeography of sponge chemical ecology: comparisons of tropical and temperate defenses. Oecologia 135(1):91–101

Bhattacharya S, Choudhury JD, Gachhui R, Mukherjee J (2018) A new collagenase enzyme of the marine sponge pathogen Pseudoalteromonas agarivorans NW4327 is uniquely linked with a TonB dependent receptor. Int J Biol Macromol 109:1140–1146

Bhattacharya S, Bhattacharya S, Gachhui R, Hazra S, Mukherjee J (2019) U32 collagenase from Pseudoalteromonas agarivorans NW4327: activity, structure, substrate interactions and molecular dynamics simulations. Int J Biol Macromol 124:635–650

Bil K, Titlyanov E, Berner T, Fomina I, Muscatine L (1999) Some aspects of the physiology and biochemistry of Lubomirskia baikalensis, a sponge from Lake Baikal containing symbiotic algae. Symbiosis 26:179–191

Blunt JW, Copp BR, Munro MH, Northcote PT, Prinsep MR (2006) Marine natural products. Nat Prod Rep 23(1):26–78

Blunt JW, Copp BR, Munro MH, Northcote PT, Prinsep MR (2011) Marine natural products. Nat Prod Rep 28(2):196–268

Borchert E, Selvin J, Kiran SG, Jackson SA, O'Gara F, Dobson AD (2017) A novel cold active esterase from a deep sea sponge Stelletta normani metagenomic library. Front Mar Sci 4:287

Boury-Esnault N (2006) Systematics and evolution of Demospongiae. Can J Zool 84(2):205–224

Bugni TS, Ireland CM (2004) Marine-derived fungi: a chemically and biologically diverse group of microorganisms. Nat Prod Rep 21(1):143–163

Cárdenas CA, Bell JJ, Davy SK, Hoggard M, Taylor MW (2014) Influence of environmental variation on symbiotic bacterial communities of two temperate sponges. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 88(3):516–527

Cebrian E, Uriz MJ, Turon X (2007) Sponges as biomonitors of heavy metals in spatial and temporal surveys in northwestern Mediterranean: multispecies comparison. Environ Toxicol Chem 26(11):2430–2439

Cebrian E, Uriz MJ, Garrabou J, Ballesteros E (2011) Sponge mass mortalities in a warming Mediterranean Sea: are cyanobacteria-harboring species worse off? PLoS One 6(6):e20211

Cerrano C, Arillo A, Bavestrello G, Calcinai B, Cattaneo-Vietti R, Penna A et al (2000) Diatom invasion in the Antarctic hexactinellid sponge Scolymastra joubini. Polar Biol 23(6):441–444

Chanas B, Pawlik JR, Lindel T, Fenical W (1997) Chemical defense of the Caribbean sponge Agelas clathrodes (Schmidt). J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 208(1–2):185–196

Cleary DF, Becking LE, Voogd NJD, Pires AC, Polónia AR, Egas C, Gomes NC (2013) Habitat- and host-related variation in sponge bacterial symbiont communities in Indonesian waters. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 85(3):465–482

D'Ambrosio M, Guerriero A, Pietra F, Ripamonti M, Debitus C, Waikedre J (1996) The active centres of agelastatin A, a strongly cytotoxic alkaloid of the Coral Sea axinellid sponge Agelas dendromorpha, as determined by comparative bioassays with semisynthetic derivatives. Helv Chim Acta 79(3):727–735

De Mares MC, Jiménez DJ, Palladino G, Gutleben J, Lebrun LA, Muller EE et al (2018) Expressed protein profile of a Tectomicrobium and other microbial symbionts in the marine sponge Aplysina aerophoba as evidenced by metaproteomics. Sci Rep 8(1):1–14

De Mestre C, Maher W, Roberts D, Broad A, Krikowa F, Davis AR (2012) Sponges as sentinels: patterns of spatial and intra-individual variation in trace metal concentration. Mar Pollut Bull 64(1):80–89

De Oliveira BFR, Freitas-Silva J, Sánchez-Robinet C, Laport MS (2020) Transmission of the sponge microbiome: moving towards a unified model. Environ Microbiol Rep 12(6):619–638

Dhamodharan D (2019) Novel fibrinolytic protease producing Streptomyces radiopugnans VITSD8 from marine sponges. Mar Drugs 17(3):164

Diaz MC, Rützler K (2001) Sponges: an essential component of Caribbean coral reefs. Bull Mar Sci 69(2):535–546

Endo T, Tsuda M, Okada T, Mitsuhashi S, Shima H, Kikuchi K et al (2004) Nagelamides A−H, new dimeric bromopyrrole alkaloids from marine sponge Agelas species. J Nat Prod 67(8): 1262–1267

Engel S, Pawlik JR (2000) Allelopathic activities of sponge extracts. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 207:273–281

Enticknap JJ, Kelly M, Peraud O, Hill RT (2006) Characterization of a culturable alphaproteobacterial symbiont common to many marine sponges and evidence for vertical transmission via sponge larvae. Appl Environ Microbiol 72(5):3724–3732

Erwin PM, Pita L, López-Legentil S, Turon X (2012) Stability of sponge-associated bacteria over large seasonal shifts in temperature and irradiance. Appl Environ Microbiol 78(20):7358–7368

Erwin PM, Coma R, López-Sendino P, Serrano E, Ribes M (2015) Stable symbionts across the HMA-LMA dichotomy: low seasonal and interannual variation in sponge-associated bacteria from taxonomically diverse hosts. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 91(10)

Esteves AI, Hardoim CC, Xavier JR, Gonçalves JM, Costa R (2013) Molecular richness and biotechnological potential of bacteria cultured from Irciniidae sponges in the north-east Atlantic. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 85(3):519–536

Fan L, Liu M, Simister R, Webster NS, Thomas T (2013) Marine microbial symbiosis heats up: the phylogenetic and functional response of a sponge holobiont to thermal stress. ISME J 7(5): 991–1002

Forenza S, Minale L, Riccio R, Fattorusso EJCS (1971) New bromo-pyrrole derivatives from the sponge Agelas oroides. J Chem Soc D Chem Commun 18:1129–1130

Friedrich AB, Merkert H, Fendert T, Hacker J, Proksch P, Hentschel U (1999) Microbial diversity in the marine sponge Aplysina cavernicola (formerly Verongia cavernicola) analyzed by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). Mar Biol 134(3):461–470

Frost T, Graham L, Elias J, Haase M, Kretchmer D, Kranzfelder J (1997) A yellow–green algal symbiont in the freshwater sponge, Corvomeyenia everetti: convergent evolution of symbiotic associations. Freshw Biol 38(2):395–399

Fulmor W, Van Lear GE, Morton GO, Mills RD (1970) Isolation and absolute configuration of the aeroplysinin I enantiomorphic pair from Ianthellaardis. Tetrahedron Lett 52:4551–4552

Gaino E, Magnino G (1999) Dissociated cells of the calcareous sponge Clathrina: a model for investigating cell adhesion and cell motility in vitro. Microsc Res Tech 44(4):279–292

Gaino E, Bavestrello G, Cattaneo-Vietti R, Sarà M (1994) Scanning electron microscope evidence for diatom uptake by two Antarctic sponges. Polar Biol 14(1):55–58

Gala F, D'Auria MV, De Marino S, Sepe V, Zollo F, Smith CD et al (2009) Jaspamides M–P: new tryptophan modified jaspamide derivatives from the sponge Jaspis splendans. Tetrahedron 65(1):51–56

Gao ZM, Wang Y, Tian RM, Wong YH, Batang ZB, Al-Suwailem AM et al (2014) Symbiotic adaptation drives genome streamlining of the cyanobacterial sponge symbiont "Candidatus Synechococcus spongiarum". MBio 5(2)

Garson MJ, Flowers AE, Webb RI, Charan RD, McCaffrey EJ (1998) A sponge/dinoflagellate association in the haplosclerid sponge Haliclona sp.: cellular origin of cytotoxic alkaloids by Percoll density gradient fractionation. Cell Tissue Res 293(2):365–373

Gazave ELP, Ereskovsky AV, Vacelet J, Renard E, Cardenas P, Borchiellini C (2012) No longer Demospongiae: Homoscleromorpha formal nomination as a fourth class of Porifera. Hydrbiologia 687(1):3–10

Ghyselinck J, Pfeiffer S, Heylen K, Sessitsch A, De Vos P (2013) The effect of primer choice and short read sequences on the outcome of 16S rRNA gene based diversity studies. PLoS One 8(8): e71360

Gili JM, Coma R (1998) Benthic suspension feeders: their paramount role in littoral marine food webs. Trends Ecol Evol 13:316–321

Glasl B, Webster NS, Bourne DG (2017) Microbial indicators as a diagnostic tool for assessing water quality and climate stress in coral reef ecosystems. Mar Biol 164(4):91

Glasl B, Smith CE, Bourne DG, Webster NS (2018) Exploring the diversity-stability paradigm using sponge microbial communities. Sci Rep 8(1):1–9

Gochfeld DJ, Easson CG, Freeman CJ, Thacker RW, Olson JB (2012) Disease and nutrient enrichment as potential stressors on the Caribbean sponge Aplysina cauliformis and its bacterial symbionts. Mar Ecol Progr Ser 456:101–111

Görtz HD, Brigge T (1998) Intracellular bacteria in protozoa. Sci Nat 85(8):359–368

Gulavita NK, Gunasekera SP, Pomponi SA, Robinson EV (1992) Polydiscamide A: a new bioactive depsipeptide from the marine sponge Discodermia sp. J Organ Chem 57(6): 1767–1772

Gunasekera SP, Pomponi SA, McCarthy PJ (1994) Discobahamins A and B, new peptides from the Bahamian deep water marine sponge Discodermia sp. J Nat Prod 57(1):79–83

Hallam SJ, Mincer TJ, Schleper C, Preston CM, Roberts K, Richardson PM, DeLong EF (2006) Pathways of carbon assimilation and ammonia oxidation suggested by environmental genomic analyses of marine Crenarchaeota. PLoS Biol 4(4):e95

Hansen IV, Weeks JM, Depledge MH (1995) Accumulation of copper, zinc, cadmium and chromium by the marine sponge Halichondria panicea Pallas and the implications for biomonitoring. Mar Pollut Bull 31(1–3):133–138

Hentschel U, Schmid M, Wagner M, Fieseler L, Gernert C, Hacker J (2001) Isolation and phylogenetic analysis of bacteria with antimicrobial activities from the Mediterranean sponges Aplysina aerophoba and Aplysina cavernicola. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 35(3):305–312

Hentschel U, Hopke J, Horn M, Friedrich AB, Wagner M, Hacker J, Moore BS (2002) Molecular evidence for a uniform microbial community in sponges from different oceans. Appl Environ Microbiol 68(9):4431–4440

Hentschel U, Usher KM, Taylor MW (2006) Marine sponges as microbial fermenters. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 55(2):167–177

Hentschel U, Piel J, Degnan SM, Taylor MW (2012) Genomic insights into the marine sponge microbiome. Nat Rev Microbiol 10(9):641–654

Hernández-Guerrero CJ, Zubia E, Ortega MJ, Carballo JL (2007) Cytotoxic dibromotyrosine-derived metabolites from the sponge Aplysina gerardogreeni. Bioorg Med Chem 15(15): 5275–5282

Hester ER, Barott KL, Nulton J, Vermeij MJ, Rohwer FL (2016) Stable and sporadic symbiotic communities of coral and algal holobionts. ISME J 10(5):1157–1169

Hill MS (1996) Symbiotic zooxanthellae enhance boring and growth rates of the tropical sponge Anthosigmella varians forma varians. Mar Biol 125(4):649–654

Hill RT (2003) Microbes from marine sponges: a treasure trove of biodiversity for natural products discovery. In: Microbial diversity and bioprospecting, pp 177–190

Hill M, Wilcox T (1998) Unusual mode of symbiont repopulation after bleaching in Anthosigmella varians: acquisition of different zooxanthellae strains. Symbiosis 25:279–289
Hill M, Hill A, Lopez N, Harriott O (2006) Sponge-specific bacterial symbionts in the Caribbean sponge, Chondrilla nucula (Demospongiae, Chondrosida). Mar Biol 148(6):1221–1230
Hoegh-Guldberg O, Mumby PJ, Hooten AJ, Steneck RS, Greenfield P, Gomez E et al (2007) Coral reefs under rapid climate change and ocean acidification. Science 318(5857):1737–1742
Höller U, Wright AD, Matthee GF, Konig GM, Draeger S, Aust HJ, Schulz B (2000) Fungi from marine sponges: diversity, biological activity and secondary metabolites. Mycol Res 104(11): 1354–1365
Holmes B, Blanch H (2007) Genus-specific associations of marine sponges with group I crenarchaeotes. Mar Biol 150(5):759–772
Hooper JN, Van Soest RW (2002) Systema Porifera. A guide to the classification of sponges. In: Systema Porifera. Springer, Boston, MA, pp 1–7
Jaspars M, Rali T, Laney M, Schatzman RC, Diaz MC, Schmitz FJ et al (1994) The search for inosine 5′-Phosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitors from marine sponges. Evaluation of the bastadin alkaloids. Tetrahedron 50(25):7367–7374
Jensen KS, Pedersen MF (1994) Photosynthesis by symbiotic algae in the freshwater sponge, Spongilla lacustris. Limnol Oceanogr 39(3):551–561
Karner MB, DeLong EF, Karl DM (2001) Archaeal dominance in the mesopelagic zone of the Pacific Ocean. Nature 409(6819):507–510
Kim TK, Garson MJ, Fuerst JA (2005) Marine actinomycetes related to the 'Salinospora' group from the Great Barrier Reef sponge Pseudoceratina clavata. Environ Microbiol 7(4):509–518
Kobayashi J, Ohizumi Y, Nakamura H, Hirata Y, Wakamatsu K, Miyazawa T (1986) Hymenin, a novel α-adrenoceptor blocking agent from the Okinawan marine sponge Hymeniacidon sp. Experientia 42(9):1064–1065
König GM, Kehraus S, Seibert SF, Abdel-Lateff A, Müller D (2006) Natural products from marine organisms and their associated microbes. ChemBioChem 7(2):229–238
Koulman A, Proksch P, Ebel R, Beekman AC, van Uden W, Konings AW et al (1996) Cytotoxicity and mode of action of aeroplysinin-1 and a related dienone from the sponge Aplysina aerophoba. J Nat Prod 59(6):591–594
Lafi FF, Garson MJ, Fuerst JA (2005) Culturable bacterial symbionts isolated from two distinct sponge species (Pseudoceratina clavata and Rhabdastrella globostellata) from the Great Barrier Reef display similar phylogenetic diversity. Microb Ecol 50(2):213–220
Laport MS, Santos OCS, Muricy G (2009) Marine sponges: potential sources of new antimicrobial drugs. Curr Pharm Biotechnol 10(1):86–105
Lee OO, Qian PY (2003) Chemical control of bacterial epibiosis and larval settlement of Hydroides elegans in the red sponge Mycale adherens. Biofouling 19(S1):171–180
Lee OO, Lau SC, Tsoi MM, Li X, Plakhotnikova I, Dobretsov S et al (2006) Gillisiamyxillae sp. nov., a novel member of the family Flavobacteriaceae, isolated from the marine sponge Myxilla incrustans. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56(8):1795–1799
Lemoine N, Buell N, Hill A, Hill M (2007) Assessing the utility of sponge microbial symbiont communities as models to study global climate change: a case study with Halichondria bowerbanki. In: Porifera research: biodiversity, innovation and sustainability, pp 419–425
Lesser MP, Fiore C, Slattery M, Zaneveld J (2016) Climate change stressors destabilize the microbiome of the Caribbean barrel sponge, Xestospongia muta. J Exp Mar Biol Ecol 475: 11–18
Lopez JV, McCarthy PJ, Janda KE, Willoughby R, Pomponi SA (1999) Molecular techniques reveal wide phyletic diversity of heterotrophic microbes associated with Discodermia spp. (Porifera: Demospongiae). In: Proceedings of the 5th International Sponge Symposium: Memoirs of the Queensland Museum, vol 44, p 329
López-Legentil S, Song B, Mcmurray SE, Pawlik JR (2008) Bleaching and stress in coral reef ecosystems: hsp70 expression by the giant barrel sponge Xestospongia muta. Mol Ecol 17(7): 1840–1849

López-Legentil S, Erwin PM, Pawlik JR, Song B (2010) Effects of sponge bleaching on ammonia-oxidizing Archaea: distribution and relative expression of ammonia monooxygenase genes associated with the barrel sponge Xestospongia muta. Microb Ecol 60(3):561–571

Luter HM, Gibb K, Webster NS (2014) Eutrophication has no short-term effect on the Cymbastela stipitata holobiont. Front Microbiol 5:216

Luter HM, Widder S, Botté ES, Wahab MA, Whalan S, Moitinho-Silva L et al (2015) Biogeographic variation in the microbiome of the ecologically important sponge, Carteriospongia foliascens. PeerJ 3:e1435

Luter HM, Bannister RJ, Whalan S, Kutti T, Pineda MC, Webster NS (2017) Microbiome analysis of a disease affecting the deep-sea sponge Geodiabarretti. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 93(6):fix074

Mangano S, Michaud L, Caruso C, Giudice AL (2014) Metal and antibiotic resistance in psychrotrophic bacteria associated with the Antarctic sponge Hemigellius pilosus (Kirkpatrick, 1907). Polar Biol 37(2):227–235

Martinez A, Castro A, Dorronsoro I, Alonso M (2002) Glycogen synthase kinase 3 (GSK-3) inhibitors as new promising drugs for diabetes, neurodegeneration, cancer, and inflammation. Med Res Rev 22(4):373–384

Matsunaga S, Fusetani N, Hashimoto K, Walchli M (1989) Theonellamide F. A novel antifungal bicyclic peptide from a marine sponge Theonella sp. J Am Chem Soc 111(7):2582–2588

Mohamed NM, Colman AS, Tal Y, Hill RT (2008) Diversity and expression of nitrogen fixation genes in bacterial symbionts of marine sponges. Environ Microbiol 10(11):2910–2921

Moitinho-Silva L, Nielsen S, Amir A, Gonzalez A, Ackermann GL, Cerrano C et al (2017) The sponge microbiome project. Giga Sci 6:10

Montalvo NF, Mohamed NM, Enticknap JJ, Hill RT (2005) Novel actinobacteria from marine sponges. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 87(1):29–36

Munro MH, Blunt JW, Dumdei EJ, Hickford SJ, Lill RE, Li S et al (1999) The discovery and development of marine compounds with pharmaceutical potential. In: Progress in industrial microbiology, vol 35. Elsevier, pp 15–25

Nakao Y, Kuo J, Yoshida WY, Kelly M, Scheuer PJ (2003) More Kapakahines from the Marine Sponge Cribrochalina o lemda. Org Lett 5(9):1387–1390

Navvabi A, Razzaghi M, Fernandes P, Karami L, Homaei A (2018) Novel lipases discovery specifically from marine organisms for industrial production and practical applications. Process Biochem 70:61–70

Newbold RW, Jensen PR, Fenical W, Pawlik JR (1999) Antimicrobial activity of Caribbean sponge extracts. Aquat Microb Ecol 19(3):279–284

Nogales B, Lanfranconi MP, Piña-Villalonga JM, Bosch R (2011) Anthropogenic perturbations in marine microbial communities. FEMS Microbiol Rev 35(2):275–298

Olson JB, Gao X (2013) Characterizing the bacterial associates of three Caribbean sponges along a gradient from shallow to mesophotic depths. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 85(1):74–84

Olson JB, Lord CC, McCarthy PJ (2000) Improved recoverability of microbial colonies from marine sponge samples. Microb Ecol 40(2):139–147

Patel B, Balani MC, Patel S (1985) Sponge 'sentinel' of heavy metals. Sci Total Environ 41(2): 143–152

Pawlik JR, Chanas B, Toonen RJ, Fenical W (1995) Defenses of Caribbean sponges against predatory reef fish. I. Chemical deterrency. Mar Ecol Progr Ser 127:183–194

Perez T, Longet D, Schembri T, Rebouillon P, Vacelet J (2005) Effects of 12 years' operation of a sewage treatment plant on trace metal occurrence within a Mediterranean commercial sponge (Spongia officinalis, Demospongiae). Mar Pollut Bull 50(3):301–309

Pimentel-Elardo S, Wehrl M, Friedrich AB, Jensen PR, Hentschel U (2003) Isolation of planctomycetes from Aplysina sponges. Aquat Microb Ecol 33(3):239–245

Pineda MC, Strehlow B, Sternel M, Duckworth A, Jones R, Webster NS (2017) Effects of suspended sediments on the sponge holobiont with implications for dredging management. Sci Rep 7(1):1–15

Pita L, Erwin PM, Turon X, López-Legentil S (2013a) Till death do us part: stable sponge-bacteria associations under thermal and food shortage stresses. PLoS One 8(11):e80307
Pita L, Turon X, López-Legentil S, Erwin PM (2013b) Host rules: spatial stability of bacterial communities associated with marine sponges (Ircinia spp.) in the Western Mediterranean Sea. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 86(2):268–276
Proksch P, Edrada R, Ebel R (2002) Drugs from the seas–current status and microbiological implications. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 59(2):125–134
Ramsby BD, Hoogenboom MO, Whalan S, Webster NS (2018) Elevated seawater temperature disrupts the microbiome of an ecologically important bioeroding sponge. Mol Ecol 27(8): 2124–2137
Randazzo A, Bifulco G, Giannini C, Bucci M, Debitus C, Cirino G, Gomez-Paloma L (2001) Halipeptins A and B: two novel potent anti-inflammatory cyclic depsipeptides from the Vanuatu marine sponge Haliclona species. J Am Chem Soc 123(44):10870–10876
Reshef L, Koren O, Loya Y, Zilber-Rosenberg I, Rosenberg E (2006) The coral probiotic hypothesis. Environ Microbiol 8:2068–2073
Reveillaud J, Maignien L, Eren AM, Huber JA, Apprill A, Sogin ML, Vanreusel A (2014) Host-specificity among abundant and rare taxa in the sponge microbiome. ISME J 8(6):1198–1209
Rohwer F, Seguritan V, Azam F, Knowlton N (2002) Diversity and distribution of coral-associated bacteria. Mar Ecol Progr Ser 243:1–10
Rosa R, Silva W, De Motta GE, Rodriguez AD, Morales JJ, Ortiz M (1992) Anti-muscarinic activity of a family of C 11 N 5 compounds isolated from Agelas sponges. Experientia 48(9): 885–887
Ruetzler K (2004) Sponges on coral reefs: a community shaped by competitive cooperation. BMIB-Bollettino dei Musei e degli Istituti Biologici 68
Rützler K (1975) The role of burrowing sponges in bioerosion. Oecologia 19(3):203–216
Rützler K (1978) Sponges in coral reefs. In: Coral reefs: research methods: monographs on oceanographic methodology
Rützler K, Macintyre IG (1978) Siliceous sponge spicules in coral reef sediments. Mar Biol 49(2): 147–159
Ryu G, Matsunaga S, Fusetani N (1994) Discodermin E, a cytotoxic and antimicrobial tetradecapeptide, from the marine sponge Discodermia kiiensis. Tetrahedron Lett 35(44): 8251–8254
Sakai R, Higa T, Jefford CW, Bernardinelli G (1986) Manzamine A, a novel antitumor alkaloid from a sponge. J Am Chem Soc 108(20):6404–6405
Santavy DL, Willenz P, Colwell RR (1990) Phenotypic study of bacteria associated with the Caribbean sclerosponge, Ceratoporella nicholsoni. Appl Environ Microbiol 56(6):1750–1762
Sara M, Liaci L (1964) Symbiotic association between zooxanthellae and two marine sponges of the genus Cliona. Nature 203(4942):321–321
Scalera-Liaci L, Sciscioli M, Lepore E, Gaino E (1999) Symbiotic zooxanthellae in Cinachyra tarentina, a non-boring demosponge. Endocytobiosis Cell Res 13(1–3):105–114
Schmitt S, Hentschel U, Taylor MW (2011) Deep sequencing reveals diversity and community structure of complex microbiota in five Mediterranean sponges. In: Ancient animals, new challenges. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 341–351
Schmitt S, Tsai P, Bell J, Fromont J, Ilan M, Lindquist N et al (2012) Assessing the complex sponge microbiota: core, variable and species-specific bacterial communities in marine sponges. ISME J 6(3):564–576
Schönberg CH, Loh WK (2005) Molecular identity of the unique symbiotic dinoflagellates found in the bioeroding demosponge Cliona orientalis. Mar Ecol Progr Ser 299:157–166
Sears MA, Gerhart DJ, Rittschof D (1990) Antifouling agents from marine sponge Lissodendoryx isodictyalis carter. J Chem Ecol 16(3):791–799
Seo EY, Jung D, Belykh OI, Bukshuk NA, Parfenova VV, Joung Y et al (2016) Comparison of bacterial diversity and species composition in three endemic Baikalian sponges. Ann Limnol 52: 27–32. EDP Sciences

Shanmughapriya S, Krishnaveni J, Selvin J, Gandhimathi R, Arunkumar M, Thangavelu T et al (2008) Optimization of extracellular thermotolerant alkaline protease produced by marine Roseobacter sp. (MMD040). Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 31(5):427–433

Simister RL, Deines P, Botté ES, Webster NS, Taylor MW (2012a) Sponge-specific clusters revisited: a comprehensive phylogeny of sponge-associated microorganisms. Environ Microbiol 14(2):517–524

Simister R, Taylor MW, Tsai P, Webster N (2012b) Sponge-microbe associations survive high nutrients and temperatures. PLoS One 7(12):e52220

Simpson TL (1984) Gamete, embryo, larval development. In: The cell biology of sponges. Springer, New York, pp 341–413

Solomon S, Manning M, Marquis M, Qin D (2007) Climate change 2007-the physical science basis: Working group I contribution to the fourth assessment report of the IPCC, vol 4. Cambridge University Press

Steger D, Ettinger-Epstein P, Whalan S, Hentschel U, De Nys R, Wagner M, Taylor MW (2008) Diversity and mode of transmission of ammonia-oxidizing archaea in marine sponges. Environ Microbiol 10(4):1087–1094

Steindler L, Beer S, Peretzman-Shemer A, Nyberg C, Ilan M (2001) Photoadaptation of zooxanthellae in the sponge Cliona vastifica from the Red Sea, as measured in situ. Mar Biol 138(3):511–515

Steinert G, Taylor MW, Deines P, Simister RL, De Voogd NJ, Hoggard M, Schupp PJ (2016) In four shallow and mesophotic tropical reef sponges from Guam the microbial community largely depends on host identity. PeerJ 4:e1936

Steinert G, Rohde S, Janussen D, Blaurock C, Schupp PJ (2017) Host-specific assembly of sponge-associated prokaryotes at high taxonomic ranks. Sci Rep 7(1):1–9

Strand R, Whalan S, Webster NS, Kutti T, Fang JKH, Luter HM, Bannister RJ (2017) The response of a boreal deep-sea sponge holobiont to acute thermal stress. Sci Rep 7(1):1–12

Talpir R, Benayahu Y, Kashman Y, Pannell L, Schleyer M (1994) Hemiasterlin and geodiamolide TA; two new cytotoxic peptides from the marine sponge Hemiasterella minor (Kirkpatrick). Tetrahedron Lett 35(25):4453–4456

Taylor MW, Schupp PJ, Dahllöf I, Kjelleberg S, Steinberg PD (2004) Host specificity in marine sponge-associated bacteria, and potential implications for marine microbial diversity. Environ Microbiol 6(2):121–130

Taylor MW, Hill RT, Piel J, Thacker RW, Hentschel U (2007a) Soaking it up: the complex lives of marine sponges and their microbial associates. ISME J 1(3):187–190

Taylor MW, Radax R, Steger D, Wagner M (2007b) Sponge-associated microorganisms: evolution, ecology, and biotechnological potential. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 71(2):295–347

Thacker RW, Freeman CJ (2012) Sponge–microbe symbioses: recent advances and new directions. In: Advances in marine biology, vol 62. Academic Press, pp 57–111

Thacker RW, Becerro MA, Lumbang WA, Paul VJ (1998) Allelopathic interactions between sponges on a tropical reef. Ecology 79(5):1740–1750

Thakur AN, Thakur NL, Indap MM, Pandit RA, Datar VV, Müller WE (2005) Antiangiogenic, antimicrobial, and cytotoxic potential of sponge-associated bacteria. Mar Biotechnol 7(3): 245–252

Thomas T, Moitinho-Silva L, Lurgi M, Björk JR, Easson C, Astudillo-García C et al (2016a) Diversity, structure and convergent evolution of the global sponge microbiome. Nat Commun 7: 11870

Thomas T, Moitinho-Silva L, Lurgi M, Björk JR, Easson C, Astudillo-García C et al (2016b) Diversity, structure and convergent evolution of the global sponge microbiome. Nat Commun 7(1):1–12

Thoms C, Horn M, Wagner M, Hentschel U, Proksch P (2003) Monitoring microbial diversity and natural product profiles of the sponge Aplysina cavernicola following transplantation. Mar Biol 142(4):685–692

Tian RM, Wang Y, Bougouffa S, Gao ZM, Cai L, Zhang WP et al (2014) Effect of copper treatment on the composition and function of the bacterial community in the sponge Haliclona cymaeformis. MBio 5(6)

Totti C, Calcinai B, Cerrano C, Di Camillo C, Romagnoli T, Bavestrello G (2005) Diatom assemblages associated with Sphaerotylus antarcticus (Porifera: Demospongiae). Mar Biol Assoc UK 85(4):795

Tsuda M, Kawasaki N, Kobayashi JI (1994) Ircinols A and B, first antipodes of manzamine-related alkaloids from an Okinawan marine sponge. Tetrahedron 50(27):7957–7960

Turque AS, Batista D, Silveira CB, Cardoso AM, Vieira RP, Moraes FC et al (2010) Environmental shaping of sponge associated archaeal communities. PLoS One 5(12):e15774

Turon X, Becerro MA, Uriz MJ (1996) Seasonal patterns of toxicity in benthic invertebrates: the encrusting sponge Crambecrambe (Poecilosclerida). Oikos 75:33–40

Turon M, Cáliz J, Triadó-Margarit X, Casamayor EO, Uriz MJ (2019) Sponges and their microbiomes show similar community metrics across impacted and well-preserved reefs. Front Microbiol 10:1961

Uriz MJ, Agell G, Blanquer A, Turon X, Casamayor EO (2012) Endosymbiotic calcifying bacteria: a new cue to the origin of calcification in metazoa? Evolution 66(10):2993–2999

Van Soest RW, Boury-Esnault N, Vacelet J, Dohrmann M, Erpenbeck D, De Voogd NJ et al (2012) Global diversity of sponges (Porifera). PLoS One 7(4):e35105

van Soest RWM, Boury-Esnault N, Hooper JNA, Rützler K, de Voogd NJ, Alvarez B et al (2019) World Porifera Database

Wanick RC, de Sousa Barbosa H, Frazão LR, Santelli RE, Arruda MAZ, Coutinho CC (2013) Evaluation of differential protein expression in Haliclona aquarius and sponge-associated microorganisms under cadmium stress. Anal Bioanal Chem 405(24):7661–7670

Webster NS, Blackall LL (2009) What do we really know about sponge-microbial symbioses? ISME J 3(1):1–3

Webster NS, Hill RT (2001) The culturable microbial community of the Great Barrier Reef sponge Rhopaloeides odorabile is dominated by an α-Proteobacterium. Mar Biol 138(4):843–851

Webster NS, Reusch TB (2017) Microbial contributions to the persistence of coral reefs. ISME J 11 (10):2167–2174

Webster NS, Webb RI, Ridd MJ, Hill RT, Negri AP (2001a) The effects of copper on the microbial community of a coral reef sponge. Environ Microbiol 3(1):19–31

Webster NS, Wilson KJ, Blackall LL, Hill RT (2001b) Phylogenetic diversity of bacteria associated with the marine sponge Rhopaloeides odorabile. Appl Environ Microbiol 67(1):434–444

Webster NS, Negri AP, Munro MM, Battershill CN (2004) Diverse microbial communities inhabit Antarctic sponges. Environ Microbiol 6(3):288–300

Webster NS, Xavier JR, Freckelton M, Motti CA, Cobb R (2008) Shifts in microbial and chemical patterns within the marine sponge Aplysina aerophoba during a disease outbreak. Environ Microbiol 10(12):3366–3376

Webster NS, Taylor MW, Behnam F, Lücker S, Rattei T, Whalan S et al (2010) Deep sequencing reveals exceptional diversity and modes of transmission for bacterial sponge symbionts. Environ Microbiol 12(8):2070–2082

Weigel BL, Erwin PM (2017) Effects of reciprocal transplantation on the microbiome and putative nitrogen cycling functions of the intertidal sponge, Hymeniacidon heliophila. Sci Rep 7:43247

Weisz JB, Hentschel U, Lindquist N, Martens CS (2007) Linking abundance and diversity of sponge-associated microbial communities to metabolic differences in host sponges. Mar Biol 152(2):475–483

West NJ, Lepère C, Manes CLDO, Catala P, Scanlan DJ, Lebaron P (2016) Distinct spatial patterns of SAR11, SAR86, and Actinobacteria diversity along a transect in the ultra-oligotrophic South Pacific Ocean. Front Microbiol 7:234

Wichels A, Würtz S, Döpke H, Schütt C, Gerdts G (2006) Bacterial diversity in the breadcrumb sponge Halichondria panicea (Pallas). FEMS Microbiol Ecol 56(1):102–118

Wilkinson CR (1978) Microbial associations in sponges. II. Numerical analysis of sponge and water bacterial populations. Mar Biol 49(2):169–176

Wilkinson CR (1992) Symbiotic interactions between marine sponges and algae. In: Algae and symbiosis: plants, animals, fungi, viruses. Interactions explored

Willemsen PR (1994) The screening of sponge extracts for antifouling activity using a bioassay with laboratory-reared cyprid larvae of the barnacle Balanus amphitrite. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 34(3–4):361–373

Willenz P, Hartman WD (1989) Micromorphology and ultrastructure of Caribbean sclerosponges. Mar Biol 103(3):387–401

Wilson DM, Puyana M, Fenical W, Pawlik JR (1999) Chemical defense of the Caribbean reef sponge Axinella corrugata against predatory fishes. J Chem Ecol 25(12):2811–2823

Wulff JL (2006) Rapid diversity and abundance decline in a Caribbean coral reef sponge community. Biol Conserv 127(2):167–176

Yamada M, Takahashi Y, Kubota T, Fromont J, Ishiyama A, Otoguro K et al (2009) Zamamidine C, 3, 4-dihydro-6-hydroxy-10, 11-epoxymanzamine A, and 3, 4-dihydromanzamine J N-oxide, new manzamine alkaloids from sponge Amphimedon sp. Tetrahedron 65(11):2313–2317

Yang X, Xiao X, Liu D, Wu R, Wu C, Zhang J et al (2017) Optimization of collagenase production by Pseudoalteromonas sp. SJN2 and application of collagenases in the preparation of antioxidative hydrolysates. Mar Drugs 15(12):377

Yang Q, Zhang W, Franco CM (2019) Response of sponge microbiomes to environmental variations. In: Symbiotic microbiomes of coral reefs sponges and corals. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 181–247

Zampella A, Giannini C, Debitus C, Roussakis C, D'Auria MV (1999) New jaspamide derivatives from the marine sponge Jaspis splendans collected in Vanuatu. J Nat Prod 62(2):332–334

Zeglin LH (2015) Stream microbial diversity in response to environmental changes: review and synthesis of existing research. Front Microbiol 6:454

Zhang H, Zhang F, Li Z (2009) Gene analysis, optimized production and property of marine lipase from Bacillus pumilus B106 associated with South China Sea sponge Halichondria rugosa. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25(7):1267–1274

Zinger L, Amaral-Zettler LA, Fuhrman JA, Horner-Devine MC, Huse SM, Welch DBM et al (2011) Global patterns of bacterial beta-diversity in seafloor and seawater ecosystems. PLoS One 6(9): e24570

Microbiome-Based Sustainable Agriculture Targeting Plant Protection

9

Rajinikanth Mohan, Flora Zhang, Olivia Pericak, Morgan Wynkoop, Nicole Schwab, Sara Spells, Kaitlyn Stroscio, Collin Olson, Chloe Hermann, Macie Hricovec, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and Christos Zamioudis

Abstract

The plant rhizosphere hosts a vast array of microbes including bacteria, fungi, and others that provide nutrient absorption and plant protection among other crucial functions. Recent research shows that the plant defense system through the influence of secondary metabolites in root exudates and defense hormones shapes the rhizosphere and endosphere microbiome, promoting certain taxa while removing others. The root-associated microbiota deploys their repertoire of secondary metabolites to antagonize pathogens even before they get to the plant, acting as the true first line of defense while also priming systemic plant defense. Attempts to promote plant protection through the use of one or more such beneficial microbes have not yielded consistent results in field settings. Disease-protective soils that confer strong plant protection have spurred interest in the use of the microbiome to bolster plant protection. The consistent theme arising in recent research has been that healthy resilient microbiomes corresponding to better plant protection are characterized by a higher diversity of microbes, likely nurtured by richer host root exudates. Relatively higher

Rajinikanth Mohan and Flora Zhang contributed equally with all other contributors.

R. Mohan (✉) · O. Pericak · N. Schwab · S. Spells · K. Stroscio · C. Olson · C. Hermann · M. Hricovec
Department of Biology, Mercyhurst University, Erie, PA, USA

F. Zhang · M. Wynkoop
Department of Biology, Colgate University, Hamilton, NY, USA

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

C. Zamioudis
Department of Agricultural Development, Democritus University of Thrace, Orestiada, Greece

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_9

microbial diversity is detected in wild relatives of crops, organic farms, and disease-suppressive soils as opposed to domesticated crops with inorganic fertilizer farming, which also display reduced symbiotic interactions. These observations suggest that a good investment in sustainable farming would be to harness diverse beneficial microbial communities for agriculture and to engineer crop plants to recruit and retain the same, akin to their wild relatives. Microbiome-based agriculture, free from toxic and polluting pesticide and fertilizer use, is, therefore, an exciting advance towards sustainability.

Keywords

Plant rhizosphere · Resilient microbiomes · Microbiome-based agriculture · Sustainability

9.1 Introduction

All eukaryotes display complex associations with microbial communities (Lareen et al. 2016). The rhizosphere microbiome refers to the teeming diversity of microbes including bacteria, fungi, oomycetes, archaea, viruses, and protists inside, on, or around plant roots in the soil forming a complex ecosystem (Compant et al. 2019); specifically, the term microbiome indicates the genetic information that identifies these microbes. Rhizosphere microbes compete with each other and the plant for soil nutrients and organic compounds and often assist the plant in accessing the trove of nutrients from the soil. Some of these microbes are free-living, and some colonize the root surface (rhizoplane), while others can live inside the roots and are referred to as endophytes. The best-characterized endophytes include the nitrogen-fixing *Rhizobium* and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. Fungi are also vital members of the rhizosphere microbiome and an estimated 80% of angiosperm species are supposed to associate with mycorrhizal fungi (Wang and Qiu 2006).

The microbiome of an organism serves as an extension of its genome (Turner et al. 2013), conferring new genomic and biochemical functional capabilities. The rhizosphere microbiome bestows on the plants a vastly extended capability of nutrient absorption, disease resistance, immune regulation, and stress tolerance and is an important determinant of growth and productivity (Berendsen et al. 2012; Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016). The rhizosphere microbiome of each plant is influenced by many factors—primarily the soil microbial diversity which is used to seed the microbiome; the nature of the soil, including water, nutrient, mineral content, and pH; plant genotype; and other environmental conditions. Microbes are attracted to root exudates and other organic material secreted by the roots which contain nutrients and signals to attract microbes for colonization through a process referred to as rhizodeposition, which alters the chemical nature of the rhizosphere environment. Up to 40% of photosynthetically fixed carbon and 20% of plant nitrogen may

be released into the soil environment (Odelade and Babalola 2019; Whipps 1990). This highlights the significant investment made by the plant to nurture its microbiome. The quality of the root exudates is dependent on the host genotype and its products of primary and secondary metabolism and is also influenced by the environment; hence, the rhizosphere microbiome composition is a function of the genotype-environment interactions with soil being the major seeding factor.

From a plant defense standpoint, the microbiome functions as an additional layer of protection against pathogens. The existence of certain microbes in the rhizosphere can reduce or avert plant disease (Newitt and Prudence 2019). Rhizosphere microbes add to the repertoire of defense proteins that plants produce such as chitinases and proteases to suppress pathogens (Pinski and Betekhtin 2019). The microbes can synthesize novel antimicrobials that the plant cannot make (Rout 2014), restricting the growth of certain microbes, including potential pathogens. Rhizosphere colonization of bacteria can also induce systemic defense in a process referred to as induced systemic resistance (ISR), wherein plants are primed for a faster and stronger response for defense against infections.

The plant immune system also plays a significant role in selecting microbes from the soil environment (Leach et al. 2017). Plants respond to microbes in the rhizosphere through a process is known as MAMP-triggered immunity (MTI), which senses microbial structures and secretions and limits microbial access to the root environment. In addition, plants utilize a large diversity of secondary metabolites to selectively retain certain microbes while targeting others. For example, the plant stress hormone salicylic acid gates the plant endosphere and limits access to certain microbes, thus shaping the microbiome composition (Lebeis et al. 2015). The plant commensals and symbionts have evolved to tolerate or dampen plant immunity to survive in the rhizosphere and endosphere. The beneficial survivors in the rhizosphere not only stimulate plant growth but also protect them from stress in return for organic carbon and other nutrients. Thus, the plant immune system and the selected rhizosphere microbiota mutually benefit each other.

Crop disease accounts for major losses in agriculture and disease resistance can be bred into crops, but evolving pathogens can overcome the resistance in field settings (Wille et al. 2019). Modern agriculture has been based heavily on chemical application and the effect of pesticides has adverse effects on the environment (Gomez Exposito et al. 2017). For generations, humans have unwittingly as well as knowingly manipulated the rhizosphere microbiome to optimize plant growth. Soil amendments ranging from manure to compost involving microbe-driven fermentation processes constitute an important part of organic farming and enrich the root microbiome. In recent decades, farmers have used one or more beneficial plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) such as *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* species to enhance plant growth and protection through biological control of pests and pathogens (Rosier et al. 2016; Kloepper et al. 1980). Appreciating that microbes are crucial drivers of agricultural productivity (Qiu et al. 2019), recently the focus has shifted to utilizing the soil microbiome to sustainably improve crop production without the use of polluting fertilizers and harmful pesticides (Philippot et al. 2013). To realize this, it is important to approach plants that need protection as holobionts

that are intimately and inseparably tied to their microbiome and maximize the positive effects of the microbiome (Wille et al. 2019). The one plant-one pathogen model is now giving way to the pathobiome concept, which considers that the effects of the pathogen are moderated by the action of the commensals and symbionts such as those in the rhizosphere microbiome as well as the environment (Bass et al. 2019).

Only a fraction of the microbiome can be cultivated in artificial media and early estimates ranged from only 1% to 10% (Conn et al. 1918) as it is a challenge to reproduce the conditions required to sustain many species; recent research shows that these predictions are an underestimate. Culture-independent identification of bacteria through DNA sequencing has enabled the identification of bacteria recalcitrant to culture. The development of high-throughput next-generation sequencing has facilitated shotgun metagenome sequencing and made possible the identification of millions of sequences per sample and dramatically improved the resolution of identification to include even rare species (Turner et al. 2013). Most importantly, this has led to the identification of microbes that are recalcitrant to culture and broadening of our understanding of three-way plant-rhizosphere microbiome-pathogen interactions in an unprecedented fashion (Wille et al. 2019). The study of the metaphenome, which encompasses not only the metagenome and metatranscriptome but also the metaproteome and metametabolome can help appreciate the full functional potential of the rhizosphere microbiome on a global scale (Jansson and Hofmockel 2018).

The improved ability to culture bacteria has also enabled the development of synthetic communities (SynComs) of bacteria that have enabled a deeper understanding of microbial community functions, their interactions with the plant, and plant responses to them. This information can facilitate the development of new strategies including improving plants to adopt better microbiomes, applying optimal microbial communities, plant probiotics, and microbe-derived products for better plant growth and biological control of pests and pathogens (Levy et al. 2018; Rosier et al. 2016). The discovery that plant genotype influences microbiome composition has also important connotations to improve agriculture (Leach et al. 2017).

Sustainable agriculture is a priority in serving the burgeoning human population, which has increased sevenfold since the beginning of the nineteenth century. It will be an important strategy to combat the rising challenge to grow food and fodder in less than ideal conditions including dwindling arable land and more hostile climate conditions triggered by climate change (Tilman et al. 2002; McNear 2013). Harnessing the rhizosphere microbiome could improve crop productivity, decrease losses from plant disease, and reduce the use of pesticides (Turner et al. 2013). In this chapter, we discuss the rhizosphere microbiome in the context of agriculture and how the understanding of plant immunity-microbiome interactions can be utilized for sustainable agriculture.

9.2 Understanding Rhizosphere Microbiome Interactions with Plant Defense

9.2.1 Rhizosphere Colonization

Plant-microbe association in the rhizosphere is largely driven by mutual metabolic needs. Competing or cooperating microbes influence each other's survival and abundance, while the plant recruits and selects microbes from the pool in the soil environment. The plant genotype, as well as the environment, can affect the morphology of the root as well as the chemical composition of the root exudates and other plant material. The amount of organic compounds like sugars and amino acids and inorganic nutrients can dictate the composition and abundance of microbial species in the rhizosphere (Fierer 2017; Rout 2014). The colonization of the rhizosphere by microbes proceeds through several steps: recruitment and motility, root surface colonization, and in some cases biofilm formation (Pinski and Betekhtin 2019). Additionally, endophytic microbes also invade the host tissue for colonization.

9.2.1.1 Recruitment

The recruitment of specific microbes by plant roots to form the rhizosphere microbiome is an active process involving rhizodeposition (Quiza et al. 2015). Rhizodeposition involves the secretion or release of root exudates, gases, macromolecules, sloughed-off cells, and intact root border cells enriched in organic compounds into the rhizosphere environment (Jones et al. 2009). Root exudates are predominated by sugars, organic acids (as in tomato) (de Weert et al. 2002), and amino acids (as in rice) (Bacilio-Jiménez et al. 2004) and also include metabolites such as fatty acids, sterols, vitamins, secondary metabolites like phenolic compounds and putrescine, volatile compounds as well as macromolecules such as proteins, and complex carbohydrates such as cellulose and mucilage (Badri and Vivanco 2009; Bertin et al. 2003; Quiza et al. 2015; Mendes et al. 2013). The molecules in root exudates, released mainly from root cap cells, can attract microbes in the surrounding soil, which can utilize them as carbon and nitrogen sources or as signals that trigger chemotaxis (Reinhold-Hurek et al. 2015). Only microbes that survive host defenses and competition among each other and sense these molecules as preferred substrates venture into the rhizosphere for successful colonization (Zhalnina et al. 2018). Many beneficial bacteria like rhizobia and *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* spp. migrate to the plant through chemotaxis and can colonize on or inside the plant. Thus, root exudates are critical determinants of the root and rhizosphere microbiome composition (Rout 2014; Turner et al. 2013).

Certain metabolites in root exudates help recruit beneficial bacteria. For instance, the release of the organic acid malic acid in exudates triggered by foliar infection with *Pseudomonas syringae* enlists the beneficial bacterium *Bacillus subtilis* (Rudrappa et al. 2008). Likewise, citric acid and malic acid released by tomato, watermelon, and cucumber roots promoted positive chemotaxis of beneficial *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS365, *Paenibacillus polymyxa*, and *Bacillus*

amyloliquefaciens SQR9, respectively (de Weert et al. 2002; Ling et al. 2011; Zhang et al. 2014). Thus, the attraction of beneficial bacteria by exuding organic acids is a common phenomenon in the rhizosphere.

9.2.1.2 Surface Colonization and Biofilm Formation

Root exudates attract a variety of bacteria, but only those that can make contact with the root can colonize the root surface and access the interior (Pinski and Betekhtin 2019). Protein-based fimbriae, pili, adhesins, and curli fibers can facilitate the physical attachment of bacteria to surfaces (Mohan et al. 2018). Bacteria can then autoaggregate and form microcolonies. Bacteria communicate through a process known as quorum sensing (QS), which is fundamental to the colonization of plants by bacteria. Through this process, they sense or estimate the density of their population or that of other bacteria by monitoring levels of certain secreted signaling molecules called autoinducers and regulate gene expression accordingly. Autoinducers include *N*-acyl homoserine lactones (AHLs) (e.g., *Pseudomonas*), lipid-based diffusible signal factors (DSF) (e.g., *Xanthomonas, Stenotrophomonas*), and oligopeptides (e.g., *Bacillus*) (Eberl 1999) (reviewed in Mohan et al. 2018). Different bacterial species may share the same signal and display interspecies cooperativity, or interfere with quorum sensing in other bacteria in a process known as quorum quenching. QS communication is critical for the coordination of various population density-driven processes such as motility, adhesion, biofilm formation (Lareen et al. 2016), and virulence functions in pathogens. Once bacteria adhere to root surfaces, they can form microcolonies and in some cases proceed to develop a biofilm (Rout 2014).

Microcolonies can grow into biofilms where bacteria aggregate in several layers ensheathed in a matrix. Biofilm-forming bacteria may shed their flagella and secrete a glutinous substance called exopolysaccharide (EPS) among others to aid the formation of a biofilm (Meneses et al. 2011; Żur et al. 2016). The secretion of these substances requires cooperation between bacteria of the same or different species, coordinated through QS (Hassani et al. 2018). Root exudates, particularly amino acids, have an important role in the dynamics of biofilm formation and disassembly (Kolodkin-Gal et al. 2010). Bacteria within a biofilm can also communicate to coordinate the density-dependent discharge of plant growth-promoting compounds (Rudrappa et al. 2008). Biofilms not only serve to shield the component bacteria from other bacteria and host immunity (Van Acker et al. 2014) but also occupy niches to deny phytopathogens access to space, thus physically protecting the root surface.

9.2.1.3 Invasion

Bacteria, particularly endophytes, may enter into roots passively through cracks or may actively produce cell wall- and middle lamella-degrading enzymes (Turner et al. 2013; Viaene et al. 2016) to disrupt the barriers and gain entry into the root. The production of these enzymes (frequently hydrolases) may be triggered by root exudate components and amplified by QS (Levy et al. 2018). In sum, the bacteria that establish in the rhizosphere survive a competitive environment and go through

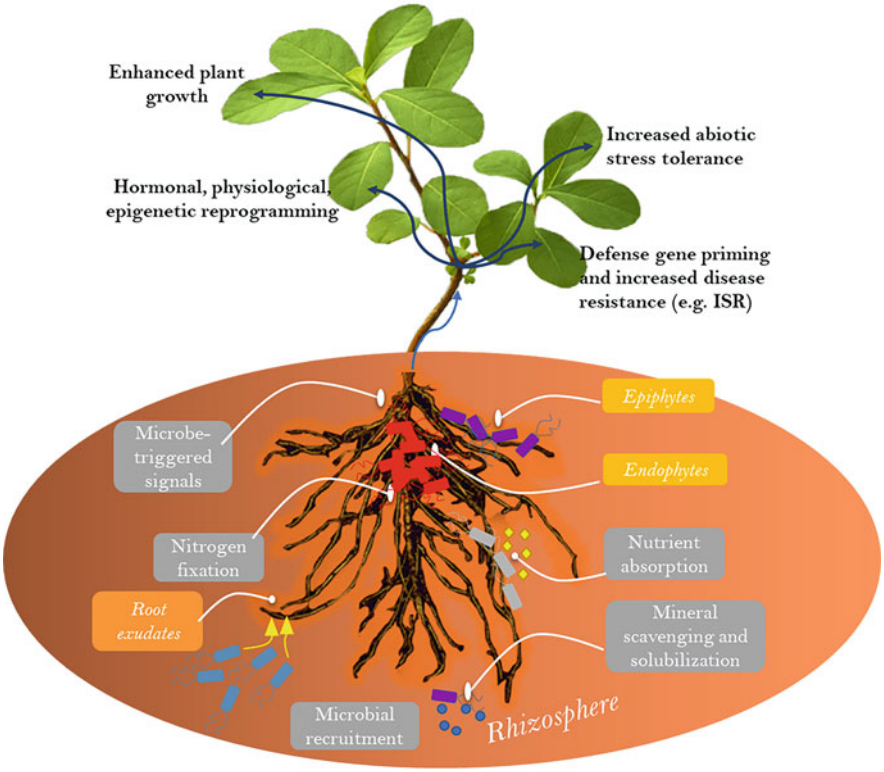


Fig. 9.1 Various benefits of the rhizosphere microbiota—belowground and aboveground. Epiphytes colonize root surfaces (purple), while endophytes colonize root interiors (red). Roots release exudates containing primary and, more selective, secondary metabolites and microbes (bacteria shown as blue) respond to the exudates; rhizosphere microbes facilitate nutrient absorption, mineral scavenging, and nitrogen fixation; they also recruit other microbes to the root; microbe-derived signals stimulate various systemic responses in the aerial parts of the plant as shown

several steps to establish contact with roots in the rhizosphere. The colonized microbes confer numerous benefits to the plant as illustrated in Fig. 9.1.

9.2.2 Selection of the Rhizosphere Microbiome by Plant Immunity

Microbial diversity decreases from the surrounding soil to the rhizosphere and is least in the endosphere, indicating that the rhizosphere and root interiors are strong selective environments (Rodriguez et al. 2019). At the same time, the abundance of microbes of each type is enriched within the rhizosphere implying that the selected microbes experience a supportive environment. Recent evidence strongly suggests that plant immunity plays a major role in selecting the microbes in the rhizosphere.

Plants appear to have a strong capacity to influence the composition of the rhizosphere through the secretion of secondary metabolites and phytohormones (Bulgarelli et al. 2015). Exudation of nutrients and antimicrobial metabolites and proteins encourages certain microbes while deterring others (Quiza et al. 2015). It appears that the competitive shield of rhizosphere microbes operates as the very first layer in plant protection, while additional layers of plant immunity exist. The first line of plant defense is the basal resistance conferred by preexisting physical and chemical defenses. Then comes the molecular machinery of induced defense that is activated when the plant perceives potential intruders by detecting microbial structures or contents. Finally, induced defense involves signaling that culminates in transcriptional and posttranslational activation of protein-based defenses in addition to refortification of physical structures and recharging of chemical defenses.

9.2.2.1 Basal Immunity

9.2.2.1.1 Physical Defenses

The waxy cuticle of the root serves as the primary physical barrier to microbial ingress (Martin 1964). The root cap and the border cells that constitute the distal part of the cap are also important defensive structures in the root. While the root cap protects the growing root tip, the root border cells are sloughed off periodically and participate in the physical and chemical defense against potentially pathogenic microbes (Gunawardena and Hawes 2002). The sloughed-off cells and root border cells serve a protective function for the plant by acting as bait to distract phytopathogens while attracting beneficial bacteria (Hawes et al. 2000).

9.2.2.1.2 Basal Chemical Defenses

Root exudates, in addition to primary metabolites like sugars, amino acids, and organic acids, are also enriched in secondary metabolites relevant to plant immunity and thus begin to target specific microbes even before they have come into contact with the plant. Several defense-related metabolites differentially influence (attract, deter, or kill) different sets of microbes, and the resultant microbial community is a consequence of the collective selective pressure exerted by the plant metabolites and proteins in combination with those released by microbes. Some defense metabolites are produced before the onset of stress and are coined phytoanticipins (VanEtten et al. 1994). Phytoanticipins include benzoxazinoids, cyanogenic glycosides, glucosinolates, and saponins (Pedras and Yaya 2015).

9.2.2.1.2.1 Phenolic Compounds

Application of a mixture of root exudate-based phytochemicals followed by 16S rRNA profiling in *Arabidopsis* revealed that phenolic compounds in root exudates had a stronger impact than other metabolites on the root microbiome composition through suppression of certain members while promoting the growth of others (Badri et al. 2013). Moreover, plant phenolic compounds induced the expression of the antifungal compounds 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (DAPG) and pyoluteorin (PLT) in the beneficial *P. fluorescens* CHA0 (de Werra et al. 2011). Phenolics may serve as

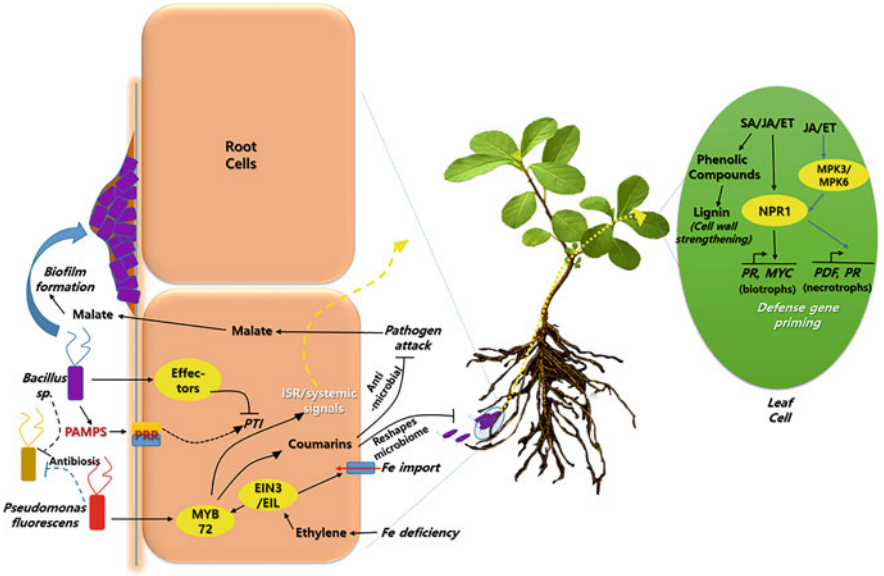


Fig. 9.2 Local and systemic protection conferred by rhizosphere microbes. Beneficial bacteria such as *Bacillus* sp. and *Pseudomonas* sp. can antagonize other microbes, including potential pathogens, through antibiosis, for instance, by producing antimicrobial compounds. *Bacillus* sp. can suppress plant defense (MTI/PTI, MAMP/PAMP-triggered immunity) using effector proteins; this allows them to colonize. Iron deficiency can signal through the ethylene pathway (EIN3/EIL), which promotes iron import through transporters. Both ethylene signaling and *Pseudomonas simiae (fluorescens)* can activate the transcription factor MYB72 which can trigger the production of the secondary metabolite coumarin and also induce ISR (induced systemic resistance). Coumarin secretion helps with the iron acquisition as well as serves as an antimicrobial to reshape the microbiome. Pathogen attack can stimulate malate release which triggers biofilm formation in *Bacillus*. The physical occupation by a biofilm protects the plants from pathogens. ISR stimulates the priming of defense in systemic tissues. While the defense hormones salicylic acid, jasmonic acid, and ethylene can also stimulate structural defenses, they can also activate primed defense gene expression (PR, MYC, PDF) against both biotrophic and necrotrophic pathogens

substrates or as signals to certain bacteria and are positively correlated with the enrichment of certain beneficial bacteria such as *Streptomyces* (Newitt and Prudence 2019). Alteration in phenolic compound profile in poplar cinnamyl-Co reductase (CCR) mutant resulted in shifts in the root microbiota composition (Beckers et al. 2016), illustrating the importance of phenolics in microbiome homeostasis.

Phenolics may be simple phenols like coumarins or complex phenols like flavonoids. Coumarins are secondary metabolites that protect plants from pathogenic fungi. The release of coumarins by roots is triggered by beneficial bacteria during iron starvation and is dependent on a root-specific transcription factor, MYB72 (Fig. 9.2) (Stringlis et al. 2018). One such coumarin, scopoletin, not only mobilizes iron but also exhibits antimicrobial activity against pathogenic fungi, while not affecting some beneficial bacteria. Recent evidence suggests coumarins also inhibit

biofilm formation in bacteria (Reen et al. 2018), thus potentially affecting the ability to compete for bacteria to establish themselves in rhizosphere niches. Thus, beneficial bacteria can restructure the microbiome by triggering the release of selective metabolites like coumarin from plants. Flavonoids are plant-specific polyphenols that are critical determinants of the root microbiome (Weston and Mathesius 2013), particularly enriched in the maize and *Arabidopsis* rhizospheres (Pétriacq et al. 2017). The role of flavonoids in plant-microbe interactions was underscored when they were identified as plant signals exuded by legume hosts to recruit modulating *Rhizobium* species (Cooper 2007).

9.2.2.1.2.2 Other Secondary Metabolites

Benzoxazinoids are an important group of secondary metabolites functioning in defense against pathogens and pests and are derived from indole (Zhou et al. 2018). They are abundant in maize and other Poaceae members. Benzoxazinoids have been shown to affect rhizosphere microbiome composition in maize by specifically affecting certain groups of bacteria (Hu et al. 2018). Additionally, a type of benzoxazinoid termed DIMBOA also helps recruit and colonize beneficial microbes like *Pseudomonas putida* (Neal et al. 2012). Saponins are constitutive phytoanticipin antimicrobial metabolites with defense functions, derived from the fusion of triterpenoid or steroid groups with sugar groups (Pedras and Yaya 2015). Well-known examples are saponins avenacin A-1 and avenacoside B that influence microbiota in oats and confer resistance to fungal pathogens (Papadopoulou et al. 1999). Strigolactones are often released by roots during nitrogen or phosphate starvation and help recruit beneficial microbes (Yoneyama et al. 2012). Like flavonoids, strigolactones also serve as signals for a symbiosis of plants with mycorrhizal fungi and parasitic plants (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016). Some secondary metabolites mimic bacterial AHLs and manipulate bacterial quorum sensing. For example, plants like sweet basil release rosmarinic acid (RA) in root exudates in response to infection with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. RA directly binds to a QS response regulator and triggers premature QS signaling to suppress microbial growth (Corral-Lugo et al. 2016). Thus, plants have a versatile array of secondary metabolites that exert a strong effect on the rhizosphere and endosphere to sculpt the root microbiome.

9.2.2.2 Induced Immunity

9.2.2.2.1 MAMP-Triggered Immunity (MTI)

An important challenge that plants face when encountering a myriad of microbes in the rhizosphere is distinguishing between pathogenic and nonpathogenic species. In some cases, plant pathogens and nonpathogens are physically not very different, and the functional differences may arise simply by the gain or loss of a few pathogenicity islands in some cases (Melnyk et al. 2019b); this complicates the distinction between pathogens and nonpathogens for the plant. Induced plant defense responses may be triggered by recognition of conserved bacterial structures (microbe-associated molecular patterns or MAMPs) on bacteria in a process known as MAMP-triggered

immunity (MTI). Plant cell surface pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) recognize MAMPs such as lipopolysaccharide (LPS), EF-Tu, and flagellin through cognate PRRs (e.g., FLS2, a leucine-rich repeat receptor-like kinase or LRR-RLK) to trigger an immune response. A typical MTI defense response includes the generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS), proton influx, calcium level spike, MAP kinase signaling, and transcription of antimicrobial pathogenesis-related (PR) genes, and collectively, these processes serve to limit pathogens (Trdá et al. 2014). MTI is important to limit microbial growth (Dangl et al. 2013) and is expected to be an important factor in gating the root microbiome.

For symbiotic bacteria and fungi, microbially produced signals are recognized by the plant to enable colonization (Pinski and Betekhtin 2019). For example, *Rhizobium*, an endosymbiont establishes symbiosis with legume hosts through a lipochitooligosaccharide NOD factor signal, while mycorrhizal fungi use chitooligosaccharides that are recognized by host roots (Leach et al. 2017). These signals are structurally similar to the bacterial MAMP peptidoglycan and the fungal MAMP chitin, respectively (Liang et al. 2014) and recognized by receptor-like kinases (RLKs) in plants to initiate symbiosis (Zipfel and Oldroyd 2017). Although MTI is an important defense response in the roots, profiling the PRR FLS2 expression in roots suggests that MTI may be more actively induced in the inner layers of the root (e.g., pericycle in stele) and in areas most susceptible to infection—the entry sites (Beck et al. 2014; Chuberre et al. 2018; Wyrsch et al. 2015). The abundance of MAMPs in the soil may prompt desensitization of the MTI response in the outer layers. Recently, mounting evidence indicates that beneficial microbes actively suppress or evade host immunity to engage in symbiosis (Yu et al. 2019).

9.2.2.2.2 Induced Chemical Defenses

In contrast to phytoanticipins that are constitutively produced, phytoalexins are secondary metabolites that are produced in response to pathogen infection. Phytoalexins are produced in both root and shoot infections (Duan et al. 2014) and can impact rhizospheric and endophytic bacteria composition (Pinski and Betekhtin 2019). A variety of phytoalexins are produced by plants, many in a genotype-specific manner; for example, camalexin in Brassicaceae members, capsidiol in capsicum, gossypol in cotton, and pisatin in pea (Preisig et al. 1990). Such defense metabolites play significant roles in defining the characteristic microbiomes of various plant species.

9.2.2.3 Plant Defense Hormones

That phytohormones are important in the regulation of microbial community composition is evident with the observation that treatment with hormones as well as defense hormone signaling mutants altered root exudate and microbial profiles (Leach et al. 2017). Three major plant defense hormones are salicylic acid (SA), jasmonic acid (JA), and ethylene. Salicylic acid mediates defense against biotrophic pathogens and is important for systemic acquired resistance (SAR), a resistance mechanism that is triggered in the shoot (Glazebrook 2005). On the other hand, JA and ethylene function in resistance to necrotrophic pathogens in the shoot, but are

also required for induced systemic resistance, a resistance pathway initiated in roots upon interaction with beneficial microbes. These three hormone pathways can function in defense signaling with additive and synergistic effects, and the loss of all three hormonal pathways results in aberrant rhizosphere microbiome composition or dysbiosis that may be linked with reduced field survival (Lebeis et al. 2015). Each of these hormones play an active role in shaping the rhizosphere and/or endosphere microbiome.

9.2.2.3.1 Salicylic Acid

Salicylic acid (SA) has been detected in root exudates of plants (Khorassani et al. 2011; Ling et al. 2013) and is among the preferred nutritional substrates for certain rhizosphere bacteria, alongside other organic acids, as observed in the oat, *Avena barbata* (Zhalnina et al. 2018). Besides serving as a nutrient, SA could also serve as a signaling molecule for some bacteria (Lebeis et al. 2015). The biosynthesis of SA in plants is suppressed by beneficial microbes; for example, an effector protein produced by the beneficial fungus *Piriformospora indica* suppressed the expression of the plant SA biosynthetic transcription factor *CBP60g* presumably to suppress SA-mediated defense and to facilitate its own colonization (Akum et al. 2015). SA also has a marked influence on the rhizosphere microbiome composition and can inhibit mycorrhizal and root nodule symbioses (Rodriguez et al. 2019). A defect in SA-mediated defense leads to increased colonization of certain bacterial species including *Salmonella enterica* and the nitrogen-fixing *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* (consistent with the inhibition of nitrogen-fixing bacteria by SA), but not other bacteria such as *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (Pinski and Betekhtin 2019). *Arabidopsis* mutants exhibiting altered SA synthesis and signaling, but not JA and ethylene mutants, showed distinct core root microbiomes at the family level (Lebeis et al. 2015), while previous studies showed little effect of SA on the microbiome (Bodenhausen et al. 2014; Carvalhais et al. 2014; Doornbos et al. 2011). SA appeared to limit the growth of several families of bacteria as they were enriched in SA defense-deficient mutants in root interiors, suggesting that SA plays an important role in restricting the growth of certain taxa in wild-type plants while allowing the growth of others. The disruption of SA-mediated defense also reduced leaf endophytic diversity (Kniskern et al. 2007). Thus, it is clear that SA is a strong component of plant defense in gating rhizosphere microbes and regulating the microbiota composition. Consistently, beneficial bacteria such as *Pseudomonas putida* appear to modify the microbial community by activating SA signaling in *Arabidopsis* (Sheoran et al. 2016).

9.2.2.3.2 Jasmonic Acid

The effect of JA on symbiosis varies with plant genotype and conditions (Reverchon et al. 2019). Certain microbes not only suppress SA defenses, but some like the mycorrhizal fungus *Laccaria bicolor* also inhibit JA signaling to enable colonization; an *L. bicolor* effector prevents the degradation of the JA repressor JAZ to keep early JA-mediated defense inhibited to allow colonization (Plett et al. 2014). Other beneficial fungi, *P. indica*, and the beneficial bacteria *Bacillus subtilis* suppress early

PTI in *Arabidopsis* using the JA pathway as the defense suppression is lost in JA signaling mutants, *jar1* and *jin1* (Jacobs et al. 2011; Lakshmanan et al. 2012). While the loss of SA defense reduced endophytic diversity in *Arabidopsis* roots, on the contrary, activation of JA signaling through exogenous JA application reduced root endophytic diversity in wheat (Liu et al. 2017). The shift in microbiome composition following JA application is attributed to changes in root exudate composition (Yu et al. 2019).

9.2.2.3.3 Ethylene

Colonization of plants such as *Medicago truncatula* (Iniguez et al. 2005) and sugarcane (Cavalcante et al. 2007) with beneficial microbes triggered ethylene signaling and gene expression early on and an ethylene-insensitive mutant of *M. truncatula* was observed to be over-colonized by the endophyte *K. pneumoniae* (Iniguez et al. 2005), indicating that ethylene plays a restrictive role in microbial colonization consistent with its role in plant defense. Ethylene also inhibits root nodule symbiosis as well as the association with mycorrhizal fungi (Rodriguez et al. 2019). It is, therefore, not surprising that some bacterial species including *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* produce the enzyme 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase, which reduces root ethylene biosynthesis by degrading the ethylene precursor, ACC (Compant et al. 2019; Glick 2014), and this was shown to enhance plant stress tolerance and root development and possibly improved general microbial colonization. Suppression of ethylene production can be beneficial to the plant as ethylene is a stress hormone that can be detrimental to plant growth at higher levels (Vaseva et al. 2018). Unexpectedly, ablation of ethylene biosynthesis and signaling in *Nicotiana attenuata* mutants reduced endophytic microbial diversity, suggesting that ethylene affects microbial homeostasis within the plant and certain bacteria may require plant ethylene signaling for invasive colonization in roots (Long et al. 2010). In contrast, in *Arabidopsis*, root microbial diversity was not affected, but rhizosphere bacterial abundance was reduced in ethylene mutant *ein2*. Thus, ethylene, like SA and JA, functions inflict both positive and negative effects on root microbiota. SA and JA/ethylene pathways generally function antagonistically as they confer resistance to different kinds of pathogens, but in the roots, they modulate microbial homeostasis as they all appear to generally prevent microbial ingress and overgrowth of certain bacteria while in some cases promoting endophytic diversity. The activation of these pathways during stress may be further instrumental in reshaping the microbiome.

9.2.3 Modulation of Plant Immunity by the Rhizosphere Microbiome

While the root microbiome is, in large part, selected by the plant immune system, they also have a reciprocal effect on plant immunity. It is now well established that the root microbiome expands plant immunity and functions as an additional layer of defense against pathogenic microorganisms, providing unique opportunities to

develop novel tools in crop protection and enhance crop productivity sustainably. Two of the ways the root microbiota participates in plant disease resistance are direct disease suppression (DDS) and induced systemic resistance (ISR) (Fig. 9.2).

9.2.3.1 Local Disease Suppression

DDS takes place either in the rhizosphere or the root interior and is commonly based on competition for nutrients and niches, parasitism, antibiosis, or combinations of the abovementioned mechanisms. DDS has ideally exemplified in disease-suppressive soils, soils in which a soilborne pathogen cannot cause disease because of the presence and/or increased abundance of potent antagonistic microbes. The mechanisms involved in direct pathogen suppression include mainly competition for carbon and siderophore-mediated competition for iron, the production of cell-wall-degrading enzymes such as chitinases, and the production of various antibiotics including the well-studied antibiotic compounds 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (DAPG) and phenazines (PHZ) (Rout 2014). More recently, volatile molecules have been proposed to contribute to DDS in suppressive soils. These functions are further elaborated below in the context of disease-suppressive soils.

9.2.3.2 Induced Systemic Resistance

ISR is initiated in the roots upon microbial colonization and confers broad-spectrum systemic resistance to aboveground plant tissues against pathogens and even insects (Pieterse et al. 2014). ISR was first described in studies of the early 1990s focusing on the ability of *Pseudomonas* sp. rhizobacteria to trigger systemic resistance in carnation, wheat, and common beans. Since then, the phenomenon has been shown to occur in numerous dicotyledonous and monocotyledonous plant species, suggesting that ISR represents a conserved function of the root microbiome. Interestingly, novel findings in *Arabidopsis* suggest that plants experiencing pathogen attack in the aboveground tissues modify the composition of the exudates they excrete in the root vicinity to recruit a potent consortium of ISR-inducing rhizobacteria (Melnyk et al. 2019a). Such microbiota-dependent legacy that plants generate in the soil under stress conditions has been shown to enhance the defense capacity of future generations against pathogens thereby promoting offspring survival in hostile environments. The catalog of ISR-eliciting microorganisms is long and includes both individual strains and microbial consortia. Epiphytic or endophytic soilborne bacteria belonging to the genera *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Serratia*, and *Streptomyces* represent typical examples of ISR-eliciting microbes. Symbiotic rhizofungi such as *Trichoderma* spp., mycorrhizal fungi like *Rhizophagus irregularis* (syn. *Glomus intraradices*), the mycorrhizal-like endosymbiotic fungus *Piriformospora indica*, and nonpathogenic *Fusarium* species are also capable of eliciting ISR. Interestingly, several of the same strains involved in LDS have been shown to be potent ISR inducers.

Epiphytic ISR-inducing bacteria capable of colonizing the root system of host plants form biofilms in the root epidermis, whereas endophytic ISR-inducing bacteria enter the root interior by either actively penetrating the external root layers or entering passively through wounds and discontinuing in the epidermis such as those

formed during lateral root emergence (Pieterse et al. 2014). Although ISR-inducing rhizobacteria are not enveloped in symbiotic organs, such as the root nodules in the *Rhizobium* symbiosis, they commonly induce significant alterations in the root system architecture. Such alterations contribute to plant growth promotion but also enhance the exudation of energy-rich compounds taking into consideration that most of the root exudation takes place in the elongation zone of young roots. Yet plant growth promotion and ISR are mediated by distinct signaling pathways in the host tissues. Evidence is also accumulating that rhizobacteria of the root microbiome, including ISR-inducing bacteria, suppress plant defense responses at the early stages of the interaction to efficiently colonize plant tissues. Yet plants have evolved immunity-based genetic networks to control the population of epiphytic and endophytic communities of microbes. In *Arabidopsis*, disruption of such networks has been recently shown to result in a form of dysbiosis.

Several microbial determinants have been proposed to function as ISR elicitors, among them, molecules with well-established immune-stimulatory properties such the MAMPs flagellin and LPS, but also iron-regulated siderophores, the antibiotics DAPG and pyocyanin, *N*-acyl homoserine lactones, and biosurfactants such as cyclic lipopeptides (Rout 2014). These elicitors are likely to act redundantly during the elicitation of ISR. More recently, volatiles emitted by ISR-inducing strains have been shown to trigger the expression of the essential for ISR establishment MYB72 transcription factor (Fig. 9.2). Despite the extended list of ISR-eliciting molecules, with few exceptions such as the volatiles mentioned above, little is known on the hierarchy that those molecules function during the initiation of ISR and the exact contribution of each determinant to the phenomenon.

The molecular mechanisms underpinning rhizobacteria-mediated ISR are well-studied in *Arabidopsis* (Pieterse et al. 2014). In *Arabidopsis*, ISR triggered upon root colonization by the model strains *Pseudomonas simiae* WCS417 depends on an intact jasmonic acid (JA) and ethylene (ET) signaling pathway and further requires the transcriptional regulators MYC2 and NPR1. In contrast to the costly plant defenses activated by pathogens or insects, the establishment of ISR is not correlated with substantial reprogramming of the host's transcriptome. Instead, upon pathogen attack, immunized plants display a boosted immune reaction resulting in enhanced resistance to the attacker encountered. This phenomenon is called priming and shares striking similarities with the potentiation of cellular defense responses in primed monocytes and macrophages in mammals. In roots, initiation of ISR is regulated by the root-specific transcription factor MYB72, a member of the R2R3 family of MYB transcription factors, and components of the ET signaling pathway that locally act in the generation or translocation of a thus-far unidentified systemic signal. Importantly, MYB72 is also required for ISR triggered upon root colonization by the beneficial fungus *Trichoderma asperellum* strain T34, suggesting that this transcription factor is a node of convergence in signaling pathways induced by diverse types of beneficial soilborne microbes. MYB72 regulates the secretion of plant-derived coumarins, suggesting that these molecules are essential components of the ISR signaling pathway. Thus, root microbes play a vital role in stimulating

local and systemic plant defenses for enhanced disease resistance, which, in turn, can reshape the rhizosphere microbiome through altered root exudation.

9.3 Microbiome and Modern Agriculture

9.3.1 Impact of Modern Agricultural Practices on the Rhizosphere Microbiome

9.3.1.1 Plant Domestication

Generations of modern agricultural practices have markedly altered rhizosphere microbes. Plant protection in agriculture has long involved breeding for resistance and, more recently, genetic modification for enhanced resistance, but the development of broad-spectrum resistant crops is time-consuming and subject to stringent regulation and public approval (Syed et al. 2018). Moreover, resistance in crops can break down over the years, as observed for grapevine mildew, wheat rust, and rice blast. One of the reasons behind the resistance breakdown is that pathogens can evolve rapidly (Peressotti et al. 2010) and recently there has been an alarming rise in new fungal phytopathogens (Fisher et al. 2012). To counter this, modern agriculture has witnessed a massive surge in the use of biocides, including toxic pesticides and herbicides and yield-promoting fertilizers that can have a telling nontarget effect on the rhizosphere microbial community either directly or indirectly through their impact on the plants (Turrini et al. 2015).

9.3.1.1.1 Changes in the Rhizosphere Microbiome

Plant domestication through agriculture appears to have resulted in a reduction in both plant and microbial genetic diversity through the loss of plant traits and wild microbial species that were originally adapted for the plants (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016; Compant et al. 2019). These changes in the microbiome may be small in some cases but significant, as observed in wild and cultivated barley, beans, and sugarbeet (Bulgarelli et al. 2015; Zachow et al. 2014; Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2017). In general the bacterial phylum Bacteroidetes was comparatively less abundant in the rhizospheres of cultivated crop plants such as beans and other plant species compared to their wild counterparts, which are colonized more abundantly by Proteobacteria and Actinobacteria (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2017; Pérez-Jaramillo et al. 2018). Members of Bacteroidetes, also an abundant phylum in the human gut, are known for their propensity to metabolize complex carbohydrates, a component that may have become more limited in agricultural crop rhizospheres. Thus, changes in root microbiota composition could be associated with simplification of plant exudates.

Several studies have suggested that microbial community changes during domestication likely resulted from changes in root architecture, root exudate composition, plant physiological changes, and alteration of the chemical environment (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016). These changes appear to have hampered beneficial associations with mycorrhizae and nitrogen-fixing rhizobia. Indeed, wild ancestors

in maize, wheat, and breadfruit showed a greater disposition to mycorrhizal associations compared to modern varieties (Kapulnik and Kushnir 1991; Xing et al. 2012; Zhu et al. 2001). The comparison of wild and domesticated legumes grown in natural soil also revealed that the ability to attract and colonize a diverse microbial community was reduced in cultivated crops, suggesting the loss of microbial recruitment skills upon domestication (Mutch and Young 2004). The lower microbial diversity in agricultural soils may also be attributed to the reduced diversity of available microbes in agricultural soils compared to natural soils since the selection of microbes by the plant is limited by what is available in the soil. This is well exemplified in the study showing that the transformation of Amazon forest areas into agricultural land resulted in shrinkage of microbial diversity (Rodrigues et al. 2013).

The loss of rhizosphere microbial diversity has consequences to plant health. Generally, diversity in a microbial community ensures that competition for niches and resources keeps pathogens at bay. Additionally, more diverse communities are also more resilient to environmental stresses such as drought as the stress-induced loss of important microbial species (often temporary) is compensated for by the presence of new taxa that spring into action and help the plant withstand stress (Xu et al. 2018). Thus, the reduction in microbial diversity in modern agricultural soils could offer pathogenic species an opening to invade the rhizosphere and cause disease and could also render the plants less resilient to stress.

9.3.1.1.2 Changes in Plant Morphology

Soil surface watering and fertilization in agricultural plants appear to have led to the evolution of shallower root systems, as the nutrients are easily accessible at the surface negating the need for deep rooting (Jackson 1995). This change in root architecture can alter root surface niches as well as oxygen exposure near the surface and consequently affect the microbiome, as has been suggested (Micallef et al. 2009). The shallowing of roots or loss of deep rooting in domesticated plants compared to wild plants has been witnessed in many plant species including lettuce. Evolutionarily, a less deep root system may have contributed to the deselection of anaerobic root microbiota such as some members in the Bacteroidetes phylum (Pérez-Jaramillo et al. 2018).

9.3.1.1.3 Changes in Plant Physiology

Agricultural domestication of plants has resulted in an erosion of genetic diversity as witnessed in multiple plant species including rice, wheat, and bean (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016). A general reduction of plant genetic diversity through agriculture may be linked with a reduced ability to recruit and select rhizosphere microbial communities (Wissuwa et al. 2008). The genetic component of rhizosphere microbiome selection is evident from the analysis of maize recombinant inbred lines that revealed the significant genetic contribution to microbial selection and diversity (Peiffer et al. 2013). Specifically, plant domestication progressively selected out secondary metabolites and volatile compounds to render plants more palatable or less toxic to humans and livestock (Meyer et al. 2012) and this has

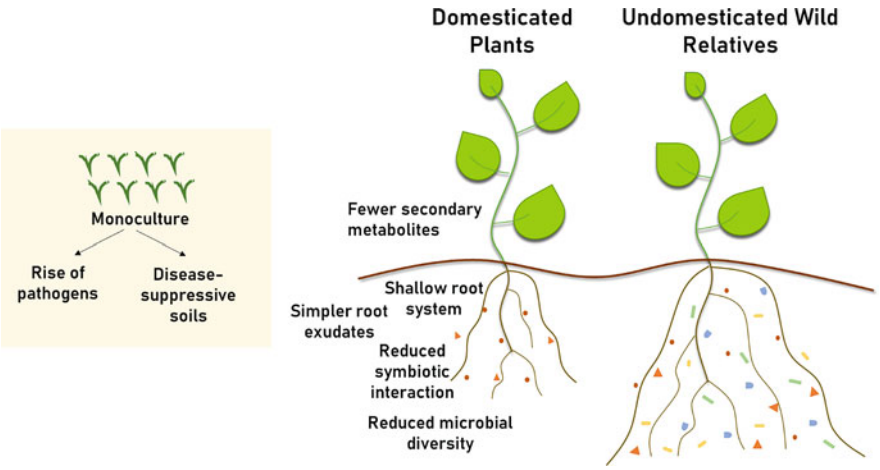


Fig. 9.3 Impact of plant domestication and agriculture on rhizosphere microbes. *Left panel*, monoculture in agriculture has resulted in the rise of pathogens, but also nurtured the development of disease-suppressive soils which have had a protective effect in limiting pathogens; *right panel*, plant domestication through agriculture had led to the loss of secondary metabolites that are key selective agents in root exudates against microbes. The regular provision of water and nutrients has led to the evolution of shallow root systems, which can alter microbial niches in the rhizosphere. The root exudate composition in domesticated plants is also simpler and correlates with reduced microbial diversity and interaction with symbiotic microbes like nitrogen-fixing rhizobacteria and mycorrhizal fungi. In comparison, the undomesticated wild counterparts have more secondary metabolites, deeper root systems, more complex components in root exudates, and higher microbial diversity

rendered modern crops more susceptible to insect pest herbivory, for instance (Chen et al. 2015). Many of these metabolites are defense compounds against pathogens and insect pests, including phenols, flavonoids, terpenes, and glucosinolates, which almost always carry a strong taste such as bitterness, acridity, or astringence (Drewnowski and Gomez-Carneros 2000). Such metabolic changes may have impacted the ability of modern crops to recruit microbiota as these secondary metabolites also play a key role in the selection and shaping of the rhizosphere microbiome as discussed above. The root exudates of crops may also be less complex than wild counterparts as modern wheat showed severalfold higher exudation of simple sugars such as glucose and fructose (Shaposhnikov et al. 2016). The impact of plant domestication on rhizosphere microbes is illustrated in Fig. 9.3.

9.3.1.2 Inorganic Fertilizers

Modern farming is largely inorganic farming and inorganic fertilizer treatment of soil undoubtedly enhances plant growth, but only about 60% of the nitrogen supplements are absorbed by the plant, and the rest leach into and contaminate groundwater and end up in water bodies causing environmental pollution such as eutrophication (Schmer et al. 2014). Furthermore, the treatment of plants with nitrogen-based fertilizers for a long time resulted in the displacement of mutualists

by less mutualistic root bacteria, negating microbe-mediated benefits to the host (Weese et al. 2015). Similar to the enrichment of certain members by eutrophication in water bodies, fertilizer treatment promoted the growth of copiotrophic bacterial taxa like Actinobacteria and Firmicutes with a reduction in oligotrophic species in Acidobacteria and Verrucomicrobia (Ramirez et al. 2012). Phosphorus is another major macronutrient for plants, but only about 5% of soil phosphorus is accessible for uptake by the plant. To sidestep this problem, farm soil is amended with phosphate fertilizers. Fertilizers do augment the biological activity in the soil (Quiza et al. 2015), but appear to restructure the microbiome with the apparent cost of microbial diversity loss.

9.3.1.3 Pesticides

Without question, pesticides can boost crop yield through protection from pests and plant growth promotion (Syed et al. 2018). Products like fungicides carry both financial and environmental costs, in addition to the development of fungicide resistance by pathogens and the need to keep developing new products (Ma and Michailides 2005). Fungicides and other agrochemicals can also inadvertently target the microbiomes and weaken beneficial interactions of the plant with rhizobacteria and mycorrhizae (Berg 2009). For instance, products like Oryzalin and glyphosate have been shown to suppress plant-associating mycorrhizae and nitrogen-fixing bacteria, respectively (Kelley and South 2017; Santos and Flores 1995).

Taken together, many modern agricultural practices appear to have collectively caused a shift in rhizosphere microbiomes with reduced interactions with beneficial microbes and diminished microbial diversity compared to their undomesticated counterparts. Soil organic matter is the driving force for rhizosphere microbiome colonization as a source of colonization signals and sustaining nutrients. Modern farming practices reduce soil organic matter content, compromising soil microbial diversity (Lareen et al. 2016). Indeed, low-input farming is correlated with higher microbial diversity characteristics of a healthy rhizosphere microbiome (Postma-Blaauw et al. 2010).

9.3.2 Contemporary, Alternative Farming Practices

9.3.2.1 Organic Farming

Organic farming is a more sustainable alternative to modern agriculture, as it aims to replace hazardous and polluting pesticides, fungicides, herbicides, and fertilizers with the more eco-friendly options—organic matter (Quiza et al. 2015). Organic farming enriches soil organic matter content and biological activity and plants cultivated in organic soil showed greater microbial diversity and species richness than those grown in conventional mineral soil in winter wheat, clover, and other species (Hartmann et al. 2015; Long et al. 2010; Lupatini et al. 2016). The increased microbial species richness may be owed to the fact that organic matter contains complex organic substrates that may nurture a distinct and more diverse set of bacteria. Microbial 16S rRNA profiling revealed that Proteobacteria members

were elevated in the organic soils compared to conventional soils which mainly contained Actinobacteria (Li et al. 2012). The enrichment of Proteobacteria is not surprising because they are among the most abundant phyla in animal feces (Shanks et al. 2011) that are often used as soil amendments and may also indicate an enrichment by the plant.

Organic farming practices emphasize soil amendments including compost, animal manure, and treated sewage sludge, rich in organic matter. Compost includes chitinous material such as crab shells, fish emulsion, and fruit pulp (Gómez Expósito et al. 2017). Often the compost possesses biocontrol activity and affords disease protection; for example, compost including chitosan, crab shell (chitin), and citrus pulp protected bell pepper from *Phytophthora* root and crown rot (Kim et al. 1997). In some cases, organic mulches have been supplemented with beneficial fungi to improve disease resistance, as observed for root rot resistance to the oomycete pathogen *Phytophthora cinnamomi* in avocado (Costa et al. 2000). Green manure, consisting of cover crop plant material left to decompose on the field, not only enriches organic matter but also acts as a mulch to retain soil moisture and suppress weed growth (Muimba-Kankolongo 2018). The application of green manure increased bacterial richness and soil microbial heterogeneity while also increasing the levels of microbes that promote nutrient cycling (Ingels et al. 2005). Thus, organic farming practices generally supported a higher microbial diversity than inorganic farming with protective effects.

9.3.2.2 Crop Rotation

Crop rotation has been utilized as an important tool to restructure the rhizosphere microbiota to benefit crop plants and is a mainstay in organic farming (Mazzola 2007), although it could also be practiced with modern inorganic farming. The alternating growth of complementary plants in crop rotation—particularly with legumes—not only increased nutrient cycling and improved soil properties but also increased disease resistance (Ingels et al. 2005). For instance, the nitrogen-fixing legume chickpea was found to recruit microbiome—including the plant-protective *Penicillium* sp. that benefited the subsequent wheat crops (Ellouze et al. 2013). Similarly, another legume red clover developed rhizobacterial communities that were beneficial to potato growth (Sturz et al. 2003). Thus, legumes make good partner crops for rotation with other crops. Oats produce terpenoid avenacin that confers resistance to the highly destructive fungal disease take-all (Begley et al. 1986). The growth of oat as a break crop before growing wheat transferred the resistance benefits to wheat as the protective effects persisted in the soil (Huang and Osbourn 2019). Thus, rotation or alternation of crops can result in complementary microbiomes that are tolerated by both crops, with additive or synergistic benefits from the mixed microbiome (Quiza et al. 2015). The mixed community has greater microbial diversity and resilience to pathogen invasion, contributing to a disease-suppressive effect. Furthermore, the alternation with incompatible hosts also discourages plant pathogen survival.

Although organic farming is ecologically friendly, drawbacks include the undefined nature of the amendments that limit the reproducibility of benefits (Quiza et al.

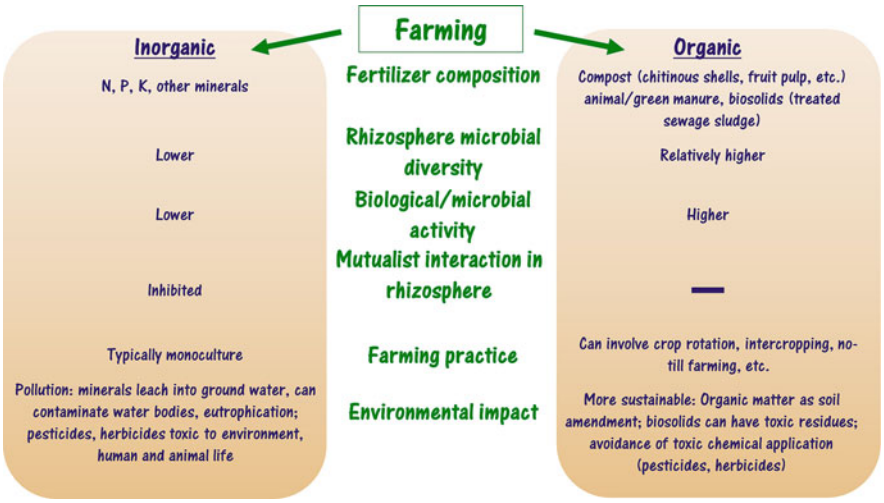


Fig. 9.4 Microbiota in organic and inorganic farming. N, P, K, nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium; "-" indicates unknown

2015). Moreover, the salinity in some of the treatments and heavy metals and therapeutic agents in biosolids and other soil amendments may be toxic to the native soil microbiota. Nevertheless, organic farming is a more sustainable alternative to modern inorganic farming. The effect of organic and inorganic farming on rhizosphere microbes is compared in Fig. 9.4.

9.3.2.3 Tillage

Tilling and turning over of soil can aerate the soil, but disrupt the soil structure and microbial community organization and expose the soil to potential erosion and runoff from precipitation. No-till farming preserves the microbial communities for the next crop season and the residual plant material can sustain microbial growth. In one study comparing the microbiomes of tilled and non-tilled farms, the bacterial communities were not observed to be significantly different (Yin et al. 2017). It was suggested that the tillage may affect fungal populations more as fungal enzymes may play a more significant role in the digestion of lignocellulosic material (Baker et al. 2019).

9.3.3 Monoinoculant Biocontrol

As an alternative to inorganic and organic fertilizers, microbes such as *Azospirillum* can be introduced in the field as biofertilizers that can promote plant growth, generally by solubilizing nutrients and promoting absorption (Maeder et al. 2002; Namvar and Khandan 2015; Qiu et al. 2019). Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) go a step further by not only improving plant growth but also enhancing

protection from diseases (Compant et al. 2019). Some PGPR produce plant growth-promoting phytohormones including auxins, gibberellins, and cytokinins or modulate endogenous levels of them within the host (Compant et al. 2019; Hardoim et al. 2008). Several PGPR species including *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, and *Streptomyces* have been employed in agricultural soils to enhance crop growth, yield, and survival (Sanchis and Bourguet 2008). Several *Bacillus* spp. have shown promising results in conferring plant growth promotion and disease resistance under field conditions (Syed et al. 2018). Beneficial fungal species such as *Trichoderma* have been employed for a similar purpose and function (Harman et al. 2004).

Plant protection by PGPR species involves pathogen antagonism as many of them grow aggressively and compete fiercely and these bacteria are also referred to as biological control or biocontrol bacteria. For example, *Pseudomonas* and *Streptomyces* can protect host plants through the function of antimicrobial/antibiotic/antifungal compounds such as phenazine derivatives and DAPG and antimicrobial lytic enzymes such as proteases (Newitt and Prudence 2019). Similarly, *Bacillus* spp. produce antibiotics such as iturin A and surfactants well as lipoproteins that have an antimicrobial function (Lareen et al. 2016; Turner et al. 2013). PGPR also sequester critical nutrients such as iron using iron-scavenging siderophore proteins, thus depriving their competitors and potential pathogens (Hassani et al. 2018). For instance, *Pseudomonas* spp. suppress fungal pathogens and disease through the use of siderophores (Mercado-Blanco and Bakker 2007). PGPR also prime the plant immune system to trigger a rapid defense to a wide range of pathogens through various mechanisms. One such process is induced systemic resistance (ISR), where rhizosphere colonization triggered systemic resistance in plants. For example, field trials showed that root colonization of *Bacillus* spp. enhanced resistance to the cucumber mosaic virus (CMV) in tomatoes and cucurbit wilt disease (Zehnder et al. 2000). Similar benefits of ISR have been observed in several crop species (Choudhary et al. 2007).

PGPR microbial inoculants help slash the usage of polluting biocides and fertilizers (Qiu et al. 2019), but the overall promise of biocontrol bacteria is curtailed by their limited success and unpredictability in field settings even though they were promising in laboratory and greenhouse experiments (Schlaeppi and Bulgarelli 2015). For instance, although *Pseudomonas* spp. exhibit promising biocontrol activity against take-all disease in wheat, these strains are sensitive to desiccation and only survive the early stages of growth on wheat in field settings and are subsequently outcompeted (Coombs et al. 2004; Schlatter et al. 2017). Moreover, plant protection is even more imperative in the context of climate change, which is expected to be hostile to monoinoculant PGPRs—where all eggs lie in one basket. These observations suggest that overreliance on single PGPR inoculants for agricultural plant protection is untenable.

9.3.4 Microbial Mixtures

Instead of single-strain PGPRs, a combination of strains holds more promise in agriculture (Nguyen et al. 2017), particularly when the strains exhibit synergistic or additive effects in conferring plant protection (Orozco-Mosqueda et al. 2018), as was shown with *Bacillus* spp. in field trials (Zehnder et al. 2000). Similarly, a group of six endophytes promoted resistance to tobacco wilt disease (Santhanam et al. 2015). A diverse *Pseudomonas* consortium led to greater pathogen suppression and disease protection in tomatoes, likely with the increased survival of the *Pseudomonas* strains (Hu et al. 2016). Strain mixtures including *Bacillus* and *Cutibacetrium* spp. improved growth and biocontrol of pathogens in cucumber (Raupach and Kloepper 1998). In some cases, benefits to the plant were only discernable when two *Pseudomonas* strains were used together resulting in synergistic interactions on chickpea (Meena et al. 2010). Various studies in grapevine (Rolli et al. 2015), maize (Molina-Romero et al. 2017), potato (De Vrieze et al. 2018), and tomato (Berg and Koskella 2018) have demonstrated that multistrain inoculations have the potential to increase plant growth-promoting effects as compared to mono-inoculations. In some cases, bacterial mixtures also improved tolerance to stresses such as drought, as was shown for a cocktail of *Pseudomonas*, *Sphingomonas* sp., *Azospirillum*, and *Acinetobacter* in maize (Molina-Romero et al. 2017).

A diverse set of microbes in a complex inoculum have the potential to occupy different niches in the rhizosphere, expanding plant protection and boosting growth promotion (Finkel et al. 2017). Furthermore, they may confer additive or synergistic benefits, especially when their benefits are afforded through different mechanisms (Timm et al. 2016). While microbial consortia often show greater potential than single strains, sometimes they may be worse than single strains as seen in the case of growth of grapevines during drought (Rolli et al. 2015). In another case, multiple strains of *Pseudomonas* affected community stability and did not improve plant protection (Becker et al. 2012). Other studies also witnessed multistrain inoculations being less beneficial to the plant than single inoculants (De Vrieze et al. 2018; Herrera Paredes et al. 2018). Furthermore, co-inoculation may produce a competitive process that may be subjected to environmental changes, with unpredictable outcomes. Thus, future endeavors with microbial consortia should be driven by knowledge and evidence-based selection of complementary microbial strains.

9.3.5 Disease-Suppressive Soils

With the limitations of current single and multistrain PGPR inoculants, disease-suppressive soils have proved not only to be a treasure trove to identify novel individual PGPR strains but also as sources of beneficial microbiomes in agriculture. Disease-suppressive soils are a great example of microbiome-mediated plant protection from pathogens in the soil (Gomez Exposito et al. 2017). Continual monoculture on agricultural soils can build selective pressures against pathogens to produce disease-suppressive soils enriched in beneficial microbes and microbial and

plant-derived antimicrobial metabolites that mediate disease suppression (Durán et al. 2018; Santhanam et al. 2015), although this can take several years to build (Coque et al. 2020). In disease-suppressive soils, plants can continue to be healthy even in the presence of pathogens (Teixeira et al. 2019) and this partly results from higher microbial diversities than in conventional soils (Garbeva et al. 2006) that can have a protective effect against pathogens. In some cases, disease suppressiveness may also result from changes in the relative abundance and functions of specific bacterial groups rather than their presence or absence (Mendes et al. 2011; Chapelle et al. 2016). Although soil suppressiveness is a complex phenomenon, the ability of a specific plant genotype to gather in the rhizosphere disease-suppressive communities is critical for the transition of the soil from the conductive to the suppressive state.

Within disease-suppressive soils, specific microbes or groups of microbes confer disease protection to plants largely through competition, pathogen antagonism, and the production of antimicrobial compounds (Mendes et al. 2011). For example, *Pseudomonas* spp. obtained from *Fusarium* wilt-suppressive soil conferred resistance to flax (Mazurier et al. 2009). The development of disease suppressiveness involves the selective recruitment of beneficial microbes by the plant roots. For instance, foliar infection with the oomycete pathogen *Hyaloperonospora arabidopsidis* summoned multiple beneficial strains in the soil that functioned synergistically to promote disease suppressiveness and this effect persisted in the following generations (Berendsen et al. 2018). Thus, the development of disease suppression is accomplished through changes in the microbial community and function in the soil. Since the first report by Atkinson of a cotton-grown soil suppressive to *Fusarium* wilt, several bacterial and fungal species conferring DDS have been reported. Typical examples are individual bacterial strains belonging to the genera *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Paenibacillus*, *Enterobacter*, *Alcaligenes*, and *Pantoea*; fungal strains of the genera *Trichoderma*, *Penicillium*, and *Clonostachys/Gliocladium*; nonpathogenic *Fusarium* species; and the fungal species *Verticillium biguttatum* and *Pochonia chlamydosporia*. Besides the commonly studied *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Streptomyces*, many other bacterial genera including *Burkholderia*, *Paraburkholderia*, *Enterobacter*, and *Pantoea* show pathogen antagonism (Compant et al. 2019) and are expected to play important roles in the development of disease suppression. Depending on the case, these beneficiaries have been shown to target pathogenic soilborne fungi and oomycetes but also pathogenic bacteria, protists, and parasitic root-knot and cyst nematodes (Gomez Exposito et al. 2017).

In addition to protective strains, disease-suppressive soils also contain microbe- and plant-derived protective compounds that suppress soilborne pathogen growth. This is best exemplified in the case of the wheat take-all disease caused by the fungal root pathogen, *Gaeumannomyces graminis*, which has the potential to wipe out wheat fields (James Cook 2003). The presence of *Pseudomonas*-derived antimicrobial DAPG and oat-derived avenacin in the soil corresponded with the suppression of take-all disease in wheat (Mendes et al. 2011; Huang and Osbourn 2019; Raaijmakers et al. 2009). Thus, in take-all decline, the severity of disease was

reduced with every generation of wheat, consistent with the development of disease-suppressive soil (Turner et al. 2013). Compounds like DAPG and phenazines can also prime the plant immune system, further enhancing disease resistance. *Streptomyces* spp. have also been frequently isolated from disease-suppressive soils and their disease suppressiveness was linked with the production of antifungal volatile organic compounds and thiopeptides (Cordovez et al. 2015; Cha et al. 2016; Newitt and Prudence 2019). The disease suppressiveness of *Paraburkholderia graminis* PHS1 was attributed to the production of sulfur-containing volatile compounds (Carrión et al. 2018). Antimicrobials like DAPG, phenazines, and iturin A can persist in the rhizosphere soil. Therefore, the disease's suppressive nature in soils can persist for generations, particularly if the plant- and microbe-derived compounds are not volatile. Breeding crops for traits related to the recruitment of disease-suppressive microbial communities could be an alternative breeding strategy towards durable disease resistance.

Microbiome studies have broadened our understanding of disease-suppressive soils and revealed that communities constituted by distinct taxonomic groups operate to confer disease suppression. For instance, bacterial species from Proteobacteria (including *Pseudomonas* producing antifungal compounds), Firmicutes, and Actinobacteria were implicated in the development of resistance to *Rhizoctonia* root rot through pathogen antagonism (Mendes et al. 2011). Another report revealed identified Acidobacteria, Actinobacteria, and Firmicutes as keystone groups for resistance to *Fusarium* wilt (Trivedi et al. 2017). In general, a diversity of microbial taxa become more abundant in disease-suppressive soils (reviewed in Gomez Exposito et al. 2017). Collectively, these studies reveal shifts in community composition with the development of disease suppression and the concomitant microbial enrichment may prevent pathogen invasion (Turner et al. 2013). Pathogen- or plant-derived compounds can promote recruitment or growth of new microbial groups; for example, fungal pathogen-derived oxalic acid or plant metabolites encouraged the growth of bacteria from specific families, including *Oxalobacteraceae* and *Burkholderiaceae* that likely served an antagonistic function (Chapelle et al. 2016; Mendes et al. 2011). Many microbial strains have been isolated from rhizospheres and developed as PGPRs for crop protection (Gopal et al. 2013). Disease-suppressive soils can thus be invaluable sources of novel bioactive strains of microbes as well as antimicrobial compounds (Weller et al. 2002). Indeed, the PGPR *Streptomyces* was originally isolated from disease-suppressive soils (Cha et al. 2016). A study of the rhizosphere community in take-all disease revealed *Enterobacter* and *Serratia* as promising candidates for disease suppression (Durán et al. 2018). The complexity of community interactions in disease-suppressive soils, the underlying mechanisms, and the impact of environmental factors remain to be elucidated for many disease-suppressive soils.

Disease suppressiveness can be transferred to new soils by mixing a small portion (1–10% w/w), thus seeding the new soil with a consortium of beneficial microbes (Mendes et al. 2011; Raaijmakers and Mazzola 2016; van der Voort et al. 2016). Similarly, supplementing the soil with siderophore-producing *Pseudomonas* or their siderophores, both isolated from suppressive soil, could suppress disease in wheat

and barley (Gomez Exposito et al. 2017). The organic soil amendments employed in organic farming can also promote disease suppressiveness by increasing soil microbial activity and promoting the recruitment of beneficial microbes. However, the development of disease suppression involves continual monoculture, and crop rotation can accelerate this development of disease suppressiveness (Coque et al. 2020), although in some cases, crop rotation could break disease suppressiveness (Newitt and Prudence 2019), possibly by releasing the selective pressure on the pathogens in the soil. Understanding the mechanisms of disease suppressiveness will be a big step forward in the deployment of plant-protective microbiomes in agriculture.

9.4 Harnessing Microbes for Plant Protection in Sustainable Agriculture

9.4.1 Harnessing Beneficial Microbes for Plant Protection

9.4.1.1 Identification and Selection of Candidate Microbes

While candidate plant-protective microbes can be isolated by screening assays in laboratories, they tend to be laborious. Amplicon-based sequencing methods such as 16S ribosomal RNA offer a relatively cost-effective approach to profile and identify microbial communities, but do not provide information about whether the microbes are beneficial or their relative importance in the community (Levy et al. 2018). Metagenomic sequencing (shotgun metagenomics) can be used to sequence the genomes of the entire rhizosphere community and offer insights into their functional potential and their relative roles. Metagenome sequencing can reveal what genes and functions are enriched in various niches of the rhizosphere (endosphere vs. rhizosphere) as well as dynamic spatiotemporal changes in microbial populations. While elucidation of community structure is a good starting point, the next important step is the functional characterization of promising candidates in the community.

9.4.1.2 Isolation and Functional Characterization of Candidate Microbes

From community profiling, microbial species that are preferentially recruited and/or enriched by the plant may be identified for further characterization. It is estimated that only a small portion of the rhizosphere microbiota is culturable, but recent studies are proving that such estimates are underestimates and more microbes are amenable to culture than previously thought. The ability to grow candidate microbes and explore their functions through plant-microbe experiments is fundamental to the understanding of the plant microbiome and to exploit its full potential. Microbial culture can be employed to test if a plant recruits a microbe or microbial community of interest and can also be used to analyze the underlying mechanisms. Network analysis has been increasingly useful in guiding the selection of representative microbes and identification of hub microbes that are critical to the assembly and function of the microbiome (Gómez Expósito et al. 2017).

If microbial isolates were identified by rRNA profiling, their genomes can be sequenced to further understand their potential. Using the genome, one may explain the organism's observed behavior or trait of interest, examine additional plant growth-promoting traits, and look for genes or gene clusters corresponding to the synthesis of bioactive compounds (e.g., hormones, antimicrobials) and other genes that indicate novel capabilities. For example, genome sequencing of *Streptomyces* S4-7 revealed 35 gene clusters implicated in the biosynthesis of antimicrobial compounds, following which a novel thiopeptide was isolated and showed antimicrobial activity (Cha et al. 2016). Similarly, the genome of *Pseudomonas* sp. contained biosynthetic clusters that allowed the identification of novel antibiotics (Helfrich et al. 2018). Microbes in such cases may be evaluated for antagonistic functions against other microbes or pathogens, although it may be noted that strains that do not show strong bioactivity against phytopathogens in vitro may do so in situ in the presence of root signals (Newitt and Prudence 2019). Good-quality genomes can also serve as reference sequences for the comparison of metagenomics data (Levy et al. 2018). Genome information is not informative of what genes are expressed or functioning in the rhizosphere. This may be accomplished through transcriptomic, proteomic, or metabolomics analysis of the microbe in the rhizosphere. Microbial genes important for plant interaction may be identified through mutational analysis. Recently, transposon sequencing (TnSeq) has turned out to be a facile strategy to create genome-wide mutants of a microbe and systematically test all mutants for a trait of interest (Levy et al. 2018). Such approaches will not only allow the identification of genes important for plant-microbe interaction, but also interactions in the microbiome. Other approaches such as stable isotope probing to assess microbial substrate preferences and metabolic potential are critical to understand the metabolic basis of the plant-microbe interaction (Radajewski et al. 2000).

9.4.1.3 Assembling Synthetic Communities of Candidate Microbes

The representative microbes identified by network analysis can be grown to constitute synthetic communities or SynComs (Gómez Expósito et al. 2017). As microbes function in concert in the microbiome, SynCom scan is employed to study their complex interactions with and impact on gnotobiotic plants in sterile culture (the plant equivalent of germ-free mice). Traditionally, microbial culture in vitro has been a limitation, but recent studies are demonstrating that it is possible to culture as much as 50% of the major members of the microbiome (Bai et al. 2015). SynCom experiments can demonstrate how each species contributes to community assembly and function and how they influence plant fitness (Rodriguez et al. 2019). SynComs also make excellent tools to assess how hub microbiota, which displays a high degree of interaction with other members in the community function as focal points in the community (Hassani et al. 2018). One study showed that the removal of one strain caused five others to disappear, indicating the disproportionately important role of specific members of the community (Niu et al. 2017). Many SynCom studies focus on small communities containing representative strains, but larger synthetic communities involving hundreds of members have also been shown to colonize the rhizosphere reproducibly, making this a powerful approach (Finkel et al. 2017).

Additionally, SynComs are valuable in understanding fundamental aspects of plant-microbial community interactions, for instance, SynCom experiments confirmed the importance of the plant defense hormone, salicylic acid (SA) in gating the endosphere and limiting colonization by certain taxa in *Arabidopsis* (Lebeis et al. 2015).

SynCom experiments have revealed that higher diversity in the synthetic community correlates with better disease suppression (Hassani et al. 2018). More complex *Pseudomonas* consortia afford better protection against *Ralstonia solanacearum*, a root pathogen in tomato, through greater competition and pathogen antagonism (Hu et al. 2016). A simplified SynCom consisting of seven species representative of various taxa from the microbiome was collectively required for resistance to *Fusarium verticilloides* blight in maize (Niu et al. 2017). Generation of SynComs with complementary microbial species with different functions or mechanisms of action may issue additive and synergistic effects, resulting in a resilient microbiome (Gomez Exposito et al. 2017). Some sets of bacterial strains may interact through cohabitation in the same biofilm (Berendsen et al. 2018). The greater plant protection from higher strain diversity has been correlated with a greater diversity of secondary metabolites that can protect the plant through varying mechanisms (Hu et al. 2016). These studies collectively indicate that synthetic communities containing diverse strains, complementary and synergistic with each other, but competitive and antagonistic to other microbes such as potential pathogens, and which can stimulate plant defenses are good candidates for use in sustainable plant protection.

9.4.2 Enabling Plants to Harness Beneficial Microbes for Plant Protection

While soil is the basic source of microbial pool available for plant colonization, host plant genotype also plays an important role in selecting and sustaining the rhizosphere microbiome (Badri et al. 2013; Bulgarelli et al. 2015, 2012; Lebeis et al. 2015; Peiffer et al. 2013). Each plant species, and even different genotypes within the same species, enriches a distinct and selected set of microbes in the rhizosphere and endosphere that are generally beneficial (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016), although in some studies the varietal differences were more subtle (Bulgarelli et al. 2015; Peiffer et al. 2013). This selection is primarily dictated by the root exudate composition which also includes selective secondary metabolites, both of which not only serve to cull out certain species can also act as nutrients. A study of *Arabidopsis* accessions found qualitative differences between root exudates that corresponded to differences in rhizosphere microbiota (Micallef et al. 2009). Thus, the differences in microbial communities may be owed to differences in root exudates.

Plant breeding has traditionally focused on traits like yield and disease resistance, but the outburst of microbiome studies in the past decade has prompted consideration that plants may additionally be bred for their ability to recruit preferred partners and PGPR to build optimal microbiomes and disease-suppressive soils (Quiza et al.

2015; Ryan et al. 2009). For example, wheat varieties were selected for their ability to recruit *Pseudomonas* populations for resistance to *Rhizoctonia solani* (Mazzola 2002). Some *Arabidopsis* mutants with altered root exudate composition were also found to recruit beneficial bacteria. Since root exudate composition is critical for microbial recruitment and selection, many studies have focused on modifying exudate composition (reviewed in Quiza et al. 2015) and transferring these traits to crop plants through traditional breeding and genetic engineering, potentially through the CRISPR/Cas9 system (Schaeffer and Nakata 2015) to augment plant protection; however, a detailed understanding of the mechanistic basis of microbial recruitment is the priority.

Identification of plant loci involved in recruiting or supporting the growth of specific bacterial taxa in the roots may be accomplished through quantitative trait loci (QTL) mapping (Collard et al. 2005) and genome-wide association studies (GWAS) with crops and their wild relatives. One study identified several plant QTLs regulating the colonization of *Bacillus cereus* UW85 and the accompanied disease-suppressive effect (Smith and Goodman 1999). Wild relatives of cultivated plants are more effective recruiters of a higher diversity of rhizosphere microbes likely due to a richer root exudate and having coevolved with microbiota that enhances their fitness (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016). Plant breeding for improved traits over generations has been successful in improving cultivated plant traits, but often with loss of genes from their wild ancestors (Gopal and Gupta 2016). Some of these genes may have contributed to the synthesis of secondary metabolites, which presumably made the plants more palatable both to humans and, inadvertently, also to insect pests. Revisiting wild varieties to identify genes that promote microbial recruitment is a promising approach to design a fitter rhizosphere microbiome and holobiont (Perez-Jaramillo et al. 2016). A plant engineered to produce a diverse root exudate may be expected to support microbiome diversity in the rhizosphere. Desirable rhizosphere traits in plants could be incorporated into elite breeding programs to enhance crop varieties. Thus, modulation of a plant's ability to attract and retain beneficial microbes is a promising approach to introducing beneficial bacteria in the field. However, it is important to ensure that the soil is equipped with the preferred partners of the plant and supplementing the soil with SynComs could augment the recruitment of the microbiome. Bacterial strains may also be modified for higher responsiveness to plant signals to promote colonization (Cole et al. 2017).

One other way plants can modulate rhizosphere bacterial communities is by targeting quorum sensing (QS), a signaling system used by bacterial species to monitor their population density or those of other species and activate specific coordinated functions (Mohan et al. 2018; Quiza et al. 2015). Plants engineered to produce QS signals or enzymes such as lactonases that can degrade QS signals in the rhizosphere may be able to selectively target certain bacterial groups while retaining others. In addition to improving microbes and plants for better colonization, plant or microbial metabolites could be identified that enhance recruitment by the root. Metabolite profiling and modeling can help identify candidate metabolites that affect community structure and dynamics (Botero et al. 2018). Such metabolites could be used as elicitors to enhance the colonization and retention of preferred beneficial

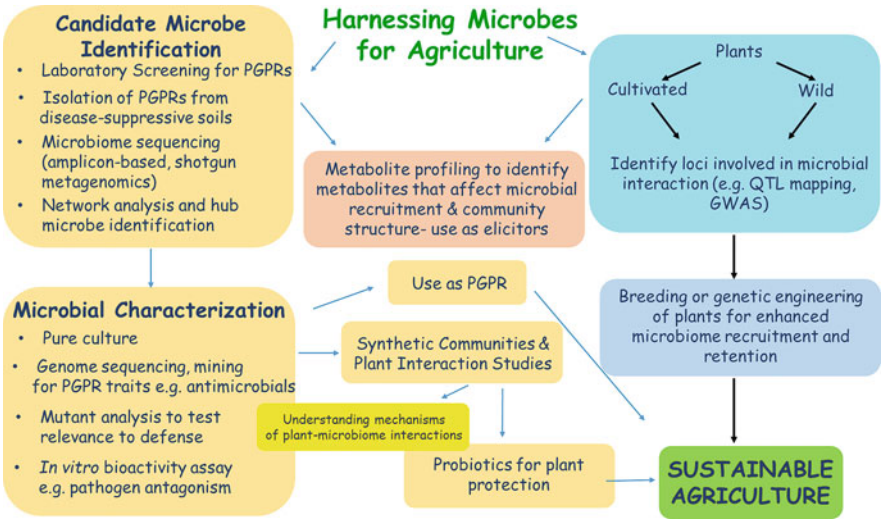


Fig. 9.5 Harnessing microbes for plant protection in agriculture. Can be accomplished via three approaches: identifying microbes ideal for plant colonization and protection (left), identifying metabolites that promote microbial colonization (elicitors), and enhancing the ability of plants to recruit and retain protective microbes

microbes. Thus, a variety of complementary approaches are feasible to enhance the recruitment and enrichment of crop microbiome for enhanced protection; these are summarized in Fig. 9.5.

9.5 Future Considerations for Sustainable Microbiome-Based Agriculture

Rhizosphere microbiomes have coevolved with plants, the local environment, and fluctuating stress conditions serving as a shaping force. The understanding of the microbiome and its dynamic interactions with plants, currently in its infancy, can be potentially applied for sustainable agriculture, particularly in resource-limited environments. An exciting array of opportunities that could transform agriculture await exploration.

9.5.1 Plant Probiotics

While the use of plant bacteria as pure inocula or microbial mixtures is not a new concept to promote plant disease resistance and even though such inoculants showed promising results in laboratory or greenhouse experiments, they fell short in field settings (Glick 2012). With more recent knowledge of the microbiome, thoughtfully selected microbial preparations produced with thorough testing using SynComs are

key to success. Many attributes are ideally desirable in these consortia; these include the ability of the strains to compete and survive in the rhizosphere, protect the plant from pathogens by antagonism, tolerate the plant immune system, and stimulate both local and systemic defenses. The inclusion of hub microbes that are capable of recruiting other microbes to assemble a plant-preferred microbiome in agriculture would be beneficial. However, certain hub microbes such as *Enterobacter cloacae* (Niu et al. 2017) are potential human pathogens and their enrichment in agricultural fields may be considered carefully. The assembling members of the community should preferably show metabolic and functional complementarity with different mechanisms of pathogen antagonism and host defense stimulation so that they combine to afford additive or synergistic protection to the host. The starter community should be representative of the host microbiome, be inherently diverse, or be able to build a diverse microbiome, as diverse microbiomes tend to be resilient; some functional redundancy among the microbes is desirable in this aspect, especially in dynamic environments. Ideally, consortia should include indigenous stress-tolerant microbes that are adapted to the local environment (Mueller and Sachs 2015; Qiu et al. 2019) and capable of assisting plants to withstand fluctuating environmental stresses. Some of these desirable traits could be engineered in the bacteria through recombinant strain production (Quiza et al. 2015), but the risks associated with recombinant strain release and potential gene transfer should be evaluated first.

One challenge in synthesizing ideal consortia is the present limitation in being able to freely grow all microbes in culture. This is particularly true for obligate biotrophs that can only grow on a living host and some of the keystone hub species identified are obligate biotrophs. Bacterial consortia administered as probiotics may be coated onto seeds before sowing (Santhanam et al. 2015), so they can establish the microbial community early on. However, to accomplish this, they need to be competitive to overcome the indigenous microbes already present in the soil. Although fungicide or antibiotic treatments have been recommended to disrupt the existing microbiome in the soil (Quiza et al. 2015), a more sustainable option would be tilling the soil to achieve the same. To ensure invasion of the inocula in the rhizosphere, higher doses may be required, but this may promote undesirable pervasive growth of the microbes in the aerial parts of the plant; for instance, treatment of *Arabidopsis* roots with high doses of *Pseudomonas simiae* (*P. fluorescens*) resulted in the strain spreading to the aerial parts of the plant (Zamioudis and Mohan, unpublished observations). Even if the inoculants establish in the rhizosphere, they may not persist, as in some cases, inocula in the field have been outcompeted by indigenous microbes (van Veen et al. 1997), as has been observed for *Azospirillum* (Ryan et al. 2009; Herschkovitz et al. 2005). To ensure persistence, periodic soil amendments with the inocula may be necessary (Syed et al. 2018).

9.5.2 Mixed Microbiomes

The exclusive focus on bacterial microbiomes in the rhizosphere comes with the cost of inherent bias as the other kingdoms of microbes including fungi and oomycetes can in many cases play a substantial role in community dynamics, particularly in the context of plant protection. PGPRs *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* teamed up with mycorrhizal fungi for synergistic suppression of root-knot nematode in chickpea (Akhtar and Siddiqui 2008). Disease suppressiveness in soils is contributed not only by bacteria, but also by fungal genera such as *Aspergillus, Fusarium,* and *Eurotium* (Adam et al. 2014; Giné et al. 2016; Song et al. 2016). Certain rhizospheres such as that of pea are enriched in fungal species in addition to bacterial taxa (Turner et al. 2013). Bacteria and fungi can physically associate as some bacterial biofilms such as that of *Pseudomonas* sp. are formed on the hyphae of fungi like *Laccaria* in the soil (Guennoc et al. 2017; Hassani et al. 2018). Bacteria and fungi could be metabolically interdependent. For instance, fungal enzymes may initiate the breakdown of complex plant-derived substrates such as lignocellulosic material (Baker et al. 2019) and the breakdown products could serve as substrates for bacterial groups. Bacteria, fungi (e.g., *Albugo*), and oomycete species (e.g., *Udeniomyces* and *Dioszegia*) may coordinate to serve as hub microbes that are highly interactive with other microbes in the rhizosphere (Agler et al. 2016). Interkingdom molecular dialogue between bacteria and fungi is possible through quorum sensing (Jarosz et al. 2011). The inclusion of fungi in the bacterial consortium not only diversifies the inoculum but also promotes niche filling and competitive suppression of pathogens (Quiza et al. 2015). However, these interactions have to be evaluated and optimized using SynCom experiments in planta.

9.5.3 Engineered Plants

In addition to better probiotics, plants may also be better equipped to get the best support out of their microbiomes, since plants and their microbiomes function in unison as a holobiont. This is particularly relevant in the context of stress as microbiomes can respond dynamically to confer stress protection. Plant-mediated selection of microbiomes can alter traits such as flowering in *Arabidopsis* and *Brassica* spp. (Panke-Buisse et al. 2017). Genetically engineering plants to be able to modulate their microbiome is one approach as relevant genes could be transferred to crop plants (Qiu et al. 2019). Genes regulating the production of metabolites that attract beneficial microbes can be integrated into or enhanced in a plant. For example, plants releasing volatile organic compounds could attract beneficial bacteria from a distance in the soil (Schulz-Bohm et al. 2018). However, the consequences of change in plant metabolite profiles, their impact on crop quality, and the non-target effects of the metabolites on other organisms have to be carefully evaluated. Comparative genomics of domesticated crops and their wild relatives in combination with metabolite analysis and microbiome profiles can help narrow

down to genes that can enrich crop microbiomes, in what is referred to as the "back to the roots" approach.

9.5.4 Disease-Suppressive Soils

Disease-suppressive soils are gold mines of beneficial microbes and can also be used to inoculate agricultural soils to transplant disease resistance to new soils even if the latter contains pathogens. Such soils can retain the suppressive effect for generations of crops and disease resistance may progress with generations due to enrichment of the microbiome and optimizing selection by the host plants. Undoubtedly, the early studies on suppressive soils focusing on single community members provide valuable insights into the mechanisms involved in disease suppression, yet they neglect the complex interactions among microbial communities as these occur in the root vicinity and within the root interior. Several seminal studies based on metagenomics and metatranscriptomics support that microbial consortia rather than individual strains function synergistically to confer solid protection against pathogens. Thus, multi-omics technologies provide opportunities to dissect disease suppressiveness to an exceptional level of detail and, in this context, may assist in the design of robust synthetic communities of microbes with enhanced disease-suppressive potential. Understanding the mechanisms of how disease suppression evolves in soils can be invaluable in engineering the plants and the soil microbiome to enhance disease suppressiveness. Presently, microbiome engineering is being pursued through artificially selecting a protective microbiome through repeated colonization over multiple generations to achieve an optimal plant-preferred community with protective functions (Mueller and Sachs 2015). This, in effect, creates a disease-suppressive soil. Such microbiomes may, in the future, be mass-cultured and cryopreserved for field application.

9.5.5 Microbiome-Mediated Organic Farming

Cultural practices in organic farming must have a pronounced impact on agricultural microbiomes. The progressive ease of sequencing and microbial community characterization affords the power to characterize the complex and diverse microbiomes that must operate in organic farms. Manure that has been traditionally used to fertilize agricultural fields is enriched in the fecal microbiomes of animals. The substrates used in organic soil amendments are degraded or fermented with microbial action which results in the enrichment of various microbial species. Recently, the microbial composition of traditional organic preparations in rural agriculture is receiving renewed attention; for instance, the compost fermentates named jeevamrutha and beejamrutha, which are made through the fermentation of organic substrates in jaggery and pulse crop flour by microbiota from cow dung, are routinely used as soil amendments in agricultural fields for sustainable crop production (Pattanaik et al. 2020). Microbial profiling of these preparations revealed that

they are enriched in bacteria such as actinomycetes and fungi. Organic farming in itself promotes microbial diversity in the rhizosphere, and organic practices that support the enrichment of beneficial microbes may be explored to promote sustainability in agriculture, especially with increasing ease of microbiome profiling.

9.5.6 Considering Environmental Impacts of and on Microbiome-Based Agriculture

The introduction of a new microbial species into an ecosystem often comes with consequences that may be difficult to quantify (Delgado-Baquerizo et al. 2016). Microbial consortia have to be tested for the effects of their metabolites on nontarget organisms before application in agriculture and whether the metabolic changes in the crop could also affect human health. For instance, the inoculated rhizosphere microbes could enrich antifungal compounds such as polyene macrolide antibiotics, which have the potential to affect human cholesterol metabolism (Zotchev 2003).

Stresses such as drought are expected to aggravate plant disease and herbivory while substantially impacting yield (Bebber et al. 2014; Lobell and Field 2007). Environmental stress, particularly at high temperatures, can modulate the expression of defense genes, increase the transfer of pathogen effector proteins into host cells, reduce pathogen perception, and suppress host defense (Teixeira et al. 2019). Unfortunately, the benefits conferred by the microbiomes on hosts are also threatened by the effects of global climate change (Maclean and Wilson 2011). Microbiomes in agriculture could also be influenced by the environment, particularly climate change, including a rise in carbon dioxide levels, global warming, and altered rainfall patterns (Blankinship et al. 2011). Increased carbon dioxide levels, one of the key components of climate change, can influence rhizosphere structure through the altered root exudation patterns (Drigo et al. 2013). The activity of hub microbes has also been shown to be sensitive to environmental changes (Santoyo et al. 2017; Vacher et al. 2016). Fortunately, plant adaptations to stresses are not only accompanied by rapid compensatory changes in the rhizosphere, typically associated with changes in root exudation profiles, but also with genetic changes in microbes that are beneficial to the host (Rodriguez et al. 2008). Microbial communities have been observed to evolve and adapt faster to environmental changes than the plant itself, helping the plant overcome stress (Lau and Lennon 2012). Understanding the mechanisms of plant-microbiome dynamics during stress may help us design better strategies to harness microbiomes that can rescue plants from biotic and abiotic stresses in a changing environment. Finally, testing microbiome-based agriculture in multiple field trials across distinct locations and over multiple years is critical to overcome limitations in performance under field settings.

In conclusion, steps towards sustainable agriculture are critical to increasing global food security. The application of rhizosphere microbiomes as a sustainable alternative to chemical-based agriculture is gaining ground, thanks to recent advances in non-culture-based characterization of the microbiome and insights into the mechanisms of their interactions with the plant. This may be accomplished

through a combination of microbiome treatments and enhanced recruitment and retention of healthy microbiomes by the plant to create disease-suppressive soils for durable plant protection.

Acknowledgments This endeavor was supported by the Erie Community Foundation-Helping Today grant. We thank Grant Ruback at Colgate University and Nathan Wise at Mercyhurst University for their intellectual contribution.

Conflict of Interest The authors have no conflicts of interest to declare.

References

Adam M, Westphal A, Hallmann J, Heuer H (2014) Specific microbial attachment to root knot nematodes in suppressive soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 80:2679–2686

Agler MT, Ruhe J, Kroll S, Morhenn C, Kim S-T, Weigel D, Kemen EM (2016) Microbial hub taxa link host and abiotic factors to plant microbiome variation. PLoS Biol 14:e1002352

Akhtar MS, Siddiqui ZA (2008) Glomusintraradices, Pseudomonas alcaligenes, and Bacillus pumilus: effective agents for the control of root-rot disease complex of chickpea (Cicer arietinum L.). J Gen Plant Pathol 74:53–60

Akum FN, Steinbrenner J, Biedenkopf D, Imani J, Kogel K-H (2015) The Piriformospora indica effector PIIN_08944 promotes the mutualistic Sebacinalean symbiosis. Front Plant Sci 6:906

Bacilio-Jiménez M, Aguilar-Flores S, Ventura-Zapata E, Pérez-Campos E, Bouquelet S, Zenteno E (2004) Chemical characterization of root exudates from rice (Oryza sativa) and their effects on the chemotactic response of endophytic bacteria. Plant Soil 249:271–277

Badri DV, Vivanco JM (2009) Regulation and function of root exudates. Plant Cell Environ 32: 666–681

Badri DV, Chaparro JM, Zhang R, Shen Q, Vivanco JM (2013) Application of natural blends of phytochemicals derived from the root exudates of Arabidopsis to the soil reveal that phenolic-related compounds predominantly modulate the soil microbiome. J Biol Chem 288:4502–4512

Bai Y, Müller DB, Srinivas G, Garrido-Oter R, Potthoff E, Rott M, Dombrowski N, Münch PC, Spaepen S, Remus-Emsermann M, Hüttel B, McHardy AC, Vorholt JA, Schulze-Lefert P (2015) Functional overlap of the Arabidopsis leaf and root microbiota. Nature 528:364–369

Baker P, Tiroumalechetty A, Mohan R (2019) Fungal enzymes for bioremediation of xenobiotic compounds. In: Yadav AN, Singh S, Mishra S, Gupta A (eds) Recent advancement in white biotechnology through fungi: volume 3: perspective for sustainable environments. Springer International Publishing, Cham, pp 463–489

Bass D, Stentiford GD, Wang HC, Koskella B, Tyler CR (2019) The pathobiome in animal and plant diseases. Trends Ecol Evol 34:996–1008

Bebber DP, Holmes T, Gurr SJ (2014) The global spread of crop pests and pathogens. Glob Ecol Biogeogr 23:1398–1407

Beck M, Wyrsch I, Strutt J, Wimalasekera R, Webb A, Boller T, Robatzek S (2014) Expression patterns of flagellin sensing 2 map to bacterial entry sites in plant shoots and roots. J Exp Bot 65: 6487–6498

Becker J, Eisenhauer N, Scheu S, Jousset A (2012) Increasing antagonistic interactions cause bacterial communities to collapse at high diversity. Ecol Lett 15:468–474

Beckers B, Op De Beeck M, Weyens N, Van Acker R, Van Montagu M, Boerjan W, Vangronsveld J (2016) Lignin engineering in field-grown poplar trees affects the endosphere bacterial microbiome. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113:2312–2317

Begley MJ, Crombie L, Crombie WML, Whiting DA (1986) The isolation of avenacins A-1, A-2, B-1, and B-2, chemical defences against cereal 'take-all' disease. Structure of their 'aglycones', the avenestergenins, and their anhydro dimers. J Chem Soc Perkin Trans 1:1905–1915

Berendsen RL, Pieterse CM, Bakker PA (2012) The rhizosphere microbiome and plant health. Trends Plant Sci 17:478–486

Berendsen RL, Vismans G, Yu K, Song Y, de Jonge R, Burgman WP, Burmølle M, Herschend J, Bakker P, Pieterse CMJ (2018) Disease-induced assemblage of a plant-beneficial bacterial consortium. ISME J 12:1496–1507

Berg G (2009) Plant–microbe interactions promoting plant growth and health: perspectives for controlled use of microorganisms in agriculture. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 84:11–18

Berg M, Koskella B (2018) Nutrient- and dose-dependent microbiome-mediated protection against a plant pathogen. Curr Biol 28:2487–2492.e2483

Bertin C, Yang X, Weston LA (2003) The role of root exudates and allelochemicals in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 256:67–83

Blankinship JC, Niklaus PA, Hungate BA (2011) A meta-analysis of responses of soil biota to global change. Oecologia 165:553–565

Bodenhausen N, Bortfeld-Miller M, Ackermann M, Vorholt JA (2014) A synthetic community approach reveals plant genotypes affecting the phyllosphere microbiota. PLoS Genet 10: e1004283

Botero D, Alvarado C, Bernal A, Danies G, Restrepo S (2018) Network analyses in plant pathogens. Front Microbiol 9:35

Bulgarelli D, Rott M, Schlaeppi K, Loren V, van Themaat E, Ahmadinejad N, Assenza F, Rauf P, Huettel B, Reinhardt R, Schmelzer E, Peplies J, Gloeckner FO, Amann R, Eickhorst T, Schulze-Lefert P (2012) Revealing structure and assembly cues for Arabidopsis root-inhabiting bacterial microbiota. Nature 488:91–95

Bulgarelli D, Garrido-Oter R, Münch PC, Weiman A, Dröge J, Pan Y, McHardy AC, Schulze-Lefert P (2015) Structure and function of the bacterial root microbiota in wild and domesticated barley. Cell Host Microbe 17:392–403

Carrión VJ, Cordovez V, Tyc O, Etalo DW, de Bruijn I, de Jager VCL, Medema MH, Eberl L, Raaijmakers JM (2018) Involvement of Burkholderiaceae and sulfurous volatiles in disease-suppressive soils. ISME J 12:2307–2321

Carvalhais LC, Dennis PG, Schenk PM (2014) Plant defence inducers rapidly influence the diversity of bacterial communities in a potting mix. Appl Soil Ecol 84:1–5

Cavalcante JJ, Vargas C, Nogueira EM, Vinagre F, Schwarcz K, Baldani JI, Ferreira PC, Hemerly AS (2007) Members of the ethylene signalling pathway are regulated in sugarcane during the association with nitrogen-fixing endophytic bacteria. J Exp Bot 58:673–686

Cha J-Y, Han S, Hong H-J, Cho H, Kim D, Kwon Y, Kwon S-K, Crüsemann M, Bok Lee Y, Kim JF, Giaever G, Nislow C, Moore BS, Thomashow LS, Weller DM, Kwak Y-S (2016) Microbial and biochemical basis of a Fusarium wilt-suppressive soil. ISME J 10:119–129

Chapelle E, Mendes R, Bakker PA, Raaijmakers JM (2016) Fungal invasion of the rhizosphere microbiome. ISME J 10:265–268

Chen YH, Gols R, Benrey B (2015) Crop domestication and its impact on naturally selected trophic interactions. Annu Rev Entomol 60:35–58

Choudhary DK, Prakash A, Johri BN (2007) Induced systemic resistance (ISR) in plants: mechanism of action. Indian J Microbiol 47:289–297

Chuberre C, Plancot B, Driouich A, Moore JP, Bardor M, Gügi B, Vicré M (2018) Plant immunity is compartmentalized and specialized in roots. Front Plant Sci 9:1692

Cole BJ, Feltcher ME, Waters RJ, Wetmore KM, Mucyn TS, Ryan EM, Wang G, Ul-Hasan S, McDonald M, Yoshikuni Y, Malmstrom RR, Deutschbauer AM, Dangl JL, Visel A (2017) Genome-wide identification of bacterial plant colonization genes. PLoS Biol 15:e2002860

Collard BCY, Jahufer MZZ, Brouwer JB, Pang ECK (2005) An introduction to markers, quantitative trait loci (QTL) mapping and marker-assisted selection for crop improvement: the basic concepts. Euphytica 142:169–196

Compant S, Samad A, Faist H, Sessitsch A (2019) A review on the plant microbiome: ecology, functions, and emerging trends in microbial application. J Adv Res 19:29–37

Conn HJ, Harding HA, Kligler IJ, Frost WD, Prucha MJ, Atkins KN (1918) Methods of pure culture study preliminary report of the committee on the chart for identification of bacterial species. J Bacteriol Res 3(2):115–128

Coombs JT, Michelsen PP, Franco CMM (2004) Evaluation of endophytic actinobacteria as antagonists of Gaeumannomyces graminis var. tritici in wheat. Biol Control 29:359–366

Cooper JE (2007) Early interactions between legumes and rhizobia: disclosing complexity in a molecular dialogue. J Appl Microbiol 103:1355–1365

Coque JJR, Álvarez-Pérez JM, Cobos R, González-García S, Ibáñez AM, Diez Galán A, Calvo-Peña C (2020) Chapter Four - Advances in the control of phytopathogenic fungi that infect crops through their root system. In: Gadd GM, Sariaslani S (eds) Advances in applied microbiology. Academic Press, London, pp 123–170

Cordovez V, Carrion VJ, Etalo DW, Mumm R, Zhu H, van Wezel GP, Raaijmakers JM (2015) Diversity and functions of volatile organic compounds produced by Streptomyces from a disease-suppressive soil. Front Microbiol 6:1081

Corral-Lugo A, Daddaoua A, Ortega A, Espinosa-Urgel M, Krell T (2016) Rosmarinic acid is a homoserine lactone mimic produced by plants that activates a bacterial quorum-sensing regulator. Sci Signal 9:ra1

Costa JLS, Menge JA, Casale WL (2000) Biological control of Phytophthora root rot of avocato with microorganisms grown in organic mulches. Braz J Microbiol 31:239–246

Dangl JL, Horvath DM, Staskawicz BJ (2013) Pivoting the plant immune system from dissection to deployment. Science (New York, NY) 341:746–751

De Vrieze M, Germanier F, Vuille N, Weisskopf L (2018) Combining different potato-associated pseudomonas strains for improved biocontrol of phytophthora infestans. Front Microbiol 9: 2573

Delgado-Baquerizo M, Maestre FT, Reich PB, Jeffries TC, Gaitan JJ, Encinar D, Berdugo M, Campbell CD, Singh BK (2016) Microbial diversity drives multifunctionality in terrestrial ecosystems. Nat Commun 7:10541

Doornbos RF, Geraats BP, Kuramae EE, Van Loon LC, Bakker PA (2011) Effects of jasmonic acid, ethylene, and salicylic acid signaling on the rhizosphere bacterial community of Arabidopsis thaliana. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 24:395–407

Drewnowski A, Gomez-Carneros C (2000) Bitter taste, phytonutrients, and the consumer: a review. Am J Clin Nutr 72:1424–1435

Drigo B, Kowalchuk GA, Knapp BA, Pijl AS, Boschker HTS, van Veen JA (2013) Impacts of 3 years of elevated atmospheric CO2 on rhizosphere carbon flow and microbial community dynamics. Glob Chang Biol 19:621–636

Duan L, Liu H, Li X, Xiao J, Wang S (2014) Multiple phytohormones and phytoalexins are involved in disease resistance to Magnaporthe oryzae invaded from roots in rice. Physiol Plant 152:486–500

Durán P, Tortella G, Viscardi S, Barra PJ, Carrión VJ, Mora ML, Pozo MJ (2018) Microbial Community Composition in Take-All Suppressive Soils. Front Microbiol 9:2198

Eberl L (1999) N-acyl homoserinelactone-mediated gene regulation in gram-negative bacteria. Syst Appl Microbiol 22:493–506

Ellouze W, Hamel C, Vujanovic V, Gan Y, Bouzid S, St-Arnaud M (2013) Chickpea genotypes shape the soil microbiome and affect the establishment of the subsequent durum wheat crop in the semiarid North American Great Plains. Soil Biol Biochem 63:129–141

Fierer N (2017) Embracing the unknown: disentangling the complexities of the soil microbiome. Nat Rev Microbiol 15:579–590

Finkel OM, Castrillo G, Herrera Paredes S, Salas González I, Dangl JL (2017) Understanding and exploiting plant beneficial microbes. Curr Opin Plant Biol 38:155–163

Fisher MC, Henk DA, Briggs CJ, Brownstein JS, Madoff LC, McCraw SL, Gurr SJ (2012) Emerging fungal threats to animal, plant and ecosystem health. Nature 484:186–194

Garbeva P, Postma J, van Veen JA, van Elsas JD (2006) Effect of above-ground plant species on soil microbial community structure and its impact on suppression of Rhizoctonia solani AG3. Environ Microbiol 8:233–246

Giné A, Carrasquilla M, Martínez-Alonso M, Gaju N, Sorribas FJ (2016) Characterization of soil suppressiveness to root-knot nematodes in organic horticulture in plastic greenhouse. Front Plant Sci 7:164–164

Glazebrook J (2005) Contrasting mechanisms of defense against biotrophic and necrotrophic pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 43:205–227

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica 2012: 963401

Glick BR (2014) Bacteria with ACC deaminase can promote plant growth and help to feed the world. Microbiol Res 169:30–39

Gomez Exposito R, de Bruijn I, Postma J, Raaijmakers JM (2017) Current Insights into the role of rhizosphere bacteria in disease suppressive soils. Front Microbiol 8:2529

Gómez Expósito R, de Bruijn I, Postma J, Raaijmakers JM (2017) Current Insights into the role of rhizosphere bacteria in disease suppressive soils. Front Microbiol 8:2529–2529

Gopal M, Gupta A (2016) Microbiome selection could spur next-generation plant breeding strategies. Front Microbiol 7:1971

Gopal M, Gupta A, Thomas GV (2013) Bespoke microbiome therapy to manage plant diseases. Front Microbiol 4:355

Guennoc CM, Rose C, Labbé J, Deveau A (2017) Bacterial biofilm formation on soil fungi: a widespread ability under controls. bioRxiv:130740

Gunawardena U, Hawes MC (2002) Tissue specific localization of root infection by fungal pathogens: role of root border cells. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 15:1128–1136

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, Elsas JDv (2008) Properties of bacterial endophytes and their proposed role in plant growth. Trends Microbiol 16:463–471

Harman GE, Howell CR, Viterbo A, Chet I, Lorito M (2004) Trichoderma species--opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:43–56

Hartmann M, Frey B, Mayer J, Mäder P, Widmer F (2015) Distinct soil microbial diversity under long-term organic and conventional farming. ISME J 9:1177–1194

Hassani MA, Duran P, Hacquard S (2018) Microbial interactions within the plant holobiont. Microbiome 6:58

Hawes MC, Gunawardena U, Miyasaka S, Zhao X (2000) The role of root border cells in plant defense. Trends Plant Sci 5:128–133

Helfrich EJN, Vogel CM, Ueoka R, Schäfer M, Ryffel F, Müller DB, Probst S, Kreuzer M, Piel J, Vorholt JA (2018) Bipartite interactions, antibiotic production and biosynthetic potential of the Arabidopsis leaf microbiome. Nat Microbiol 3:909–919

Herrera Paredes S, Gao T, Law TF, Finkel OM, Mucyn T, Teixeira PJPL, Salas González I, Feltcher ME, Powers MJ, Shank EA, Jones CD, Jojic V, Dangl JL, Castrillo G (2018) Design of synthetic bacterial communities for predictable plant phenotypes. PLoS Biol 16:e2003962

Herschkovitz Y, Lerner A, Davidov Y, Rothballer M, Hartmann A, Okon Y, Jurkevitch E (2005) Inoculation with the plant-growth-promoting rhizobacterium Azospirillum brasilense causes little disturbance in the rhizosphere and rhizoplane of maize (Zea mays). Microb Ecol 50:277–288

Hu J, Wei Z, Friman V-P, Gu S-h, Wang X-f, Eisenhauer N, Yang T-j, Ma J, Shen Q-r, Xu Y-c, Jousset A (2016) Probiotic diversity enhances rhizosphere microbiome function and plant disease suppression. MBio 7:e01790–e01716

Hu L, Robert CAM, Cadot S, Zhang X, Ye M, Li B, Manzo D, Chervet N, Steinger T, van der Heijden MGA, Schlaeppi K, Erb M (2018) Root exudate metabolites drive plant-soil feedbacks on growth and defense by shaping the rhizosphere microbiota. Nat Commun 9:2738

Huang AC, Osbourn A (2019) Plant terpenes that mediate below-ground interactions: prospects for bioengineering terpenoids for plant protection. Pest Manag Sci 75:2368–2377

Ingels CA, Scow KM, Whisson DA, Drenovsky RE (2005) Effects of cover crops on grapevines, yield, juice composition, soil microbial ecology, and gopher activity. Am J Enol Vitic 56:19–29
Iniguez AL, Dong Y, Carter HD, Ahmer BM, Stone JM, Triplett EW (2005) Regulation of enteric endophytic bacterial colonization by plant defenses. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 18:169–178
Jackson LE (1995) Root architecture in cultivated and wild lettuce (Lactuca spp.). Plant Cell Environ 18:885–894
Jacobs S, Zechmann B, Molitor A, Trujillo M, Petutschnig E, Lipka V, Kogel KH, Schäfer P (2011) Broad-spectrum suppression of innate immunity is required for colonization of Arabidopsis roots by the fungus Piriformospora indica. Plant Physiol 156:726–740
James Cook R (2003) Take-all of wheat. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 62:73–86
Jansson JK, Hofmockel KS (2018) The soil microbiome—from metagenomics to metaphenomics. Curr Opin Microbiol 43:162–168
Jarosz LM, Ovchinnikova ES, Meijler MM, Krom BP (2011) Microbial spy games and host response: roles of a Pseudomonas aeruginosa small molecule in communication with other species. PLoS Pathog 7:e1002312–e1002312
Jones DL, Nguyen C, Finlay RD (2009) Carbon flow in the rhizosphere: carbon trading at the soil–root interface. Plant Soil 321:5–33
Kapulnik Y, Kushnir U (1991) Growth dependency of wild, primitive and modern cultivated wheat lines on vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhiza fungi. Euphytica 56:27–36
Kelley WD, South DB (2017) Effects of herbicides on in vitro growth of mycorrhizae of pine (Pinus spp.). Weed Sci 28:599–602
Khorassani R, Hettwer U, Ratzinger A, Steingrobe B, Karlovsky P, Claassen N (2011) Citramalic acid and salicylic acid in sugar beet root exudates solubilize soil phosphorus. BMC Plant Biol 11:121–121
Kim KD, Nemec S, Musson G (1997) Control of Phytophthora root and crown rot of bell pepper with composts and soil amendments in the greenhouse. Appl Soil Ecol 5:169–179
Kloepper JW, Schroth MN, Miller TD (1980) Effects of rhizosphere colonization by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on potato plant development and yield. Phytopathology 70:1078
Kniskern JM, Traw MB, Bergelson J (2007) Salicylic acid and jasmonic acid signaling defense pathways reduce natural bacterial diversity on Arabidopsis thaliana. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 20:1512–1522
Kolodkin-Gal I, Romero D, Cao S, Clardy J, Kolter R, Losick R (2010) D-amino acids trigger biofilm disassembly. Science (New York, NY) 328:627–629
Lakshmanan V, Kitto SL, Caplan JL, Hsueh Y-H, Kearns DB, Wu Y-S, Bais HP (2012) Microbe-associated molecular patterns-triggered root responses mediate beneficial rhizobacterial recruitment in Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 160:1642–1661
Lareen A, Burton F, Schafer P (2016) Plant root-microbe communication in shaping root microbiomes. Plant Mol Biol 90:575–587
Lau JA, Lennon JT (2012) Rapid responses of soil microorganisms improve plant fitness in novel environments. Proc Natl Acad Sci 109(35):14058–14062
Leach JE, Triplett LR, Argueso CT, Trivedi P (2017) Communication in the phytobiome. Cell 169: 587–596
Lebeis SL, Paredes SH, Lundberg DS, Breakfield N, Gehring J, McDonald M, Malfatti S, Glavina del Rio T, Jones CD, Tringe SG, Dangl JL (2015) Plant microbiome. Salicylic acid modulates colonization of the root microbiome by specific bacterial taxa. Science 349:860–864
Levy A, Conway JM, Dangl JL, Woyke T (2018) Elucidating bacterial gene functions in the plant microbiome. Cell Host Microbe 24:475–485
Li R, Khafipour E, Krause DO, Entz MH, de Kievit TR, Fernando WGD (2012) Pyrosequencing reveals the influence of organic and conventional farming systems on bacterial communities. PLoS One 7:e51897–e51897
Liang Y, Tóth K, Cao Y, Tanaka K, Espinoza C, Stacey G (2014) Lipochitooligosaccharide recognition: an ancient story. New Phytol 204:289–296

Ling N, Raza W, Ma J, Huang Q, Shen Q (2011) Identification and role of organic acids in watermelon root exudates for recruiting Paenibacillus polymyxa SQR-21 in the rhizosphere. Eur J Soil Biol 47:374–379

Ling N, Zhang W, Wang D, Mao J, Huang Q, Guo S, Shen Q (2013) Root exudates from grafted-root watermelon showed a certain contribution in inhibiting Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. niveum. PLoS One 8:e63383

Liu H, Carvalhais LC, Schenk PM, Dennis PG (2017) Effects of jasmonic acid signalling on the wheat microbiome differ between body sites. Sci Rep 7:41766

Lobell DB, Field CB (2007) Global scale climate–crop yield relationships and the impacts of recent warming. Environ Res Lett 2:014002

Long HH, Sonntag DG, Schmidt DD, Baldwin IT (2010) The structure of the culturable root bacterial endophyte community of Nicotiana attenuata is organized by soil composition and host plant ethylene production and perception. New Phytol 185:554–567

Lupatini M, Korthals GW, de Hollander M, Janssens TKS, Kuramae EE (2016) Soil microbiome is more heterogeneous in organic than in conventional farming system. Front Microbiol 7:2064

Ma Z, Michailides TJ (2005) Advances in understanding molecular mechanisms of fungicide resistance and molecular detection of resistant genotypes in phytopathogenic fungi. Crop Prot 24:853–863

Maclean IMD, Wilson RJ (2011) Recent ecological responses to climate change support predictions of high extinction risk. Proc Natl Acad Sci 108:12337–12342

Maeder P, Fliessbach A, Dubois D, Gunst L, Fried P, Niggli U (2002) Soil fertility and biodiversity in organic farming. Science 296:1694–1697

Martin JT (1964) Role of cuticle in the defense against plant disease. Annu Rev Phytopathol 2:81–100

Mazurier S, Corberand T, Lemanceau P, Raaijmakers JM (2009) Phenazine antibiotics produced by fluorescent pseudomonads contribute to natural soil suppressiveness to Fusarium wilt. ISME J 3:977–991

Mazzola M (2002) Mechanisms of natural soil suppressiveness to soilborne diseases. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81:557–564

Mazzola M (2007) Manipulation of rhizosphere bacterial communities to induce suppressive soils. J Nematol 39:213–220

McNear DH Jr (2013) The rhizosphereroots, soil and everything in between. Nat Educ Knowl 4(3):1

Meena KK, Mesapogu S, Kumar M, Yandigeri MS, Singh G, Saxena AK (2010) Co-inoculation of the endophytic fungus Piriformospora indica with the phosphate-solubilising bacterium Pseudomonas striata affects population dynamics and plant growth in chickpea. Biol Fertil Soils 46:169–174

Melnyk RA, Beskrovnaya P, Liu Z, Song Y, Haney CH (2019a) Bacterially produced spermidine induces plant systemic susceptibility to pathogens. bioRxiv:517870

Melnyk RA, Hossain SS, Haney CH (2019b) Convergent gain and loss of genomic islands drive lifestyle changes in plant-associated Pseudomonas. ISME J 13:1575–1588

Mendes R, Kruijt M, de Bruijn I, Dekkers E, van der Voort M, Schneider JH, Piceno YM, DeSantis TZ, Andersen GL, Bakker PA, Raaijmakers JM (2011) Deciphering the rhizosphere microbiome for disease-suppressive bacteria. Science 332:1097–1100

Mendes R, Garbeva P, Raaijmakers JM (2013) The rhizosphere microbiome: significance of plant beneficial, plant pathogenic, and human pathogenic microorganisms. FEMS Microbiol Rev 37:634–663

Meneses CH, Rouws LF, Simoes-Araujo JL, Vidal MS, Baldani JI (2011) Exopolysaccharide production is required for biofilm formation and plant colonization by the nitrogen-fixing endophyte Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 24:1448–1458

Mercado-Blanco J, Bakker PA (2007) Interactions between plants and beneficial Pseudomonas spp.: exploiting bacterial traits for crop protection. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 92:367–389

Meyer RS, DuVal AE, Jensen HR (2012) Patterns and processes in crop domestication: an historical review and quantitative analysis of 203 global food crops. New Phytol 196:29–48
Micallef SA, Shiaris MP, Colón-Carmona A (2009) Influence of Arabidopsis thaliana accessions on rhizobacterial communities and natural variation in root exudates. J Exp Bot 60:1729–1742
Mohan R, Benton M, Dangelmaier E, Fu Z, Chandra Sekhar A (2018) Quorum sensing and biofilm formation in pathogenic and mutualistic plant-bacterial interactions. In: Veera P (ed) Implication of quorum sensing system in biofilm formation and virulence, B. Springer Singapore, Singapore, pp 133–160
Molina-Romero D, Baez A, Quintero-Hernandez V, Castaneda-Lucio M, Fuentes-Ramirez LE, Bustillos-Cristales MDR, Rodriguez-Andrade O, Morales-Garcia YE, Munive A, Munoz-Rojas J (2017) Compatible bacterial mixture, tolerant to desiccation, improves maize plant growth. PLoS One 12:e0187913
Mueller UG, Sachs JL (2015) Engineering microbiomes to improve plant and animal health. Trends Microbiol 23:606–617
Muimba-Kankolongo A (2018) Chapter 7 Pre- and postharvest field operations. In: Muimba-Kankolongo A (ed) Food crop production by smallholder farmers in Southern Africa. Academic Press, London, pp 59–71
Mutch LA, Young JP (2004) Diversity and specificity of Rhizobium leguminosarum biovar viciae on wild and cultivated legumes. Mol Ecol 13:2435–2444
Namvar A, Khandan (2015) Inoculation of rapeseed under different rates of inorganic nitrogen and sulfur fertilizer: impact on water relations, cell membrane stability, chlorophyll content and yield. Arch Agron Soil Sci 61:1137
Neal AL, Ahmad S, Gordon-Weeks R, Ton J (2012) Benzoxazinoids in root exudates of maize attract Pseudomonas putida to the rhizosphere. PLoS One 7:e35498
Newitt JT, Prudence SMM (2019) Biocontrol of cereal crop diseases using streptomycetes. Pathogens 8:78
Nguyen TH, Phan TC, Choudhury ATMA, Rose MT, Deaker RJ, Kennedy IR (2017) BioGro: a plant growth-promoting biofertilizer validated by 15 years' research from laboratory selection to rice farmer's fields of the mekong delta. In: Singh JS, Seneviratne G (eds) Agro-environmental sustainability: volume 1: managing crop health. Springer International Publishing, Cham, pp 237–254
Niu B, Paulson JN, Zheng X, Kolter R (2017) Simplified and representative bacterial community of maize roots. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114:E2450–E2459
Odelade KA, Babalola OO (2019) Bacteria, fungi and archaea domains in rhizospheric soil and their effects in enhancing agricultural productivity. Int J Environ Res Public Health 16:3873
Orozco-Mosqueda MDC, Rocha-Granados MDC, Glick BR, Santoyo G (2018) Microbiome engineering to improve biocontrol and plant growth-promoting mechanisms. Microbiol Res 208:25–31
Panke-Buisse K, Lee S, Kao-Kniffin J (2017) Cultivated sub-populations of soil microbiomes retain early flowering plant trait. Microb Ecol 73:394–403
Papadopoulou K, Melton RE, Leggett M, Daniels MJ, Osbourn AE (1999) Compromised disease resistance in saponin-deficient plants. Proc Natl Acad Sci 96:12923–12928
Pattanaik L, Duraivadivel P, Hariprasad P, Naik SN (2020) Utilization and re-use of solid and liquid waste generated from the natural indigo dye production process - a zero waste approach. Bioresour Technol 301:122721
Pedras MSC, Yaya EE (2015) Plant chemical defenses: are all constitutive antimicrobial metabolites phytoanticipins? Nat Prod Commun 10:1934578X1501000142
Peiffer JA, Spor A, Koren O, Jin Z, Tringe SG, Dangl JL, Buckler ES, Ley RE (2013) Diversity and heritability of the maize rhizosphere microbiome under field conditions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:6548–6553
Peressotti E, Wiedemann-Merdinoglu S, Delmotte F, Bellin D, Di Gaspero G, Testolin R, Merdinoglu D, Mestre P (2010) Breakdown of resistance to grapevine downy mildew upon limited deployment of a resistant variety. BMC Plant Biol 10:147

Perez-Jaramillo JE, Mendes R, Raaijmakers JM (2016) Impact of plant domestication on rhizosphere microbiome assembly and functions. Plant Mol Biol 90:635–644
Perez-Jaramillo JE, Carrion VJ, Bosse M, Ferrao LFV, de Hollander M, Garcia AAF, Ramirez CA, Mendes R, Raaijmakers JM (2017) Linking rhizosphere microbiome composition of wild and domesticated Phaseolus vulgaris to genotypic and root phenotypic traits. ISME J 11:2244–2257
Pérez-Jaramillo JE, Carrión VJ, de Hollander M, Raaijmakers JM (2018) The wild side of plant microbiomes. Microbiome 6:143
Pétriacq P, Williams A, Cotton A, McFarlane AE, Rolfe SA, Ton J (2017) Metabolite profiling of non-sterile rhizosphere soil. Plant J 92:147–162
Philippot L, Raaijmakers JM, Lemanceau P, van der Putten WH (2013) Going back to the roots: the microbial ecology of the rhizosphere. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:789–799
Pieterse CM, Zamioudis C, Berendsen RL, Weller DM, Van Wees SC, Bakker PA (2014) Induced systemic resistance by beneficial microbes. Annu Rev Phytopathol 52:347–375
Pinski A, Betekhtin A (2019) Defining the genetic basis of plant-endophytic bacteria interactions. Int J Mol Sci 20:1947
Plett JM, Daguerre Y, Wittulsky S, Vayssières A, Deveau A, Melton SJ, Kohler A, Morrell-Falvey JL, Brun A, Veneault-Fourrey C, Martin F (2014) Effector MiSSP7 of the mutualistic fungus Laccaria bicolor stabilizes the Populus JAZ6 protein and represses jasmonic acid (JA) responsive genes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111:8299–8304
Postma-Blaauw MB, de Goede RGM, Bloem J, Faber JH, Brussaard L (2010) Soil biota community structure and abundance under agricultural intensification and extensification. Ecology 91:460–473
Preisig CL, Bell JN, Sun Y, Hrazdina G, Matthews DE, Vanetten HD (1990) Biosynthesis of the phytoalexin pisatin: isoflavone reduction and further metabolism of the product sophorol by extracts of Pisum sativum. Plant Physiol 94:1444–1448
Qiu Z, Egidi E, Liu H, Kaur S, Singh BK (2019) New frontiers in agriculture productivity: optimised microbial inoculants and in situ microbiome engineering. Biotechnol Adv 37:107371
Quiza L, St-Arnaud M, Yergeau E (2015) Harnessing phytomicrobiome signaling for rhizosphere microbiome engineering. Front Plant Sci 6:507
Raaijmakers JM, Mazzola M (2016) ECOLOGY. Soil immune responses. Science 352:1392–1393
Raaijmakers JM, Paulitz TC, Steinberg C, Alabouvette C, Moënne-Loccoz Y (2009) The rhizosphere: a playground and battlefield for soilborne pathogens and beneficial microorganisms. Plant Soil 321:341–361
Radajewski S, Ineson P, Parekh NR, Murrell JC (2000) Stable-isotope probing as a tool in microbial ecology. Nature 403:646–649
Ramirez KS, Craine JM, Fierer N (2012) Consistent effects of nitrogen amendments on soil microbial communities and processes across biomes. Glob Chang Biol 18:1918–1927
Raupach GS, Kloepper JW (1998) Mixtures of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria enhance biological control of multiple cucumber pathogens. Phytopathology 88:1158–1164
Reen FJ, Gutiérrez-Barranquero JA, Parages ML, Gara FO (2018) Coumarin: a novel player in microbial quorum sensing and biofilm formation inhibition. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 102:2063–2073
Reinhold-Hurek B, Bunger W, Burbano CS, Sabale M, Hurek T (2015) Roots shaping their microbiome: global hotspots for microbial activity. Annu Rev Phytopathol 53:403–424
Reverchon F, Garcia-Quiroz W, Guevara-Avendano E, Solis-Garcia IA, Ferrera-Rodriguez O, Lorea-Hernandez F (2019) Antifungal potential of Lauraceae rhizobacteria from a tropical montane cloud forest against Fusarium spp. Brazilian journal of microbiology. Publ Braz Soc Microbiol 50:583–592
Rodrigues JL, Pellizari VH, Mueller R, Baek K, Jesus Eda C, Paula FS, Mirza B, Hamaoui GS Jr, Tsai SM, Feigl B, Tiedje JM, Bohannan BJ, Nüsslein K (2013) Conversion of the Amazon

rainforest to agriculture results in biotic homogenization of soil bacterial communities. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:988–993
Rodriguez RJ, Henson J, Van Volkenburgh E, Hoy M, Wright L, Beckwith F, Kim YO, Redman RS (2008) Stress tolerance in plants via habitat-adapted symbiosis. ISME J 2:404–416
Rodriguez PA, Rothballer M, Chowdhury SP, Nussbaumer T, Gutjahr C, Falter-Braun P (2019) Systems biology of plant-microbiome interactions. Mol Plant 12:804–821
Rolli E, Marasco R, Vigani G, Ettoumi B, Mapelli F, Deangelis ML, Gandolfi C, Casati E, Previtali F, Gerbino R, Pierotti Cei F, Borin S, Sorlini C, Zocchi G, Daffonchio D (2015) Improved plant resistance to drought is promoted by the root-associated microbiome as a water stress-dependent trait. Environ Microbiol 17:316–331
Rosier A, Bishnoi U, Lakshmanan V, Sherrier DJ, Bais HP (2016) A perspective on inter-kingdom signaling in plant-beneficial microbe interactions. Plant Mol Biol 90:537–548
Rout ME (2014) Chapter Eleven - The plant microbiome. In: Paterson AH (ed) Advances in botanical research. (Academic Press), London, pp 279–309
Rudrappa T, Czymmek KJ, Paré PW, Bais HP (2008) Root-secreted malic acid recruits beneficial soil bacteria. Plant Physiol 148:1547
Ryan PR, Dessaux Y, Thomashow LS, Weller DM (2009) Rhizosphere engineering and management for sustainable agriculture. Plant Soil 321:363–383
Sanchis V, Bourguet D (2008) Bacillus thuringiensis: applications in agriculture and insect resistance management. A review. Agron Sustain Dev 28:11–20
Santhanam R, Luu VT, Weinhold A, Goldberg J, Oh Y, Baldwin IT (2015) Native root-associated bacteria rescue a plant from a sudden-wilt disease that emerged during continuous cropping. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112:E5013–E5020
Santos A, Flores M (1995) Effects of glyphosate on nitrogen fixation of free-living heterotrophic bacteria. Lett Appl Microbiol 20:349–352
Santoyo G, Hernández-Pacheco CE, Hernández-Salmerón JE, Hernández-León R (2017) The role of abiotic factors modulating the plant-microbe-soil interactions: toward sustainable agriculture. A review. Span J Agric Res 15:13
Schaeffer SM, Nakata PA (2015) CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome editing and gene replacement in plants: transitioning from lab to field. Plant Sci 240:130–142
Schlaeppi K, Bulgarelli D (2015) The plant microbiome at work. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 28: 212–217
Schlatter D, Kinkel L, Thomashow L, Weller D, Paulitz T (2017) Disease suppressive soils: new insights from the soil microbiome. Phytopathology 107:1284–1297
Schmer MR, Vogel KP, Varvel GE, Follett RF, Mitchell RB, Jin VL (2014) Energy potential and greenhouse gas emissions from bioenergy cropping systems on marginally productive cropland. PLoS One 9:e89501
Schulz-Bohm K, Gerards S, Hundscheid M, Melenhorst J, de Boer W, Garbeva P (2018) Calling from distance: attraction of soil bacteria by plant root volatiles. ISME J 12:1252–1262
Shanks OC, Kelty CA, Archibeque S, Jenkins M, Newton RJ, McLellan SL, Huse SM, Sogin ML (2011) Community structures of fecal bacteria in cattle from different animal feeding operations. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:2992–3001
Shaposhnikov A, Morgounov A, Akin B, Makarova N, Belimov A, Tikhonovich I (2016) Comparative characteristics of root systems and root exudation of synthetic, landrace and modern wheat varieties. Agric Biol 51:68–78
Sheoran N, Kumar A, Munjal V, Nadakkakath AV, Eapen SJ (2016) Pseudomonas putida BP25 alters root phenotype and triggers salicylic acid signaling as a feedback loop in regulating endophytic colonization in Arabidopsis thaliana. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 93:99–111
Smith KP, Goodman RM (1999) Host variation for interactions with beneficial plant-associated microbes. Annu Rev Phytopathol 37:473–491
Song J, Li S, Xu Y, Wei W, Yao Q, Pan F (2016) Diversity of parasitic fungi from soybean cyst nematode associated with long-term continuous cropping of soybean in black soil. Acta Agric Scand Sect B Soil Plant Sci 66:432–442

Stringlis IA, Yu K, Feussner K, de Jonge R, Van Bentum S, Van Verk MC, Berendsen RL, Bakker P, Feussner I, Pieterse CMJ (2018) MYB72-dependent coumarin exudation shapes root microbiome assembly to promote plant health. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 115:E5213–E5222

Sturz AV, Arsenault W, Christie B (2003) Red clover–potato cultivar combinations for improved potato yield. Agron J 95:1089

Syed A, Rahman SF, Singh E, Pieterse CMJ, Schenk PM (2018) Emerging microbial biocontrol strategies for plant pathogens. Plant Sci 267:102–111

Teixeira PJPL, Colaianni NR, Fitzpatrick CR, Dangl JL (2019) Beyond pathogens: microbiota interactions with the plant immune system. Curr Opin Microbiol 49:7–17

Tilman D, Cassman KG, Matson PA, Naylor R, Polasky S (2002) Agricultural sustainability and intensive production practices. Nature 418(6898):671–677

Timm CM, Pelletier DA, Jawdy SS, Gunter LE, Henning JA, Engle N, Aufrecht J, Gee E, Nookaew I, Yang Z, Lu TY, Tschaplinski TJ, Doktycz MJ, Tuskan GA, Weston DJ (2016) Two poplar-associated bacterial isolates induce additive favorable responses in a constructed plant-microbiome system. Front Plant Sci 7:497

Trdá L, Fernandez O, Boutrot F, Héloir MC, Kelloniemi J, Daire X, Adrian M, Clément C, Zipfel C, Dorey S, Poinssot B (2014) The grapevine flagellin receptor VvFLS2 differentially recognizes flagellin-derived epitopes from the endophytic growth-promoting bacterium Burkholderia phytofirmans and plant pathogenic bacteria. New Phytol 201:1371–1384

Trivedi P, Delgado-Baquerizo M, Trivedi C, Hamonts K, Anderson IC, Singh BK (2017) Keystone microbial taxa regulate the invasion of a fungal pathogen in agro-ecosystems. Soil Biol Biochem 111:10–14

Turner TR, James EK, Poole PS (2013) The plant microbiome. Genome Biol 14:209

Turrini A, Sbrana C, Giovannetti M (2015) Belowground environmental effects of transgenic crops: a soil microbial perspective. Res Microbiol 166:121–131

Vacher C, Hampe A, Porté AJ, Sauer U, Compant S, Morris CE (2016) The phyllosphere: microbial jungle at the plant–climate interface. Annu Rev Ecol Evol Syst 47:1–24

Van Acker H, Van Dijck P, Coenye T (2014) Molecular mechanisms of antimicrobial tolerance and resistance in bacterial and fungal biofilms. Trends Microbiol 22:326–333

VanEtten HD, Mansfield JW, Bailey JA, Farmer EE (1994) Two classes of plant antibiotics: phytoalexins versus "Phytoanticipins". Plant Cell 6:1191

Vaseva II, Qudeimat E, Potuschak T, Du Y, Genschik P, Vandenbussche F, Van Der Straeten D (2018) The plant hormone ethylene restricts *Arabidopsis* growth via the epidermis. Proc Natl Acad Sci 115:E4130–E4139

van Veen JA, van Overbeek LS, van Elsas JD (1997) Fate and activity of microorganisms introduced into soil. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 61:121–135

Viaene T, Langendries S, Beirinckx S, Maes M, Goormachtig S (2016) Streptomyces as a plant's best friend? FEMS Microbiol Ecol 92:fiw119

van der Voort M, Kempenaar M, van Driel M, Raaijmakers JM, Mendes R (2016) Impact of soil heat on reassembly of bacterial communities in the rhizosphere microbiome and plant disease suppression. Ecol Lett 19:375–382

Wang B, Qiu YL (2006) Phylogenetic distribution and evolution of mycorrhizas in land plants. Mycorrhiza 16:299–363

de Weert S, Vermeiren H, Mulders IH, Kuiper I, Hendrickx N, Bloemberg GV, Vanderleyden J, De Mot R, Lugtenberg BJ (2002) Flagella-driven chemotaxis towards exudate components is an important trait for tomato root colonization by Pseudomonas fluorescens. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 15:1173–1180

Weese DJ, Heath KD, Dentinger BT, Lau JA (2015) Long-term nitrogen addition causes the evolution of less-cooperative mutualists. Evolution 69:631–642

Weller DM, Raaijmakers JM, Gardener BB, Thomashow LS (2002) Microbial populations responsible for specific soil suppressiveness to plant pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 40:309–348

de Werra P, Huser A, Tabacchi R, Keel C, Maurhofer M (2011) Plant- and microbe-derived compounds affect the expression of genes encoding antifungal compounds in a pseudomonad with biocontrol activity. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:2807–2812

Weston LA, Mathesius U (2013) Flavonoids: their structure, biosynthesis and role in the rhizosphere, including allelopathy. J Chem Ecol 39:283–297

Whipps JM (1990) Carbon economy. John Wiley and Sons Ltd., Chichester, pp 59–97

Wille L, Messmer MM, Studer B, Hohmann P (2019) Insights to plant-microbe interactions provide opportunities to improve resistance breeding against root diseases in grain legumes. Plant Cell Environ 42:20–40

Wissuwa M, Mazzola M, Picard C (2008) Novel approaches in plant breeding for rhizosphere-related traits. Plant Soil 321:409

Wyrsch I, Domínguez-Ferreras A, Geldner N, Boller T (2015) Tissue-specific FLAGELLIN-SENSING 2 (FLS2) expression in roots restores immune responses in Arabidopsis fls2 mutants. New Phytol 206:774–784

Xing X, Koch AM, Jones AM, Ragone D, Murch S, Hart MM (2012) Mutualism breakdown in breadfruit domestication. Proc Biol Sci 279:1122–1130

Xu L, Naylor D, Dong Z, Simmons T, Pierroz G, Hixson KK, Kim Y-M, Zink EM, Engbrecht KM, Wang Y, Gao C, DeGraaf S, Madera MA, Sievert JA, Hollingsworth J, Birdseye D, Scheller HV, Hutmacher R, Dahlberg J, Jansson C, Taylor JW, Lemaux PG, Coleman-Derr D (2018) Drought delays development of the sorghum root microbiome and enriches for monoderm bacteria. Proc Natl Acad Sci 115:E4284–E4293

Yin C, Mueth N, Hulbert S, Schlatter D, Paulitz TC, Schroeder K, Prescott A, Dhingra A (2017) Bacterial communities on wheat grown under long-term conventional tillage and no-till in the pacific northwest of the United States. Phytobiomes J 1:83–90

Yoneyama K, Xie X, Kim HI, Kisugi T, Nomura T, Sekimoto H, Yokota T, Yoneyama K (2012) How do nitrogen and phosphorus deficiencies affect strigolactone production and exudation? Planta 235:1197–1207

Yu K, Pieterse CMJ, Bakker PAHM, Berendsen RL (2019) Beneficial microbes going underground of root immunity. Plant Cell Environ 42:2860–2870

Zachow C, Muller H, Tilcher R, Berg G (2014) Differences between the rhizosphere microbiome of Beta vulgaris ssp. maritima-ancestor of all beet crops-and modern sugar beets. Front Microbiol 5:415

Zehnder GW, Yao C, Murphy JF, Sikora ER, Kloepper JW (2000) Induction of resistance in tomato against cucumber mosaic cucumovirus by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. BioControl 45:127–137

Zhalnina K, Louie KB, Hao Z, Mansoori N, da Rocha UN, Shi S, Cho H, Karaoz U, Loque D, Bowen BP, Firestone MK, Northen TR, Brodie EL (2018) Dynamic root exudate chemistry and microbial substrate preferences drive patterns in rhizosphere microbial community assembly. Nat Microbiol 3:470–480

Zhang N, Wang D, Liu Y, Li S, Shen Q, Zhang R (2014) Effects of different plant root exudates and their organic acid components on chemotaxis, biofilm formation and colonization by beneficial rhizosphere-associated bacterial strains. Plant Soil 374:689–700

Zhou S, Richter A, Jander G (2018) Beyond defense: multiple functions of benzoxazinoids in maize metabolism. Plant Cell Physiol 59:1528–1537

Zhu YG, Smith SE, Barritt AR, Smith FA (2001) Phosphorus (P) efficiencies and mycorrhizal responsiveness of old and modern wheat cultivars. Plant Soil 237:249–255

Zipfel C, Oldroyd GED (2017) Plant signalling in symbiosis and immunity. Nature 543:328–336

Zotchev SB (2003) Polyene macrolide antibiotics and their applications in human therapy. Curr Med Chem 10:211–223

Żur J, Wojcieszyńska D, Guzik U (2016) Metabolic Responses of Bacterial Cells to Immobilization. Molecules 21:958

Endophytic Microbiome-Assisted Drought Tolerance in Plants

10

Chandra Obul Reddy Puli, Chandra Sekhar Akila, Suresh Raju Kandi, Preetham Naik Korra Thimma Naik, Nagarathnamma Yammanuri, Krishna Kumar Guduru, Sravani Kunduru, Siva Bolupalli, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and Ramachandra Reddy Pamuru

Abstract

Agricultural productivity is constantly influenced by several factors such as urbanization, less availability of cultivable land, lack of sufficient automation, and abiotic and biotic stresses. Global climatic conditions significantly influenced the annual precipitation. Thus, decreased rainfalls, increased dry spells, soil salinity, and high temperature considerably affect agriculture productivity. On the other hand, the ever-burgeoning human population demands more food from the limited resources, putting much pressure on agricultural productivity. Drought stress causes several morphological, structural, biochemical, and molecular changes in plants. Plants to endure drought stress synthesize several secondary metabolites, reactive oxygen species, and module hormone production and induce several drought resistance genes. However, not all plants respond to the drought stress in the same magnitude. Most of the cultivable crops are drought-sensitive. Thus, the scientific community adopted several methods to improve drought tolerance in crop plants. Due to the constraints of agronomical practices,

C. O. R. Puli (✉) · S. R. Kandi · P. N. Korra Thimma Naik · N. Yammanuri · K. K. Guduru · S. Kunduru · S. Bolupalli
Plant Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Botany, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India
e-mail: coreddy@yogivemanauniversity.ac.in

C. S. Akila
Molecular Genetics and Functional Genomics Laboratory, Department of Biotechnology, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

R. R. Pamuru
Department of Biochemistry, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_10

genetic engineering (GE), and marker-assisted breeding approaches, scientists recently developed a spark of interest in improving the crop plant's performance under extreme environmental conditions with the natural plant-associated microbiome. The plant-associated microbiome may improve drought stress tolerance through multiple pathways, such as improving the mineral nutrition absorption, phytohormone production, ACC deaminase activity, and root system, producing exopolysaccharides, and triggering the systemic induced resistance. The chapter discussed the detailed mechanism of the endophytic microbiome colonization process, functional traits of the microbiome, and drought tolerance mechanism of the endophytic microbiome with some examples.

Keywords

Endophytic microbiome · Drought stress · Drought tolerance · Genetic engineering (GE) · Agriculture productivity

10.1 Introduction

The steady rise in the global population demands 50% more food than the current food production by 2050 (Alexandratos and Bruinsma 2012). Consequently, the gap between food demand and population growth is increasing. On the contrary, the change in the global climate and rise in the atmospheric temperatures make the dry climatic zones drier and the wet climatic zones damper. The lack of precipitation in the dry climatic zones increases the prolonged drought stress. It was estimated that by the year 2030, water shortage due to the prolonged drought in several parts of the globe might affect 40% of the population; as a result, 700 million people, livestock, and crops will be at risk (Seleiman et al. 2021; Shah et al. 2021a). Several abiotic factors also severely affected plant growth and yield (Gull et al. 2019; Kumar 2020; Hossain et al. 2021). Thus, to take up the challenge, there is an imperative need to develop multi-stress-tolerant crops (Mahalingam 2015; He et al. 2018).

Advanced technologies like genetic engineering (GE) and breeding by marker-assisted selection (MAS) have enormously accelerated the generation of high-yielding stress-tolerant crop plants (Zolkin et al. 2021). Due to regulatory issues, several countries have not accepted the cultivation of genetically engineered crop plants. Recently, the scientific community developed a novel eco-friendly, cost-effective strategy using the microbial community to develop stress-tolerant crop plants. Research findings suggest that plant-microbe interaction boosts the plant's natural defense mechanism against environmental and biotic cues. This eco-friendly strategy would overcome the drawbacks of MAS and GE approaches (Lata et al. 2018; Singh et al. 2019; Verma et al. 2021).

Plants colonize with different kinds of microbial complexes known as phytomicrobiome. The microbial complex in the phytomicrobiome includes bacteria, fungi, archaea, and protists (Saad et al. 2020; Trivedi et al. 2020). The host plant chooses the microbial species from the surrounding environment to get maximum

benefits from the colonizer. Some microbes associate with exterior regions of roots and leaves called rhizosphere and phyllosphere, respectively (Abdelfattah et al. 2021), while some microbial species enter the interior regions of plants called "endophytes."

The host plant chooses the microbiome from the surrounding environment to get maximum benefits from the colonizer. According to recent research, the rhizosphere and endophytic bacteria have many variations in their genomic regions, which might explain why endophytic bacteria colonize the interiors of plants. Bacterial endophytes serve the host plant in various ways, including promoting growth, defending against pathogenic organisms, and providing environmental signals. Endophytic bacteria communicate and interact with their host plants by producing signal molecules more effectively than rhizospheric bacteria in some adverse conditions (Jha 2019; Mengistu 2020).

Once colonized, the endophytic microbiome produces a variety of compounds and enzymes that can protect the host plants from the adverse effects of several abiotic factors and have good growth and development. The endophytic microbiome produces antioxidative enzymes like POD, SOD, GR, CAT, and APX and some organic compounds like proline, glycine betaine, and organic acids, along with the ability to fix free nitrogen and produce phytohormones (Chen et al. 2017a, b; Divjot et al. 2020; Al Kahtani et al. 2020; Dubey et al. 2021). The endophytic microbiome also transports the heavy metals across the cell membrane, assists in depositing metals in the intra- and extracellular spaces or within their cell walls, and forms metal complexes and metal redox reactions (Franco-Franklin et al. 2021). Thus, the endophytic microbiome assists the plants in alleviating the effect of abiotic stress and improving plant growth and development. So far, several endophytic bacteria have been successfully employed to ameliorate the plant tolerance to abiotic stress (Khan et al. 2020; Araya et al. 2020; Alsharif et al. 2020; Verma et al. 2021).

10.2 Endophytic Bacteria Definition and History

The Heinrich Friedrich Link (1809), for the first time, described the microorganisms that survive in the plant tissues, not causing any harm to the plants. Later, in 1866, De Bary called these organisms with the Greek phrase *endophyte*, "endon = inside and phyton = plants" (Stone et al. 2000). Endophytic bacteriomes investigated thus far are widespread in several plant species (Ryan et al. 2008). Petrini et al. (1991) noted that "microbiomes (bacteria, actinomycetes, and fungi) are inhabiting the plant organs and can colonize in plant tissue continue their life cycle without causing any apparent disease to their host." Several studies reported the presence of endophytes in various parts of the plant, such as leaves, shoots, roots, and seeds (Chebotar et al. 2015; Santoyo et al. 2016). The plant-accompanying microorganisms could be mutually beneficial, commensals, harmful, and neutralists (Ryan et al. 2007). Early research studies confirmed the microbial colonization in the interior regions of the plants (Laurent 1889; Galippe 1887). Galippe (1887) reported that the fungi moving from the soil into the vegetable crops might benefit the host plant. Further studies

confirmed the role of bacterial-assisted nitrogen fixation in pulse crops through the root nodules (Beijerinck 1888). A Dutch microbiologist, Martinus Willem Beijerinck, isolated bacteria from root nodules of Leguminosae plants (Beijerinck 1888). Later studies identified this bacterium as *Rhizobium leguminosarum* and found that the bacteria can produce ammonia and other nitrogenous substances from the nitrogen (N2) gas available in the atmosphere (Beijerinck 1888; Hellriegel and Wilfarth 1888; Frank 1889). In 1898, Vlog reported the presence of fungal endophyte mycelium in the grass seed *Lolium temulentum*. The German scientist Freeman reported the fungal endophyte in *Persian darnel* (Freeman 1904). Perotti (1926) discussed the nonpathogenic flora of root tissue and also explored the symbiotic relationships of endophytic bacteria with root tissue.

As the number of evidence increases on the beneficial aspects of endophytic microbiomes, more scientific groups focus their research on the plant root-associated endophytic bacteria on promoting plant growth and development. The breakthrough research on identifying endophytic bacteria-assisted nitrogen fixation in the grass species sugarcane triggered more research on identifying such bacterial species (Boddey and Döbereiner 1988), because earlier only legume-associated rhizobacteria were thought to involve in biological nitrogen fixation. The advancements in culture methods and nucleotide sequence-based identification methods further speed up the research progress in the endophytic bacterial field (Compant et al. 2021). Endophytes have been identified in several plant taxonomic groupings, including Angiosperms, Bryophytes, Pteridophytes, and Gymnosperms (Compant et al. 2021).

10.3 Endophytic Diversity

Endophytic microbiome relationships with a plant are not limited to a particular plant host or species, but also they make a habitat in a variety of genera and species. The structure of a plant's endophytic population is dictated by its host species; therefore, various plant species growing in the same soil could have vastly different endophytic diversities (Germida et al. 1998; Ding and Melcher 2016). Different parts of the plant tissues/organs include aerial parts such as shoots, seeds, fruits, leaves, and flowers, and underground parts like roots, both inter- and intracellularly, accommodate a wide range of microbiota (Ryan et al. 2008). Several studies revealed that roots could host the most incredible diversity of microorganisms compared to other plant organs (Amend et al. 2019). The culturable bacterial community number varies in the different parts, and 1 g tissue of roots could host 10^5 to 10^7 cells, whereas in the aerial parts, they might be 10^3–10^4 cells per gram tissue (Compant et al. 2010). A range of factors, including the soil's physical and chemical conditions, have been shown to influence the microbiota of aerial parts (Escobar Rodríguez et al. 2020). A recent study revealed that the colonization of endophytes depends on the growth pattern of the host; in woody plants, affluent growth was observed in the stems, whereas in the grasses, abundant communities were observed in the roots (Harrison and Griffin 2020). The soil environment and plant innate immunity are major

determinantal factors of the bacterial numbers, and they promote only "plant favorable" communities. However, the harmful bacteria overcome these detrimental factors and proliferate their numbers (Liu et al. 2017).

"Acidobacteria, Verrucomicrobia, Bacteroidetes, Proteobacteria, Planctomycetes, and Actinobacteria are the most commonly encountered taxa, and most of them may also be found in the rhizosphere" (Hardoim et al. 2015). "Mundt and Hinkle identified 46 bacterial species from 27 plant species in 1976, while Sturz et al. (1997) identified 25 bacterial species from clover and potato; among them, 18 were common in two plant species." "Proteobacteria, Acidobacteria, Actinobacteria, Bacteroidetes, Verrucomicrobia, Planctomycetes, Chloroflexi, Firmicutes, and Gemmatimonatedes were among the most common phyla detected in grapevine roots" (Samad et al. 2017). "Proteobacteria, Firmicutes, and Bacteroidetes have also been discovered as prominent phyla inside maize roots" (Correa-Galeote et al. 2018). "Cavalcante and Döbereiner (1988)" isolated *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*, a nitrogen-fixing endophytic bacteria from sugarcane. "Rice plants consist of several genera of endophytic bacteria such as *Pseudomonas* sp. (You and Zhou 1989), *Azoarcus* sp. (Hurek et al. 1994), *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* (Olivares et al. 1996), and *Rhizobium leguminosarum*" (Yanni et al. 1997).

"In general, Proteobacteria, Actinobacteria, Firmicutes, and Bacteroidetes are dominant root endophytic bacterial communities, whereas Chloroflexi, Cyanobacteria, Armatimonadetes, Verrucomicrobia, Planctomycetes, and Nitrospirae were a lesser ratio dominated communities" (Sessitsch et al. 2012; Edwards et al. 2015).

10.4 Colonization of Endophytic Bacteria

The bacterial endophytic microbiome originates from the rhizosphere environment because plant root exudates and rhizodeposits attract microorganisms. Soil factors, such as lack of nutrients, UV light, and desiccation, drastically reduce the colonization capacity (Compant et al. 2010; Philippot et al. 2013). There are three types of colonization by endophytic bacteria: obligatory, facultative, and passive. The obligate endophytic bacteria cannot survive in soils because these bacteria are derived from seeds. The facultative endophytic bacteria widely exist in the soil. Facultative bacteria colonize plants and carry out the infection throughout the plant when conditions are favorable and suitable. The passive endophytic bacteria cannot colonize plants. It infects and enters the plant through endophytic niches such as wounds and cracks (Christina et al. 2013).

Colonization paths have been explored based on the type of strains. Many distinct routes are involved in migrating bacteria from the surface of the roots to the cortical layer. The plant endodermis turns into an obstacle to further colonization. Bacteria can penetrate the endodermis, enter the phloem and xylem vascular systems, and colonize intercellular spaces for systematic colonization of internal plant components (Compant et al. 2010). Several studies have been carried out in the

last few decades on both plant beneficial and harmful bacteria to identify the path of the microorganism from soil to aboveground parts of the soil. The plant root bacterial endophytes initially attach to the root's surface and enter the root interiors via apoplast in xylem vessels (Compant et al. 2010; Brader et al. 2017). Understanding this transfer of bacteria between root and shoot/leaf is beneficial for developing biofertilizers in agriculture (Bodenhausen et al. 2013; Bulgari et al. 2014; Bai et al. 2015).

Further, advanced technologies in microscopy and marker genes such as GUS and GFP were used to get more insides into the colonization pathway of microorganisms. Based on the research data, various pathways have been proposed to explain the traversing of bacteria from the rhizosphere to the interior root regions. According to Kandel et al. (2017), the microorganism could go into the root through the root tip as well as root hair. *Pseudomonas* spp. enter the interior of olive plants through the root hair (Mercado-Blanco and Prieto 2012; Mercado-Blanco 2015). In another study, the colonization of bacteria through the root cracks has been reported in greater detail. Microorganisms could intrude root tissues through cracks in the secondary root emergence zone, allowing the bacteria to passively enter root tissues (Compant et al. 2019).

Some bacteria produce extracellular enzymes that degrade the plant cell wall at the junctions of the root epidermis and make a path for the entry of the bacteria (Liu et al. 2017). Sometimes, the harmful bacteria or insect path also serves as an entry point for the plant beneficial bacteria (Compant et al. 2010). A comparative study to understand the root colonization of beneficial and harmful bacteria using *Pseudomonas syringae* strains revealed that both strains preferred the colonization of the secondary root emerging location. However, the helpful strain was detected in high density on the surface of primary roots, but the pathogenic strain was discovered more often on secondary roots. The latter strain colonizes severely, injures the roots, and finally settles in xylem zones, but the beneficial strain does not (Passera et al. 2019).

Microscopic analysis of the GFP-tagged PsJN endophytic bacterial strain *Burkholderia phytoformans* in grape roots revealed that endophytic bacteria could colonize the innermost layers of inter- as well as intracellular spaces, in the xylem and phloem cells, and the parenchyma (Compant et al. 2005). Further studies with the model endophytic bacteria *Azoarcus*, *Gluconacetobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, and *Klebsiella* spp. supported this pathway (Turner et al. 2013). Research on the localization of endophytic bacteria in the leaves revealed that most bacteria reside in the xylem, sub-stomata, and parenchymatic cells. In the stems, bacteria mostly enter through the root xylem cells or the surface (Compant et al. 2021). Bacteria mostly colonize in the epidermis and vascular system of flower parts (Compant et al. 2011). The endophytic microbiome entry into the seeds occurs through the xylem vessels, micropyle, and testa (Mitter et al. 2017).

10.5 Traits for Successful Colonization

Endophytic bacteria are armed with several essential colonization features, such as mobility and the production of cell-wall-disintegrating enzymes, carbohydrate breakdown genes, and signal transduction pathway genes, which enable them to infiltrate, colonize, and translocate within the plant's interior (Piromyou et al. 2015). Several advanced genomics tools coupled with mutation studies confirmed the essentiality of these traits for the colonizing bacteria (Bohm et al. 2007; Straub et al. 2013; Sheibani-Tezerji et al. 2015). The genome sequence analysis of endophytic bacteria of rice roots identified several genes encoding plant cell wall disintegration (Sessitsch et al. 2012). The endophytic bacterial species *Bradyrhizobium SUTN9-2* of rice plants produces the pectinase enzyme, which disintegrates the middle lamella between plant cells and helps in the initial entry and colonization of bacteria (Piromyou et al. 2015). The plant beneficial strain *B. phytoformans* (PsJN) produced oxalate-metabolizing enzymes to metabolize plant-secreted oxalate as a carbon source and attract the plants (Kost et al. 2014). Another essential trait that endophytes required for colonization is siderophore production and synthesis of metabolites that act as biocontrol agents. *Kosakonia* mutant loss together with type 6 (T6SS) secretion system prevents colonization due to lack of siderophore production (Mosquito et al. 2020). Thus, siderophore production is an essential endophytic trait.

10.6 Functional Traits of Endophytes

Endophytic organisms are known for various beneficial functions, such as mineral mobilization, plant defense induction, phytohormone production, production of various secondary metabolites against pathogens, and tolerance to various environmental stresses, some of which are especially significant for the host. The roles of the endophytic organism's traits in host plants have been well studied recently with the help of in vitro assays, metagenome analysis, and functional genomics approaches (Compant et al. 2021). Studies on the functions of endophytic bacteria that are attributed to the natural agriculture field are rare due to their low infection rates and reduced functional activities. Thus, most of existing research data are from experimental laboratory studies (Schenk et al. 2012).

10.7 Nitrogen Fixation

Nitrogen is an essential element, part of several important biological molecules such as nucleic acids and chloroplast. It is relatively common in the environment and presents enormous quantities in the atmosphere, crust, the upper mantle of the earth, and water bodies in the form of dinitrogen (N_2), a nonabsorbable form to the plants. Atmospheric N_2 could be converted into plant-absorbable forms by two natural processes, i.e., lightning and rain and the use of biological organisms (Puri et al.

2018). Biological organisms use the nitrogenase enzyme that breaks down the triple bond of N_2 and produces ammonia. The nitrogenase enzyme is present in just a few bacterial and archaea species (Galloway et al. 2008). Diazotrophs are nitrogen-fixing microorganisms extensively distributed in soil and water as free-living organisms and symbionts associated with the plant root and leaf surface. Initially, all diazotrophs were thought to associate only with legume plants; later on, several research studies confirmed that diazotrophs are also associated with some nonleguminous plants (Döbereiner 1961; Döbereiner et al. 1972).

Further research revealed that these rhizosphere-associated diazotrophs could not produce the adequate N required for plant growth. Later on, research studies identified *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*, a diazotroph from the interior root regions of the nonleguminous plant sugarcane, which involves higher nitrogen fixation rates (Cavalcante and Döbereiner 1988). Endophytic bacteria can improve the accessibility of nitrogen to the plant, which aids in its development. As endophytic bacteria are guarded inside plants, the nitrogenase enzyme protects them from oxygen; they could fix nitrogen more efficiently than rhizosphere bacteria (Sachs et al. 2004). The endophytic bacteria contribute nearly 47% of nitrogen captured from the atmospheric air.

In a study, nitrogen fixation by endophytic bacterial strains *Azospirillum*, *Sphingomonas*, and *Burkholderia* was isolated from traditional rice varieties; further reinfection of *Burkholderia vietnamiensis* to the Arroz 70 rice variety boosted the nitrogen availability and improved the grain yield (Araújo et al. 2013). The endophytic bacterial strains *Burkholderia*, *Klebsiella*, *Novosphingobium*, and *Sphingomonas* improved rice growth, development, and N content (Rangjaroen et al. 2015). In another study, reinoculating the bacterial endophytes *Paenibacillus*, *Bacillus*, *Microbacterium*, and *Klebsiella* to Korean rice cultivars improved the growth and N content (Padda et al. 2017). In another work, inoculation of a well-known N-fixing bacterial strain *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* strain *PAL 5* to sugarcane improved the leaf total N content and drought stress (Aguiar et al. 2016). Four of the 44 endophytic bacterial strains isolated from banana roots exhibited N fixation ability (Andrade-Linares et al. 2013). The pearl millet root nitrogen fixation strain *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PM389 inoculation to the nonhost plant wheat improved seed germination and development (Gupta et al. 2013).

10.8 Phosphorous Solubilization

One of the most important macronutrients for plant growth and development is phosphorus (P), and it makes up about 0.2% of a plant's dry weight (Azziz et al. 2012; Tak et al. 2012). However, due to its chemical nature, it forms complexes with iron, aluminum, and calcium; thus, only 0.1% of soluble P is available in the soil and is accessible to the plant (Sharma and Agrawal 2013). Thus, phosphorous fertilizers were added to the soils to overcome the phosphorous deficiency in the plant. However, most of the applied phosphorus forms complexes with the soil and becomes unavailable for the plant, and this excess amount leads to ecological

problems (Ezawa et al. 2002; Kang et al. 2012). Thus, there is a need to solubilize phosphorus into the plant's available orthophosphate (Chhabra et al. 2013). Recent research studies revealed that the microorganisms in the rhizospheric soil and colonized in the interior regions could make insoluble phosphate into a plant uptake form (Zaidi et al. 2009; Sharma and Agrawal 2013; Alori et al. 2017). Soil microorganisms use a variety of ways to solubilize P, including pH reduction, organic acid generation, chelation, and exchange processes (Gerke 1992). Microorganisms produce various forms of organic acids, which decrease the pH of the roots adhering to soil; as a result, the chemical bonds in the phosphate complex such as $Ca_3(PO_4)$ (tricalcium phosphate) disassociate; as a result, phosphate turns into a plant-available form.

A stress-tolerant endophytic bacterial strain from the apple rhizosphere exhibited phosphate solubilization and plant growth promotion traits. Biochemical analysis revealed that it produces organic acids such as gluconic and citric acid (Mehta et al. 2011). A total of 106 phosphate-solubilizing bacterial strains were isolated from the sea buckthorn root-attached soil and interior regions of the root. Inoculating five bacterial strains in the tomato seedlings improved their growth and development (Kumar et al. 2015). In a similar study, the *Bacillus subtilis* strain CKT1 from tomato improved the growth and development of tomato seedlings upon reinfection (Walia et al. 2013a, b). Phosphate-solubilizing endophytic bacterial strains *Enterobacter* sp. J49 and *Serratia* sp. S119 from peanuts significantly improved the P accumulation of maize and soybean (Lucero et al. 2021). The endophytic bacterial strains *Pseudomonas fluorescens* from *Miscanthus giganteus* significantly improved growth and P accumulation in pea plants (Otieno et al. 2015). Advanced imaging technologies and biochemical analysis provided significant evidence for endophytic bacteria's role in P uptake. The two endophytic bacterial species from poplar, *Rahnella* sp. (WP42) and *Burkholderia* sp. (WP5), promoted P uptake in wild poplar, as evidenced by X-ray imaging, spectrophotometry, and proteomics analysis (Varga et al. 2020). These investigations suggested that phosphate-solubilizing bacteria may improve phosphate utilization efficiency in various plant species.

10.9 IAA Production

Indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), one of the principal phytohormone auxin, regulates the growth and development of the embryo, photo- and gravitropism, cell division, and differentiation and stimulates extended root growth with the superior number of lateral roots (Teale et al. 2006). Research studies on microorganisms suggest that these organisms also produce IAA (Kazan 2013). The production of IAA in microorganisms might be an evolutionary aspect acquired from ancient symbiosis. Both the plant beneficial and pathogenic microbiome produce IAA. The IAA is mainly produced from the tryptophan-dependent and tryptophan-independent pathways in microorganisms. However, most of the beneficial microorganisms synthesize IAA through the indole-3-pyruvate (IpyA) pathway, while the harmful microorganisms produce it through the indole-3-acetamide (IAM) pathway

(Hardoim et al. 2008). Several IAA-synthesizing beneficial plant microorganisms such as *Pseudomonas, Rhizobium*, *Azospirillum*, *Enterobacter*, *Azotobacter*, *Klebsiella*, *Alcaligenes*, *Pantoea*, *Acetobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Burkholderia*, *Bacillus*, *Rhodococcus*, and *Streptomyces* were identified in several research studies (Ali et al. 2017).

Precise modulation of plant IAA levels with the help of plant beneficial microorganisms is one of the fundamental approaches for the crop improvement. In a study, a bacterial culture supernatant from the stationary phase growth of endophytic bacteria isolated from the terrestrial orchid induced root formation and growth (Tsavkelova et al. 2007). The endophytic bacterial isolates *Sphingobacterium thalpophilum* AS34, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* AS36, and *Enterobacter aerogenes* AS75 isolated from the *Withania somnifera* induced a high percentage of direct somatic embryogenesis and regeneration (Soundar Raju et al. 2020). The *Moringa peregrina endophytic bacteria and Bacillus subtilis* LK14 exhibited significantly higher IAA levels and improved tomato's biomass and chlorophyll content (Khan et al. 2016a, b). The amount of IAA produced by the endophytic bacteria is also crucial for the bacteria-plant association. The engineered bacteria *Pseudomonas putida* GR12-2 for the production of elevated levels of IAA reduced the growth in mung beans (Patten and Glick 2002). This is because elevated levels of auxins trigger the production of the stress hormone ethylene (Woodward and Bartel 2005). The bacterial IAA production is considered an essential trait in selecting beneficial plant bacteria. Moreover, plant IAA levels can also determine whether bacterial IAA stimulates or suppresses plant growth, as bacterial IAA production usually benefits those plants with low levels of endogenous IAA (Glick 2012).

10.10 ACC Deaminase Production

The enzyme ACC (1-aminocyclopropane 1-carboxylate) deaminase is a microbial multimeric enzyme that cleaves the phytohormone ethylene biosynthesis precursor ACC to α-ketobutyrate and ammonia, hence inhibiting the synthesis of ethylene (Glick 2014). The phytohormone ethylene plays a regulatory role in various physiological and developmental pathways. Primarily, it regulates root initiation, nodule formation, fruit ripening, cell elongation, auxin transport, and leaf senescence. Ethylene is also a stress-responsive hormone; several biotic/abiotic stresses trigger ethylene production (Sun et al. 2016a, b). Research studies on plant-associated endophytic bacteria revealed that several endophytes could produce ACC deaminase (Zhang et al. 2011; Rashid et al. 2012; Afzal et al. 2019). Thus in the endophyte-plant association, endophytic bacteria lower the ethylene levels and alleviate the stress-induced effects in plants.

The ACC deaminase-producing endophytic bacterial isolates from tomatoes significantly decreased the production levels of ethylene of canola compared to the noninfected plants with endophytic bacteria (Rashid et al. 2012). Similarly, ACC deaminase-producing *Pseudomonas migulae* 8R6 strains increased the biomass and

yield in tomato plants compared to uninoculated tomato plants (Ali et al. 2014). The salt-tolerant and ACC deaminase-producing endophytic bacteria *Achromobacter xylosoxidans* from *Catharanthus roseus* alleviated the plant's salt stress-induced effects by lowering the ethylene levels and triggering the antioxidant defense mechanism (Qin et al. 2014). The ACC deaminase and IAA producing the endophyte *Bacillus subtilis* LK14 from *Moringa peregrina* exhibited significantly higher IAA levels and lower ethylene accumulation, displaying improved biomass chlorophyll content in tomato (Khan et al. 2016a, b). The ACC deaminase-producing endophytic bacteria strain *Pseudomonas* spp. OFT5 in the tomato plant reduced the ethylene production levels. This resulted in tomato plants alleviating salt stress-induced effects and improving their growth and biomass (Win et al. 2018). The endophytic bacterial *Bradyrhizobium* strain SUTN9-2, capable of producing ACC deaminase upon infection in rice, decreased ethylene production under drought stress conditions, maintaining the cell membrane integrity, high leaf relative water content, and yield under field drought stress conditions (Sarapat et al. 2020). All this evidence suggests that the endophytic bacteria with ACC deaminase production activity reduce the ethylene production in plants and protect the plants from stress-induced damage.

10.11 Drought Stress in Plants

Drought stress or water shortage in plants is a critical abiotic stress caused by low precipitation, high light intensity, high/low temperatures, and more salts in the soil. The lack of precipitation in the dry climatic zones increases the prolonged drought stress. It was estimated that by the year 2030, water shortage due to the prolonged drought in several parts of the globe might affect 40% of the population; as a result, 700 million people, livestock, and crops will be at risk (Seleiman et al. 2021; Shah et al. 2021a, b). Crop output must be enhanced under drought stress to provide sufficient clothes, food, and housing to the growing population. Numerous strategies were adopted to promote drought resistance in plants with greater yield (Takahashi et al. 2020).

Drought as multifaceted stress triggers various morphological, anatomical, biochemical, and molecular changes and yield. The plant's foremost visual symptom of the drought is reduced growth rates in the shoot and leaf (Farooq et al. 2012). Water deficit affects the nutrient and water uptake, reducing the leaf's size, stem, and root development. The loss of water from the plant cell decreases the water potential, causing the lowering of turgor pressure. The reduced turgor pressure and photoassimilation rates further decreased cell elongation and root proliferation (Mahmood et al. 2019).

Based on their genetic makeup, plants overcome drought stress through three different strategies, i.e., drought avoidance, tolerance, and escape (Chaves et al. 2003; Basu et al. 2016). Plants avoid the damages caused by drought stress via regulating the water uptake and loss by dint of anatomical modifications such as leaf rolling, increasing the trichome number, wax content, and dropping older leaves.

Plants try to escape the drought by completing the life cycle with a hasty growth and marginal seeds before encountering drought stress. Some plants synthesize metabolites and sugar to maintain the cellular water potential through the osmotic adjustment and tolerate drought stress (Chaves et al. 2003).

One of the key activities impacted by drought stress is photosynthesis. The significant factors that inhibit photosynthesis during the drought are early leaf shedding, reduced leaf surface area, limitation of CO_2 availability due to the stomatal closure, rise in leaf temperatures, and impaired activities of dark reaction and Calvin cycle enzymes (Salehi-Lisar and Bakhshayeshan-Agdam 2016). The imbalance between the dark and light reactions triggers the production and accumulation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in the chloroplasts (Raghavendra et al. 2010). To protect themselves from the photoinduced damage during the drought stress, plants deflect the absorbed light into the thermal dissipation through the xanthophyll cycle or activate the photorespiration process (Demmig-Adams and Adams 1996; Chaves et al. 2003). Simultaneously, plants also trigger the production of antioxidative enzymes to quench ROS. Scavenging systems include a variety of antioxidants and enzymes, counteract ROS entities, and convert them to less hazardous compounds in the cell (Hasanuzzaman et al. 2020).

One biochemical mechanism that protects the plants from drought stress is an osmotic adjustment (OA). Upon drought, plants synthesize and accumulate specific compatible solutes such as glycine betaine; sugars, i.e., sugar alcohols and sorbitol; and amino acid proline. These compatible solutes enhance the cellular osmotic force and increase the intake of water from the surroundings, and also they provide protection to the cellular membranes, proteins, and enzymes (Sanders and Arndt 2012). In response to drought stress, plants synthesize several drought-induced proteins, including ABA-responsive protein RAB17 and dehydration-induced proteins (dehydrins). They interact with biological macromolecules, stabilize protein folding as chaperones, have more excellent oxidation properties, and protect cellular membranes (Graether and Boddington 2014).

Plant hormones such as auxins, abscisic acid, and ethylene, as chemically active substances, act as chemical signaling molecules and transduce the signals among different parts of the plant and across the cell. Drought stress increases the production of plant hormones IAA, ABA, and ethylene and decreases the production of cytokinins (Yang et al. 2021). The membrane receptors of the plants sense the drought and osmotic chemical signals and convert them into an intracellular signal. Further, these signals were transduced downstream as secondary messengers, which trigger the expression of various regulatory and functional genes in the nucleus. Based on their function under drought stress, the gene products are categorized into four groups: (1) signal transduction proteins (mitogen-activated protein kinases [MAPK], calcium-dependent protein kinases [CDPK], receptor protein kinases, ribosomal protein kinases, and transcription regulation protein kinases), (2) protein phosphatases (phosphodiesterases and phospholipase), (3) regulatory proteins including the "transcription factors" (AREB, AP2/ERF, NAC, bZIP, MYC, and MYB), and (4) functional proteins which are involved in water uptake and

macromolecule protection (water channel proteins, osmoprotectants, heat-shock proteins, and dehydrins) (Hura et al. 2022).

Millions of microorganisms inhabit the plant root system, creating a complex biological community and promoting plant development and production (Mondal et al. 2020). A research report identified that pepper plants colonized with some endophytic bacterial isolates displayed a greater tolerance level to drought stress than the uninfected plants (Schmidt et al. 2014). The microorganisms, upon infection, improved the root system of plants as the water and nutrient absorption were enhanced (Ullah et al. 2019). "The plant-associated bacteria improved the plant stress tolerance by secretion of bacterial exopolysaccharides, reduction in the level of ethylene in plant roots by ACC deaminase, production of volatile compounds, accumulation of osmolytes, activation of the antioxidant defense system, production of plant growth regulators such as abscisic acid (ABA), indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), cytokinin, gibberellins" (Ali and Khan 2021).

The endophytic bacteria *Pantoea alhagi*, isolated from the desert legume plant *Alhagi sparsifolia*, improved the drought tolerance of nonhost plant wheat. The endophyte also exhibited several PGP traits (Chen et al. 2017a, b). In a similar study, the endophyte *Burkholderia phytofirmans* PsJN improved the wheat water use efficiency, photosynthetic rates, and chlorophyll content under drought stress (Naveed et al. 2014). The endophytic bacterial strains *Bacillus aquimaris* 3.13 and *Micrococcus luteus* 4.43 enhanced Jerusalem artichoke's inulin levels and drought tolerance (Namwongsa et al. 2019). The endophytic bacterial strain *Bacillus thuringiensis AZP2* improved wheat's drought tolerance and biomass under drought stress (Timmusk et al. 2014). Under drought stress, the endophytic bacterial strain *Pseudomonas fluorescens*-primed maize seedling accumulated more proline, phytohormones than the non-inoculated seedlings (Ansary et al. 2012). In another study, the *Pseudomonas* sp. endophytic bacteria increase the production of soluble sugars and subsequently osmotic adjustment under drought stress conditions in maize (Bano and Fatima 2009). Several endophytic bacteria exhibited drought tolerance, improved growth, and enhanced yields, as tabulated in Table 10.1.

Thus, applying endophytic bacterial inoculations to host and nonhost plants improved the growth and agronomic efficiency by reducing production costs and environmental pollution.

10.12 Conclusion and Future Perspectives

The use of microbiome is an eco-friendly approach that minimizes the use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides and helps maintain the ecological balance in the agroecosystem. Recent research studies suggest that microbiome biostimulants have a more significant potential to be a long-term and practical approach to mitigate abiotic stress caused by global climate change. Based on the ability to produce phytohormones, absorb nutrients, and produce secondary metabolites by the endophytic microbiome, several studies have highlighted their potential use in drought stress tolerance in crop plants. However, most of the studies were confined to

Table 10.1 Endophytic bacteria used for the stimulation of drought stress tolerance in plants

S. No.	Endophytic bacteria/ action-bacteria	Host plant	Plant part used for isolation	Inoculated plants	Beneficial features related to drought tolerance	Citations
1	*Azospirillum lipoferum*	Sugar cane (*Saccharum officinarum*)	Roots	Maize (*Zea mays*)	ABA, IAA, and gibberellic acid maintained RWC and alleviated drought stress	Cohen et al. (2009), Reinhardt et al. (2008)
2	*Streptomyces coelicolor*, *S. olivaceus*, and *S. geysiriensis*	Bui (*Aerva tomentosa*), Keeker (*Acacia nilotica*), Kheep (*Leptadenia pyrotechnica*), Phog (*Calligonum polygonoides*), and Bajra (*Pennisetum glaucum*)	Roots	Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	Enhanced auxin and IAA production, higher seedling vigor and yield	Yandigeri et al. (2012)
3	*Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*	Sugarcane (*Saccharum officinarum*)	Roots and shoots	Sugarcane (*Saccharum officinarum*)	Activation of drought stress-responsive genes, ABA, and ethylene signaling pathways	
4	*Pseudomonas azotoformans*	*Alyssum serpyllifolium*	Leaves	*Trifolium arvense*	Increased relative water content, chlorophyll content, SOD, POD, CAT, proline, and plant biomass	Timmusk et al. (2014)
5	*Burkholderia phytofirmans*	Onion (*Allium cepa*)	Roots	Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	Improved photosynthetic rate, water use efficiency, chlorophyll content, grain yield, ionic balance, and antioxidant level	Naveed et al. (2014)
6	*Burkholderia phytofirmans* and *Enterobacter* sp.	Onion (*Allium cepa*)	Roots	Maize (*Zea mays*)	Increased leaf area, shoot and root biomass, photosynthesis, chlorophyll content, and photochemical efficiency	Naveed et al. (2014)

7	*Bacillus subtilis*	Switch grass (*Panicum virgatum*)	Leaves	*Brachypodium distachyon*	Increased root and shoot biomass, yield, total soluble sugars, and starch content and upregulated drought-responsive genes	Gagne-Bourgue et al. (2013), Gagné-Bourque et al. (2015)
8	*Burkholderia vietnamiensis*, *Rhizobium tropici*, *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus*, *Rahnella* sp., *Burkholderia* sp., *Enterobacter asburiae*, *Sphingomonas yanoikuyae*, *Pseudomonas* sp., and *Curtobacterium* sp.	Poplar (*Populus* sp.)	Stem	Poplar (*Populus* sp.)	Increased biomass, total plant nitrogen, and chlorophyll content and reduced stomatal conductance and damage caused by ROS	Khan et al. (2016b)
9	*Burkholderia phytofirmans*	Onion (*Allium cepa*)	Roots	*Panicum virgatum*	Higher biomass and photosynthetic level	Sessitsch et al. (2005), Wang et al. (2015)
10	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*	Grapevine	Roots	Grapevine	Secreted melatonin and reduced MDA, H_2O_2, and O_2^-	Jiao et al. (2016)
11	*Pantoea alhagi*	*Alhagi sparsifolia*	Leaves	Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	Increased soluble sugars, IAA, EPS, siderophore, ammonia, and protease production and decreased proline and MDA accumulation and chlorophyll degradation	Chen et al. (2017a, b)
12	*Sphingomonas*	*Tephrosia apollinea*	Leaves	Soya bean (*Glycine max*)	Enhanced ABA and jasmonic acid content and increased plant biomass (dry) glutathione, glutamine, photosynthetic pigments, glycine, and proline	Asaf et al. (2017), Khan et al. (2017)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

S. No.	Endophytic bacteria/ action-bacteria	Host plant	Plant part used for isolation	Inoculated plants	Beneficial features related to drought tolerance	Citations
13	*Flavobacterium* (50%), *Pseudomonas* (37%)	*Medicago polymorpha*, *M. lupulina*, *M. littoralis*, *Vicia benghalensis*, *Ostorhinchus compressus*	Roots	*Arabidopsis thaliana*	Nitrogen fixation and produced IAA, siderophores, and volatile organic compounds	Cardoso et al. (2018)
14	*Bacillus subtilis* and *Paenibacillus illinoisensis*	Peppers (*Capsicum annuum*)	Roots	Peppers (*Capsicum annuum*)	Increased total plant biomass and root length and improved net photosynthetic rate, transpiration, cell turgor, and proline content	Vigani et al. (2018)
15	*Bacillus pumilus*	*Glycyrrhiza uralensis*	Not mentioned	*Glycyrrhiza uralensis*	Increased root length, CAT, GPX, and GR and decreased H_2O_2 and MDA content and O_2^- production	Xie et al. (2019)
16	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*	*Euphorbia trigona*	Not mentioned	*Solanum lycopersicum*	Altered oxidative status and stomatal and photosystem II functioning and induced growth promotion	Eke et al. (2019)
17	*Bacillus aquimaris* and *Micrococcus luteus*	Jerusalem artichoke	Leaf and stem	Jerusalem artichoke	Increased height and shoot and root weight, photosynthesis, insulin levels	Namwongsa et al. (2019)
18	*Ochrobactrum* sp.	Sorghum bicolor	Roots	Sorghum bicolor	Plant growth promotion as well as induced stress	Govindasamy, et al. (2020)
19	*Staphylococcus* sp.	*Curcuma longa*	Rhizome	*Vigna unguiculata*	Modulated both macro- and micronutrients and drought stress	Jayakumar et al. (2020)

20	*Pseudomonas*	*Alhagi sparsifolia*	rhizosphere and root endosphere	*Alhagi sparsifolia*	Improved drought resistance	Zhang et al. (2020)
21	*Endophytic bacterial microbes*	*Wheat*	Plant tissues	wheat	Drought stress varietal characteristics	Žiarovská et al. (2020)
22	*Bacillus subtilis*, *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*, and *Paenibacillus polymyxa*	*Phleum pratense*	Rhizosphere	*Brachypodium distachyon*	Strong chemotactic behavior, the alginate and (EPS) contents were evaluated, biofilm formation	Saleh et al. (2020)
23	*Bacillus qingshengi*	*Oryza sativa*	Roots	*Oryza sativa*	Enhanced N fixation ability, phosphate solubilization ability, ACC deaminase activity, and siderophore production	Pang et al. (2020)
24	*Bacillus subtilis* Dcl1	*Curcuma longa*	Rhizome	*Vigna unguiculata*	Produced the catalase, superoxide dismutase, peroxidases, gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase, glutathione, and glycolate oxidase	Jayakumar et al. (2020)
25	*Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* strain Pal5	–	–	*Oryza sativa*	Increased in the root area and higher levels of osmoprotectant	Silva et al. (2020)
25	*Burkholderia phytofirmans*	–	–	*Chenopodium quinoa*	Stimulated the growth and yield of quinoa in highly salt-affected soils	Yang et al. (2020)
27	*Kosakonia cowanii*	*Lactuca serriola*	Seeds	*Arabidopsis thaliana*	Drought tolerance	Jeong et al. (2021)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

S. No.	Endophytic bacteria/ action-bacteria	Host plant	Plant part used for isolation	Inoculated plants	Beneficial features related to drought tolerance	Citations
28	*Bacillus cereus*, *Pseudomonas otitidis*, and *Pseudomonas* sp.	Soya bean (*Glycine max)*	Root	Soya bean (*Glycine max*)	Mitigated the effect of drought as well as fungal diseases on the early seedling growth of soybean	Dubey et al. (2021)
29	*Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*	–	–	*Zea mays* L.	Increased plant biomass, chlorophyll content, plant nitrogen uptake, and water use efficiency	Tufail et al. (2021)
30	*Stenotrophomonas* sp.	Poplar	–	Poplar	Production of indole-3-acetic acid and promoted plant growth	Ulrich et al. (2021)
31	*Azotobacter chroococcum* Avi2	–	–	*Oryza sativa*	Determined photosynthetic efficacy (chlorophyll fluorescence-imaging), antioxidants, and plant growth promotion (PGP)	Kumar et al. (2021)
32	*Pantoea agglomerans* ANP8	*Medicago sativa*	Root nodules	Legumes	Production of IAA, solubilization of phosphates, glucose dehydrogenase	Noori et al. (2021)
33	*Herbaspirillum* (AP21, AP02), *Azospirillum* (D7), and *Pseudomonas* (N7) strains	–	–	*Lolium perenne*	Increased plant dry biomass, production of siderophores and EPS	Cortés-Patiño et al. (2021)

controlled laboratory conditions. Research data from the laboratory conditions should be shared with policymakers and stakeholders through extension services and publicized, and the technology spread broadly in a wide range of crops, geographies, and environmental circumstances. Compared to the synthetic compounds, the adoption of microbial biostimulants in agroecological and biological research still has several downsides, mostly due to their lower efficiency and increased environmental sensitivity. The absence of a standard global regulatory framework poses a barrier to product commercialization and may discourage the development of innovative goods.

Acknowledgements ACS and PCOR in YVU acknowledge the partial utilization of the financial support for consumables (No. CRG./2018/003280 dated 30th May, 2019) from the Department of Science and Technology, Science and Engineering Research Board (DST-SERB), New Delhi, India. KTPN greatly acknowledges NFST (202021-NFST-AND-02449 dated September 20, 2021), Government of India, Ministry of Tribal Affairs, New Delhi, India, for providing the fellowship to this study.

References

Abdelfattah A, Wisniewski M, Schena L, Tack AJM (2021) Experimental evidence of microbial inheritance in plants and transmission routes from seed to phyllosphere and root. Environ Microbiol 23(3):2199–2214. PMID:33427409

Afzal I, Shinwari ZK, Sikandar S, Shahzad S (2019) Plant beneficial endophytic bacteria: mechanisms, diversity, host range and genetic determinants. Microbiol Res 221:36–49. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micres.2019.02.001

Aguiar NO, Medici LO, Olivares FL, Dobbss LB, Torres-Netto A, Silva SF, Novotny EH, Canellas LP (2016) Metabolic profile and antioxidant responses during drought stress recovery in sugarcane treated with humic acids and endophytic diazotrophic bacteria. Ann Appl Biol 168(2):203–213

Al Kahtani MDF, Attia KA, Hafez YM, Khan N, Eid AM, Ali MAM, Abdelaal KAA (2020) Fluorescence parameters and antioxidant defense system can display salt tolerance of salt acclimated sweet pepper plants treated with chitosan and plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Agronomy 10:1180. https://doi.org/10.3390/agronomy10081180

Alexandratos N, Bruinsma J (2012) World agriculture towards 2030/2050: the 2012 revision. ESA Working Paper No. 12-03. FAO, Rome

Ali S, Khan N (2021) Delineation of mechanistic approaches employed by plant growth promoting microorganisms for improving drought stress tolerance in plants. Microbiol Res 249:126771

Ali S, Charles TC, Glick BR (2014) Amelioration of high salinity stress damage by plant growth-promoting bacterial endophytes that contain ACC deaminase. Plant Physiol Biochem 80: 160–167

Ali S, Charles TC, Glick BR (2017) Endophytic phytohormones and their role in plant growth promotion. In: Doty SL (ed) Functional importance of the plant microbiome: implications for agriculture, forestry and bioenergy. Springer International Publishing, Cham, pp 89–105

Alori ET, Glick BR, Babalola OO (2017) Microbial phosphorus solubilization and its potential for use in sustainable agriculture. Front Microbiol 8:971. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2017.00971

Alsharif W, Saad MM, Hirt H (2020) Desert microbes for boosting sustainable agriculture in extreme environments. Front Microbiol 11:1666. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2020.01666

Amend AS, Cobian GM, Laruson AJ, Remple K, Tucker SJ, Poff KE (2019) Phytobiomes are compositionally nested from the ground up. Peer J 7:e6609

Andrade-Linares DR, Anja Müller A, Fakhro A, Schwarz D, Franken P (2013) Impact of Piriformospora indica on tomato. In: Varma A (ed) Piriformospora indica, soil biology, vol 33. Springer, New York, NY, pp 107–117. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-33802-1

Ansary MH, Rahmani HA, Ardakani MR, Paknejad F, Habibi D, Mafakheri S (2012) Effect of Pseudomonas fluorescent on proline and phytohormonal status of maize (*Zea mays* L.) under water deficit stress. Ann Biol Res 3:1054–1062

Araújo AES, Baldani VLD, Galisa PS, Pereira JA, Baldani JI (2013) Response of traditional upland rice varieties to inoculation with selected diazotrophic bacteria isolated from rice cropped at the northeast region of Brazil. Appl Soil Ecol 64:49–55. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apsoil.2012.10.004

Araya JP, González M, Cardinale M, Schnell S, Stoll A (2020) Microbiome dynamics associated with the Atacama flowering desert. Front Microbiol 10:3160. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2019.03160

Asaf S, Khan AL, Khan MA, Imran QM, Yun BW, Lee IJ (2017) Osmoprotective functions conferred to soybean plants via inoculation with Sphingomonas sp. LK11 and exogenous trehalose. Microbiol Res 205:135–145. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micres.2017.08.009

Azziz G, Bajsa N, Haghjoua T, Taulé C, Valverde A, Igual JM, Arias A (2012) Abundance, diversity and prospecting of culturable phosphate solubilizing bacteria on soils under crop–pasture rotations in a no-tillage regime in Uruguay rotations. Appl Soil Ecol 61:320–326

Bai Y, Muller DB, Srinivas G, Garrido-Oter R, Potthoff E, Rott M, Dombrowski N, Munch PC, Spaepen S, Remus-Emsermann MH, Uttel B, McHardy AC, Vorholt JA, Schulze-Lefert P (2015) Functional overlap of the Arabidopsis leaf and root microbiota. Nature 528:364–369

Bano A, Fatima M (2009) Salt tolerance in *Zea mays* (L.) following inoculation with Rhizobium and Pseudomonas. Biol Fertil Soils 45:405–413. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00374-008-0344-9

Basu S, Ramegowda V, Kumar A, Pereira A (2016) Plant adaptation to drought stress. F1000Research, 5, F1000 Faculty Rev-1554. https://doi.org/10.12688/f1000research.7678.1

Beijerinck MW (1888) Cultur des Bacillus radicicola aus den Knöllchen. Bot Ztg 46:740–750

Boddey RM, Döbereiner J (1988) Nitrogen fixation associated with grasses and cereals: recent results and perspectives for future research. Plant Soil 108:53–65

Bodenhausen N, Horton MW, Bergelson J (2013) Bacterial communities associated with the leaves and the roots of Arabidopsis thaliana. PLoS One 8:e56329. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0056329

Bohm M, Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B (2007) Twitching motility is essential for endophytic rice colonization by the N2-fixing endophyte Azoarcus sp. strain BH72. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 20:526–533

Brader G, Compant S, Vescio K, Mitter B, Trognitz F, Ma L-J, Sessitsch A (2017) Ecology and genomic insights into plant-pathogenic and plant-nonpathogenic endophytes. Annu Rev Phytopathol 55:61–83

Bulgari D, Casati P, Quaglino F, Bianco PA (2014) Endophytic bacterial community of grapevine leaves influenced by sampling date and phytoplasma infection process. BMC Microbiol 14:198. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2180-14-198

Cardoso P, Alves A, Silveira P, Sá C, Fidalgo C, Freitas R, Figueira E (2018) Bacteria from nodules of wild legume species: phylogenetic diversity, plant growth promotion abilities and osmotolerance. Sci Total Environ 645:1094–1102. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2018.06.399

Cavalcante VA, Döbereiner J (1988) A new acid-tolerant nitrogen- fixing bacterium associated with sugarcane. Plant Soil 108:23–31

Chaves MM, Maroco JP, Pereira JS (2003) Understanding plant responses to drought – from genes to the whole plant. Funct Plant Biol 30(3):239–264. https://doi.org/10.1071/FP02076

Chebotar VK, Malfanova NV, Shcherbakov AV, Ahtemova GA, Borisov AY, Lugtenberg B, Tikhonovich IA (2015) Endophytic bacteria in microbial preparations that improve plant development (review). Appl Biochem Microbiol 51(3):271–277

Chen B, Luo S, Wu Y, Ye J, Wang Q, Xu X, Pan F, Khan KY, Feng Y, Yang X (2017a) The effects of the endophytic bacterium Pseudomonas fluorescens Sasm05 and IAA on the plant growth and cadmium uptake of Sedum alfredii Hance. Front Microbiol 19(8):2538

Chen C, Xin K, Liu H, Cheng J, Shen X, Wang Y, Zhang L (2017b) Pantoea alhagi, a novel endophytic bacterium with ability to improve growth and drought tolerance in wheat. Sci Rep 7: 41564

Chhabra S, Brazil D, Morrissey J, Burke JI, O'gara F, Dowling DN (2013) Characterization of mineral phosphate solubilization traits from a barley rhizosphere soil functional metagenome. Microbiology 2:717–724. https://doi.org/10.1002/mbo3.110

Christina A, Christapher V, Bhore SJ (2013) Endophytic bacteria as a source of novel antibiotics: an overview. Pharmacogn Rev 7:11–16. https://doi.org/10.4103/0973-7847.112833

Cohen AC, Travaglia CN, Bottini R, Piccoli PN (2009) Participation of abscisic acid and gibberellins produced by endophytic Azospirillum in the alleviation of drought effects in maize. Botany 87:455–462

Compant S, Reiter B, Sessitsch A, Nowak J, Clément C, Ait Barka E (2005) Endophytic colonization of Vitis vinifera L. by plant growth-promoting bacterium Burkholderia sp. strain PsJN. Appl Environ Microbiol 71(4):1685–1693. https://doi.org/10.1128/AEM.71.4.1685-1693.2005

Compant S, Clément C, Sessitsch A (2010) Colonization of plant growth-promoting bacteria in the rhizo- and endosphere of plants: importance, mechanisms involved and future prospects. Soil Biol Biochem 42:669–678

Compant S, Mitter B, Colli-Mull JG, Gangl H, Sessitsch A (2011) Endophytes of Grapevine flowers, berries, and seeds: identification of cultivable bacteria, comparison with other plant parts, and visualization of niches of colonization. Microb Ecol 62:188–197

Compant S, Samad A, Faist H, Sessitsch A (2019) A review on the plant microbiome: ecology, functions, and emerging trends in microbial application. J Adv Res 19:29–37. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jare.2019.03.004

Compant S, Cambon MC, Vacher C, Mitter B, Samad A, Sessitsch A (2021) The plant endosphere world–bacterial life within plants. Environ Microbiol 23:1812–1829. https://doi.org/10.1111/1462-2920.15240

Correa-Galeote D, Bedmar EJ, Arone GJ (2018) Maize endophytic bacterial diversity as affected by soil cultivation history. Front Microbiol 9:484

Cortés-Patiño S, Vargas C, Álvarez-Flórez F, Bonilla R, Estrada-Bonilla G (2021) Potential of Herbaspirillum and Azospirillum consortium to promote growth of perennial ryegrass under water deficit. Microorganisms 9:91. https://doi.org/10.3390/microorganisms9010091

Demmig-Adams B, Adams WW (1996) Xanthophyll cycle and light stress in nature: uniform response to excess direct sunlight among higher plant species. Planta 198:460–470. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00620064

Ding T, Melcher U (2016) Influences of plant species, season and location on leaf endophytic bacterial communities of non-cultivated plants. PLoS One 11:e0150895

Divjot K, Kusam LR, Yadav AN, Sheikh I, Kumar V, Dhaliwal HS, Saxena AK (2020) Amelioration of drought stress in Foxtail millet (*Setaria italica* L.) by P solubilizing drought tolerant microbes with multifarious plant growth promoting attributes. Environ Sustain 3:23–34. https://doi.org/10.1007/s42398-020-00094-1

Döbereiner J (1961) Nitrogen-fixing bacteria of the genus Beijerinckia Derx in the rhizosphere of sugar cane. Plant Soil 15:211–216

Döbereiner J, Day JM, Dart PJ (1972) Nitrogenase activity in the rhizosphere of sugarcane and some other tropical grasses. Plant Soil 37:191–196

Dubey A, Saiyam D, Kumar A, Hashem A, Abd Allah EF, Khan ML (2021) Bacterial root endophytes: characterization of their competence and plant growth promotion in soybean (*Glycine max* (L.) Merr.) under drought stress. Int J Environ Res Public Health 18(3):931. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph18030931

Edwards J, Johnson C, Santos C, Medellín Lurie E, Podishetty NK, Bhatnagar S, Sundaresan V (2015) Structure, variation, and assembly of the root-associated microbiomes of rice. Proc Natl Acad Sci 112(8):E911–E920

Eke P, Kumar A, Sahu KP, Wakam LN, Sheoran N, Ashajyothi M, Patel A, Fekam FB (2019) Endophytic bacteria of desert cactus (Euphorbia trigonas Mill) confer drought tolerance and induce growth promotion in tomato (Solanum lycopersicum L.). Microbiol Res 228:126302. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micres.2019.126302

Escobar Rodríguez C, Antonielli L, Mitter B, Trognitz F, Sessitsch A (2020) Heritability and functional importance of the Setaria viridis bacterial seed microbiome. Phytobiomes J 4:40–52

Ezawa T, Smith SE, Smith FA (2002) P metabolism and transport in AM fungi. Plant Soil 244: 221–230

Farooq M, Hussain M, Wahid A, Siddique KHM (2012) Drought stress in plants: an overview. In: Aroca R (ed) Plant responses to drought stress. Springer, Berlin. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-32653-0_1

Franco-Franklin V, Moreno-Riascos S, Ghneim-Herrera T (2021) Are endophytic bacteria an option for increasing heavy metal tolerance of plants? A meta-analysis of the effect size. Front Environ Sci 8:603668. https://doi.org/10.3389/fenvs.2020.603668

Frank B (1889) Ueber die Pilzsymbiose der Leguminosen. Ber Dtsch Bot Ges 7:332–346

Freeman (1904) The seed-fungus of Lolium temulentum, L., the Darnel. Philos Trans R Soc B 196: 1–27

Galippe V (1887) Note sur la presence de micro-organismes dans les tissues végétaux. C R Hebd Sci Mem Soc Biol 39:410–416

Galloway JN, Townsend AR, Erisman JW, Bekunda M, Cai Z, Freney JR, Martinell LA, Seitzinger SP, Sutton MA (2008) Transformation of the nitrogen cycle: recent trends, questions, and potential solutions. Science 320:889–892

Gagne-Bourgue F, Aliferis KA, Seguin P, Rani M, Samson R, Jabaji S (2013) Isolation and characterization of indigenous endophytic bacteria associated with leaves of switchgrass (Panicum virgatum L.) cultivars. J Appl Microbiol 114(3):836–853. https://doi.org/10.1111/jam.12088

Gagné-Bourque F, Mayer BF, Charron J-B, Vali H, Bertrand A, Jabaji S (2015) Accelerated growth rate and increased drought stress resilience of the model grass Brachypodium distachyon colonized by Bacillus subtilis B26. PLoS One 10:e0130456. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0130456

Gerke J (1992) Phosphate, aluminium and iron in the soil solution of three different soils in relation to varying concentration of citric acid. Zeitschrift Pflanzenernhr Bodenkunde 155:339–343

Germida JJ, de Siciliano SD, Freitas R, Seib AM (1998) Diversity of root-associated bacteria associated with field-grown canola (Brassica napus L.) and wheat (Triticum aestivum L.). FEMS Microbiol Ecol 26:43–50

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica 2012: 963401

Glick BR (2014) Bacteria with ACC deaminase can promote plant growth and help to feed the world. Microbiol Res 169:30–39. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micres.2013.09.009

Govindasamy V, George P, Kumar M et al (2020) Multi-trait PGP rhizobacterial endophytes alleviate drought stress in a senescent genotype of sorghum [Sorghum bicolor (L.) Moench]. 3 Biotech 10(1):13. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13205-019-2001-4

Graether SP, Boddington KF (2014) Disorder and function: a review of the dehydrin protein family. Front Plant Sci 5:576. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2014.00576

Gull A, Lone A, Wani N (2019) Biotic and abiotic stresses in plants. InTechOpen, London. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.85832

Gupta G, Panwar J, Jha PN (2013) Natural occurrence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa, a dominant cultivable diazotrophic endophytic bacterium colonizing Pennisetum glaucum (L.) R. Br Appl Soil Ecol 64:252–261

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, van Elsas JD (2008) Properties of bacterial endophytes and their proposed role in plant growth. Trends Microbiol 16:463–471. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tim.2008.07.008

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, Berg G, Pirttilä AM, Compant S, Campisano A et al (2015) The hidden world within plants: ecological and evolutionary considerations for defining functioning of microbial endophytes. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 79:293–320. https://doi.org/10.1128/MMBR.00050-14

Harrison JG, Griffin EA (2020) The diversity and distribution of endophytes across biomes, plant phylogeny and host tissues: how far have we come and where do we go from here? Environ Microbiol 22:2107–2123. https://doi.org/10.1111/1462-2920.14968

Hasanuzzaman M, Bhuyan MHMB, Zulfiqar F, Raza A, Mohsin SM, Mahmud JA, Fujita M, Fotopoulos V (2020) Reactive oxygen species and antioxidant defense in plants under abiotic stress: revisiting the crucial role of a universal defense regulator. Antioxidants 9(8):681. https://doi.org/10.3390/antiox9080681

He M, He CQ, Ding NZ (2018) Abiotic stresses: general defenses of land plants and chances for engineering multistress tolerance. Front Plant Sci 9:1771. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2018.01771

Hellriegel H, Wilfarth H (1888) Untersuchungen ber die Stickstoffernhrung der Gramineen und Leguminosen. Buchdruckerei der "Post" Kayssler & Co, Berlin

Hossain A, Skalicky M, Brestic M, Maitra S, Ashraful Alam M, Syed MA, Hossain J, Sarkar S, Saha S, Bhadra P, Shankar T, Bhatt R, Kumar Chaki A, EL Sabagh A, Islam T (2021) Consequences and mitigation strategies of abiotic stresses in wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under the changing climate. Agronomy 11:241. https://doi.org/10.3390/agronomy11020241

Hura T, Hura K, Ostrowska A (2022) Drought-stress induced physiological and molecular changes in plants. Int J Mol Sci 23:4698. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms23094698

Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B, van Montagu M, Kellenberger E (1994) Root colonization and systemic spreading of Azoarcus sp. strain BH72 in grasses. J Bacteriol 176:1913–1192

Jayakumar A, Krishna A, Nair IC et al (2020) Drought-tolerant and plant growth-promoting endophytic Staphylococcus sp. having synergistic effect with silicate supplementation. Arch Microbiol 202:1899–1906. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00203-020-01911-1

Jeong S, Kim TM, Choi B, Kim Y, Kim E (2021) Invasive Lactuca serriola seeds contain endophytic bacteria that contribute to drought tolerance. Sci Rep 11:1–12. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-021-92706-x

Jha Y (2019) Endophytic bacteria as a modern tool for sustainable crop management under stress. In: Giri B, Prasad R, Wu QS, Varma A (eds) Biofertilizers for sustainable agriculture and environment. Soil Biology, vol 55. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-18933-4_9

Jiao J, Ma Y, Chen S, Liu C, Song Y, Qin Y et al (2016) Melatonin-producing endophytic bacteria from grapevine roots promote the abiotic stress-induced production of endogenous melatonin in their hosts. Front Plant Sci 7:1387. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2016.01387

Kandel SL, Joubert PM, Doty SL (2017) Bacterial Endophyte Colonization and Distribution within Plants. Microorganisms 5(4):77. https://doi.org/10.3390/microorganisms5040077

Kang SM, Khan AL, Hamayun M, Shinwari ZK, Kim YH, Joo GJ, Lee IJ (2012) Acinetobacter calcoaceticus ameliorated plant growth and influenced gibberellins and functional biochemicals. Pak J Bot 44:365–372

Kazan K (2013) Auxin and the integration of environmental signals into plant root development. Ann Bot 112:1655–1665. https://doi.org/10.1093/aob/mct229

Khan AL, Ullah I, Hussain J, Kang SM, Al-Harrasi A, Al-Rawahi A, Lee I (2016a) Regulations of essential amino acids and proteomics of bacterial endophytes Sphingomonas sp. Lk11 during cadmium uptake. Environ Toxicol 31:887–896

Khan Z, Rho H, Firrincieli A, Hung SH, Luna MV, Masciarelli O et al (2016b) Growth enhancement and drought tolerance of hybrid poplar upon inoculation with endophyte consortia. Curr Plant Biol 6:38–47. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpb.2016.08.001

Khan AL, Waqas M, Asaf S, Kamran M, Shahzad R, Bilal S, Khan MA, Kang S-M, Kim Y-H, Yun B-W (2017) Plant growthpromoting endophyte Sphingomonas sp. LK11 alleviates salinity stress in Solanum pimpinellifolium. Environ Exp Bot 133:58–69. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envexpbot.2016.09.009

Khan N, Martínez-Hidalgo P, Humm EA, Maymon M, Kaplan D, Hirsch AM (2020) Inoculation with a microbe isolated from the negev desert enhances corn growth. Front Microbiol 11:1149. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2020.01149

Kost T, Stopnisek N, Agnoli K, Eberl L, Weisskopf L (2014) Oxalotrophy, a widespread trait of plant-associated Burkholderia species, is involved in successful root colonization of lupin and maize by Burkholderia phytofirmans. Front Microbiol 4:421

Kumar S (2020) Abiotic stresses and their effects on plant growth, yield and nutritional quality of agricultural produce. Int J Food Sci Agric 4:367–378. https://doi.org/10.26855/ijfsa.2020.12.002

Kumar V, Kumar A, Pandey KD, Roy BK (2015) Isolation and characterization of bacterial endophytes from the roots of Cassia tora L. Ann Microbiol 65:1391–1399. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13213-014-0977-x

Kumar A, Maurya BM, Raghuwanshi R (2021) The microbial consortium of indigenous rhizobacteria improving plant health, yield and nutrient content in wheat (Triticum aestivum). J Plant Nutr 44:1942–1956. https://doi.org/10.1080/01904167.2021.1884706

Lata R, Chowdhury S, Gond SK, White JFJ (2018) Induction of abiotic stress tolerance in plants by endophytic microbes. Lett Appl Microbiol 66:268–276

Laurent É (1889) Sur l'existence de microbes dans les tissus des plantes supérieures. Bull Soc R Bot Belg 28:233–244

Link HF (1809) Observationes in ordines plantarum naturales, dissertatio prima, complectens anandrarum ordines Epiphytas, Mucedines, Gastromycos et Fungos. Der Gesellschaft Naturforschender Freunde zu Berlin, Berlin

Liu H, Carvalhais LC, Schenk PM, Dennis PG (2017) Effects of jasmonic acid signalling on the wheat microbiome differ between body sites. Sci Rep 7:41766. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep4176

Lucero CT, Lorda GS, Anzuay MS, Ludueña LM, Taurian T (2021) Peanut endophytic phosphate solubilizing bacteria increase growth and P content of soybean and maize plants. Curr Microbiol 78(5):1961–1972. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00284-021-02469-x

Mahalingam R (2015) Consideration of combined stress: a crucial paradigm for improving multiple stress tolerance in plants. In: Combined stresses in plants. Springer, Cham, pp 1–26. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-07899-1_1

Mahmood T, Khalid S, Abdullah M, Ahmed Z, Shah MKN, Ghafoor A, Du X (2019) Insights into drought stress signaling in plants and the molecular genetic basis of cotton drought tolerance. Cells 9(1):105. https://doi.org/10.3390/cells9010105

Mehta P, Walia A, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2011) Accelerated solubilization of inorganic phosphate and production of antifungal activity in soil by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from apple rhizosphere. J Mycol Plant Pathol 41(3):342–349

Mengistu AA (2020) Endophytes: colonization, behaviour, and their role in defense mechanism. Int J Microbiol 2020:6927219. https://doi.org/10.1155/2020/6927219. PMID: 32802073; PMCID: PMC7414354

Mercado-Blanco J (2015) Life of microbes inside the plant. In: Lugtenberg BJJ (ed) Principles of plant-microbe interactions. Springer International Publishing, Berlin, pp 25–32. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-08575-3_5

Mercado-Blanco J, Prieto P (2012) Bacterial endophytes and root hairs. Plant Soil 361:301–306

Mitter B, Pfaffenbichler N, Flavell R, Compant S, Antonielli L, Petric A et al (2017) A new approach to modify plant microbiomes and traits by introducing beneficial bacteria at flowering into progeny seeds. Front Microbiol 8:11

Mondal S, Halder SK, Yadav AN, Mondal KC (2020) Microbial consortium with multifunctional plant growth-promoting attributes: future perspective in agriculture. In: Advances in plant

microbiome and sustainable agriculture. microorganisms for sustainability, vol 20. Springer, Singapore, pp 219–258

Mosquito S, Bertani I, Licastro D, Compant S, Myers MP, Hinarejos E (2020) In planta colonization and role of t6ss in two rice Kosakonia endophytes. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 33:349–363

Namwongsa J, Jogloy S, Vorasoot N, Boonlue S, Riddech N, Mongkolthanaruk W (2019) Endophytic bacteria improve root traits, biomass and yield of *Helianthus tuberosus* L. under normal and deficit water conditions. J Microbiol Biotechnol 29:1777–1789. https://doi.org/10.4014/jmb.1903.03062

Naveed M, Hussain MB, Zahir Z, Mitter B, Sessitsch A (2014) Drought stress amelioration in wheat through inoculation with Burkholderia phytofirmans strain PsJN. Plant Growth Regul 73:121–131. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10725-013-9874-9878

Noori F, Etesami H, Noori S, Forouzan E, Salehi Jouzani G, Malboobi MA (2021) Whole genome sequence of Pantoea agglomerans ANP8, a salinity and drought stress-resistant bacterium isolated from alfalfa (Medicago sativa L.) root nodules. Biotechnol Rep (Amst) 29:e00600. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.btre.2021.e00600. PMID: 33643858; PMCID: PMC7893418

Olivares FL, Baldani VLD, Reis VM, Baldani JI, Ddbereiner J (1996) Occurrence of the endophytic diazotrophs Herbaspirillum spp. in roots, stems and leaves predominantly of Gramineae. Biol Fertil Soils 21:197–200

Otieno NA, Lally RD, Kiwanuka S, Lloyd A, Ryan D, Germain KJ, Dowling DN (2015) Plant growth promotion induced by phosphate solubilizing endophytic Pseudomonas isolates. Front Microbiol 6:745

Padda KP, Puri A, Zeng Q, Chanway CP, Wu X (2017) Effect of GFP-tagging on nitrogen fixation and plant growth promotion of an endophytic diazotrophic strain of Paenibacillus polymyxa. Botany 95(9):933–942

Pang Z, Zhao Y, Xu P, Yu D (2020) Microbial diversity of upland rice roots and their influence on rice growth and drought tolerance. Microorganisms 8(9):1329. https://doi.org/10.3390/microorganisms8091329

Passera A, Compant S, Casati P, Maturo MG, Battelli G, Quaglino F et al (2019) Not just a pathogen? Description of a plant-beneficial Pseudomonas syringae strain. Front Microbiol 10:1409

Patten CL, Glick BR (2002) Role of Pseudomonas putida indole acetic acid in development of host plant root system. Appl Environ Microbiol 48:3795–3801

Perotti R (1926) On the limits of biological inquiry on soil science. Proc Int Soc Soil Sci 2:146–161

Petrini LE, Petrini O, Leuchtmann A, Carroll GC (1991) Conifer inhabiting species of Phillosticta. Sydowia 43:148–169

Philippot L, Raaijmakers JM, Lemanceau P, van der Putten WH (2013) Going back to the roots: the microbial ecology of the rhizosphere. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:789–799. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro3109

Piromyou P, Songwattana P, Greetatorn T, Okubo T, Kakizaki KC, Prakamhang J et al (2015) The type III secretion system (T3SS) is a determinant for rice-endophyte colonization by non-photosynthetic Bradyrhizobium. Microbes Environ 30:291–300. https://doi.org/10.1264/jsme2.ME15080

Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2018) Nitrogen-fixation by endophytic bacteria in agricultural crops: recent advances. In: Khan A, Fahad S (eds) Nitrogen in agriculture – updates. IntechOpen, Rijeka, pp 73–94

Qin S, Zhang YJ, Xu PY, Xing K, Wang J, Jiang JH (2014) Isolation of ACC deaminase-producing habitat-adapted symbiotic bacteria associated with halophyte Limonium sinense (girard) kuntze and evaluating their plant growth-promoting activity under salt stress. Plant Soil 374:753–766. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11104-013-1918-3

Raghavendra AS, Gonugunta VK, Christmann A, Grill E (2010) ABA perception and signalling. Trends Plant Sci 15:395–401. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tplants.2010.04.006

Rangjaroen C, Rerkasem B, Teaumroong N, Noisangiam R, Lumyong S (2015) Promoting plant growth in a commercial rice cultivar by endophytic diazotrophic bacteria isolated from rice landraces. Ann Microbiol 65:253–266

Rashid S, Charles TC, Glick BR (2012) Isolation and characterization of newplant growth-promoting bacterial endophytes. Appl Soil Ecol 61:217–224. 57–62

Reinhardt E, Ramos PL, Manfio GP, Barbosa HR, Pavan C, Moreira-Filho CA (2008) Molecular characterization of nitrogenfixing bacteria isolated from Brazilian agricultural plants at São Paulo state. Braz J Microbiol 39:414–422. https://doi.org/10.1590/S1517-83822008000300002

Ryan RP, Ryan D, Dowling DN (2007) Plant protection by the recombinant, root-colonizing Pseudomonas fluorescens F113rifPCB strain expressing arsenic resistance: improving rhizoremediation. Lett Appl Microbiol 45:6668–6674

Ryan RP, Germaine K, Franks A, Ryan DJ, Dowling DN (2008) Bacterial endophytes: recent developments and applications. FEMS Microbiol Lett 278:1–9

Saad MM, Elda AA, Hirt H (2020) Tailoring plant associated microbial inoculants in agriculture: a road map for successful application. J Exp Bot 71:3878–3901

Sachs JL, Mueller UG, Wilcox TP, Bull JJ (2004) The evolution of cooperation. Q Rev Biol 79: 135–160

Saleh D, Sharma M, Seguin P, Jabaji S (2020) Organic acids and root exudates of Brachypodium distachyon: effects on chemotaxis and biofilm formation of endophytic bacteria. Can J Microbiol 66:562–575. https://doi.org/10.1139/cjm-2020-004

Salehi-Lisar SY, Bakhshayeshan-Agdam H (2016) Drought stress in plants: causes, consequences, and tolerance. In: Hossain M, Wani S, Bhattacharjee S, Burritt D, Tran LS (eds) Drought stress tolerance in plants, vol 1. Springer, Cham, pp 1–16. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-28899-4_1

Samad A, Trognitz F, Compant S, Antonielli L, Sessitsch A (2017) Shared and host-specific microbiome diversity and functioning of grapevine and accompanying weed plants. Environ Microbiol 19:1407–1424

Sanders GJ, Arndt SK (2012) Osmotic adjustment under drought conditions. In: Aroca R (ed) Plant responses to drought stress. Springer, Berlin. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-32653-0_8

Santoyo G, Moreno-Hagelsieb G, Orozco-Mosqueda MC, Glick BR (2016) Plant growth-promoting bacterial endophytes. Microbiol Res 183:92–99

Sarapat S, Songwattana P, Longtonglang A, Umnajkitikorn K, Girdthai T, Tittabutr P, Boonkerd N, Teaumroong N (2020) Effects of increased 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase activity in Bradyrhizobium sp. SUTN9-2 on mung bean symbiosis under water deficit conditions. Microbes Environ 35(3):ME20024. https://doi.org/10.1264/jsme2.ME20024

Schenk PM, Carvalhais LC, Kazan K (2012) Unraveling plant-microbe interactions: can multi-species transcriptomics help? Trends Biotechnol 30:177–184

Schmidt R, Köberl M, Mostafa A, Ramadan EM, Monschein M, Jensen KB, Bauer R, Berg G (2014) Effects of bacterial inoculants on the indigenous microbiome and secondary metabolites of chamomile plants. Front Microbiol 5:64. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2014.00064

Seleiman MF et al (2021) Drought stress impacts on plants and different approaches to alleviate its adverse effects. Plants 10(2):259. https://doi.org/10.3390/plants10020259

Sessitsch A, Coenye T, Sturz AV, Vandamme P, Barka EA, Salles JF, Van Elsas JD, Faure D, Reiter B, Glick BR, Wang-Pruski G, Nowak J (2005) Burkholderia phytofirmans sp. nov., a novel plant-associated bacterium with plant-beneficial properties. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55 (Pt 3):1187–1192. https://doi.org/10.1099/ijs.0.63149-0

Sessitsch A, Hardoim P, Doring J, Weilharter A, Krause A, Woyke T et al (2012) Functional characteristics of an endophyte community colonizing rice roots as revealed by metagenomic analysis. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 25:28–36

Shah A, Nazari M, Antar M, Msimbira LA, Naamala J, Lyu D, Rabileh M, Zajonc J, Smith DL (2021a) PGPR in agriculture: a sustainable approach to increasing climate change resilience. Front Sustain Food Syst 5:667546. https://doi.org/10.3389/fsufs.2021.667546

Shah W, Ullah S, Ali S, Idrees M, Khan MN, Ali K et al (2021b) Effect of exogenous alpha-tocopherol on physio-biochemical attributes and agronomic performance of lentil (Lens culinaris Medik.) under drought stress. PLoS One 16(8):e0248200. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0248200

Sharma G, Agrawal V (2013) Marked enhancement in the artemisin in content and biomass productivity in Artemisia annua L. shoots co-cultivated with Piriformospora indica. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 29(6):1133–1138

Sheibani-Tezerji R, Rattei T, Sessitsch A, Trognitz F, Mitter B (2015) Transcriptome profiling of the endophyte Burkholderia phytofirmans PsJN indicates sensing of the plant environment and drought stress. MBio 6:e00621–e00615

Silva R, Filgueiras L, Santos B, Coelho M, Silva M, Estrada-Bonilla G, Vidal M, Baldani JI, Meneses C (2020) Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus changes the molecular mechanisms of root development in Oryza sativa L. growing under water stress. Int J Mol Sci 21(1):333. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21010333

Singh D, Singh VK, Singh AK (2019) Endophytic microbes: prospects and their application in abiotic stress management and phytoremediation. In: Verma S, White J Jr (eds) Seed endophytes. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-10504-4_15

Soundar Raju C, Aslam A, Thangadurai D et al (2020) Indole acetic acid (IAA) producing endophytic bacteria on direct somatic embryogenesis and plant regeneration of Exacum travancoricum Bedd. Vegetos 33:690–702. https://doi.org/10.1007/s42535-020-00159-w

Stone JK, Bacon CW, White JF (2000) An overview of endophytic microbes: endophytism defined. In: Bacon CW, White JF (eds) Microbial endophytes. Marcel Dekker Inc, New York, NY, p 329

Straub D, Rothballer M, Hartmann A, Ludewig U (2013) The genome of the endophytic bacterium H. frisingense GSF30(T) identifies diverse strategies in the Herbaspirillum genus to interact with plants. Front Microbiol 4:168. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2013.00168

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Matheson BG, Nowak J (1997) Biodiversity of endophytic bacteria which colonize red clover nodules, roots, stems and foliage and their influence on host growth. Biol Fertil Soils 25:13–19

Sun W, Xiong Z, Chu L, Li W, Soares MA, White JF Jr, Li H (2016a) Bacterial communities of three plant species from Pb-Zn contaminated sites and plant-growth promotional benefits of endophytic Microbacterium sp. (strain BXGe71). J Hazard Mater 370:225–231

Sun ZH, Liang FL, Chen YC et al (2016b) Two new xyloketals from the endophytic fungus Endomelanconiopsis endophytica derived from medicinal plant Ficus hirta. J Asian Nat Prod Res 18:1036–1041

Tak HI, Ahmad F, Babalola OO, Inam A (2012) Growth, photosynthesis and yield of chickpea as influenced by urban wastewater and different levels of phosphorus. Int J Plant Res 2:6–13. https://doi.org/10.5923/j.plant.20120202.02

Takahashi F, Kuromori T, Urano K, Yamaguchi-Shinozaki K, Shinozaki K (2020) Drought stress responses and resistance in plants: from cellular responses to long-distance intercellular communication. Front Plant Sci 11:556972. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2020.556972

Teale WD, Paponov IA, Palme K (2006) Auxin in action: signalling, transport and the control of plant growth and development. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 7:847–859

Timmusk S, Abd El-Daim IA, Copolovici L, Tanilas T, Kännaste A, Behers L et al (2014) Drought-tolerance of wheat improved by rhizosphere bacteria from harsh environments: enhanced biomass production and reduced emissions of stress volatiles. PLoS One 9:e96086. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0096086

Trivedi P, Leach JE, Tringe SG et al (2020) Plant–microbiome interactions: from community assembly to plant health. Nat Rev Microbiol 18:607–621. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41579-020-0412-1

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Botina SG, Netrsov AI (2007) Bacteria associated with orchid roots and microbial production of auxin. Microbiol Res 162:6976

Tufail MA, Touceda-González M, Pertot I, Ehlers RU (2021) Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus Pal5 enhances plant robustness status under the combination of moderate drought and low nitrogen stress in Zea mays L. Microorganisms 9(4):870. https://doi.org/10.3390/microorganisms9040870

Turner TR, James EK, Poole PS (2013) The plant microbiome. Genome Biol 14:209. https://doi.org/10.1186/gb-2013-14-6-209

Ullah I, Al-Johny BQ, Al-Ghamd KMS, Hind AA, Al-ZahranH AA, Anwar Y, Firoz A, Al-Kenani N, Almatry AI (2019) Endophytic bacteria isolated from Solanum nigrum L., alleviate cadmium (Cd) stress response by their antioxidant potentials, including SOD synthesis by sodA gene. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 174:197–207

Ulrich K, Kube M, Becker R, Schneck V, Ulrich A (2021) Genomic analysis of the endophytic Stenotrophomonas strain 169 reveals features related to plant-growth promotion and stress tolerance. Front Microbiol 12:687463. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2021.687463

Varga T, Hixson KK, Ahkami AH, Sher AW, Barnes ME, Chu RK, Battu AK, Nicora CD, Winkler TE, Reno LR, Fakra SC, Antipova O, Parkinson DY, Hall JR, Doty SL (2020) Endophyte-promoted phosphorus solubilization in populus. Front Plant Sci 11:567918. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2020.567918

Verma H, Kumar D, Kumar V, Kumari M, Singh SK, Sharma VK, Droby S, Santoyo G, White JF, Kumar A (2021) The potential application of endophytes in management of stress from drought and salinity in crop plants. Microorganisms 9(8):1729. https://doi.org/10.3390/microorganisms9081729

Vigani G, Rolli E, Marasco R, Dell'Orto M, Michoud G, Soussi A, Daffonchio D (2018) Root bacterial endophytes confer drought resistance and enhance expression and activity of a vacuolar H+-pumping pyrophosphatase in pepper plants. Environ Microbiol. https://doi.org/10.1111/1462-292014272

Walia A, Mehta P, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2013a) Antagonistic activity of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from tomato rhizosphere against soil borne fungal plant pathogens. Int J Agric Environ Biotechnol 6(4):587–595

Walia A, Mehta P, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2013b) Effect of Bacillus sp. strain CKT1 as inoculum on growth of tomato seedlings under net house conditions. Proc Natl Acad Sci India Sect B Biol Sci 84(1):144–155

Wang B, Mei C, Seiler JR (2015) Early growth promotion and leaf level physiology changes in Burkholderia phytofirmans strain PsJN inoculated switchgrass. Plant Physiol Biochem 86:16–23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.plaphy.2014.11.008

Win KT, Tanaka F, Okazaki K, Ohwaki Y (2018) The ACC deaminase expressing endophyte Pseudomonas spp. Enhances NaCl stress tolerance by reducing stress-related ethylene production, resulting in improved growth, photosynthetic performance, and ionic balance in tomato plants. Plant Physiol Biochem 127:599–607. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.plaphy.2018.04.038

Woodward AW, Bartel B (2005) The Arabidopsis peroxisomal targeting signal type 2 receptor PEX7 is necessary for peroxisome function and dependent on PEX5. Mol Biol Cell 16:573–583

Xie Z, Chu Y, Zhang W, Lang D, Zhang X (2019) Bacillus pumilus alleviates drought stress and increases metabolite accumulation in Glycyrrhiza uralensis Fisch. Environ Exp Bot 158:99–106. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envexpbot.2018.11.021

Yandigeri MS, Meena KK, Singh D, Malviya N, Singh DP, Solanki MK, Yadav AK, Arora DK (2012) Drought-tolerant endophytic actinobacteria promote growth of wheat (Triticum aestivum) under water stress conditions. Plant Growth Regul 68:411–420

Yang A, Akhtar SS, Fu Q, Naveed M, Iqbal S, Roitsch T, Jacobsen S-E (2020) Burkholderia Phytofirmans PsJN stimulate growth and yield of quinoa under salinity stress. Plants (Basel) 9(6):672. https://doi.org/10.3390/plants9060672

Yang N, Nesme J, Røder HL, Li X, Zuo Z, Petersen M, Burmølle M, Sørensen SJ (2021) Emergent bacterial community properties induce enhanced drought tolerance in Arabidopsis. NPJ Biofilms Microbiomes 7(1):82. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41522-021-00253-0

Yanni YG, Rizk RY, Corich V, Squartini A, Ninke K, Philip-Hollingsworth S, Orgambide G, De Bruijn F, Stoltzfus J, Buckley D, Schmidt TM, Mateos PF, Ladha JK, Dazzo FB (1997) Natural endophytic association between Rhizobium leguminosarum bv. trifolii and rice roots and assessment of its potential to promote rice growth. Plant Soil 194:99–91. 14

You C, Zhou F (1989) Non-nodular endorhizosphere nitrogen fixation in wetland rice. Can J Microbiol 35:40

Zaidi A et al (2009) Plant growth promotion by phosphate solubilizing bacteria. Acta Microbiol Immunol Hung 56(3):263–284

Zhang YF, He LY, Chen ZJ, Wang QY, Qian M, Sheng XF (2011) Characterization of ACC deaminase-producing endophytic bacteria isolated from copper-tolerant plants and their potential in promoting the growth and copper accumulation of Brassica napus. Chemosphere 83:57–62

Zhang Y, Zhou CM, Pu Q et al (2020) Correction for Zhang et al, Pseudomonas aeruginosa regulatory protein AnvM controls pathogenicity in anaerobic environments and impacts host defense. mBio 11(5):e02368-20. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.02368-20

Žiarovská J, Medo J, Kyseľ M, Zamiešková L, Kačániová M (2020) Endophytic bacterial microbiome diversity in early developmental stage plant tissues of wheat varieties. Plants (Basel) 9(2):266. https://doi.org/10.3390/plants9020266

Zolkin AL, Matvienko EV, ShavanovInnovative MV (2021) Innovative technologies in agricultural crops breeding and seed farming. IOP Conf Ser: Earth Environ Sci 677:022092. https://doi.org/10.1088/1755-1315/677/2/022092

The Cellulosome: A Fiber-Degrading Strategist of the Rumen Microbiome

11

Srijana Mukkala, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and Y. Harish Kumar Reddy

Abstract

Microbes in the rumen of herbivores are responsible for effective plant biomass decomposition and digestion. Recent efforts to transform cellulosic biomass into biofuels have heightened interest in the bacterial fibrinolytic processes used by these bacteria. In ecology, plant cell wall material is used to transmit energy between the host and parasitic organisms. Herbivores eat plant material and digest it via symbiotic stomach microbiota (protozoa, fungi, and bacteria). Much anaerobic lignocellulose and hemicellulose-digesting bacteria populate the rumen. Cellulosome is a plant cell wall destroying bacteria's strategic arsenal. Raphael Lamed identified this complex protein in 1983 in an extremophile *Clostridium thermocellum*. The cellulosome complex and its actions were also being studied as "Swiss knife" shape and protein complex, the cellulosome protein complex (carbohydrate-binding modules (CBM), cohesin, dockerin, enzymes, and scaffoldings. Scientists discovered these compounds in rumen microbes. A

Srijana Mukkala, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari and Y. Harish Kumar Reddy contributed equally with all other contributors.

S. Mukkala (✉)
Department of Microbiology, TTWR Degree College, Shadnagar, India

Department of Molecular Microbiology and Biotechnology, Tel Aviv University, Ramat Aviv, Israel

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

Y. H. K. Reddy
Department of Molecular Microbiology and Biotechnology, Tel Aviv University, Ramat Aviv, Israel

Department of Vaccine Technology Development, Biological E Ltd, Hyderabad, Telangana, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_11

constant study has helped us learn more about rumen bacteria and how their cellulosomes break down plant cell walls. The rumen community depends on cellulolytic *Ruminococcus* spp. Cohesin-dockerin molecules combine to form cellulosome complexes. Designer cellulosomes are chimeric-tailored cellulosomes that function in a cell-free system. They improve the hydrolysis of cellulosic substrates to create value-added products. For this purpose, recombinant constructions and artificial self-assembling chimeric proteins are produced. The capacity of rumen microbes to digest refractory cellulose is of great industrial importance, and metagenomics research is helping to understand and determine the quantities and kinds of cellulolytic bacteria found in the bovine rumen complex ecosystem. This chapter explains the cellulosomal machinery's extensive function in lignocellulose-degrading bacteria.

Keywords

Cellulosomes · Cellulosic substrates · Rumen microbes · Lignocellulose-degrading bacteria

11.1 Introduction

Microorganisms are the most versatile and adaptable forms of life on Earth, and they have been around for over 3.5 billion years. Bacteria governed the biosphere during the first 2 billion years of its existence, populating every biological niche from glacial ice to deep-sea hydrothermal vents. Bacteria from this period established the primary metabolic pathways that are now found in all living species, in addition to a variety of metabolic activities including nitrogen fixation, which is only seen in bacteria today. As bacteria ruled the world for so long, they reshaped the planet's anaerobic environment into one rich in oxygen while also creating a vast quantity of organic chemicals. They eventually succeeded in creating a habitat that could support more advanced forms of life.

There are billions of years' worth of genetic adaptations to an ever-changing world in the biochemistry and physiology of bacteria and other microbes right now. At the same time, microbes are more resistant to the ravages of human technology than larger, more sophisticated forms of life because of their physiologic and metabolic diversity and their capacity to exist in narrow niches. As a result, probably, most of the pre-human microbial species are still available for study.

A new strategy was devised by humans to identify new sources of bulk organic compounds. Plants create an enormous amount of carbohydrate-rich compounds. Lignocellulose is the primary structural component of wood; starch in grains, potatoes as well as sugars in molasses and syrup of maize which are all examples of these compounds (Lynd 1990). A mix of microbial fermentation and chemical processes might be used to transform plant materials into primary feedstock compounds in concept (Fig. 11.1). Oxygen generation, alcoholic drinks, and food

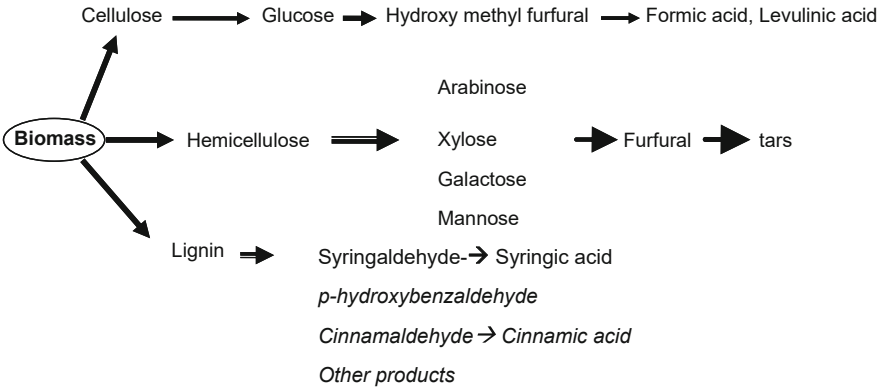


Fig. 11.1 Composition of ligno-cellulosic biomass and potential degradation products. Schematic shows a sequence of the conversion of biomass polymers to monomeric sugars and degradation products

generated from fermentation have all relied on the metabolic activity of particular bacteria (Lynd 1989). Direct bacterial or fungal breakdown of biomass yields a wide range of "oxy-chemicals" as a byproduct. Small molecules to complex molecules such as plastic, rubber, and solvents are all examples of feedstock chemicals that may be used to synthesize a wide variety of other chemicals. The incorporation of genes for degradative enzymes, genetic manipulations of metabolic pathways, and recombinant microorganisms with favorable growth characteristics is the tool for an applied microbiologist to obtain the most efficient conversion of the feedstock to the desired end product. Unfortunately, the accumulation of microbial cell mass represents competition for end products and frequently poses problems of disposal as well. Modern genetic engineering techniques make it possible to manipulate cells to maximize the formation of a product while permitting only a low level of cell growth.

There are hundreds of species of fungi; bacteria that can digest and use cellulose and hemicellulose in lingo-cellulose plant material. Aerobes, anaerobes as well as mesophiles and thermophiles, are among these creatures (Cavedon et al. 1990; Duong et al. 1983). They can be found in large numbers throughout the natural world. Even while many bacteria can thrive on cellulose or develop enzymes that can break down amorphous cellulose, only a handful can produce the whole complement of extracellular cellulases capable of degrading crystalline cellulose in vitro. Among the latter organisms, the most extensively studied sources of cellulolytic enzymes have been the fungi *Trichoderma* and *Phanerochaete* and the bacteria *Cellulomonas* (an aerobe) and *Clostridium thermocellum* (an anaerobe).

Every cursory perusal of current scientific literature shows cellulose hydrolysis by cellulases (EC 3.2.1.4, EC 3.2.1.91, and other enzymes) to be among the most intensively studied topics. Research and development on these enzymes and their production, properties, and applications are important if their actions are to be controlled and better utilized. By catalyzing the decay of forest and agricultural residues, these enzymes recycle nutrients and so serve to maintain soil fertility and mechanical properties.

11.2 Biomass

However, in the biotechnology context, "any organic matter that develops through photosynthetic conversion of solar energy" is widely considered to be "biomass." Green plants, algae, and photosynthetic microorganisms turn the sun's energy into biomass, which may be used for food, fuel, and other purposes. Over a year, photosynthesis on land and at sea generates biomass with an energy content estimated at three times that of humans on the planet.

11.2.1 Major Components of Plant Biomass

Higher land plants' vascular tissues include cellulose fibrils embedded in an amorphous matrix of lignin and hemicelluloses in their cell walls (Table 11.1). Non-covalent forces, as well as covalent cross-links, hold these three polymers together, forming a composite substance known as lingo-cellulose, which accounts for more than 90% of the dry weight of a plant cell. The amount of each polymer varies depending on the species and age of the plant, as well as across different parts of the plant. Compared to hardwoods, softwoods often include a larger percentage of lignin. Grass has the greatest concentration of hemicellulose.

11.2.2 Cellulose

The most common carbohydrate polymer is cellulose, which is found in the walls of plant cells. While plentiful, cellulose is a tough polymer to degrade due to its inability to dissolve and the presence of hydrogen-bonded crystalline threads that are difficult to remove. Iα and Iβ are the two main cellulose isomers found in plant cellulose. When it comes to the triclinic form of cellulose (Iα), there is only one chain per unit cell, and it has a greater energy density than the more stable monoclinic Iβ form (Sugiyama and Suh 2011, Atalla and Vanderhart 1984). Plant cell wall cellulose is mostly made up of the stable Iβ form, which is more sensitive to hydrolysis than the Iα form. All of the glycosyl hydroxyl groups in cellulose are located in the equatorial plane, while the axial plane is filled by nonpolar aliphatic protons (which do not form hydrogen bonds). Because of this, the "sides" of elementary microfibrils are hydrophobic, while the "tops and bottoms" are polar and hydrogen bonding.

The cellulosome, a huge extracellular enzyme complex composed of a scaffolding protein and numerous associated cellulases, has developed in anaerobic microbes

Table 11.1 Composition of lignocellulose in vascular plants (percentage)

Source	Cellulose	Hemicellulose	Lignin
Grasses	25–40	25–50	10–30
Softwoods	45–50	25–35	25–35
Hardwoods	45–55	24–40	18–25

to break down plant cell walls (Bayer et al. 1985). Cellulosomes might be used in biotechnological applications such as the synthesis of ethanol or organic acids from affordable renewable resources by converting cellulosic biomass into sugars. In vitro and in vivo cellulosome research is advancing rapidly, allowing for the creation of systems that can fulfill these objectives (Levy and Shoseyov 2002; Shoseyov et al. 2003).

Microorganisms have been shown to have two distinct enzyme systems for degrading plant cell walls. Unlike cellulose, hemicellulose, pectin, and lignin are easier to break down. Endoglucanases, exoglucanases, and accessory enzymes are released by aerobic fungi and bacteria and can work together to assault plant cell walls. The glycoside hydrolases of *Trichoderma reesei* are the most investigated of these enzymes. Another sort of system has developed in anaerobic microbes that include the creation of a huge extracellular enzyme complex known as the "cellulosome," which is composed of numerous bound enzymes (Warren 1996; Bayer et al. 1985; Coughlan et al. 1985).

11.2.2.1 Degradation of Cellulosic Biomass by Microorganisms

In addition to providing a sustainable source of mixed sugars, plant biomass—the most common biopolymer—has long been recognized as a possible source of alternative energy. But innovative technologies are still required to overcome the numerous obstacles to establishing premium systems for turning biomass into "fuels and chemicals" (McBee 1950; Ljungdahl and Eriksson 1985; Canganella and Wiegel 1993; Beguin and Aubert 1994; Himmel 2008; Moraïs et al. 2010). When compared to the current study strategy, we know very little about the deconstruction and conversion of plant cell walls by enzymatic hydrolysis and/or microbial hydrolysis and/or fermentation. More research is needed to fill in the gaps in our knowledge. Microorganisms play a vital part in the carbon cycle of the Earth by degrading plant cell walls. Cellulose, hemicellulose, and pectin make up 30–40% of most plant cell walls, while lignin and cellulose make up the remaining 15–40%. Oligomers and other tiny carbon molecules are broken down into glucose and other sugars by enzymatic decomposition before being converted into CO_2 by the body.

Carbon and energy from plant cell wall polysaccharides may be used by a wide range of microbes, making them an important part of the carbon cycle. Sometimes free-living bacteria exploit such polysaccharides from decaying plant materials, such as compost piles and sewage sludge; in other circumstances, the microbes aid higher animals (e.g. ruminants) in the conversion of the polysaccharides into digestible parts.

When compared to aerobic bacteria, which create a large number of enzymes like cellulases and hemicellulases, anaerobe biosynthetic apparatuses are far more parsimonious in their enzyme production. When it comes to the extracellular breakdown of polymeric substrates like the plant cell wall's refractory crystalline components, anaerobic environments are thought to be more conducive to this type of machinery's development. It is therefore not surprising that anaerobic bacteria have developed new methods for breaking down plant stuff, and the cellulosome structure appears to be the most impressive of them. Ongoing research has shown

that (Robson and Chambliss 1989; Shimada et al. 1994; Bayer et al. 2004; Valenzuela-Ortega and French 2019).

Bacteria, protozoa, fungi, and archaea all live in the gastrointestinal tract of animals (Rosenberg and Zilber-Rosenberg 2018). Most often found in the rumen system, these synergistic microbial communities (bacteria and fungus) have impressive metabolic capacities and durability. In response to this successful degradation and utilization of plant biomass, there has been a rapid increase in the development of synthetic microbial consortia for biotechnology (Minty et al. 2013). In this review, we emphasized bridging the effective strategies applied by various microorganisms and rumen microbiota to degrade the plant biomass. This context mainly focuses on cellulosome-containing microorganisms, in which first we need to discuss *Hungateiclostridium thermocellum* and its importance. This *Hungateiclostridium thermocellum* bacterium is considered one of the best laboratory grown microorganisms to study the cellulosome and its applications (Felix and Ljungdahl 1993). Bio-engineering principles approach was applied to explore the cellulosome and its strategies in rumen consortia and their mutualistic ability in efficient biodegradation of lignocellulosic feedstocks (Fontes and Gilbert 2010; Gilbert 2007).

11.3 Rumen Microbiota

Ruminants are hoofed mammals that have a unique digestive system (rumen) that allows them to better use energy from fibrous plant material than other herbivores. The taxonomic origin of the rumen's microbiome components based on the gene sequences encoding CAZymes implied the presence of 19 phyla of microbes. Metagenomics analysis of the rumen's microbiome, by Gharechahi and Salekdeh (2018) exclusively identified the species belonging to the *Bacteroidetes* (56.3%), the *Firmicutes* (32.8%), the *Spirochaetes* (4.0%), the *Fibrobacteres* (2.2%), the *Proteobacteria* (1.4%), the *Lentisphaerae* (1.3%), the *Euryarchaeota* (0.4%) and the *Verrucomicrobia* (0.3%) collectively represented 98.7% of sequences (Gharechahi and Salekdeh 2018). The symbiotic organisms present in the rumen of ruminant animals facilitate the digestion of plant-based fiber. The diverse rumen microbiome contributes to the nutrition of the host animal by converting non-digestible biomass into readily absorbable compounds. This symbiosis in the rumen is particularly important for herbivores, which are unable to produce hydrolytic enzymes required for the degradation of recalcitrant lignocellulosic plant biomass endogenously that form a major component of their regular diet.

11.3.1 Physicochemical Properties of the Rumen

Ruminant herbivores such as sheep and cattle have reticulums (rumens), omasums (stomachs), and abomasums. In ruminants, fermentation takes place mostly in the rumen (Tharwat et al. 2012). Factors like pH, temperature, osmotic pressure, redox potential, and buffering capacity impact the rumen microbial community. Enzymes

produced by rumen microbes help ruminants digest cellulosic material (Aschenbach et al. 2011). Due to the fermentation heat created by the rumen microbiota, ruminant temperatures range between 39 and 41 °C (Wahrmund et al. 2012), rumen's pH is 5.5–7.0 (Krause and Oetzel 2006). Several factors affect the rumen's pH, including the feed consumed, saliva production, and absorption of short-chain fatty acids, as well as the ruminal epithelium's bicarbonate and phosphate exchange (Aschenbach et al. 2011). Approximately 250 mOsm/kg, the osmolality of ruminal fluid is controlled by the composition of the animal's food, as well as the fermentative products that are produced (Lodemann and Martens 2006). Under absolutely anaerobic circumstances, a wide variety of rumen microorganisms, including bacteria, protozoa, and fungus, coexist in symbiotic relationships with ruminants (Ozutsumi et al. 2005). Bacteria are the most sensitive to the rumen's physical and chemical features of the microbiota (McAllister et al. 1990).

11.3.2 Ruminal Bacteria

Ruminants like cattle, sheep, goats, and cervids have an enlarged gastrointestinal tract often called the forestomach. The forestomach comprises the rumen, reticulum, and omasum. The rumen of the ruminants is enriched naturally with anaerobic microorganisms like bacteria, fungi, and protists. The presence of these cellulolytic microorganisms enables rumen to function efficiently as a bioreactor for lignocellulosic conversion. Various bacterial genera are associated with the rumen ecosystem. The microbiome of rumen varies from host to host and largely depends on the diet of the animal; however the majority of the microbiome includes *Prevotella*, *Butyrivibrio*, *Ruminococcus*, *Bacteriodales*, and *Clostridiales* (Henderson et al. 2015). The competitive environment in the rumen is dependent on bacterial preference for certain substrates, energy requirements for maintenance, and resistance to toxic metabolic products (Russell et al. 1979). Rumen microorganisms ferment various substrates to release volatile fatty acids which in turn act as a major energy source for all the rumen microbiome. Various cellulose degradation strategies were identified which are followed by the rumen bacteria in a ruminal ecosystem (Flint 2008).

Nevertheless, the ruminant, (sheep, goats, and cervids) have an enlarged gastrointestinal tract often called the forestomach. The forestomach comprises the rumen, reticulum, and omasum. The rumen of the ruminants is enriched naturally with anaerobic microorganisms like bacteria, fungi, and protists. The presence of these cellulolytic microorganisms enables rumen to function efficiently as a bioreactor for lignocellulosic conversion. The microbiome of rumen varies from host to host and largely depends on the diet of the animal; however the majority of the microbiome includes *Prevotella*, *Butyrivibrio*, *Ruminococcus*, *Bacteriodales*, and *Clostridiales* (Henderson et al. 2015). Rumen microbiomes ferment various substrates to release volatile fatty acids which in turn act as a major energy source for all the rumen microbiome. Various cellulose degradation strategies were identified which are followed by the rumen bacteria in a ruminal ecosystem (Flint 2008).

Recent advancements in enzymatic studies helped find the cellulolytic functions in many bacterial species (Naas et al. 2014; Mackenzie et al. 2015; Dassa et al. 2014) including rumen bacteria. An extracellular multienzyme complex known as a cellulosome is produced by the firmicute *Ruminococcus flavefaciens*, one of the most researched rumen bacteria in terms of its production. The catalytic domains of this extracellular cellulosome are exposed to the substrate since it is connected to the bacterial cell surface. Dockerin-bearing enzymes often bind to numerous cohesin domains on a scaffolding subunit of a cellulosome (Bayer et al. 2004).

There are few rumen bacteria whose cellulolytic mechanism is not well understood. Cellulose depolymerization is a less understood system; it mostly involves attaching to the substrate through an unknown protein followed by cleavage of the cellulose polymer by a distinct set of cellulases (Wilson 2009; Suen et al. 2011; Ransom-Jones et al. 2014).

The rumen possesses a natural degradative environment composed of a genomically diverse set of microbiomes. However, rumen microbes are not easy to grow in pure form in the lab media, and hence the genetic information and other characteristics are not clear. Often, the underrepresented rumen microorganisms are missed in the culture, but they may contribute significantly to other surrounding microbiomes in these complex environments (Ley et al. 2008).

Despite the profound scientific research on rumen microbiota, still, a lot is unknown about their complex natural fiber utilizing engineering mechanism and their distribution. The rumen microbiome cellulolytic process has been the focus in this era. Multiple bacteria in the rumen form a complicated network that aids in the destruction and use of plant biofibers, resulting in the formation of fermentation products that are beneficial to the animal's health and well-being (Qi et al. 2010; Mizrahi 2013; Dassa et al. 2014). Researchers found a strategic player in the rumen ecosystem, which behaves similar to the most studied complex proteins (cellulosome) found in *Clostridium thermocellum*. The complex protein contains scaffoldin subunit which has modular proteins like CBM, which mediate interaction with plant fibers. Mainly in anchoring to the substrate and digestion, microbes in the rumen ecosystem break down plant material by hydrolyzing polysaccharides in the local environment using specific enzymes (Flint 1997; Flint et al. 2008; Mizrahi 2013). The principal degraders of plant fiber in this environment haven't yet been found among the few rumen plant cell wall-degrading bacteria.

In the rumen, the most active cellulolytic *Ruminococcus* and *Fibrobacter* species degrade cellulose (Qi et al. 2010). There have been in-depth studies on two *Ruminococcus* species: ScaA, ScaB, ScaC, and ScaE are all found in a single gene cluster in the genomes of multiple *R. flavefaciens* strains, whereas only one scaffolding is found in *R. albus* strains 7 and SY3 and none in strain 8 (Ding et al. 2001; Rincón et al. 2004; Rincon et al. 2005). This is in contrast to only one scaffoldin in *R. albus* strains 7 and SY3 and none in strain 8 (Ding et al. 2001).

About 22 amino acid residues of each Ca^{2+}-binding loop helix motifs are joined by a linker inside the dockerins, a small protein module. Bayer et al. (2004, 2013) and Haimovitz et al. (2008) provide comprehensive explanations of dockerins.

Ruminococcus species make up just a tiny percentage of the rumen ecology and are currently the only ones that transport cellulosomal components inside the rumen environment. The rumen ecology has a very effective fiber-degrading microbiome, as well as a few well-characterized cellulosome-producing bacteria (Dassa et al. 2014).

11.3.3 Rumen Protozoa

For 40–80% of the biomass-degrading microorganisms, protozoans are to be found, the majority of them belong to the Entodiniomorphida and Holotricha orders (Firkins et al. 2007; Yáñez-Ruiz et al. 2004). As most protozoa in the rumen are held in the diet, the rumen abomasum is unable to move these organisms readily (Hook et al. 2011). More than 90% of all cellulolytic protozoa come from a order known as Entodiniomorphida, which is very effective in both hydrolyzing and fermenting celluloses. The in vitro degradation of crystalline cellulose by cellulolytic protozoa of the genera *Polyplastron* and *Eudiplodinium*, and to a lesser extent by *Epidinium* (Fondevila and Dehority 2001), is quick and effective.

11.3.4 The Ruminal Fungi

Only 8% of the rumen microbiome is made up of rumen fungus; however, these organisms are critical to the digestion of the rumen (Nam and Garnsworthy 2007). It was discovered that some of the fungi have rhizoids that attach to the meal particles (Denman et al. 2008). Fungal populations in the rumen can be increased by feeding high-lignified fodder. When ruminants are fed a large amount of quickly fermentable carbohydrates, fungi in the duodenum, cecum, and feces are promptly eradicated (Grenet et al. 1989).

11.3.5 Cellulolytic Fungi

Hydrolytic enzymes, such as those produced by *Neocallix* species, *Piromyces* species, and orpinomyces species, are found in ruminant cellulolytic fungus. Compared to cellulolytic bacterial species, they were shown to break down structural polysaccharides more effectively in monoculture (Bernalier et al. 1992). To rapidly digest non-lignified tissues and fracture zones of lignified tissues by mechanical action, zoospores produced by cellulolytic fungi can adhere quickly to feed particles (Bernalier et al. 1992; Grenet et al. 1989). Ruminal fungi, therefore, play an important role in the digestion of lignin. Among the plant cell wall solubilizers that can open the cellulose to bacterial breakdown is the species *N. frontalis* (Borneman et al. 1991).

The cellulosome, a huge extracellular enzyme complex composed of a scaffolding protein and numerous associated cellulases, has developed in anaerobic microbes

to break down plant cell walls. Cellulosomes might be used in biotechnological applications such as the generation of high-value goods such as ethanol or organic acids from affordable renewable resources by converting cellulosic biomass into sugars. In vitro and in vivo cellulosome research is advancing rapidly, allowing for the creation of systems that can fulfill these objectives. Another sort of system originated in anaerobic microbes and involves in the creation of a huge extracellular enzyme complex termed the *"cellulosome"*, which includes a scaffoldin like protein and several attached enzymes.

11.4 Cellulosome

Raphael Lamed and Ed Bayer met at Tel Aviv University in the early 1980s and began working on the cellulosome idea. The first cellulosome was identified in the anaerobic thermophilic bacteria *Clostridium thermocellum (Current name: Acetivibrio thermocellus and homotypic synonyms: Clostridium thermocellum, Hungateiclostridium thermocellum, Ruminiclostridium thermocellum)*. This microbe *Clostridium thermocellum* had been isolated in 1920's by Viljoen et al. (1926) from manure and later described by McBee (1948) and completely sequenced at the DOE Joint Genome Institute. The *C. thermocellum* contains a unique extracellular enzyme system capable of breaking down insoluble cellulose into ethanol which is vital for biomass energy.

Cellulose, the most prevalent organic polymer on Earth, is degraded efficiently by these enzymes. A multi-functional integrating component (named scaffoldin) organizes the numerous cellulolytic subunits (e.g., enzymes) into the complex. Multiple endoglucanases, cellobiohydrolases, xylanases, and other degradative enzymes target diverse, insoluble cellulose substrates inside a cellulosome.

Before the cellulosome was discovered, cellulase systems of cellulolytic bacteria were seen as a collection of various enzymes in a free state (Stutzenberger 1990). This idea was based on prior research on fungus cellulases. For the past 50 years, aerobic cellulolytic fungi have been widely investigated for their free cellulases. Attempts to isolate free cellulases from anaerobic bacteria have previously failed. Several cellulosome-related signature sequences (i.e., cohesins and dockerins) have been identified in diverse bacteria and fungi, but most are dockerin-tagged enzymes. The principal cellulolytic ruminal bacteria and ruminal fungus have glycoside hydrolase (GH) genes (Flint 1997; Flint and Forsberg 1995; Selinger et al. 1996).

11.4.1 Cellulosome Components

- One or more cohesin modules can be found in the scaffoldin subunit and are linked to other functional modules. Scaffoldins may contain modules such as the CBM, dockerin, X modules of unknown function, the S-layer homology (SLH), or the sortase-anchoring motif, depending on the scaffoldin.

- Cohesin modules are the major building blocks of scaffoldins, which are accountable for organizing the cellulolytic subunits into the multienzyme complex.
- Dockerin modules link the catalytic enzymes to the scaffoldin, which is the primary building component of scaffoldins. Internally, the dockerin has a twofold symmetry consisting of an F-hand pattern that is repeated (a calcium-binding loop preceding a helix). Scaffoldins' C-terminus contains dockerin as well.

Catalytic subunits contain dockerin modules that serve to incorporate catalytic modules into the cellulosome complex. These catalytic modules include glycoside hydrolases (GH), polysaccharide lyases (PL), and carboxylesterases (CE) (https://www.weizmann.ac.il/Biomolecular_Sciences/Bayer/research-activities/cellulosome-systems; https://www.weizmann.ac.il/Biomolecular_Sciences/Bayer/research-activities/enzymes Accessed on 12 Dec 2021 Courtesy Ed Bayer's Group, Dept. of Biomolecular Sciences, Weizmann Institute of Science; and Demain et al. 2005).

Cohesin-dockerin interactions can be viewed as a kind of plug-and-socket mechanism in which the dockerin plugs into the cohesin socket. In general, the interaction is inter-species and intra-species (type) specific, although some cross-reactivity has been found in a few cases. The cohesin-dockerin interaction is one of the most potent protein-protein interactions known in nature, in most cases approaching the strength of high-affinity antigen-antibody interactions ($K_a \sim 10^{11}\ M^{-1}$). So far, cohesins have been phylogenetically distributed into three groups according to sequence homology; type I cohesin, type II cohesin, and the recently discovered type III cohesin. The dockerins that interact with each cohesin type are, by definition, of the same type.

11.4.2 Cellulosome Systems

Cellulosomes were discovered in other cellulolytic bacteria early on (Demain et al. 2005; Beguin and Lemaire 1996) and were not exclusive to *C. thermocellum*. A basic cellulosome system consists of a single scaffoldin, whereas a complex cellulosome system consists of many scaffoldins that interact with each other. The structure of the cellulosome depends on the arrangement of modules on the scaffoldin subunit and the specificity of cohesins and dockerins for their modular counterparts. The dockerin-bearing subunits are directly incorporated into the cellulosome complex by primary scaffoldins, adapter scaffoldins enhance the repertory or number of components in the complex, and anchoring scaffoldins link the complex to the bacterial cell surface by anchoring scaffoldins.

Cellulosome systems may be divided into two categories based on their level of complexity (simple and complex type). There is a single carbohydrate-binding module (CBM), one or more X2 modules and up to nine cohesins in the scaffoldins of simple cellulosome systems. It is the dockerin-bearing enzymes into the complex that are integrated by these major scaffoldins. The chemical mechanism behind the

cell surface association of simple cellulosomes is still a mystery in some situations. Cell wall attachment may be facilitated by the X2 module.

Different bacterial species have been shown to have complex cellulosome systems (Accessed 2020-12-12; Ding et al. 1999; Ding et al. 2000; Ding et al. 2001). The chromosome has "enzyme-linked gene clusters" that contain the genes for several cellulosome components. A complex cellulosome architecture is created when more than one scaffoldin interacts with one another in different ways. The cellulosome complex integrates enzymes directly into at least one kind of primary scaffoldin. The cellulosome complex is attached to the cell surface by a specific module or sequence of scaffoldins in each species. The "many scaffoldin gene clusters" are found on the chromosome in complicated cellulosome systems.

11.4.2.1 Regulation of Cellulosomal Genes

At the microscopic, physiological, and transcriptional levels, the variables that control cellulosomal gene expression have been studied. Polycellulosomes were found in protuberances in the early scanning electron microscopic examinations (Lamed et al. 1983). It was found that protuberances appeared in cellulose-grown cells, but not glucose-, fructose-, *cellobiose*-, or CMC-grown cells in research (Blair and Anderson 1999). When cells were cultured in cellulose rather than in cellobiose, *engB*'s relative levels of mRNA were greater, according to early transcription research (Attwood et al. 1994), indicating that the gene was transcribed as a single transcription unit.

11.4.2.2 Rumen Cellulolytic Bacteria and Fungi, Along with the Presence or Absence of Cellulosome

There are several cellulosome-producing anaerobic bacteria currently known, including *Acetivibrio*, *Bacteroides*, *Clostridium acetobutylicum* (a suspected but not proven cellulobacterium), *Clostridium acetobutylicum* (a cellulobacterium that has been shown to produce cellulosomes), *Clostridium cellobioparum* (a cellulobacterium that has been shown to produce cellulosomes), and *Clostridium josui* (a suspected but not proven *cellulobacterium*). If they're not linked to bacteria's cell wall, cellulosomes are free-floating extracellular complexes capable of degrading non-soluble substrates and transporting them to cells. *C. thermocellum*, *C. cellulolyticum*, and *C. cellulovorans* are some of the best-characterized cellulosomes, but their huge size and variability have hampered efforts to understand cellulosome structure and function. Others (such as *Acetivibrio* and *Ruminococcus flavefaciens* cellulosome systems) appear to be much more complex.

The following is a comprehensive list of all known cellulolytic bacterial species that utilize crystalline cellulose as their only carbon source in the process of hydrolyzing (Table 11.2). Continuous hydrolysis of at least microcrystalline cellulose like Avicel or better filter paper, cotton linters, and bacterial cellulose is required for "substantial" hydrolysis (e.g., release of reducing equivalents). A new taxonomy system published in *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology* is superimposed on the phylogenetic tree produced from 16 S rRNA sequence calculations with the ARB software package (Garrity et al. 2001 and Garrity 2001).

Table 11.2 List of rumen bacteria and their cellulosomal presence or absence

Phylogeny	Genus species	Temperature	CS	References
Family: Lachnospiraceae	*Butyrivibrio fibrisolvens*	M	+	Berger et al. (1990)
	Ruminococcus flavefaciens	M	+ (a), (b)	Aurilia et al. (2000)
	Ruminococcus succinogenes	M		Fields et al. (2000)
	Ruminococcus albus	M	+ (a), (b)	Ohara et al. (2000a, b)
Family: Eubacteriaceae	*Eubacterium cellulolyticum*	M		Anderson and Blair (1996)
Family: Clostridiaceae	*Clostridium chartatabidum*	M		Kelly et al. (1987)
	Clostridium cellobioparum	M	+ (b)	Lamed et al. (1987)
	Clostridium-like species (T30)	H	+ (b)	Courtesy: PhD thesis work of Harish Kumar Reddy Y
	Clostridium-like species (CT2)	H	+ (b)	Reddy et al. (2010a, b)
Family: Fibrobacteriaceae	*Fibrobacter succinogenes*	M	+ (c)	Schellhorn and Forsberg (1984)

Note: Temp, growth temperature; m, mesophilic; h, thermophilic (growth optimum above 50 °C). m, mesophilic; h, thermophilic; CS, the presence of cellulosomes; evidence: +, present (a) presence of dockerin of cohesin sequences, (b) biochemical evidence (multienzyme complexes), and (c) presence of cell protuberances in electron microscopy

In rumen environments, fungi play a critical role in the conversion and consumption of plant biomass because of their powerful enzymes that degrade fibers and their invasive proliferation. Fungi that decompose cellulose in an anaerobic environment are the most common. Since the paradigm-shifting work in the 1970s concentrated mostly on rumen fungus, when he first defined anaerobic fungi, Colin Orpin discovered strange fungal phyla. According to Orpin (1975), due to the presence of the host's food components, the rumen fungus population density increases as a result of this stimulation. Many ruminant fungi, such as *Neocallimastix* sp., *Piromyces* sp., *Caecomyces* sp., *Orpinomyces* sp., and *Anaeromyces* sp., are involved in the breakdown of plant biomass. Cellulosome-bearing anaerobic fungi have been extensively explored in metagenomics studies with high-quality genomic assemblies (Haitjema et al. 2017; Youssef et al. 2013).

Anaeromyces robustus, *Neocallimastix californiae*, *Orpinomyces* sp., and *Piromyces finnis* are the most investigated rumen fungus with cellulosome. Fungi microorganisms have a similar role in anaerobic gut environments to their aerobic counterparts in soil and water. Fungi create colonies and produce extracellular enzymes that mobilize structural plant polymers to be accessible to other

microorganisms and the host, i.e. symbiosis, by holding themselves (fungi) to plant-based materials. Cellulolytic, hemicellulolytic, glycolytic, and proteolytic enzymes are all produced by anaerobic fungi, which are the microbes that use the most fiber (Ljungdahl 2008; Raghothama et al. 2001; Williams and Orpin 1987). The following sections deal with fungus cellulosomes. Fungal cellulosome enzymes and their domains (CAZyme) likely arose from bacterial enzymes via horizontal gene transfer (HGT). Similar structures in anaerobic fungi have been documented for many years by molecular biologists, which are known to assemble through sequence-divergent non-catalytic dockerin domains (NCDDs) (Haitjema et al. 2014). Many researchers are still interested in the cellulosome's components, modular assembly method, and functional purpose.

11.4.2.2.1 *Ruminococcus* Cellulosome

Bacterial cellulosomes are organized employing a special type of subunit, the scaffoldin, which is composed of an array of cohesin modules. The cohesin interacts selectively and tenaciously with a complementary type of domain, the dockerin, which is borne by each of the cellulosome enzyme subunits (Fig. 11.2). The integrity of the complex is thus maintained by the cohesin-dockerin interaction (Xu et al. 2004). The scaffoldin usually contains a module termed carbohydrate-binding module (CBM) which is responsible for the binding of the complex to the substrate. All cellulosomal components which are present on the same subunit are separated by linker sequences (Doi and Kosugi 2004).

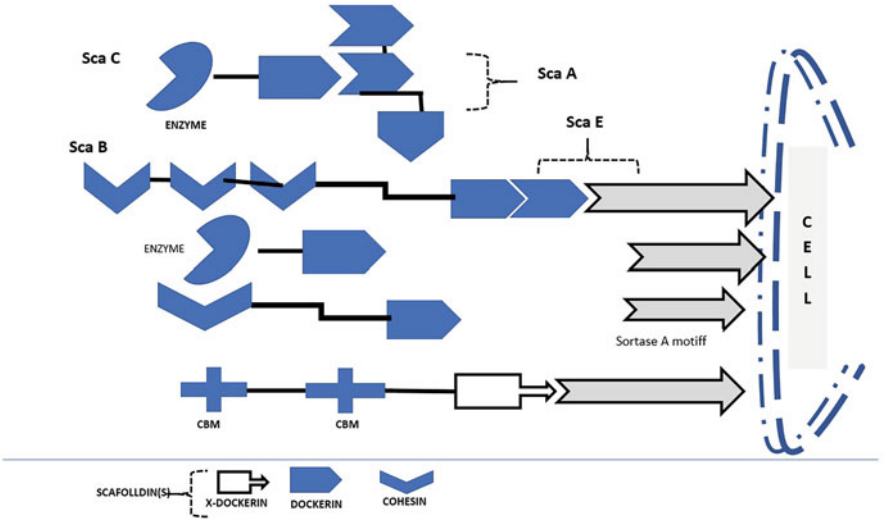


Fig. 11.2 Illustration of cellulosome architecture of *Ruminococcus* spp.: Overview of the modular interactions in the cellulosome system and outline of the cellulosome-related proteins in the designated strains of *R. flavefaciens* and *R. albus*

When scaffoldins were first characterized (Bayer et al. 1994), their cohesins were called type I cohesins based on sequence homology and were involved in binding cellulosomal enzymes containing dockerins known as type I dockerins (Bayer et al. 1998). Further studies showed that there were other cohesins, non-homologous to the type I cohesins, and these are known as type II and type III cohesins. Type II cohesins are found on anchoring proteins and bind to type II dockerin that are found on a scaffolding (Doi and Kosugi 2004; Leibovitz and Béguin 1996; Leibovitz et al. 1997; Lemaire et al. 1995).

The cohesin-dockerin interaction is crucial for cellulosome assembly. It mediates a set of interactions among the enzymes, scaffoldin, and anchoring protein which results in cell surface attachment of the cellulosome (Xu et al. 2003). The interaction between the cohesin and dockerin domains provides the definitive molecular mechanism that integrates the enzyme subunits into the cellulosome complex (Salamitou et al. 1994a, b; Lytle et al. 1996; Tokatlidis et al. 1993, 1991).

Cohesin and dockerin interactions within a species are not limited to specific pairings, evident from biochemical data (Gal et al. 1997; Yaron et al. 1995). It appears that the dockerins are all recognized in the same way by various cohesins. As a result, a single bacterium can produce a wide variety of cellulosomes, each with a unique makeup (depending on which enzymes are bound to the scaffolding). Likely, the increased functional display and the potential for enzyme synergism provided by this variety of cellulosomes may allow the bacterial cell to attack a wider range of substrates.

An anaerobic environment in the rumen is one of the most active places in nature for the digestion of plant cell wall components (Hungate 1966). Glycoside hydrolase genes have been discovered in the cellulolytic ruminal bacteria, ruminal fungus, and ruminal protozoa (Flint 1997; Flint and Forsberg 1995; Devillard et al. 1999). However, little is known about how ruminal microbes break down lignocellulosic material through the organization of enzyme systems. Prior biochemical and ultrastructural research has shown that *Ruminococcus* species have protuberances on their cells' surfaces that mimic cellulosomes in *C. thermocellum*, one of the most significant ruminal bacteria in the rumen (Lamed et al. 1985; Lamed et al. 1991; Lamed et al. 1987). In enzymes from *Ruminococcus*, dockerin sequences similar to those reported in *Clostridium* spp. were discovered more recently. *R. flavefaciens* 17 xylanases, cellulases, and esterases (Aurilia et al. 2000; Kirby et al. 1997) and *R. albus* cellulases are some examples (Ohara et al. 2000a, b; Ohmiya et al. 2003; Ding et al. 2001). A scaffolding-like protein and/or anchoring proteins may be present in *Ruminococcus* species that arrange enzyme subunits into such complexes, as evidenced by the discovery of dockerins in these enzymes.

Microbes in the rumen use specific enzymes to hydrolyze polysaccharides in the plant cell wall, breaking them down (Flint 1997; Flint et al. 2008; Mizrahi 2013). Rumen cell wall-degrading bacteria have only been found to be a secondary plant fiber degrader a few times. In the rumen, the most active cellulose-degrading bacteria are the cellulolytic *Ruminococcus* and *Fibrobacter* spp. (Qi et al. 2010). Researchers have studied *R. flavefaciens* and *R. albus* genomes in depth, finding that *R. flavefaciens* strains FD-1, 007c, 17, and others encode numerous interacting

scaffoldins, such as ScaA, ScaB, ScaC, and ScaE, which are contained in a single gene cluster, whereas *R. albus* strains 7 and SY3 encode only one scaffolding and strain 8 encodes none (Ding et al. 2001; Rincón et al. 2004; Rincon et al. 2005; Jindou et al. 2006; Miller et al. 2009; Dassa et al. 2014). Only a tiny portion of the rumen ecology is occupied by these species, and they are presently thought to be the only ones that transport cellulosomal components inside the rumen habitat.

11.4.2.3 Fungal Cellulosome

To decompose lignocellulose, bacteria, and fungi that are anaerobic produces cellulosomes, which are a protein scaffold bonded together by numerous enzymes working in concert (cohesin and dockerin). Large herbivorous mammals generally have anaerobic fungus in their rumens and hindguts, where up to 30% of their CAZymes are cellulosome-associated CAZymes (Henske et al. 2017).

To further understand cellulose depolymerization, I'm turning to fungus to see if they have cellulosomes that are similar to those seen in bacteria. To put it in perspective, the anaerobic fungal cellulosome is more comprehended than the bacterial one, which is why questions about its composition, design, and method for tethering enzymes persist to this day. Cellulosomes formed by bacteria and fungi are examined by Gilmore et al. (2015), who compare the present state of knowledge in this area, as well as their use in synthetic enzyme-tethered systems for tunneled biocatalysis. There are still many unanswered questions about the potential of fungal cellulosome-inspired systems, which have been emphasized by Gilmore et al. (2015) and Haitjema et al. (2017).

A family of repeat-rich, non-catalytic scaffolds in the genomes of five anaerobic fungi has recently been discovered by comparative genomic and proteomic confirmation (Haitjema et al. 2017). Gene sequences encoding components of fungal cellulosomes differ greatly from those of bacteria (Sunna et al. 2000; Haitjema et al. 2017; Gilmore et al. 2015); hence the structure of these domains is likewise different from that of bacterial cellulosomes. The predominant colonizers of plant material in the rumen microbiome are anaerobic gut fungus; however, they are rarely investigated due to a dearth of defined isolates in the field. Although most gut fungi have large rhizoidal networks, which are likely involved in the breakdown of plant cell walls, fungi of the *Caecomyces* genus lack these rhizoids. When it comes to plant cell wall hydrolysis, *Caecomyces churrovis* is one of the most diversified CAZyme-producing fungal isolates known to date, according to Henske and co-authors in a recent study (Henske et al. 2017; Gilmore et al. 2015).

Elucidating the type and location of fungal dockerins is essential for designing synthetic enzymes or synthetic fungal cellulosomes, as fungal dockerins exist at either the N- or C-terminus of proteins and in tandem repeats. In addition, compared to bacterial cellulosomes, fungal native cellulosomes offer a much wider variety of cellulases with dockerin domains, including GH3, GH6, and GH45 (Haitjema et al. 2017). As a result, the incorporation of novel enzymes into cellulosomes, such as those that increase activity and thermal stability, might be achieved by using fungal cellulosomes as templates for chimeric enzymes. The protease inhibitory effect of serpins led to their discovery as a protein superfamily with homologous structures

throughout all kingdoms of life. There are several different types of extracellular protease inhibitors, some of which have never before been seen in the *Dikarya* (such as serpins, which have been found in eukaryotic metazoa, but not previously in fungi) (Youssef et al. 2013). Serpins with dockerin domains have been found, confirming their cellulosomal location and their possible involvement in fighting plant proteases, as previously suggested. *Piromyces* sp. strain E2 cellulosome contains celpin (538 amino acids), a serpin protein with an unclear function (Steenbakkers et al. 2008). The fungal serpin is likely to have a role in protecting the cellulosome from plant proteinases because of the cellulosome's restricted location inside the plant tissue and the rumen's auto-proteolysis of plant material. *Piromyces* sp. strain E2's celpin protein is the first non-structural, non-hydrolytic component of a fungus cellulosome. In addition, the celpin protein of *Piromyces* sp. strain E2 is the first fungus to possess a serine proteinase inhibitor (Steenbakkers et al. 2008). Cellulosomes are structures extracellularly produced by an anaerobic fungus, which include scaffoldin-bound extracellular enzymes (Orpin 1994). The fungal dockerin domain (FDD), which is similar in structure to the carbohydrate-binding module family 10 (CBM10), is found in anaerobic fungi's cellulosome-bound genes (CBM10). According to Ljungdahl, incorporating GH3, GH6, and GH45 enzymes into anaerobic fungal cellulosomes increases their biocatalytic activity (Ljungdahl 2008). Fungal cellulosomes may be an evolutionary chimeric structure—a fungal complex that co-opts helpful functions from its bacterial neighbors in the gut microbiome. Fungal cellulosomes may directly convert cellulose to fermentable monosaccharides thanks to the extra β-glucosidase provided by GH3, whereas clostridial cellulosomes create low-molecular-weight oligosaccharides (Steenbakkers et al. 2003). Fungal cellulosomes may therefore be a mixture of enzymes from a variety of gastrointestinal fungi in their natural habitats (e.g., the microbial community of the herbivore rumen). This contrasts sharply with the great species specificity of bacterial cellulosomes (Bayer et al. 2004).

11.5 Metagenomic Approach for Biomass Utilization

By analyzing genetic material from environmental samples, metagenomics may access this biogenetic diversity without the need to culture cells. As a result, biotopes with high turnover rates of recalcitrant biomass, like lignocellulosic plant cell walls, have become a major resource for bioprospecting; further, this material is a major asset in the quest for alternative biocatalytic (enzymes) for various industrial processes, such as the production of biofuels from plant feed stocks. Metagenomics technologies have made significant contributions as a result of the identification of novel enzymes, although this young venture still needs a lot of work. These are the two most common strategies for screening metagenomes: function-based and sequence-based.

By cloning a gene and over-expressing it in a suitable host, scientists have traditionally found organisms that exhibit the required activity and then used that organism to find new enzyme diversity. Genomics has opened up a new avenue of

research (Ferrer et al. 2009). More and more people realize that the microbial world holds the most biodiversity in the biosphere; hence it will be microorganisms that will supply most of our enzyme diversity and novel uses. Microbes are notorious for their inability to be cultured (Amann et al. 1990; Zengler et al. 2002) which limits the use of standard methods for enzyme discovery. The "metagenomics" or "environmental genomics" techniques have been developed in response to the predicted rich enzymatic selections from the uncultured microbial community because they are based on novel genomics-based discovery methodologies. It is common for these methods to be referred to as "culture-independent" and "mined" organisms.

The race is on to discover the full extent of biocatalytic variety and usefulness. Accessing natural enzyme diversity, exploring enzymes' wider catalytic potential, and customizing and fine-tuning promising activity for applications are all part of this process (Ferrer et al. 2009).

Biocatalysts with improved performance and lower cost are needed in industrial processes to efficiently break down resistant plant biomass into fermentable sugars. In the metagenomes of natural microbial biomass decay communities, there may be enzymes that can break down biomass. For the discovery of new enzymes that degrade biomass and the evaluation of cellulolytic enzyme activity, metagenomics is a useful tool. Research into novel glycoside hydrolases (GHases) from microbial biomass breakdown communities, particularly those from previously unknown or farmed microorganisms, is becoming increasingly common (Edwards et al. 2006; Breitbart et al. 2003; Breitbart et al. 2002; Wegley et al. 2007; Angly et al. 2006; Breitbart and Rohwer 2005; Fierer et al. 2007).

Genome sequences from an actively decomposing biomass may be used to generate a metagenome expression library, which can then be used to test for new and promising GHases. The cloning that was efficiently expressed in *E. coli* was the outcome of these joint efforts. The cloned GHases that were effective and selective might be useful in the breakdown of biomass.

Cellulosome and glycoside hydrolase genes were compared and found that early colonization of fiber in the rumen microbiome appears to be driven by organisms that contain enzymes that target the more resistant main chains of complex plant polysaccharides, particularly cellulose. It is also possible that a diet-dependent differential in glycoside hydrolase content exists between the bovine rumen (forages and legumes) and the termite hindgut microbiota in terms of glycoside hydrolase concentration (wood). It has been shown that the fiber-adherent rumen microbiota of the bovine shows forage-specific glycoside hydrolases (Brulc et al. 2009).

Biomass degradation genes and genomes were discovered in cow rumen microbiota using 268 GB of metagenomic sequencing data produced in recent investigations. Biomass-degrading genes and genomes have been discovered in the rumens of cows (Jami and Mizrahi 2012; Hess et al. 2011). To maintain the rumen microbiome's equilibrium, each of the rumen's viral communities has a specific role. Rumen viral communities, on the other hand, are less well understood. Because of their sheer abundance (an estimated 1031 viral particles per square kilometer on our globe), viruses often go unnoticed despite their potentially devastating effect on human health (Breitbart and Rohwer 2005; Rohwer and Thurber 2009).

11.6 Future Perspectives and Conclusions

Amorphous and crystallized topologies of cellulose can be found, even if its chemical makeup is simple. Native cellulose is a difficult substrate for enzymatic hydrolysis because of its insolubility and variability. Altogether more than 71 genes code for cellulosomal components in the genome of *C. thermocellum*, almost all containing catalytic modules with some exceptions of proteins with structural or unknown functions. Most of the genes can be assigned a putative function. The list includes cellulases (both endo- and exoglucanases), xylanases/xyloglucanases, mannanases, pectinases, pectate lyases (PL), carbohydrate-esterases (CE), glycosidases, chitinase, and a mixed-linkage β-glucanase (Zverlov et al. 2006; Lynd and Zhang 2002).

A high number of endo-xylanases, xyloglucanase, putative β-xylosidases, α-arabinofuranosidases, and glucuronidase could be responsible for the effective degradation of the hemicellulose enwrapping the cellulosic crystals. Depolymerization is supported by esterases and debranching glycosidases located in the cellulosome. The structure of the genes shows some regularity, and almost half of the putative components bear a carbohydrate-binding module (CBM). Cellulose crystals are hydrolyzed by the synergistic action of processive and nonprocessive β-glucanases of GH families 5, 8, 9, and 48. Unexpectedly Cel8A seems to play a key role in cellulose hydrolysis (Schwarz et al. 1995; Zverlov et al. 2006).

To some extent, the rumen bacteria's ability to convert biomass into ethanol can alleviate some of the world's dependency on petroleum. Cellulolytic and saccharolytic *Clostridium* species bacteria may be co-cultured with agricultural and industrial waste to provide alternative energy sources that are both environmentally friendly and economically viable. When Reddy and colleagues experimented with agricultural leftovers, particularly banana waste with newly identified *Clostridium* sp. (CT2) and co-culture with the anaerobic bacteria in 2010, they were able to support this method. An ethanol-tolerant cellulolytic mesophilic strain was found in a decomposing paper by the author's team as well. There are many ways to maximize yields of bio-compounds and ethanol from rumen microbiota, and this chapter focuses on the cellulases of rumen microbiota, their presence in extracellular complexes or organelles (the cellulosomes), the binding of the cellulosome to cellulose, cellulosome genetics, regulation of their synthesis and co-culture, and other methodologies.

The nature's most abundant carbohydrate polymer—cellulose—is found in plant cell walls. Hydrogen-bonded crystalline fibers make it incredibly difficult to break down, although it is plentiful. The cellulosome, a huge extracellular enzyme complex composed of a scaffolding protein and numerous associated cellulases, has developed in anaerobic microbes to break down plant cell walls. There are several biotechnological uses for cellulosomes, including the manufacture of high-value products like ethanol or organic acids from cheap renewable resources via cellulosome-mediated sugar conversion (Carreira and Ljungdahl 1993). To attain these objectives, new in vitro and in vivo systems are being developed thanks to rapid advancements in cellulosome research.

Our understanding of the fundamental structure and function of the cellulosome system is now at the point where cellulosome researchers may make rapid steps toward the creation of several valuable biotechnological applications for cellulosomes. Plant fiber breakdown, which is a key function of the cellulosome machinery, opens up several possibilities for the development of novel recombinant molecules that may be used to create value-added products. Several factors have contributed to our understanding of cellulosomal mechanisms, including advanced biotechnological techniques, metagenomics data, and new database management systems. These factors, combined with the rumen microbiota's mutualism, have led to a paradigm shift in the study of the plant biomass utilization process in ruminants (Tringe and Rubin 2005).

Cellulosome-producing bacteria have been extensively investigated in this rumen habitat, which has a fiber-degrading microbiome. In this ecosystem, all of the modular proteins were allocated and participated in catabolic functions, as well as microbial interactions to a certain level. As the microbiomes store a great deal of information on mutualism and the use of refractory cellulose-based biomass, this sort of study is helpful to the next generation of researchers trying to understand evolutionary changes.

To date, studies have shown that the cellulosome has a wide range of complementary parts, all of which can interact and be involved in many extracellular functional activities in the rumen ecosystem. There is still much to learn about how these enzymes interact with other proteins from a physiological perspective in the targeted ecological niche. The rumen microbiome's operation can be better understood by looking at the role played by the cellulosomal machinery utilized by the rumen microorganisms. Fungal cellulosomes may have a selection advantage over bacteria in these conditions because of their plasticity, which suggests that fungal cellulosomes have numerous scaffoldins. As a result of this fundamental understanding of these unique components, biotechnological cellulosomes may be designed with greater efficiency.

References

Amann RJ, Binder BL, Chisholm SW, Devereux R, Stahl DA (1990) Combination of 16S rRNA targeted oligonucleotide probes with flow-cemetry for analysing mixed microbial populations. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:1910–1925

Anderson KL, Blair BG (1996) Regulation of the cellulolytic activity of Eubacterium cellulosolvens 5494: a review. SAAS Bull Biochem Biotechnol 9:57–62

Angly F et al (2006) The marine viromes of four oceanic regions. PLoS Biol 4:e368

Aschenbach JR, Penner GB, Stumpff F, Gäbel G (2011) Ruminant nutrition symposium: role of fermentation acid absorption in the regulation of ruminal pH. J Anim Sci 89:1092–1107

Atalla RH, Vanderhart DL (1984) Native cellulose: a composite of two distinct crystalline forms. Science 223(4633):283–285

Attwood GT, Blaschek HP, White BA (1994) Transcriptional analysis of the Clostridium cellulovorans endoglucanase gene, engB. FEMS Microbiol Lett 124:277–284

Aurilia V, Martin JC, McCrae SI, Scott KP, Rincon MT, Flint HJ (2000) Three multidomain esterases from the cellulolytic rumen anaerobe Ruminococcus flavefaciens 17 that carry divergent dockerin sequences. Microbiology 146:1391–1397

Bayer EA, Setter E, Lamed R (1985) Organization and distribution of the cellulosome in Clostridium thermocellum. J Bacteriol 163:552–559

Bayer EA, Morag E, Lamed R (1994) The cellulosome—a treasure trove for biotechnology. Trends Biotechnol 12:379–386

Bayer EA, Chanzy H, Lamed R, Shoham Y (1998) Cellulose, cellulases and cellulosomes. Curr Opin Struct Biol 8:548–557

Bayer EA, Belaich J-P, Shoham Y, Lamed R (2004) The cellulosomes: multienzyme machines for degradation of plant cell wall polysaccharides. Annu Rev Microbiol 58:521–554

Bayer EA, Shoham Y, Lamed R (2013) Lignocellulose-decomposing bacteria and their enzyme systems. In: The prokaryotes. Springer, New York, NY, pp 215–266

Beguin P, Aubert JP (1994) The biological degradation of cellulose. FEMS Microbiol Rev 13:25–58

Beguin P, Lemaire M (1996) The cellulosome: an exocellular, multiprotein complex specialized in cellulose degradation. Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol 31:201–236

Berger E, Jones WA, Jones DT, Woods DR (1990) Sequencing and expression of a cellodextrinase (ced1) gene from Butyrivibrio fibrisolvens H17c cloned in Escherichia coli. Mol Gen Genet 223:310–318

Bernalier A, Fonty G, Bonnemoy F, Gouet P (1992) Degradation and fermentation of cellulose by the rumen anaerobic fungi in axenic cultures or in association with cellulolytic bacteria. Curr Microbiol 25:143–148

Blair BG, Anderson KL (1999) Regulation of cellulose inducible structures of Clostridium cellulovorans. Can J Microbiol 45:242–249

Borneman WS, Ljungdahl LG, Hartley RD, Akin DE (1991) Isolation and characterization of p-coumaroyl esterase from the anaerobic fungus Neocallimastix strain MC-2. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:2337–2344

Breitbart M, Rohwer F (2005) Method for discovering novel DNA viruses in blood using viral particle selection and shotgun sequencing. BioTechniques 39:729–736

Breitbart M et al (2002) Genomic analysis of uncultured marine viral communities. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:14250–14255

Breitbart M et al (2003) Metagenomic analyses of an uncultured viral community from human feces. J Bacteriol 185:6220–6223

Brulc JM, Antonopoulos DA, Berg Miller ME, Wilson MK, Yannarell AC, Dinsdale EA, Edwards RE, Frank ED, Emerson JB, Wacklin P, Coutinho PM, Henrissat B, Nelson KE, White BA (2009) Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(6):1948–1953. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0806191105)

Canganella F, Wiegel J (1993) The potential of thermophilic clostridia in biotechnology. In: Woods DR (ed) The clostridia and biotechnology. Butterworth-Heinemann, Boston, MA, pp 393–429

Carreira LH, Ljungdahl LG (1993) Production of ethanol from biomass using anaerobic thermophilic bacteria. In: Wise DL (ed) Liquid fuel developments. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 1–28

Cavedon K, Leschine SB, Canale-Parola E (1990) Cellulase system of a free-living, mesophilic Clostridium (strain C7). J Bacteriol 172:4222–4230

Coughlan MP, Hon-Nami K, Hon-Nami H, Ljungdahl LG, Paulin JJ, Rigsby WE (1985) The cellulolytic enzyme complex of Clostridium thermocellum is very large. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 3:904–909

Dassa B, Borovok I, Ruimy-Israeli V, Lamed R, Flint HJ, Duncan SH et al (2014) Rumen cellulosomics: divergent fiber-degrading strategies revealed by comparative genome-wide analysis of six ruminococcal strains. PLoS One 9:e99221

Demain AL, Newcomb M, Wu JH (2005) Cellulase, clostridia, and ethanol. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 69(1):124. https://doi.org/10.1128/MMBR.69.1.124-154.2005

Denman SE, Nicholson MJ, Brookman JL, Theodorou MK, McSweeney CS (2008) Detection and monitoring of anaerobic rumen fungi using an ARISA method. Lett Appl Microbiol 47:492–499
Devillard E, Newbold CJ, Scott KP, Forano E, Wallace RJ, Jouany J-P, Flint HJ (1999) A xylanase produced by the rumen anaerobic protozoan Polyplastron multivesiculatum shows close sequence similarity to family 11 xylanases from gram-positive bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Lett 181:6720–6729
Ding SY, Bayer EA, Steiner D, Shoham Y, Lamed R (1999) A novel cellulosomal scaffoldin from Acetivibrio cellulolyticus that contains a family 9 glycosyl hydrolase. J Bacteriol 181(21): 6720–6729
Ding SY, Bayer EA, Steiner D, Shoham Y, Lamed R (2000) A scaffoldin of the Bacteroides cellulosolvens cellulosome that contains 11 type II cohesins. J Bacteriol 182(17):4915–4925
Ding SY, Rincon MT, Lamed R, Martin JC, McCrae SI, Aurilia V, Shoham Y, Bayer EA, Flint HJ (2001) Cellulosomal scaffoldin-like proteins from Ruminococcus flavefaciens. J Bacteriol 183(6):1945–1953. https://doi.org/10.1128/JB.183.6.1945-1953.2001
Doi HR, Kosugi A (2004) Cellulosomes: plant-cell-wall-degrading enzyme complexes. Nat Rev Microbiol 2(7):541–551. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro925
Duong CTV, Johnson EA, Demain AL (1983) Thermophilic, anaerobic and cellulolytic bacteria. Enzyme Ferm Biotechnol 7:156–195
Edwards RA et al (2006) Using pyrosequencing to shed light on deep mine microbial ecology. BMC Genomics 7:57
Felix CR, Ljungdahl LG (1993) The cellulosome: the extracellular organelle of Clostridium. Annu Rev Microbiol 47:791–819
Ferrer M, Beloqui A, Timmis KN, Golyshin PN (2009) Metagenomics for mining new genetic resources of microbial communities. J Mol Microbiol Biotechnol 16(1–2):109–123
Fields MW, Mallik S, Russell JB (2000) Fibrobacter succinogenes S85 ferments ball-milled cellulose as fast as cellobiose until cellulose surface area is limiting. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 54:570–574
Fierer N et al (2007) Metagenomic and small-subunit rRNA analyses reveal the genetic diversity of Bacteria, Archaea, Fungi, and viruses in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:7059–7066
Firkins JL, Yu Z, Morrison M (2007) Ruminal nitrogen me[1]tabolism: perspectives for integration of microbiology and nutrition for dairy. J Dairy Sci 90(E. Suppl):E1–E16. https://doi.org/10.3168/jds.2006-518
Flint HJ (1997) The rumen microbial ecosystem—some recent developments. Trends Microbiol 5: 483–488
Flint HJ (2008) Cellulase systems of anaerobic microorganisms from the rumen and large intestine. In: Biomass recalcitrance. Blackwell Publishing Ltd., Oxford, pp 393–406
Flint HJ, Forsberg CW (1995) Polysaccharide degradation in the rumen: biochemistry and genetics. In: Engelhardt WV, Leonard-Marek S, Breves G, Giesecke D (eds) Ruminant physiology, digestion, metabolism, growth and reproduction. Proceedings of the Eighth International Symposium on Ruminant Physiology. Ferdinand Enke Verlag, Stuttgart, pp 43–70
Flint HJ, Bayer EA, Rincon MT, Lamed R, White BA (2008) Polysaccharide utilization by gut bacteria: potential for new insights from genomic analysis. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:121–131
Fondevila M, Dehority BA (2001) In vitro growth and starch digestion by Entodinium exiguum as influenced by the presence or absence of live bacteria. J Anim Sci 79:2465–2471
Fontes CM, Gilbert HJ (2010) Cellulosomes: highly efficient nanomachines designed to deconstruct plant cell wall complex carbohydrates. Annu Rev Biochem 79:655–681. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-biochem-091208-085603
Gal L, Page's S, Gaudin C, Bélaïch A, Reverbel-Leroy C, Tardif C, Bélaïch J-P (1997) Characterization of the cellulolytic complex (cellulosome) produced by Clostridium cellulolyticum. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:903–909
Garrity GM (ed) (2001) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, 2nd edn. Springer, New York, NY

Garrity GM, Winters M, Kuo AW, Searles DB (2001) Taxonomic outline of the procaryotes. Release 1.0. Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, 2nd edn. Springer, New York, NY, p 320

Gharechahi J, Salekdeh GH (2018) A metagenomic analysis of the camel rumen's microbiome identifies the major microbes responsible for lignocellulose degradation and fermentation. Biotechnol Biofuels 11:216. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13068-018-1214-9

Gilbert HJ (2007) Cellulosomes: microbial nanomachines that display plasticity in quaternary structure. Mol Microbiol 63(6):1568–1576. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2958.2007.05640.x

Gilmore SP, Henske JK, O'Malley MA (2015) Driving biomass breakdown through engineered cellulosomes. Bioengineered 6(4):204–208. https://doi.org/10.1080/21655979.2015.1060379

Grenet E, Breton A, Barry P, Fonty G (1989) Rumen anaerobic fungi and plant substrate colonization as affected by diet composition. Anim Feed Sci Technol 26:55–70

Haimovitz R, Barak Y, Morag E, Voronov-Goldman M, Shoham Y, Lamed R, Bayer EA (2008) Cohesin-dockerin microarray: diverse specificities between two complementary families of interacting protein modules. Proteomics 8:968–979

Haitjema CH, Solomon KV, Henske JK, Theodorou MK, O'Malley MA (2014) Anaerobic gut fungi: advances in isolation, culture, and cellulolytic enzyme discovery for biofuel production. Biotechnol Bioeng 111:1471–1482

Haitjema CH et al (2017) A parts list for fungal cellulosomes revealed by comparative genomics. Nat Microbiol 2:17087

Henderson G, Cox F, Ganesh S, Jonker A, Young W, Global Rumen Census Collaborators, Janssen PH (2015) Rumen microbial community composition varies with diet and host, but a core microbiome is found across a wide geographical range. Sci Rep 5:14567

Henske JK, Gilmore SP, Knop D, Cunningham FJ, Sexton JA, Smallwood CR et al (2017) Transcriptomic characterization of Caecomyces churrovis: a novel, non-rhizoid-forming lingo-cellulolytic anaerobic fungus. Biotechnol Biofuels 10:305

Hess M, Sczyrba A, Egan R, Kim T-W, Chokhawala H, Schroth G, Luo S, Clark DS, Chen F, Zhang T, Mackie RI, Pennacchio LA, Tringe SG, Visel A, Woyke T, Wang Z, Rubin EM (2011) Science 331(6016):463–467. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1200387

Himmel ME (2008) Biomass recalcitrance – deconstructing the plant cell wall for bioenergy. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford

Hook SE, Steele MA, Northwood KS, Dijkstra J, France J, Wright ADG et al (2011) Impact of subacute ruminal acidosis (SARA) adaptation and recovery on the density and diversity of bacteria in the rumen of dairy cows. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 78:275–284. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1574-6941.2011.01154.x

Hungate RE (1966) The rumen and its microbes. Academic Press, New York, NY

Jami E, Mizrahi I (2012) Similarity of the ruminal bacteria across individual lactating cows. Anaerobe 18:338–343

Jindou S, Borovok I, Rincon MT, Flint HJ, Antonopoulos DA, Berg ME et al (2006) Conservation and divergence in cellulosome architecture between two strains of Ruminococcus flavefaciens. J Bacteriol 188:7971–7976

Kelly WJ, Asmundson RV, Hopcroft DH (1987) Isolation and characterization of a strictly anaerobic, cellulolytic spore former: Clostridium chartatabidum sp. nov. Arch Microbiol 147: 169–173

Kirby J, Martin JC, Daniel AS, Flint HJ (1997) Dockerin-like sequences in cellulases and xylanases from the rumen cellulolytic bacterium Ruminococcus flavefaciens. FEMS Microbiol Lett 149(2):213–219

Krause KM, Oetzel GR (2006) Understanding and preventing subacute ruminal acidosis in dairy herds: a review. Anim Feed Sci Technol 126:215–236

Lamed R, Setter E, Bayer EA (1983) Characterization of a cellulose-binding, cellulase-containing complex in Clostridium thermocellum. J Bacteriol 156(2):828–836

Lamed R, Kenig R, Setter E, Bayer EA (1985) Major characteristic of the cellulolytic system of Clostridium thermocellum coincide with those of the purified cellulosome. Enzym Microb Technol 7:37–41

Lamed R, Naimark J, Morgenstern E, Bayer EA (1987) Specialized cell surface structures in cellulolytic bacteria. J Bacteriol 169(8):3792–3800

Lamed R, Morag E, Moryosef O, Bayer EA (1991) Cellulosome-like entities in Bacteroides cellulosolvens. Curr Microbiol 22:27–34

Leibovitz E, Béguin P (1996) A new type of cohesin domain that specifically binds the dockerin domain of the clostridium thermocellum cellulosome-integrating protein CipA. J Bacteriol 178(11):3077–3084. https://doi.org/10.1128/jb.178.11.3077-3084.1996. Erratum in: J Bacteriol 1996 Sep;178(17):5335. PMID: 8655483; PMCID: PMC178055

Leibovitz E, Ohayon H, Gounon P, Béguin P (1997) Characterization and subcellular localization of the clostridium thermocellum scaffoldin dockerin binding protein SdbA. J Bacteriol 179(8): 2519–2523. https://doi.org/10.1128/jb.179.8.2519-2523.1997. PMID: 9098047; PMCID: PMC178998

Lemaire M, Ohayon H, Gounon P, Fujino T, Beguin P (1995) OlpB, a new outer layer protein of Clostridium thermocellum, and binding of its S-layer-like domains to components of the cell envelope. J Bacteriol 177:2451–2459

Levy I, Shoseyov O (2002) Cellulose-binding domains: biotechnological applications. Biotechnol Adv 20:191–213

Ley RE, Hamady M, Lozupone C, Turnbaugh PJ, Ramey RR, Bircher JS et al (2008) Evolution of mammals and their gut microbes. Science 320:1647–1651

Ljungdahl LG (2008) The cellulase/hemicellulase system of the anaerobic fungus Orpinomyces PC-2 and aspects of its use. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1125:308–321

Ljungdahl LG, Eriksson K-E (1985) Ecology of microbial cellulose degradation. In: Marshall KC (ed) Advances in microbial ecology, vol 8. Plenum, New York, NY, pp 237–299

Lodemann U, Martens H (2006) Effects of diet and osmotic pressure on Na+ transport and tissue conductance of sheep isolated rumen epithelium. Exp Physiol 91:539–550

Lynd LR (1989) Production of ethanol from lignocellulosic material using thermophilic bacteria: critical evaluation of potential and review. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 38:1–52

Lynd LR (1990) Large-scale fuel ethanol from lignocellulose. Potential, economics, and research priorities. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 24(25):695–719

Lynd LR, Zhang Y (2002) Quantitative determination of cellulase concentration as distinct from cell concentration in studies of microbial cellulose utilization: analytical framework and methodological approach. Biotechnol Bioeng 77:467–475

Lytle B, Myers C, Kruus K, Wu JH (1996) Interactions of the CelS binding ligand with various receptor domains of the Clostridium thermocellum cellulosomal scaffolding protein CipA. J Bacteriol 178:1200–1203

Mackenzie AK, Naas AE, Kracun SK, Schückel J, Fangel JU, Agger JW et al (2015) A polysaccharide utilization locus from an uncultured bacteroidetes phylotype suggests ecological adaptation and substrate versatility. Appl Environ Microbiol 81:187–195

McAllister TA, Rode LM, Major DJ, Cheng KJ, Buchanan-Smith JG (1990) Effect of ruminal microbial colonization on cereal grain digestion. Can J Anim Sci 70:571–579

McBee RH (1948) The culture and physiology of a thermophilic cellulose fermenting bacterium. J Bacteriol 56:653–663

McBee RH (1950) The anaerobic thermophilic cellulolytic bacteria. Bacteriol Rev 14:51–63

Miller MB, Antonopoulos DA, Rincon MT, Band M, Bari A, Akraiko T et al (2009) Diversity and strain specificity of plant cell wall degrading enzymes revealed by the draft genome of Ruminococcus flavefaciens FD-1. PLoS One 4:e6650–e6650

Minty JJ, Singer ME, Scholz SA, Bae CH, Ahn JH, Foster CE, Liao JC, Lin XN (2013) Design and characterization of synthetic fungal-bacterial consortia for direct production of isobutanol from cellulosic biomass. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(36):14592–14597. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1218447110. PMID: 23959872; PMCID: PMC3767521

Mizrahi I (2013) Rumen symbioses. In: The prokaryotes. Springer, Berlin, pp 533–544
Moraïs S, Barak Y, Caspi J, Hadar Y, Lamed R et al (2010) Cellulase-xylanase synergy in designer cellulosomes for enhanced degradation of a complex cellulosic substrate. mBio 1(5):e00285–e00210. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.00285-10
Naas AE, Mackenzie AK, Mravec J, Schückel J, Willats WGT, Eijsink VGH et al (2014) Do rumen Bacteroidetes utilize an alternative mechanism for cellulose degradation? MBio 5:e01401–e01414
Nam IS, Garnsworthy PC (2007) Biohydrogenation of linoleic acid by rumen fungi compared with rumen bacteria. J Appl Microbiol 103:551–556
Ohara H, Karita S, Kimura T, Sakka K, Ohmiya K (2000a) Characterization of the cellulolytic complex (cellulosome) from Ruminococcus albus. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 64:254–260
Ohara H, Noguchi J, Karita S, Kimura T, Sakka K, Ohmiya K (2000b) Sequence of egV and properties of EgV, a Ruminococcus albus endoglucanase containing a dockerin domain. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 64:80–88
Ohmiya K, Sakka K, Kimura T, Morimoto K (2003) Application of microbial genes to recalcitrant biomass utilization and environmental conversation. J Biosci Bioeng 95:549–551
Orpin CG (1975) Studies on the rumen flagellate Neocallimastix frontalis. J Gen Microbiol 91:249–262. https://doi.org/10.1099/00221287-91-2-249]
Orpin CG (1994) Anaerobic fungi: taxonomy, biology, and distribution in nature. In: Mountfort DO, Orpin CG (eds) Anaerobic fungi: biology, ecology, and function. Marcel Dekker, Inc, New York, NY, pp 1–45
Ozutsumi Y, Tajima K, Takenaka A, Itabashi H (2005) The effect of protozoa on the composition of rumen bacteria in cattle using 16S rRNA gene clone libraries. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 69: 499–506
Qi M, Jakober K, McAllister T (2010) Rumen microbiology. In: Animal and plant productivity. Encyclopedia of Life Support Systems, Oxford, pp 161–176
Raghothama S, Eberhardt RY, Simpson P, Wigelsworth D, White P, Hazlewood GP, Nagy T, Gilbert HJ, Williamson MP (2001) Characterization of a cellulosome dockerin domain from the anaerobic fungus Piromyces equi. Nat Struct Biol 8:775–778
Ransom-Jones E, Jones DL, Edwards A, McDonald JE (2014) Distribution and diversity of members of the bacterial phylum Fibrobacteres in environments where cellulose degradation occurs. Syst Appl Microbiol 37:502–509
Reddy YHK, Srijana M, Harikrishna N, Reddy DM, Reddy G (2010a) Ethanol tolerant anaerobic cellulolytic ethanologenic bacteria isolated from decomposed paper. Curr Trends Biotechnol Pharm 4(4):947–956. ISSN 0973-8916
Reddy YHK, Srijana M, Reddy DM, Reddy G (2010b) Coculture fermentation of banana agro-waste to ethanol by cellulolytic thermophilic Clostridium thermocellum CT2. Afr J Biotechnol 9(13):1926–1934
Rincón MT, Martin JC, Aurilia V, McCrae SI, Rucklidge GJ, Reid MD et al (2004) ScaC, an adaptor protein carrying a novel cohesin that expands the dockerin-binding repertoire of the Ruminococcus flavefaciens 17 cellulosome. J Bacteriol 186:2576–2585
Rincon MT, Cepeljnik T, Martin JC, Lamed R, Barak Y, Bayer EA, Flint HJ (2005) Unconventional mode of attachment of the Ruminococcus flavefaciens cellulosome to the cell surface. J Bacteriol 187:7569–7578
Robson LM, Chambliss GH (1989) Cellulases of bacterial origin. Enzym Microb Technol 11:626–644
Rohwer F, Thurber RV (2009) Viruses manipulate the marine environment. Nature 459:207–212. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature08060
Rosenberg E, Zilber-Rosenberg I (2018) The hologenome concept of evolution after 10 years. Microbiome 6:78. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40168-018-0457-9
Russell JB, Sharp WM, Baldwin RL (1979) The effect of pH on maximum bacterial growth rate and its possible role as a determinant of bacterial competition in the rumen. J Anim Sci 48:251–255

Salamitou S, Lemaire M, Fujino T, Ohayon H, Gounon P, Béguin P, Aubert J-P (1994a) Subcellular localization of Clostridium thermocellum ORF3p, a protein carrying a receptor for the docking sequence borne by the catalytic components of the cellulosome. J Bacteriol 176:2828–2834

Salamitou S, Raynaud O, Lemaire M, Coughlan M, Béguin P, Aubert J-P (1994b) Recognition specificity of the duplicated segments present in Clostridium thermocellum endoglucanase CelD and in the cellulosome-integrating protein CipA. J Bacteriol 176:2822–2827

Schellhorn HE, Forsberg CW (1984) Multiplicity of extracellular β-(1,4)-endoglucanases of Bacteroides succinogenes S85. Can J Microbiol 30:930–937

Schwarz WH, Bronnenmeier K, Landmann B, Wanner G, Staudenbauer WL, Kurose N, Takayama T (1995) Molecular characterization of four strains of the cellulolytic thermophile clostridium stercorarium. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 59:1661–1665

Selinger LB, Forsberg CW, Cheng KJ (1996) The rumen: a unique source of enzymes for enhancing livestock production. Anaerobe 2:263–284

Shimada K, Karita S, Sakka K, Ohmiya K (1994) Cellulases, xylanases, and their genes from bacteria. Bioprocess Technol 19:395–429

Shoseyov O, Levy I, Shani Z, Mansfield SD (2003) Modulation of wood fibers and paper by cellulose binding domains. In: Mansfield SD, Saddler JN (eds) Applications of enzymes to lignocellulosics. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC, pp 116–131

Steenbakkers PJM et al (2003) Beta-Glucosidase in cellulosome of the anaerobic fungus Piromyces sp. strain E2 is a family 3 glycoside hydrolase. Biochem J 370:963–970

Steenbakkers PJM, Irving JA, Harhangi HR, Swinkels WJC, Akhmanova A, Dijkerman R, Jetten MSM, van der Drift C, Whisstock JC, Op den Camp HJM (2008) A serpin in the cellulosome of the anaerobic fungus Piromyces sp. strain E2. Mycol Res 112:999–1006

Stutzenberger F (1990) Bacterial cellulases. In: Fogarty WM, Kelly CT (eds) Microbial enzymes and biotechnology. Elsevier Applied Science, London, pp 37–70

Suen G, Weimer PJ, Stevenson DM, Aylward FO, Boyum J, Deneke J et al (2011) The complete genome sequence of *Fibrobacter succinogenes* S85 reveals a cellulolytic and metabolic specialist. PLoS One 6:e18814

Sugiyama J, Suh S-O (2011) Chapter 158 - *Sympodiomycopsis* Sugiyama, Tokuoka & Komagata (1991). In: The yeasts, 5th edn, pp 1995–1997

Sunna A, Gibbs MD, Chin CW, Nelson PJ, Bergquist PL (2000) A gene encoding a novel multidomain beta-1,4-mannanase from Caldibacillus cellulovorans and action of the recombinant enzyme on kraft pulp. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:664–670

Tharwat M, Al-Sobayil F, Ali A, Buczinski S (2012) Transabdominal ultrasonographic appearance of the gastrointestinal viscera of healthy camels (Camelus dromedaries). Res Vet Sci 93:1015–1020

Tokatlidis K, Salamitou S, Beguin P, Dhurjati P, Aubcrt JP (1991) Interaction of the duplicated segment carried by Clostridium thermocellum cellulases with cellulosome components. FERS Lett 291:185–188

Tokatlidis K, Dhurjati P, Beguin P (1993) Properties conferred on Closlridium thermoocellum endoglucanase CclC by grafting the duplicated segment of endoglucanasc CclD. Prot Eng 6: 947–952

Tringe SG, Rubin EM (2005) Metagenomics: DNA sequencing of environmental samples. Nat Rev Genet 6:805–814

Valenzuela-Ortega M, French CE (2019) Engineering of industrially important microorganisms for assimilation of cellulosic biomass: towards consolidated bioprocessing. Biochem Soc Trans 47(6):1781–1794. https://doi.org/10.1042/BST20190293. PMID: 31845725

Viljoen JA, Fred EB, Peterson WH (1926) The fermentation of cellulose by thermophilic bacteria. J Agric Sci 16(1):1–17

Wahrmund JL, Ronchesel JR, Krehbiel CR, Goad CL, Trost SM, Richards CJ (2012) Ruminal acidosis challenge impact on ruminal temperature in feedlot cattle. J Anim Sci 90:2794–2801

Warren RAJ (1996) Microbial hydrolysis of polysaccharides. Annu Rev Microbiol 50:183–212

Wegley L, Breitbart M, Edwards RA, Rohwer F (2007) Metagenomic analysis of the microbial community associated with the coral Porites astreoides. Environ Microbiol 9:2707–2719

Williams AG, Orpin CG (1987) Polysaccharide-degrading enzymes formed by three species of anaerobic rumen fungi grown on a range of carbohydrate substrates. Can J Microbiol 33:418–426

Wilson DB (2009) Evidence for a novel mechanism of microbial cellulose degradation. Cellulose 16:723–727

Xu Q et al (2003) The cellulosome system of Acetivibrio cellulolyticus includes a novel type of adaptor protein and a cell surface anchoring protein. J Bacteriol 185:4548–4557

Xu Q et al (2004) Architecture of the *Bacteroides cellulosolvens* cellulosome: description of a cell surface-anchoring scaffoldin and a family 48 cellulase. J Bacteriol 186:968–977

Yáñez-Ruiz DR, Moumen A, Martín García AI, Alcaide EM (2004) Ruminal fermentation and degradation patterns, protozoa population, and urinary purine derivatives excretion in goats and wethers fed diets based on two-stage olive cake: effect of PEG supply. J Anim Sci 82:2023–2032

Yaron S, Morag E, Bayer EA, Lamed R, Shoham Y (1995) Expression, purification and subunit-binding properties of cohesins 2 and 3 of the Clostridium thermocellum cellulosome. FEBS Lett 360:121–124

Youssef NH et al (2013) The genome of the anaerobic fungus Orpinomyces sp. Strain C1A reveals the unique evolutionary history of a remarkable plant biomass degrader. Appl Environ Microbiol 79:4620–4634

Zengler K, Toledo G, Rappe M, Elkins J, Mathur EJ, Short JM, Keller M (2002) Cultivating the uncultured. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:15681–15686. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.252630999

Zverlov VV, Schwarz WH (2006) The C. thermocellum Cellulosome: novel components and insights from the genomic sequence. In: Uversky V, Kataeva IA (eds) Cellulosome. Nova Science Publishers, Inc, New York, NY, pp 119–151

Metagenomic Approaches for Studying Plant–Microbe Interactions

12

S. Murali Mohan and Pola Sudhakar

Abstract

Plant microbiome from environmental samples, including soil rhizosphere, consists of all microbial genomes and plays an essential role in maintaining plant growth and health in addition to tolerating biotic and abiotic stresses and climate change. Plant microbiome is beneficial to the plant in many ways, such as nitrogen metabolism and enhancing plant growth-promoting (PGP) effects. It is also believed that plant growth-promoting microbes (PGPM) enhance plant growth by a variety of mechanisms such as enhancing soil nutrient bioavailability, disease resistance, damage due to herbivores, and improving water acquisition. However, the microbial composition is mostly influenced by soil factors, plant genotype, and exudates from the plants as well.

Moreover, the plant microbiome depends on the plant–microbe interactions and cultivation practices as well. Recently, more emphasis is on the study of underlying genes affecting plant–microbe interaction by high-throughput methodologies, including 16S rRNA marker gene sequencing and metagenome approaches for studying plant-microbiome interaction and microbial community in the plant surroundings. The metagenomic studies offer the possibility to explore the taxonomic composition of plant microbiome and its functional properties as well. Taxonomic analysis for amplicon sequencing is carried out using bioinformatics tools such as QIAMI and Greengenes database to identify operational taxonomic units (OTUs); however, in the case of whole-genome

S. M. Mohan
Department of Biotechnology, Adikavi Nannaya University, Rajamahendravaram, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. Sudhakar (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, AUCST, Andhra University, Visakhapatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India
e-mail: sudhakar@andhrauniversity.edu.in

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_12

shotgun (WGS) sequencing, taxonomic classification is achieved using tools such as "Kraken." Recent advances in metatranscriptomics characterize members of the microbial community that are responsible for specific functions and identify the genes playing an essential role in plant–microbe interaction. Therefore, the present chapter focuses on reviewing the above molecular methodologies in detail for studying plant microbial community.

Keywords

Metagenome · Microbiome · Plant–microbe interaction · Sequencing

12.1 Introduction

Diverse microorganisms live in association with agriculturally important crop species and play an essential role in the survival, growth, and development of the host plant. The microorganisms enhance the productivity of crops in various ways, such as protection from phytopathogens, and serve as essential biocontrol agents (Kaushal et al. 2017). Microbes exist in all plants (Partida-Martinez and Heil 2011), and many of the plant characters such as nutrition optimization, resistance to biotic stress, and abiotic stresses associated with hormonal regulation are dependent on microorganisms.

There is also evidence that the microorganisms can optimize the endogenous hormonal balance of plants and activate mechanisms of systemic resistance to stresses (Kumar et al. 2012). The rhizosphere, soil around plant roots, forms an essential component of soil and harbors microbes, which influence through their biological, physical, and chemical interactions with the plant. Besides, the microbial community present in the soil is beneficial to the plants, and the interaction between plant and microbe can be beneficial to plant development. Therefore, it is required to study the microbial community of rhizosphere, as an understanding of plant microbiome (although plant microbiome includes entophytic bacteria as well), and plant–microbe interaction can provide valuable information.

On the other hand, the microbial community structure of plant rhizosphere seems to be dependent upon the strategies adopted by plants to combat pathogen attack as well as to overcome nutritional deficiency, for example, the legumes overcome nitrogen deficiency by releasing flavonoids that attract rhizobia which establish a symbiotic relationship with the host plant for fixing molecular nitrogen (N_2) for the plant. Similarly, *Zea mays* releases 2,4-dihydroxy-7-methoxy-1,4-benzoxazine-3-one that attracts beneficial rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas putida*. In the case of *Arabidopsis*, the plant releases malic acid from the roots when it is attacked by foliar pathogen *Pseudomonas syringae* and triggers host defense responses against *P. syringae* (Rudrappa et al. 2008).

Optimization of endogenous hormonal balance of plants and activation of systemic responses to stress has also been reported by Kumar et al. (2012). Therefore, plant microbial associations can be seen as mutualistic. For the first time, in

Arabidopsis thaliana, the microbial populations that were in contact with the rhizosphere region were studied using the metatranscriptomics approach (Chaparro et al. 2014). Chaparro et al. (2014) reported the correlation between root exudation pattern and that of the functional capacity of the soil microbiome and also the effect of root exudation pattern on soil microbial community. In this report, a metatranscriptomic analysis was carried out to establish a relationship between the functional properties of microbes in the rhizosphere region and different developmental stages of plant showing particular root exudation patterns.

A strong association between rhizobial microbial communities and root exudate composition was also reported in another study by Broeckling et al. (2008). Recently, Deng et al. (2019) also studied bacterial diversity using amplicon sequencing and shotgun metagenomic sequencing approaches and provided incites about the dynamics of community structure in strawberry. However, many of these microbial populations are not easily culturable through routine culture techniques, and culture-independent methods have to be developed to study diversity present in the environmental samples. In this context, next-generation sequencing (NGS) technology is considered a potential alternative to microbial culture techniques for studying microbial communities present in the environmental samples.

Nevertheless, the advances in sequencing technology have thrown challenges at the researchers in dealing with millions of reads produced from different sequencing platforms such as Illumina, Pacific Biosciences, and Oxford Nanopore that are available at present. However, a large number of bioinformatics tools were also developed in parallel to deal with these large datasets, and these tools helped immensely derive meaningful biological information from the enormous sequence data.

In this background, the present chapter focuses on reviewing three presently available molecular approaches (Table 12.1), such as amplicon sequencing (16S rRNA marker gene, for instance), and recently emerged metagenomic approach, which is an advanced method for studying microbial community occupying plant-soil interface (PSI). Besides, a brief overview of metatranscriptomic analysis is also provided in this chapter considering its potential for understanding bacterial communities in terms of regulation of complex molecular and physiological processes.

To begin with, amplicon sequencing approaches are frequently applied for studying plant microbiome structure and their distribution based on environmental samples (Knief 2014). The word "metabonomics" is also used to refer to marker gene sequencing (Breitwieser et al. 2017). The marker genes are invaluable tools for phylogenetic profiling as their distribution is uniform across the microbial world. The use of a phylogenetic marker was first explored by Stein et al. (1996), and the variable regions in the 16S rRNA gene serve as classification candidates (Claesson et al. 2010).

The conserved regions, flanking hypervariable regions, are targeted by primers and help in differentiating among microbial species. Besides, these variable regions are also uniform in their distribution in microbial populations (Bates et al. 2011). For primer pair details, please see a recent review by Lucaciu et al. (2019). The

Table 12.1 Molecular approaches for microbiome applications

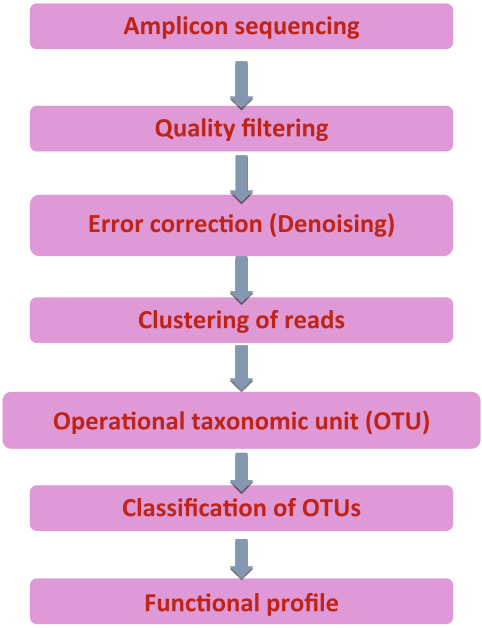
S. no.	Molecular approach	Advantages	Limitations	Important applications
1	Amplicon sequencing for 16S rRNA and 18S rRNA	Specific provides more accurate species identification, cost-effective, allows multiplexing, data interpretation is manageable	Targets 16S rRNA genes only, large bias in read counts, gene copy number, and primer mismatch	Species identification and taxonomic classification
2	Shotgun metagenomics	Sequencing of all genomic sequences facilitates functional profiling, identifies closely related species	Interference of host DNA depends heavily on a reference database, requires more number of reads	Microbiome diversity studies
3	Metatranscriptomics	Captures all of the RNA, representative of transcribed genes	Bacterial gene expression profile and understanding the regulation of complex processes	Gene expression profile including actively transcribed genes

significant advantage of amplicon sequencing is that it can efficiently target distinct groups of microbes such as archaea; however, the contamination poses a challenge to amplicon sequencing (Glassing et al. 2016). Apart from 16S rRNA for identifying bacterial species, fungal profiling is also carried out by a genomic region known as the internal transcribed spacer (ITS) region using improved primer pairs, as reported by Nilsson et al. (2019). A few other functional genes that are considered as phylogenetic markers used for amplicon sequencing studies include *dsrB*, *nifH*, *mcrA*, and *nxrB* (for more details, please see Lucaciu et al. 2019).

A few databases such as Greengenes (DeSantis et al. 2006), RDP (Cole et al. 2005), and SILVA (Carlton et al. 2002) serve as an additional resource for candidate marker genes for phylogenetic profiling.

The steps of marker gene profiling (Flowchart 12.1) briefly involves amplicon sequencing, quality filtering and error correction (denoising), clustering of reads into operational taxonomic units (OTUs) based on sequence similarity, classification of OTUs (Callahan et al. 2016), and defining the functional profile. In addition to amplicon sequencing, the microbial composition of the plant microbiome is also determined by high-throughput methods such as metagenome sequencing.

The metagenome represents the aggregate genomes of a community. The metagenomic analysis is an advanced whole-genome approach, otherwise referred to as shotgun metagenomic sequencing, which serves as an essential strategy to identify rare microorganisms in the environmental samples.



Flowchart 12.1 Steps showing amplicon sequencing

The first metagenomic approach dates back to 1991 when Schmidt and collaborators generated a metagenomic library from marine picoplankton (Schmidt et al. 1991). In the case of plants, several studies reported the use of metagenomic approaches for studying plant microbiome. For example, Mendes et al. (2014) carried out a study to explore the microbial populations in the rhizosphere region of soybean.

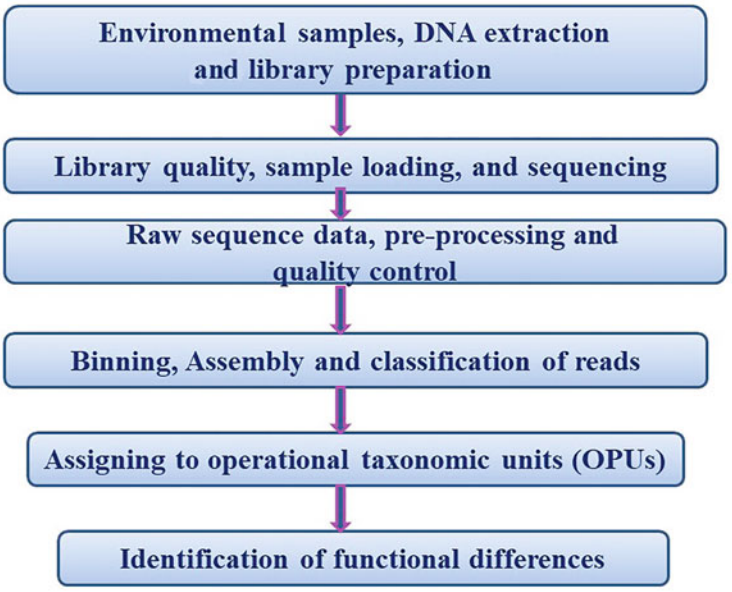
Kumar et al. (2018) "reported metagenomic analysis of rhizosphere microflora of oil-contaminated soil planted with barley and alfalfa; however, this study reported the hydrocarbon-degrading capabilities of microorganisms"). In another study (Chen et al. 2017), the role of the microbes in minimizing soil contamination was studied using a metagenomic approach. Similarly, Unno and Shinano (2013) reported the importance of bacterial populations in the rhizosphere and its effect on plant growth when there is a change in microbial composition by using a metagenomic approach. However, different plant species are inhabited by different microbial populations in the rhizosphere region due to a diverse range of root exudates (Haichar et al. 2008; Neeru et al. 2009; Saleem et al. 2018). Several other studies also reported that the rhizosphere microbial community could be shaped by plant host habitat, root exudates, and root architectural or phenotypic traits (Yurgel et al. 2017, 2018). However, there are certain limitations to the whole metagenome approach, i.e., very few datasets may be suitable for estimating taxonomic abundance (Kwak and Park 2018). As reported by Zaheer et al. (2018), sequencing depth also shows an impact on scientific inferences. The actual metagenome analysis also poses a challenge in relating gene repertoire of the whole metagenome with microbial

Table 12.2 Different software and databases used for metagenomic analysis

S. no.	Bioinformatics tools available	Action	References
1	NGS QC toolkit	Removal of low-quality reads	Patel and Jain (2012)
2	QIIME	Taxonomic assignment of amplicon	Kuczynski et al. (2011)
3	KEGG MGENES	Functional composition	https://www.genome.jp/mgenes/
4	Kraken	Taxonomic classification	Wood and Salzberg (2014)
5	MetaVelvet	Assembly	Namiki et al. (2012)
6	SOAPdenovo	Assembly	Li et al. (2010)
7	MegaHit	Assembly	Li et al. (2015)
8	Genovo	Assembly	Laserson et al. (2011)
9	MetaGeneMark	ORF prediction	Wenhan et al. (2010)
10	RAPSearch	Functional annotation	Yuzhen et al. (2011)
11	UPARSE	Operational taxonomic unit generation	Edgar (2013)
12	PIPITS	ITS amplicon processing	Gweon et al. (2015)
13	Greengenes	16S rRNA gene classification	DeSantis et al. (2006)
14	Silva	16S rRNA gene classification	Quast et al. (2013)
15	RDP	16S rRNA gene classification	Cole et al. (2014)

community structure. Therefore, a thorough understanding of metagenome analysis is required for establishing a relation between the microbial community and aggregate genomes coming from these microbes present in environmental samples. Moreover, the association between plant and microorganisms was also reported to be asymptomatic (Nissinen et al. 2019), which may complicate the understanding of plant–microbe interaction at times. Nevertheless, the metagenomic studies have been able to uncover the microorganisms which cannot be cultured in routine microbial culture techniques.

Several bioinformatics tools used for metagenomic analysis were reviewed in a recent report (Dubey et al. 2020); however, a few bioinformatics tools routinely used for the analysis of metagenomic data are provided (Table 12.2) in the present chapter. It is noteworthy that a few other molecular methodologies such as metatranscriptomics, metaproteomics, and metabolomics would also complement a metagenomic approach. The metagenomic approach aims to determine the composition of the microbial community in the targeted environment (i.e., the rhizosphere region in this case). The collection of soil samples from the rhizosphere region of the plants present in a temporary location and filed plot may be pooled to make a composite sample and consists of biological replicates. The workflow of metagenome analysis (Flowchart 12.2) involves the extraction of environmental DNA, NGS of environmental samples, and generating sequence reads from which microbial community profile can be elucidated using bioinformatics approaches. The raw reads obtained are initially pre-processed using tools such as FastQC, which



Flowchart 12.2 Showing steps in metagenome sequencing approach

trims low-quality sequences. The pre-processing also involves the removal of adapters and filtering the reads by quality and length and prepares the sequence data for subsequent analysis. After pre-processing, the next step involves classifying each read based on taxa using microbial genomes in the public domain as a reference.

Further downstream analysis explores the diversity of microbial taxa in the sample. Binning and assembly are two essential steps employed during the classification of reads. Binning is the process of genomic clustering sequences into groups for identifying each subset as a taxon. Besides, it may also be investigated about the functional profile of the genes present and expressed in the microbial community. Finally, functional differences between microbial communities are identified. However, as reported by Wu et al. (2018), the information related to the functional capabilities of root-associated microbes was limited. An alternative approach to the above process given in the workflow is that the reads are obtained after quality control is directly sent for taxonomic classification, which avoids assembly process (for more details, please see Breitwieser et al. 2017); however, this depends on the researcher choice.

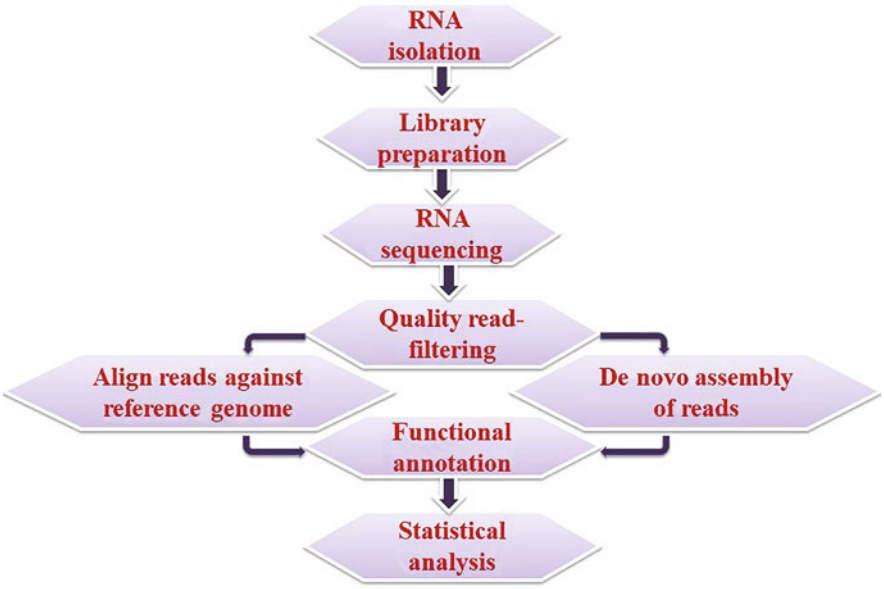
A metagenomic pipeline consisting of bioinformatics tools (Table 12.2) may be helpful in different stages right from improving raw sequences generated initially by the sequencing machines, subjecting them to quality control, and then assembling the sequences and annotation of assembled genomes. When marker genes (16s rRNA) are used for metagenomic studies, these marker genes identify clade-specific bacterial taxa across all samples.

The bacterial population belonging to phylum *Proteobacteria*, *Bacteroidetes*, *Actinobacteria*, *Cyanobacteria*, *Methylobacterium*, and *Flavobacterium* using (Suhaimi et al. 2017; Kumar et al. 2018; Wu et al. 2018; Fuentes et al. 2020; Manoj et al. 2020). However, comparative metagenome studies are useful in revealing environmental perturbations on community structure and community-wide shifts, as reported by Luo et al. (2014) and Simon and Daniel (2009).

The metabolomic profile associated with the microbiome may be a piece of evidence for dependence on environmental factors and provides valuable information about interactions of the microbial community with the host plant. The metagenomic approach not only offers a way to carry out culture-independent genomic analysis of microbial community but also allows identification of novel organisms that are uncultivably present in the environmental samples. The traditional laboratory culture techniques may not identify the microbes as many of them are non-cultivable (Chen and Pachter 2005) and are of anonymous genomic sequences (Aguiar-Pulido et al. 2016). The sequence reads used in metagenomic data analysis can also be downloaded from genomic resources available in the public domain (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genbank/metagenome/). The metagenomic datasets coming from different projects can also be submitted in this portal; for instance, users can register initially as "Environmental BioProject" before preparing the sequence submission to GenBank. If the metagenomics project involves the sequencing of 16S rRNA, it has to be designated as a Targeted Loci BioProject. The information about the project includes a description of the isolation source and the scope of the project. Later, in future correspondence, the user has to use the assigned BioSample ID(s) regarding the metagenomics project. The project allows the submission of either unassembled sequences to NCBI Sequence Read Archive (SRA) or contigs (longer sequences produced by short read assembly) as WGS project. As mentioned above, the raw data used for metagenomic analysis may include partial genomes, or in some cases, it includes supporting sequences such as 16S ribosomal RNAs.

Finally, the metatranscriptomics approach for drawing inferences between functional aspects of microbial communities and their relative abundance is briefly discussed. Metatranscriptomics provides a clue about the dynamics of plant–microbe interactions to characterize active microbes (Bashiardes et al. 2016), discovers novel microbial interactions (Bikel et al. 2015), and also gives an insight of how changes in the environmental conditions shape the microbial community. Metatranscriptomics is also used to characterize members of the microbial community that are responsible for specific functions and identifies the genes playing an essential role in plant–microbe interaction. The main steps involved in this method proceeds with mRNA enrichment, library preparation, and RNA sequencing (Flowchart 12.3). The quality of the data (reads) is improved further by filtering reads in terms of length and sequence quality to obtain quality reads for subsequent downstream analysis. Different workflows used for metatranscriptomics work were provided in a recent review (Shakya et al. 2019).

In summary, the knowledge related to recent molecular approaches, including amplicon sequencing, high-throughput metagenome sequencing and,



Flowchart 12.3 Showing workflow of metatranscriptome

metatranscriptomics, is routinely being utilized to study microbial population associated with different plant species and their functional role/significance at different plant developmental stages. However, this knowledge has to be combined with emerging aspects of the microbiome, such as metaproteomics and meta-metabolomics, to yield fruitful results in understanding various dynamics of the plant microbiome. Besides, it is also essential to leverage information from different training, workshop, and public outreach programs conducted in the field of the plant microbiome.

References

Aguiar-Pulido V, Huang W, Suarez-Ulloa V, Cickovski T et al (2016) Metagenomics, metatranscriptomics, and metabolomics approaches for microbiome analysis. Evol Bioinform Online 12:5–16

Bashiardes S, Zilberman-Schapira G, Elinav E (2016) Use of metatranscriptomics in microbiome research. Bioinform Biol Insights 10:19–25

Bates ST, Berg-Lyons D, Caporaso JG, Walters WA et al (2011) Examining the global distribution of dominant archaeal populations in soil. ISME J 5:908–917

Bikel S, Valdez-Lara A, Cornejo-Granados F, Rico K et al (2015) Combining metagenomics, metatranscriptomics and viromics to explore novel microbial interactions: towards a systems-level understanding of human microbiome. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 13:390–401

Breitwieser FP, Jennifer L, Steven LS (2017) A review of methods and databases for metagenomic classification and assembly. Brief Bioinform 20:1125–1136

Broeckling CD, Broz AK, Bergelson J, Manter DK et al (2008) Root exudates regulate soil fungal community composition and diversity. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:738–744
Callahan BJ, Sankaran K, Fukuyama JA et al (2016) Bioconductor workflow for microbiome data analysis: from raw reads to community analyses. F1000Res 5:1492
Carlton JM, Angiuoli SV, Suh BB, Kooji TW et al (2002) Genome sequence and comparative analysis of the model rodent malaria parasite plasmodium yoelii yoelii. Nature 419(6906): 512–519
Chaparro JM, Badri DV, Vivanco JM (2014) Rhizosphere microbiome assemblage is affected by plant development. ISME J 8(4):790–803
Chen K, Pachter L (2005) Bioinformatics for whole-genome shotgun sequencing of microbial communities. PLoS Comput Biol 1(2):e24
Chen Z, Zheng Y, Ding C, Ren X et al (2017) Integrated metagenomics and molecular ecological network analysis of bacterial community composition during the phytoremediation of cadmium-contaminated soils by bioenergy crops. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 145:111–118
Claesson MJ, Wang Q, O'Sullivan O, Greene-Diniz R et al (2010) Comparison of two next-generation sequencing technologies for resolving highly complex microbiota composition using tandem variable 16S rRNA gene regions. Nucleic Acids Res 38(22):e200
Cole JR, Chai B, Farris RJ, Wang Q et al (2005) The ribosomal database project (RDP-II): sequences and tools for high-throughput rRNA analysis. Nucleic Acids Res 33:D294–D296
Cole JR, Wang Q, Fish JA, Chai B, McGarrell DM, Sun Y, Brown CT, Porras-Alfaro A, Kuske CR, Tiedje JM (2014) Ribosomal database project: data and tools for high throughput rRNA analysis. Nucleic Acids Res 42:D633–D642. https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gkt1244
Deng S, Wipf HM, Pierroz G, Raab TK, Khanna R, Coleman-Derr D (2019) A plant growth-promoting microbial soil amendment dynamically alters the strawberry root bacterial microbiome. Sci Rep 9(1):17677. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-53623-2
DeSantis TZ, Hugenholtz P, Larsen N (2006) Greengenes, a chimera-checked 16S rRNA gene database and workbench compatible with ARB. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:5069–5072
Dubey RK et al (2020) Bioinformatic tools for soil microbiome analysis. In: Unravelling the soil microbiome. Springer briefs in environmental science. Springer International, Cham, pp 61–70
Edgar RC (2013) UPARSE: highly accurate OUT sequences from microbial amplicon reads. Nat Methods 10(10):996–998
Fuentes A, Herrera H, Charles TC, Arriagada C (2020) Fungal and bacterial microbiome associated with the rhizosphere of native plants from the Atacama Desert. Microorganisms 8:209
Glassing A, Dowd SE, Galandiuk S, Davis B et al (2016) Inherent bacterial DNA contamination of extraction and sequencing reagents may affect interpretation of microbiota in low bacterial biomass samples. Gut Pathog 8:24
Gweon HS, Oliver A, Taylor J, Booth T, Gibbs M, Read DS et al (2015) PIPITS: an automated pipeline for analyses of fungal internal transcribed spacer sequences from the Illumina sequencing platform. Methods Ecol Evol 6(8):973–980
Haichar FZ, Marol C, Berge O, Rangel-Castro JI et al (2008) Plant host habitat and root exudates shape soil bacterial community structure. ISME J 2:1221–1230
Kaushal M, Kumar A, Kaushal R (2017) *Bacillus pumilus* strain YSPMK11 as plant growth promoter and biocontrol agent against *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*. 3 Biotech 7:90
Knief C (2014) Analysis of plant microbe interactions in the era of next generation sequencing technologies. Front Plant Sci 5:216
Kuczynski J, Stombaugh J, Walters WA, González R (2011) Using QIIME to analyze 16S rRNA gene sequences from microbial communities. In: Current protocols in bioinformatics. https://doi.org/10.1002/0471250953.bi1007s36
Kumar P, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK (2012) Bacillus strains isolated from rhizosphere showed plant growth promoting and antagonistic activity against phyto-pathogens. Microbiol Res 167: 493–499
Kumar V, AlMomin S, Al-Aqeel H, Al-Salameen F (2018) Metagenomic analysis of rhizosphere microflora of oil-contaminated soil planted with barley and alfalfa. PLoS One 13(8):e0202127

Kwak J, Park J (2018) What we can see from very small size sample of metagenomic sequences. BMC Bioinformatics 19. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12859-018-2431-8

Laserson J, Jojic V, Koller D (2011) Genovo: de novo assembly for metagenomes. J Comput Biol 18(3):429–443

Li R, Zhu H, Ruan J, Qian W, Fang X et al (2010) De novo assembly of human genomes with massively parallel short read sequencing. Genome Res 20:265–272

Li D, Liu CM, Luo R, Sadakane K (2015) MEGAHIT: an ultra-fast single-node solution for large and complex metagenomics assembly via succinct de Bruijn graph. Bioinformatics 31(10): 1674–1676

Lucaciu R, Pelikan C, Gerner SM, Zioutis C et al (2019) A bioinformatics guide to plant microbiome analysis. Front Plant Sci 10:1313

Luo C, Rodriguez RLM, Johnston ER, Wu L et al (2014) Soil microbial community responses to a decade of warming as revealed by comparative metagenomics. Appl Environ Microbiol 80: 1777–1786

Manoj K, George M, Rony S (2020) Metagenomic insights of the root colonizing microbiome associated with symptomatic and non-symptomatic bananas in fusarium wilt infected fields. Plan Theory 2020(9):263

Mendes LW, Kuramae EE, Navarrete AA, van Veen JA (2014) Taxonomical and functional microbial community selection in soybean rhizosphere. ISME J 8(8):1577–1587

Namiki T, Hachiya T, Tanaka H, Sakakibara Y (2012) MetaVelvet : an extension of velvet assembler to *de novo* metagenome assembly from short sequence reads. Nucleic Acids Res 40(20):e155

Neeru N, Kothe E, Behl RK (2009) Role of root exudates in plant-microbe interactions. J Appl Bot Food Qual 82:122–130

Nilsson RH, Anslan S, Bahram M, Wurzbacher C et al (2019) Mycobiome diversity: high-throughput sequencing and identification of fungi. Nat Rev Microbiol 17(2):95–109

Nissinen R, Helander M, Kumar M, Saikkonen K (2019) Heritable Epichloë symbiosis shapes plant fungal but not bacterial communities. Sci Rep 9:5253

Partida-Martinez LP, Heil M (2011) The microbe-free plant: fact or artifact? Front Plant Sci 2:100

Patel RK, Jain M (2012) NGS QC toolkit: a toolkit for quality control of next generation sequencing data. PLoS One 7(2):e30619

Quast C, Pruesse E, Yilmaz P, Gerken J, Schweer T, Yarza P, Peplies J, Glöckner FO (2013) The SILVA ribosomal RNA gene database project: improved data processing and web-based tools. Nucleic Acids Res:D590–D596. https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks1219

Rudrappa T, Czymmek KJ, Pare PW, Bais HP (2008) Root-secreted malic acid recruits beneficial soil bacteria. Plant Physiol 148:1547–1556

Saleem M, Law AD, Sahib MR, Pervaiz ZH et al (2018) Impact of root system architecture on rhizosphere and root microbiome. Rhizosphere 6:47–51

Schmidt TM, DeLong EF, Pace NR (1991) Analysis of a marine picoplankton community by 16S rRNA gene cloning and sequencing. J Bacteriol 173(14):4371–4378

Shakya M, Lo CC, Chain PSG (2019) Advances and challenges in metatranscriptomic analysis. Front Genet 10:904

Simon C, Daniel R (2009) Achievements and new knowledge unraveled by metagenomic approaches. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85:265–276

Stein JL, Marsh TL, Wu KY, Shizuya H et al (1996) Characterization of uncultivated prokaryotes: isolation and analysis of analysis of a 40-kilobase pair genome fragment from a planktonic marine archaeon. J Bacteriol 178:591–529

Suhaimi NSM, Goh SY, Ajam N, Othman RY (2017) Diversity of microbiota associated with symptomatic and non-symptomatic bacterial wilt-diseased banana plants determined using 16S rRNA metagenome sequencing. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 33:168

Unno Y, Shinano T (2013) Metagenomic analysis of the rhizosphere soil microbiome with respect to phytic acid utilization. Microbes Environ 28(1):120–127

Wenhan Z, Alex L, Mark B (2010) Ab initio gene identification in metagenomic sequences. Nucleic Acids Res 38:e13

Wood DE, Salzberg SL (2014) Kraken: ultrafast metagenomic sequence classification using exact alignments. Genome Biol 15(3):R46

Wu L, Wang J, Wu H, Chen J et al (2018) Comparative metagenomic analysis of rhizosphere microbial community composition and functional potentials under Rehmannia glutinosa consecutive monoculture. Int J Mol Sci 19(8):2394

Yurgel SN, Douglas GM, Comeau AM, Mammoliti M et al (2017) Variation in bacterial and eukaryotic communities associated with natural and managed wild blueberry habitats. Phytobioms J 1:102–113

Yurgel SN, Douglas GM, Dusault A, Percival D et al (2018) Dissecting community structure in wild blueberry root and soil microbiome. Front Microbiol 9:1187

Yuzhen Y, Jeong-Hyeon C, Haixu T (2011) RAPSearch: a fast protein similarity search tool for short reads BMC. Bioinformatics 12:159

Zaheer R, Noyes N, Ortega Polo R, Cook SR, Marinier E, Van Domselaar G, Belk KE, Morley PS, McAllister TA (2018) Impact of sequencing depth on the characterization of the microbiome and resistome. Sci Rep 8(1):5890. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-018-24280-8

13 Nitty-Gritty into the Plant Microbiomes: Understanding Microbial Niche Associations and Dynamics in Various Plant Parts

Gandham Sandeep Kumar, Sholapuri Payani, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, and G. V. Swarnalatha

Abstract

The plant microbiome, which can be found in every accessible tissue of healthy plants, is made up of a diverse collection of microorganisms that are classified according to their taxonomy. Plants with plant-associated microbiomes have improved growth, nutrient uptake, stress tolerance, and disease resistance, among other characteristics. Microbes associated with plants show several genetic, biochemical, physical, and metabolic links, all of which have implications for plant health. Beyond identifying information gaps and potential initiatives, we are investigating how a plant's microbiome can be influenced by these interactions, which can then alter the plant's ability to absorb nutrients and stay healthy.

Keywords

Plant microbiomes · Microbiota · Abiotic · Agriculture

G. S. Kumar · S. Payani
Division of Molecular Biology, Department of Zoology, Sri Venkateswara University, Tirupati, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

G. V. Swarnalatha (✉)
Department of Biochemistry, Rayalaseema University, Kurnool, Andhra Pradesh, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_13

13.1 Introduction

The composition of the plant microbiome is bacteria, fungus, protists, nematode worms, and viruses. In their natural habitats, these bacteria create complex connections with plants, increasing plant productivity and health. Some argue that plants and bacteria constitute a "holobiont," with plant and bacterial evolution symbiotic. This is yet to be confirmed. The bulk of species in complex plant microbiological communities has deep branching lines and poor phylogenetic resolution. High-throughput sequencing allows us to better understand plant and environmental microbes. The phrase "core microbiota" refers to a set of bacteria that are constantly found around a single host in varying conditions (Lemanceau et al. 2017). Plant-associated microorganisms include archaea, algae, and nematodes, as well as bacteria and fungi. Plant-associated microbiome genes have aided our understanding of bacterial adaptation to plants. Many questions remain unresolved about how plants and microorganisms interact in communities.

The microbiome of a plant contains beneficial, neutral, and even harmful microbes. Plant development, nutrient uptake, and disease resistance have all been linked to microbial populations (Gouda et al. 2018). Microbial communities related to plants have beneficial features, but these benefits cannot be anticipated from individual member traits. Many elements are at play here, including the dynamics of pathogen populations and their interactions with the plant microbiome environments (Trivedi et al. 2017).

Microbes can assist their host plants in several ways, including nitrogen fixation, water conservation, disease protection, antibiosis, and hydrolytic enzyme production. However, improving a plant's resistance responses gives an indirect benefit. Researchers believe that plant-associated microbe interactions are a way of producing new phenotypes that can survive in a variety of situations (Trivedi et al. 2020). This is because the microbiome of plants influences several plant properties. It is possible to create synthetic communities (SynComs) of microorganisms that assist plant growth in greenhouse or field conditions. A brief overview of plant microbiomes is provided in this chapter, as well as information on microbiome types appropriate for each plant part and also on cultivational, abiotic stress factors on the molecular structures of plant microbiomes.

13.2 The Microbiome Composition of Plants

The microorganisms in microbiota are found in tissues that are intimately linked to plants. In terms of mineral and nutrient uptake, tolerance to stress, immunological regulation, and resistance to disease, plant microbiomes promote the genetic and metabolic performance of the host plant (Liu et al. 2020). Algae, bacteria, fungi, oomycetes, and archaea are important plant microbiomes. The majority of research data is accessible on bacteria (bacteriome) and to a lesser extent on fungi (mycobiome). Plant-microbiome interaction offers both merits and disadvantages. Some microbiomes promote plant growth, whereas others are harmful and neutral

(Glick 2020). The plant microbiota comprises a diverse range of species that are transported horizontally and vertically through the soil environment and seeds, respectively (Trivedi et al. 2020). Plant productivity enhancement mediated by microbiomes is a superb platform for a modern green revolution.

Plant species have a vast range of microbiome compositions (Chaparro et al. 2014), genotypes (Bressan et al. 2009), and even in highly similar plants with minor genetic changes, such as transgenics (Badri et al. 2009). An organism's microbiome can be significantly altered by abiotic stress (drought, salinity, temperature, and UV radiation, among other things) (Lin et al. 2016).

13.3 Diverse Microbial Niches in Various Plant Parts

Plants are connected to the majority of microbes in the indigenous ecosystem, and they interact with a wide variety of systems. The highly varied plant system seems to have a better degree of microbial diversity (Mahnert et al. 2015). Decomposition of leaves and branches, as well as the discharge of root exudates, can affect microbial diversity (Millard and Singh 2010). Plants regulate multiple processes in this environment to attract or deter microorganisms from the bulk soil microbiome. The microbiological diversity of the bulk soil is directly related to the effectiveness of these selective mechanisms. The differences in properties of plant-microbe interactions in natural and agricultural ecosystems are depicted in Fig. 13.1.

Plant diversity represents varied root systems and exudate composition along with high microbial diversity. In a natural ecosystem, plants rely on microbiomes for nutritional supplements and protection. The agricultural field, on the contrary, has a low diversity of species of plants and a monotonous exhibition of roots and exudates. This lowers the microbiological diversity. A greater number of investigations are there on the microbiomes of plants found in forest ecosystems of extreme environments (Jorquera et al. 2016), in normal forest trees (Bonito et al. 2014), or in plants with different strengths such as *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Zolla et al. 2013) and medicinal plants. Recent data indicate that some core phytomicrobiome species are present in the majority of samples of a specified plant species, despite geographical and environmental situations (Hamonts et al. 2018). Plants are highly focused on

Fig. 13.1 Differences in plant and microbe traits and microbial interactions in natural ecosystems and agricultural fields

selecting the microbiota from the atmosphere (flower environment), the troposphere (external environment of fruits), and the phyllosphere (external environment of aerial plant parts and germinated seeds (Hardoim 2015). *Actinobacteria*, *Firmicutes*, *Bacteroidetes*, and *Proteobacteria* appear to predominate in aboveground portions (branch, leaf, flower, and seed) (Steven et al. 2018). The largest reservoir of microbial habitats is the rhizosphere microbiome. *Planctomycetes*, *Verrucomicrobia*, *Acetobacteria*, and *Gemmatimonadetes* are the dominant bacteria in the root microbiome, according to previous research.

13.4 Microbiomes of Plant Parts in the Rhizosphere

13.4.1 The Microbiome of the Roots

Root-associated microbiomes have an important function in providing nutrition, immunity, and long-term viability in a tough environment (Fitzpatrick et al. 2018). Root microbiomes are thought to serve a similar and broad function in plant health and fitness as gut microbiomes do in humans, including the supply of nutrients, defense from pests and diseases, and adaptability to stress (Singh et al. 2018). The plant primarily selects the root microbiomes by structural reforms and by secretion of carbohydrates, amino, and organic acids through the root exudation. The rhizobiome serves as a magnet for soil bacteria, attracting or repelling them to the plant. The relationship between soil bacteria and roots is regulated by root exudates. Monosaccharides (fructose, mannose, and glucose), disaccharides (maltose), five carbon (arabinose), and oligosaccharides are among the sugar molecules found in root exudates. Microbes, on the other hand, select plants based on their expandability and capability for resources, as well as their potential to offer tolerance to abiotic and biotic challenges (Trivedi et al. 2020). The amino acids; organic acids such as benzoic, ferulic, and ascorbic acids; and some tannins, flavonoids, steroids, terpenes, etc. are found in exudates of roots and play an imperative role in microbiome selection and recruitment.

Because of their role as a microbial seed bank for plants and interactions with soil, root-associated microbiomes (e.g., endosphere) are extraordinarily diverse (e.g., endosphere). In-plant roots, *Actinobacteria*, *Proteobacteria*, and *Bacteroidetes*, are prominent microbial components (Hacquard et al. 2015). Several studies of root microbiomes have confirmed the enrichment reports mentioned above and the reduction reports on plant root microbial taxa including maize, *Arabidopsis*, lettuce, barley, sugarcane, and rice (Cordero et al. 2020). The schematic representation of communities of microbe fluctuation within plant root and different parts of soil is shown in Fig. 13.2 (Glick and Gamalero 2021).

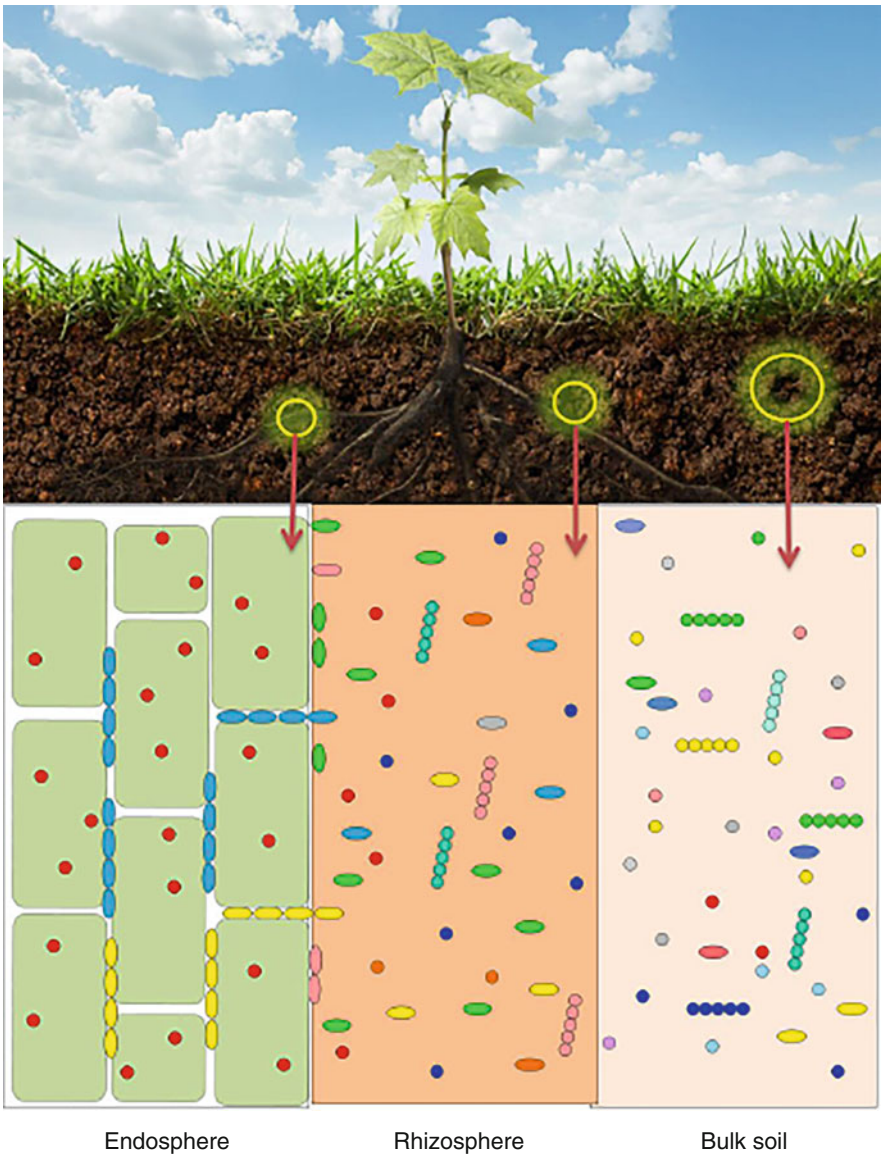


Fig. 13.2 A schematic representation of several microorganisms found in the endosphere, rhizosphere, and bulk soil of plants (Glick and Gamalero 2021)

13.4.2 The Microbiomes of Aboveground Plant Components

The phyllosphere of plants has diverse microorganisms. This diversity depends on the exudation of trichomes, wax layers, and secondary metabolites of the plant (Remus-Emsermann and Schlechter 2018). The exterior portion of the leaf, flower,

stem, and their endosphere makes up the microbial habitats. The nectar microbiomes, which interact with pollinators, are shown to impact pollinator behavior and health and are thus gaining more study interest (Liu et al. 2019). Surface phyllosphere microbiome cultivar-dependent selection can be affected by abiotic variables such as humidity, increasing radiation levels, temperature fluctuations, nutrient accessibility, and genetic composition of plants in both direct and indirect ways (Singh et al. 2019). Enzymes, phytohormones, biocontrol agents, and other metabolic products generated by seed-borne endophytes enhance the productivity and efficiency of a plant under stressful circumstances (Mukherjee et al. 2020b). The restoring seed microbiome results in the improvement of plant growth (Mukherjee et al. 2020a).

13.4.3 Can Seed Microbiomes Influence Plant Health?

Seeds are the most important products in most farmed crops, beneficial for human consumption as well as for crop cultivation. The seed microbiome contains a vast range of microbial species that can influence plant health through symbiosis, interspecific cooperation, commensalism, and harmful interactions (Links et al. 2014). Individual plant species have particular microbial species on a surface within the seed that act as a microbiome pool for the plant's endophytic microbiome. The predominant phyla of microbial groups mentioned above can colonize seeds. Seed microbiomes vary in richness of microbes and composition based on numerous environmental factors, including abiotic and biotic factors (Klaedtke et al. 2016).

Phyla *Actinobacteria*, *Proteobacteria*, *Bacteroidetes*, and *Firmicutes* evolved a vast spectrum of microbial taxa from their original seeds (Johnston-Monje et al. 2016). Alfalfa and *Cucurbita pepo* seed microbiomes are dominated by *Proteobacteria*, *Actinobacteria*, and *Firmicutes*, according to other studies (Adam et al. 2018). Plant species, soil, and environmental conditions all influence seed microbiome formation (Nelson 2018). Endophytic mycobiota for germinating seeds is derived from seed fungal endophytes, which are dominated by *Ascomycota* (Raj et al. 2019). According to Vujanovic et al. (2019), seed microbiome components can be transferred to direction perpendicular from one generation to the next, but the mechanism of seed microbiome congregation and the ecological process of seed microbiome remain a mystery.

Enzymes, phytohormones, biological controls, and other byproducts generated by seed-borne endophytes improve plant productivity and effectiveness under stressful environments. Previous research has shown that restoring seed microorganisms in plants with different plant growth-promoting treatments can boost the plant development in chickpeas (Mukherjee et al. 2020a). A great deal of potential exists in the use of seed microbiome to manage abiotic or biotic challenges and, as a result, boost crop output. According to a recent discovery, flower inoculation is a well-developed method for testing scientific questions and in the future also for exploiting microbiomes of seed for long-term agriculture (Mitter et al. 2017).

13.4.4 Flower Microbiomes in Plant Reproductive Success

The environment of flower microbiomes has a critical role in the persistent viability of essential ecosystem facilities, as well as with reproductive potential of plant and communication with useful insects. Flower-associated microbial communities, on the other hand, are far less linked to the microbiome of the phyllosphere (Massoni et al. 2020). The flower microbiome's heterogeneity and diversity are far lower than that of the phyllosphere microbiome. Owing to the nutrient-rich and excessive osmotic potential of the nectar present in the flower, *Bacteroidetes*, *Proteobacteria*, and *Firmicutes* are the most common taxa detected in floral microbiomes, which differ from root and leaf microbiomes. Aside from that, the flower has an open habitat that allows microorganisms, both pathogenic and plant probiotics, to spread through insects and other animals (Kim et al. 2019).

Floral microbiomes also provide insight into the overall ecology of microbial community which can be used as models to study microbiological construction and survivorship. Finally, knowing the repercussions of flower microbial communities throughout the plant's entire lifecycle, from inflorescence to fruit to endosperm and thereafter to a normal adult, will help researchers determine whether vertical flower microbiota transmission is feasible and prevalent, as well as which floral communities behave as native reservoirs for microbiota of plant in general.

13.4.5 Leaf Microbiome Modulates the Host Plant Immune System

The microbiome found in the leaf is an important element of the plant that regulates transpiration and photosynthesis which inturn on plant development and expansion. As a result, the microbiome on the leaf can modify the plant's functional qualities to protect it from changing surroundings and weather patterns. Toju et al. (2019) discovered that *Alphaproteobacteria* (*Sphingomonas* and *Methylobacterium*) exhibited more controlling leaf-associated bacterial associations in the tomato plant, while Bai et al. (2015) discovered that *Gammaproteobacteria* (*Pseudomonas* sp.) proved more controlling bacterial leaf associations in non-cultivating and cultivating plants. In most leaf microbiomes, the phylum *Proteobacteria* has been found. Leaf microbiomes of rice plants are identified as *Burkholderia*, *Pseudomonas*, *Xanthomonas*, and *Mycoplasma* (Roman-Reyna et al. 2020). *Epicoccum* was discovered to be the most abundant genus among ancient plants. In the microbiome of tomato leaves, ascomycete and basidiomycete fungi were shown to be more colonized. Similarly, the fungus taxa *Moesziomyces*, *Hannaella*, *Cladosporium*, and *Dioszegia* were found in abundance in the tomato leaf microbiome (Toju et al. 2019). Leaf microbes are resistant to abiotic stress factors (Crombie et al. 2018). However, the overstressed and degraded state of the leaf renders these environments selective to specific bacteria. Colonization development may be dependent on a range of microbial activities, including the ability to take nutrients and creation of biofilm from the environment (Streletskii et al. 2019). Plant fitness is influenced by leaf microorganisms under abiotic stress circumstances such as harmful UV

radiation, oxidative stress, and dehydration, and they can use vitamins on the surface of leaves (Yoshida et al. 2019). The aboveground tissue plant growth and immune system of the host plant are modulated by leaf microbial communities (Stone et al. 2018).

13.5 Root-Shoot Circuit Microbiota Promotes Plant Stress Resistance

Endophytic bacteria have been found in the shoot material of several plants, according to research. Communities of *Sphingomonas*, *Methylobacterium*, and *Curtobacterium* are more limited in sugarcane stalks, according to Hamonts et al. (2018). The biomass of *Sedum alfredii* shoots increased twofold after vertical transmission in irradiated soil, according to Luo et al. (2019). *Sedum alfredii* shoot biomass is significantly connected to a dominant set of microbial linkages from *Streptomycetaceae*, *Nocardioidaceae*, and *Nocardioidaceae*. To spread vertically, these endophytes can grow primarily in the shoot meristem of newly generated shoot tissue (Shahzad et al. 2018). Bidirectional microbiota-root-shoot interactions are expected to play a substantial impact on plant health because plant root microbiota governs the host development and immunological systems (Hacquard et al. 2015). Researchers (Stassen et al. 2021) predict that by year 2020, there will be a prominent enhancement in the number of people with autism spectrum disorder (ASD). Root-shoot microbiota circuit helps plants cope with stress to get a better grasp of how signals from microbes in the soil and the environment aboveground interact to influence plant behavior.

13.6 Plant and Microbe: Molecular Interactions

There are both living and nonliving elements in bulk soil that interact frequently to preserve ecosystem equilibrium. Rhizosphere shows interactions between two plants or two microbes and between a plant and microbe (Richardson and Simpson 2011). Decomposition of organic debris, recycling of nutrients, toxicity removal, suppression of pathogens, and noxious species are all facilitated by the soil microbiome (Singh 2015a, b). A symbiotic and defensive link between plants and bacteria is commonly regarded as a result of molecular signaling. Both plant- and microbe-derived signaling molecules are implicated in plant-microbe interactions. As a result, the signaling molecule consists of both primary and secondary metabolites (e.g., carbohydrates, proteins, and organic acids). Bacteria and fungi release substances like auxins and cytokines that affect cell proliferation and root system architecture, resulting in increased water absorption and lateral root hair growth (Ortíz-Castro et al. 2009). Acyl-acetoin and 2,3-butanediol are the bacterial volatile chemicals that act as the signaling molecules for plant-microbial communication and hence stimulate plant growth promoters (Ortíz-Castro et al. 2009). Bacterial exudates emit citrate, oxalate, and malate, which work as detoxifiers in the rhizosphere to remove

aluminum toxicity. The plant's ability to endure aluminum toxicity is enhanced by the organic acids produced by the bacterial community (Ma et al. 2001). Lipopolysaccharides are produced by the plant as a result of the release of flavonoids, which communicate with the rhizobia-legume signal transduction pathway (2010). *Fusarium oxysporum*, a soil-dwelling plant pathogen, grows in the roots of the tomato host plant when class III peroxidases are active, as shown by Turrà et al. (*Solanum lycopersicum*). There are a wide variety of signaling molecules and their specific roles in microbial communities, which enhances the communication between plants and microorganisms.

13.7 Impact of Plant Microbiomes on Biological and Non-Biological Variables

13.7.1 Pathogens

Plant phytoconstituents reduce plant infections, acting as antibiotics that inhibit the diseases' growth and reproduction. Many bacterial and fungal diseases, larvae, and insects are vulnerable to phytohormones and phytoconstituents in recent times. By reactivating dormant microbiota and producing phytohormones, these plant microbiomes are involved in offering protection against infections and biotic stress (Figuerola et al. 2015). Resistance to the fungus *Gaeumannomyces graminis* was established by inoculating barley with *Pseudomonas* species, which function as antagonists and protect the plant from infections (Rodriguez et al. 2019). *Rhizophagus irregularis*, an AM fungus, increased *Medicago truncatula*'s resistance to *Xanthomonas campestris*, and rhizobia enhanced its resistance to *Erysiphe pisi* (Smigielski et al. 2019).

13.7.2 Abiotic Stress

Microbial communities subjected to natural environmental conditions affect the evolution of microbiomes in varied forms (Tripathi et al. 2017). There were distinct microbial communities in the rhizospheres of plants grown in different climates. Arid ecosystems, on the other hand, lack diversity in taxonomic and functional variety. The microbiota of the rhizosphere differs significantly among soil types and nations, and these differences in taxonomic richness and structure were found to be exacerbated by the effects of environmental alterations on diverse microbiomes. The pH of the soil was found to be a significant factor in taxonomic diversity and structure (Simonin et al. 2020). Abiotic factors that affect microorganisms, such as drought, are critical. As a result of soil osmotic stress, nutrients are unable to move freely, and oxygen cannot get to the soil. *Actinobacteria* and *Chloroflexi* are among the microbes that are more prevalent in the rhizospheres of drought-resistant plants, but *Acetobacteria* and *Deltaproteobacteria* are less prevalent. A rise in the number of *Acetobacteria* was seen in the root microbiome when drought circumstances

prevailed (Fitzpatrick et al. 2018). In part, it is due to a decrease in the affluence of antagonistic microbes such as *Streptomycetes*, *Micrococcaceae*, and *Mycobacteriaceae*, which change their microbe community and reduce their disease suppression rate. The bacterial community in the microbiome is profoundly affected by temperature variations, which aids in disease suppression (van der Voort et al. 2016). Radiation changes leaf bacterial populations by damaging the DNA of microbes. Some bacteria can withstand high levels of ultraviolet radiation due to the existence of pigments and mucopolysaccharides and the production of spores (Kumar et al. 2019).

13.8 Sustainable Agricultural Practices for Enhanced Productivity

Plant microbiomes are constantly changing as a result of regular agricultural practices. Changes in soil properties are to blame for this phenomenon. Directly stimulating or inhibiting the microbiota's activity, depending on dietary preferences, is one way it can influence it while trying to interfere with the way plants select microorganisms is another (Cai et al. 2016). The protection of microbial flora is becoming increasingly important as sustainable technology gains traction around the world. Plant microbial communities need to be studied extensively to understand their importance and influence on their structure. The bacterial microbiome of Yebra mate is altered by the use of agroforestry and the application of the green manure system, whereas monoculture cultivation results in an abundance of fungal microbiome development (Bergottini et al. 2017). Plant microbiomes are frequently altered as a result of routine agricultural practices. Soil characteristics change as a result of this effect. Depending on the diet, it can either stimulate or impede the microbiota's activity, or it can interfere with the way plants select microorganisms indirectly (Cai et al. 2016). There is a pressing need to protect microbial flora as sustainable technology takes the root in agriculture around the world. Plant microbial community structure must be studied extensively to understand its importance and influence. While the Yebra mate bacterial microbiome grows in abundance when grown in a monoculture, the agroforestry systems and green manure usage change the bacterial microbiome structures (Bergottini et al. 2017).

In comparison to the usual cultivation system, the use of organic compost and rotational cultivation for crops enhances the phylogenic, microbial, and bacterial diversity of the soil. *Fusarium* pathogens are inhibited by the use of mulch in the potato's rhizosphere, which increases fungal diversity (Qin et al. 2017). Nitrogen fertilizer application is a common practice in agriculture, and understanding the microbiome's response to nitrogen fertilizer application is critical. *Bacillales*, *Rhodocyclales*, and *Nitrosomonadales*, all of which play a role in nitrogen cycling, are impacted by nitrogen fertilizer use (Zhu et al. 2016). For more than a decade, long-term monoculture alters the structure of soil microbiomes. A decline in *Firmicutes* in non-rhizospheric soil was observed in studies on black pepper conducted over a four-decade period that showed monoculture increased bacterial

phyla levels in the rhizosphere (Li et al. 2016). Beneficial bacterial population reduction is depicted to have increased rhizosphere *Fusarium* population. Crop rotation between black pepper and banana has been shown to reduce *Fusarium oxysporum* pathogens while increasing the microbiome structure composed of *Gemmatimonas*, *Sphingobium*, *Sphingomonas*, *Penicillium*, and *Chaetomium*. Seed microbiomes alfalfa (Lopez et al. 2017) and *Cucurbita pepo* (Adam et al. 2018) were found to be predominated by *Proteobacteria*, *Actinobacteria*, and *Firmicutes* in other studies (Fig. 13.2). Soil, environmental conditions, and plant species all influence the seed microbiome's composition (Nelson 2018). Sugar beets have a very limited microbial genetic diversity, whereas wild plants have a much more diverse bacterial community (Zachow et al. 2014).

13.9 Future Perspectives and Conclusions

We can boost a plant's productivity by inoculating the soil with a microbial community that we know everything about, thanks to our detailed knowledge of its microbiome. Cultivating a variety of plant species in the same location is one traditional method of increasing microbial diversity. The microbiota of plants is essential for their survival in addition to the basic nutritional needs of plants. When cultivating and harvesting plants, the plant mycobiome is one of the most important aspects to consider. Under both living and nonliving stress conditions, the plant's microbial community provides protection. To better understand and help plants, more research into the microbiome interactions is required. Plants need microbiota in addition to their basic nutritional and other needs to thrive. Cultivated and wild plants alike must consider the plant mycobiome. Plant defenses are assisted by the microbiome in both biotic and abiotic stress situations. To better understand and improve the lives of plants, researchers need to study the interactions between plant microbiomes in greater detail.

References

Adam E, Bernhart M, Müller H, Winkler J, Berg G (2018) The Cucurbita pepo seed microbiome: genotype-specific composition and implications for breeding. Plant and Soil 422:35–49. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11104-016-3113-9

Badri DV, Quintana N, El Kassis EG, Kim HK, Choi YH, Sugiyama A, Verpoorte R, Martinoia E, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2009) An ABC transporter mutation alters root exudation of phytochemicals that provoke an overhaul of natural soil microbiota. Plant Physiol 151(4): 2006–2017

Bai Y, Müller DB, Srinivas G, Garrido-Oter R, Potthoff E, Rott M, Dombrowski N, Münch PC, Spaepen S, Remus-Emsermann M, Huttel B (2015) Functional overlap of the Arabidopsis leaf and root microbiota. Nature 528(7582):364–369

Bergottini VM, Hervé V, Sosa DA, Otegui MB, Zapata PD, Junier P (2017) Exploring the diversity of the root-associated microbiome of Ilex paraguariensis St. Hil.(yerba mate). Appl Soil Ecol 109:23–31

Bonito G, Reynolds H, Robeson MS, Nelson J, Hodkinson BP, Tuskan G, Schadt CW, Vilgalys R (2014) Plant host and soil origin influence fungal and bacterial assemblages in the roots of woody plants. Mol Ecol 23(13):3356–3370

Bressan M, Roncato MA, Bellvert F, Comte G, Haichar FE, Achouak W, Berge O (2009) Exogenous glucosinolate produced by Arabidopsis thaliana has an impact on microbes in the rhizosphere and plant roots. ISME J 3(11):1243–1257

Cai J, Zhang L, Jones RA, Correll JB, Hatzakis E, Smith PB, Gonzalez FJ, Patterson AD (2016) Antioxidant drug tempol promotes functional metabolic changes in the Gut Microbiota. J Proteome Res 15:563–571

Chaparro JM, Badri DV, Vivanco JM (2014) Rhizosphere microbiome assemblage is affected by plant development. ISME J 8(4):790–803

Cordero J, de Freitas JR, Germida JJ (2020) Bacterial microbiome associated with the rhizosphere and root interior of crops in Saskatchewan, Canada. Can J Microbiol 66(1):71–85. https://doi.org/10.1139/cjm-2019-0330

Crombie AT, Larke-Mejia NL, Emery H, Dawson R, Pratscher J, Murphy GP, McGenity TJ, Murrell JC (2018) Poplar phyllosphere harbors disparate isoprene-degrading bacteria. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 115:13081–13086

Figuerola EL, Guerrero LD, Türkowsky D, Wall LG, Erijman L (2015) Crop monoculture rather than agriculture reduces the spatial turnover of soil bacterial communities at a regional scale. Environ Microbiol 17(3):678–688

Fitzpatrick CR, Copeland J, Wang PW, Guttman DS, Kotanen PM, Johnson MT (2018) Assembly and ecological function of the root microbiome across angiosperm plant species. Proc Natl Acad Sci 115(6):E1157–E1165

Glick BR (2020) Phytoremediation. In: Beneficial plant-bacterial interactions. Springer, Cham, pp 319–359

Glick BR, Gamalero E (2021) Recent developments in the study of plant microbiomes. Microorganisms 9(7):1533

Gouda S et al (2018) Revitalization of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for sustainable development in agriculture. Microbiol Res 206:131–140

Hacquard S, Garrido-Oter R, Gonzalez A, Spaepen S, Ackermann G, Lebeis S, McHardy AC, Dangl JL, Knight R, Ley R (2015) Microbiota and host nutrition across plant and animal kingdoms. Cell Host Microbe 17:603–616

Hamonts K, Trivedi P, Garg A, Janitz C, Grinyer J, Holford P, Singh BK (2018) Field study reveals core plant microbiota and relative importance of their drivers. Environ Microbiol 20:124–140. https://doi.org/10.1111/1462-2920.14031

Hardoim PR (2015) Heading to the origins-Rice microbiome as functional extension of the host. J Rice Res 3:1–3. https://doi.org/10.4172/2375-4338.1000133

Johnston-Monje D, Lundberg DS, Lazarovits G, Reis VM, Raizada MN (2016) Bacterial populations in juvenile maize rhizospheres originate from both seed and soil. Plant and Soil 405(1–2):337–355

Jorquera MA, Maruyama F, Ogram AV, Navarrete OU, Lagos LM, Inostroza NG, Acuña JJ, Rilling JI, de La Luz MM (2016) Rhizobacterial community structures associated with native plants grown in Chilean extreme environments. Microb Ecol 72(3):633–646

Kim DR, Cho G, Jeon CW, Weller DM, Thomashow LS, Paulitz TC, Kwak YS (2019) A mutualistic interaction between Streptomyces bacteria, strawberry plants and pollinating bees. Nat Commun 10(1):1–10. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-

Klaedtke S, Jacques MA, Raggi L, Preveaux A, Bonneau S, Negri V, Chable V, Barret M (2016) Terroir is a key driver of seed-associated microbial assemblages. Environ Microbiol 18(6):1792–1804

Kumar I, Mondal M, Gurusamy R, Balakrishnan S, Natarajan S (2019) Plant-microbiome interaction and the effects of biotic and abiotic components in agroecosystem. In: Microbial interventions in agriculture and environment. Springer, Singapore, pp 517–546

Lemanceau P, Blouin M, Muller D, Moënne Loccoz Y (2017) Let the core microbiota be functional. Trends Plant Sci 22:583–595

Li Z, Zu C, Wang C, Yang J, Yu H, Wu H (2016) Different responses of rhizosphere and non-rhizosphere soil microbial communities to consecutive Piper nigrum L. monoculture. Sci Rep 6(1):1–8

Lin H, Jin D, Freitag TE, Sun W, Yu Q, Fu J, Ma J (2016) A compositional shift in the soil microbiome induced by tetracycline, sulfamonomethoxine and ciprofloxacin entering a plant-soil system. Environ Pollut 212:440–448

Links MG, Demeke T, Gräfenhan T, Hill JE, Hemmingsen SM, Dumonceaux TJ (2014) Simultaneous profiling of seed-associated bacteria and fungi reveals antagonistic interactions between microorganisms within a shared epiphytic microbiome on Triticum and Brassica seeds. New Phytol 202(2):542–553

Liu H, Macdonald CA, Cook J, Anderson IC, Singh BK (2019) An ecological loop: host microbiomes across multitrophic interactions. Trends Ecol Evol 34:1118–1130. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tree.2019.07.011

Liu H, Brettell LE, Qiu Z, Singh BK (2020) Microbiome-mediated stress resistance in plants. Trends Plant Sci 25(8):733–743

Lopez JL, Alvarez F, Príncipe A, Salas ME, Lozano MJ, Draghi WO, Lagares A (2017) Isolation, taxonomic analysis, and phenotypic characterization of bacterial endophytes present in alfalfa (Medicago sativa) seeds. J Biotechnol 267:55–62. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbiotec.2017.12.020

Luo J, Tao Q, Jupa R, Liu Y, Wu K, Song Y, Li J, Huang Y, Zou L, Liang Y, Li T (2019) Role of vertical transmission of shoot endophytes in root-associated microbiome assembly and heavy metal hyperaccumulation in sedum alfredii. Environ Sci Technol 53(12):6954–6963. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.est.9b01093

Ma JF, Ryan PR, Delhaize E (2001) Aluminium tolerance in plants and the complexing role of organic acids. Trends Plant Sci 6:273–278

Mahnert A, Moissl-Eichinger C, Berg G (2015) Microbiome interplay: plants alter microbial abundance and diversity within the built environment. Front Microbiol 28(6):887

Massoni J, Bortfeld-Miller M, Jardillier L, Salazar G, Sunagawa S, Vorholt JA (2020) Consistent host and organ occupancy of phyllosphere bacteria in a community of wild herbaceous plant species. ISME J 14(1):245–258. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41396-019-0531-8

Millard P, Singh BK (2010) Does grassland vegetation drive soil microbial diversity? Nutr Cycl Agroecosyst 88(2):147–158

Mitter B, Pfaffenbichler N, Flavell R, Compant S, Antonielli L, Petric A (2017) A new approach to modify plant microbiomes and traits by introducing beneficial bacteria at flowering into progeny seeds. Front Microbiol 8:11. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2017.00011

Mukherjee A, Singh B, Verma JP (2020a) Harnessing chickpea (Cicer arietinum L.) seed endophytes for enhancing plant growth attributes and bio-controlling against fusarium sp. Microbiol Res 237:126469. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micres.2020.126469

Mukherjee A, Gaurav AK, Chouhan GK, Jaiswal DK, Verma JP (2020b) Plant specific microbiome for environmental stress management: issues and challenges. In: New and future developments in microbial biotechnology and bioengineering phytomicrobiome for sustainable agriculture. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 91–101. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-444-64325-4.00009-2

Nelson EB (2018) The seed microbiome: origins, interactions, and impacts. Plant and Soil 422(1): 7–34

Ortíz-Castro R, Contreras-Cornejo HA, Macías-Rodríguez L, López-Bucio J (2009) The role of microbial signals in plant growth and development. Plant Signal Behav 4:701–712

Qin S, Yeboah S, Xu X, Liu Y, Yu B (2017) Analysis on fungal diversity in rhizosphere soil of continuous cropping potato subjected to different furrow-ridge mulching managements. Front Microbiol 8:845

Raj G, Shadab M, Deka S, Das M, Baruah J, Bharali R, Talukdar NC (2019) Seed interior microbiome of rice genotypes indigenous to three agroecosystems of indo-Burma biodiversity hotspot. BMC Genomics 20(1):924. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12864-019-6334-5

Remus-Emsermann MN, Schlechter RO (2018) Phyllosphere microbiology: at the interface between microbial individuals and the plant host. New Phytol 218(4):1327–1333. https://doi.org/10.1111/nph.15054
Richardson AE, Simpson RJ (2011) Soil microorganisms mediating phosphorus availability update on microbial phosphorus. Plant Physiol 156(3):989–996
Rodriguez PA, Rothballer M, Chowdhury SP, Nussbaumer T, Gutjahr C, Falter-Braun P (2019) Systems biology of plant-microbiome interactions. Mol Plant 212(6):804–821
Roman-Reyna V, Pinili D, Borja FN, Quibod IL, Groen SC, Alexandrov N, Mauleon R, Oliva R (2020) Characterization of the leaf microbiome from whole genome sequencing data of the 3000 rice genomes project. Rice 13(1):1–8
Shahzad R, Khan AL, Lee IJ (2018) What is there in seeds? Vertically transmitted endophytic resources for sustainable improvement in plant growth. Front Plant Sci 9:24. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2018.00024
Simonin M, Dasilva C, Terzi V, Ngonkeu EL, Diouf D, Kane A, Béna G, Moulin L (2020) Influence of plant genotype and soil on the wheat rhizosphere microbiome: evidences for a core microbiome across eight African and European soils. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 96(6):fiaa067
Singh JS (2015a) Microbes: the chief ecological engineers in reinstating equilibrium in degraded ecosystems. Agric Ecosyst Environ 203:80–82
Singh JS (2015b) Plant-microbe interactions: a viable tool for agricultural sustainability. Appl Soil Ecol 92:45–46
Singh BK, Trivedi P, Singh S, Macdonald CA, Verma JP (2018) Emerging microbiome technologies for sustainable increase in farm productivity and environmental security. Microbiol Aust 39(1):17–23. https://doi.org/10.1071/MA18006
Singh P, Santoni S, Weber A, This P, Peros JP (2019) Understanding the phyllosphere microbiome assemblage in grape species (Vitaceae) with amplicon sequence data structures. Sci Rep 9(1):1–11. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-50839-0
Smigielski L, Laubach EM, Pesch L, Glock JML, Albrecht F, Slusarenko AJ, Panstruga R, Kuhn H (2019) Nodulation induces systemic resistance of Medicago truncatula and Pisum sativum against Erysiphe pisi and primes for powdery mildew-triggered salicylic acid accumulation. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact
Stassen MJJ, Hsu S-H, Pieterse CMJ, Stringlis IA (2021) Coumarin communication along the microbiome-root-shoot axis. Trends Plant Sci 26:169–183
Steven B, Huntley RB, Zeng Q (2018) The influence of flower anatomy and apple cultivar on the apple flower phytobiome. Phytobiomes 2(3):171–179. https://doi.org/10.1094/PBIOMES-03-18-0015-R
Stone BWG, Weingarten EA, Jackson CR (2018) The role of the phyllosphere microbiome in plant health and function. Annu Plant Rev 1:1–24
Streletskii RA, Kachalkin AV, Glushakova AM, Yurkov AM, Demin VV (2019) Yeasts producing zeatin. Peer J 7:e6474
Toju H, Okayasu K, Notaguchi M (2019) Leaf-associated microbiomes of grafted tomato plants. Sci Rep 9(1):1–11. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-018-38344-2
Tripathi BM, Moroenyane I, Sherman C, Lee YK, Adams JM, Steinberger Y (2017) Trends in taxonomic and functional composition of soil microbiome along a precipitation gradient in Israel. Microb Ecol 74(1):168–176
Trivedi P et al (2017) Keystone microbial taxa regulate the invasion of a fungal pathogen in agro-ecosystems. Soil Biol Biochem 111:10–14
Trivedi P, Leach JE, Tringe SG, Sa T, Singh BK (2020) Plant–microbiome interactions: from community assembly to plant health. Nat Rev Microbiol 18(11):607–621
van der Voort M, Kempenaar M, van Driel M, Raaijmakers JM, Mendes R (2016) Impact of soil heat on reassembly of bacterial communities in the rhizosphere microbiome and plant disease suppression. Ecol Lett 19(4):375–382

Vujanovic V, Islam MN, Daida P (2019) Transgenerational role of seed mycobiome–an endosymbiotic fungal composition as a prerequisite to stress resilience and adaptive phenotypes in Triticum. Sci Rep 9(1):1–13

Yoshida Y, Iguchi H, Sakai Y, Yurimoto H (2019) Pantothenate auxotrophy of Methylobacterium spp. isolated from living plants. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 83:569–577

Zachow C, Müller H, Tilcher R, Berg G (2014) Differences between the rhizosphere microbiome of Beta vulgaris ssp. maritima—ancestor of all beet crops—and modern sugar beets. Frontiers in. Microbiology 26(5):415

Zhu S, Vivanco JM, Manter DK (2016) Nitrogen fertilizer rate affects root exudation, the rhizosphere microbiome and nitrogen-use-efficiency of maize. Appl Soil Ecol 107:324–333

Zolla G, Badri DV, Bakker MG, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2013) Soil microbiomes vary in their ability to confer drought tolerance to Arabidopsis. Appl Soil Ecol 68:1–9

14 A Conceptual Framework to Explore the Functional Implications of Coral-Associated Microbiomes and Their Role in Promoting Plant Growth

P. S. Seethalakshmi, Saqib Hassan, Junaid Ahmad Malik, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

Abstract

Bringing food to the plates of 7.8 billion people is a challenging task to accomplish, especially in the present situation with limited land resources, water resources, and implications of global climate change due to depletion of soil and environment. Soil health management is an important agenda for preserving the biotic components of terrestrial ecosystem as it is for sustainable agriculture. A key for sustainable soil management is to minimize the use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides, practice crop rotation, and fortify soils with organic matter and microorganisms. The use of organic fertilizers and biofertilizers are highly appreciated in agricultural practices than chemical fertilizers. Today, biofertilizers derived from microorganisms are available in the markets across globe because of the large input of research invested in studying plant growth-promoting microorganisms. Though much interest has been spent on assaying microorganisms of terrestrial origin for land-based applications, the latest studies

P. S. Seethalakshmi · J. Selvin (✉)
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

S. Hassan
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Division of Non-Communicable Diseases, Indian Council of Medical Research (ICMR), New Delhi, Delhi, India

J. A. Malik
Department of Zoology, Govt. Degree College, Bijbehara, Jammu and Kashmir, India

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

G. S. Kiran
Department of Food Science and Technology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_14

have come up with findings advocating the remarkable potential of microorganisms from extreme ecosystems like mangroves and oceans. Coral reefs are home to a variety of useful microorganisms that have important ecological functions and can synthesize biologically active molecules. Compounds derived from corals and their microbiota are being extensively studied for biomedical applications. Microorganisms isolated from corals have been reported to hold a plethora of land-based applications including bioremediation, alleviation of saline stress in plants, antimicrobial activity, and antibiofilm activity against phytopathogens. This book chapter elucidates the applications of coral microbiota for improving soil quality and plant growth.

Keywords

Coral · Microbiota · Antimicrobial · Composting · Bioremediation

14.1 Introduction

Soil is an essential component of the biosphere that supports the growth of plants and microorganisms eventually, supporting the existence of all life forms in the terrestrial ecosystem. Anthropogenic activities have inflicted a decline in soil productivity, mainly due to land clearing, desertification, extensive farming, environmental pollution, and salinization of soil (Oldeman 1994). The use of chemical fertilizers was a chief contributor of nitrogen and phosphorous in soil, consequently increasing global food production in the past 50 years (Abd-Alla et al. 2014). The rigorous use of chemical fertilizers to enhance productivity has not only reduced the fertility of soil but also has threatened the existence of certain beneficial insects and contaminated water basins, ultimately damaging the ecosystem (Mishra et al. 2013). Poor management of land cultivation has even caused changes in hydrological cycles and increased greenhouse gas emissions culminating in ozone depletion and global climate change (Bengtsson 1998). With increased human population by 2050, it is predicted that the availability of fertile land becomes lower with resultant food security (Ibarrola Rivas and Nonhebel 2016). Thus, it is of utmost importance that we preserve soil quality by boycotting chemical substances for agricultural practices and adopt biological measures promoting soil sustainability.

Many researchers have found biofertilizers derived from microorganisms of rhizosphere soil effective to prevent infectious diseases of crops and improve soil quality (Kloepper 1978; Penrose and Glick 2003; Kang et al. 2014). The use of biological fertilizers has also been proven to improve saline stress response, photosynthesis, and mineral absorption of plants (Golpayegani and Tilebeni 2011). The mechanism of action behind the plant growth-promoting effects of biofertilizer includes production of indole acetic acid (Tsavkelova et al. 2006), decrease in ethylene production in plants (Glick et al. 1998), phosphate solubilization (Jorquera et al. 2008), and enhancement of nitrogen fixation (Zahran 2001), synthesized hydrogen cyanide (Rezzonico et al. 2007), siderophores (Carrillo-Castañeda et al.

2002), and antibiotics against pathogens (Whipps 2001). The implementation of biological control methods in agriculture is safe, environment-friendly, and most importantly cheaper, making it available for small-scale farmers (SubbaRoa 2001).

Composting is another environmentally benign choice to replace chemical fertilizers. Composting can be used to replenish organic matter of degraded soil and improves carbon sequestration (Pergola et al. 2018). Composting influences the environment in a positive manner by decreasing greenhouse gas emissions (Luske 2010) and reducing carbon footprint (Schwarz and Bonhotal 2018).

Several pieces of research have investigated the beneficial roles of microorganisms isolated from marine grooves to marine environment for crop cultivation (Rashad et al. 2015; Suksaard et al. 2017; Gong et al. 2018; Nafis et al. 2019). Very few reports in the literature have stated the potential application of microorganisms belonging to the coral microbiota for land cultivation.

14.2 Coral Reefs and Their Microbial Community

Corals are regarded as the tropical rainforests of marine ecosystem since they harbor one of the world's divergent ecological communities. They are crucial components of the marine environment as they maintain nutrient cycling and carbon-nitrogen cycle (Rädecker et al. 2014). The coral reefs accommodate a vast number of microorganisms which can regulate the ecosystem as well as physiology of the hosts. Microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, algae, and protists together make up the microbiome of corals.

14.2.1 Bacterial Community

The bacterial composition of corals varies from species to species and remains similar in the same coral species isolated from different spaces (Rohwer et al. 2001) and at different time (Meenatchi et al. 2020). 16S rDNA sequencing studies revealed that bacterial groups in corals were in the order: γ-*Proteobacteria*, α-*Proteobacteria*, *Bacillus*/*Clostridium*, *Cytophaga-flavobacterium*/*Flexibacter-Bacteroides*, cyanobacteria, and some other bacterial groups which were not identified (Rohwer et al. 2002). Bacteria of corals regulate nitrogen flux as they have experimentally identified to own genes for nitrogen fixation (Lesser et al. 2004). Coral bacterial community interactions are crucial for the health of corals, and factors that interrupt these interactions will help find new ways to preserve corals.

14.2.2 Archaeal Community

Archaea from coral most notably participates in conversion of ammonia to nitrite (Francis et al. 2007). Archaea belonging to phylum *Crenarchaeota* and

Euryarchaeota are distributed among several species of corals without exhibiting any species-specific diversity (Wegley et al. 2004). Members of archaeal community such as *Halococcus salifodinae* can carry out denitrification of nitrite into nitrogen under anoxic conditions at night (Siboni et al. 2008). The sequences of ammonia monooxygenase subunit A (*amoA*) genes in archaea of corals were phylogenetically distantly related to those procured from coastal sediments (Beman et al. 2007). Culturable archaea from marine ecosystem capable of oxidizing ammonia was reported by Könneke et al. (2005) which gives hope in identifying culturable archaea from corals too.

14.2.3 Fungal Community

The fungal microbiota of coral reefs is classified into obligate marine fungi and facultative marine fungi. The former group of fungi grows exclusively in marine environment, whereas the latter grows in both marine and freshwater habitats (Kohlmeyer and Kohlmeyer 1979). The obligate marine fungi belong to the class of *Ascomycetes* which includes *Corallicola nana* (Volkmann-Kohlmeyer and Kohlmeyer 1992), *Lulworthia calcicole* (Kohlmeyer and Volkmann-Kohlmeyer 1989), *Halographis runica* (Kohlmeyer and Volkmann-Kohlmeyer 1988), and *Koralionastes* sp. (Kohlmeyer and Volkmann-Kohlmeyer 1987). These fungi are non-culturable under lab conditions and have been suggested to depend on corals to derive nutrients (Kohlmeyer and Volkmann-Kohlmeyer 2003). Fungi of terrestrial environment observed in corals consist of species of *Aspergillus* spp. and *Penicillium* spp. (Morrison-Gardiner 2002). 18S rDNA metabarcoding studies have revealed new members of coral fungi such as *Geranomyces* (*Chytridiomycota*), *Flammulina* (*Basidiomycota*), and *Ophiosphaerella* (*Ascomycota*) (Góes-Neto et al. 2020).

14.2.4 Algal Community

Symbiodinium, a dinoflagellate colloquially known as zooxanthellae, is a critical component of reef ecosystem as they can cause mass mortalities of corals due to stress-associated bleaching (Baker 2003). Corals and *Symbiodinium* exhibit a symbiotic relationship where the algae provide nutrients to corals via photosynthesis and corals acts as a shelter for the algae (Muscatine and Porter 1977). The genome analysis of *Symbiodinium* confirms the existence of gene families which are mandatory for mutualistic relation with corals (Liu et al. 2018). The reefs of corals also harbor algae which are protected from harmful radiations by filtering them out before reaching the algal cells (Shashar et al. 1997).

14.2.5 Protistal Community

The eukaryotic microbiota of coral mucus is dominated by stramenopiles of family Thraustochytriaceae (Siboni et al. 2010). The protists of coral microbiome carry out important functions which enable the survival of coral holobiome. The protists biosynthesize some important metabolites which relieves the corals from stressful events such as bleaching (Harel et al. 2008). An ideal example for this would be the production of carotenoids and polyunsaturated fatty acids by Thraustochytrids in corals (Carmona et al. 2003). *Vitrella brassicaformis* and *Chromera velia* belonging to the phylum Chromerida are photosynthetic protists seen in corals (Linares et al. 2014; Oborník and Lukeš 2015). The exact role of these protists is unclear, although it has been hypothesized that they either act as a parasite or as a photosymbiont of corals (Cumbo and Baird 2013).

14.3 Application of Coral Microbiota for Soil and Plant Health

Initially the coelenterates and other marine invertebrates were exploited to obtain secondary metabolites with biological activity. Most of these metabolites have medicinal properties such as anticancer, antioxidant, antibacterial, and antiviral activity (Sang et al. 2019). Only few bioactive compounds suitable for agricultural purposes have been procured from corals (Table 14.1). The anthropogenic activities have become a threat to the coral system because of which more interest is directed toward developing bioactive compounds from microbial sources of these environments (Radjasa 2004). Coral aquaculture practice has been introduced since then, to preserve corals, avail certain economic benefits, and continue research studies in them. Corals are cultivated either in situ in aquariums or ex situ in mariculture systems (Sheridan et al. 2013).

The biochemical processes carried out by the microorganisms can influence even the life cycle of the host organism and food webs in the ecosystem. An example for

Table 14.1 Metabolites synthesized by corals with potential agricultural applications

Name of the compound	Source of the compound	Application	References
AmCyan, ZsGreen, ZsYellow, and AsRed fluorescent proteins	*Anemonia manjano*, *A. sulcate*, *Zoanthus* sp., and *Discosoma* sp.	Microscopic visualization of phytopathogens *Magnaporthe grisea* and *Fusarium verticillioides*	Bourett et al. (2002)
Crude extracts	*Pseudopterogorgia* and *Pseudoplexaura*	Antifungal activity against *Aspergillus flavus*	Kim et al. (2000)
Cembrene-C	*Sinularia* sp.	Antifungal activity against *A. flavus*	Lei et al. (2014)
Bioactive metabolites	*Sinularia capillosa*	Antibacterial activity against *S. marcescens*	Cheng et al. (2010)

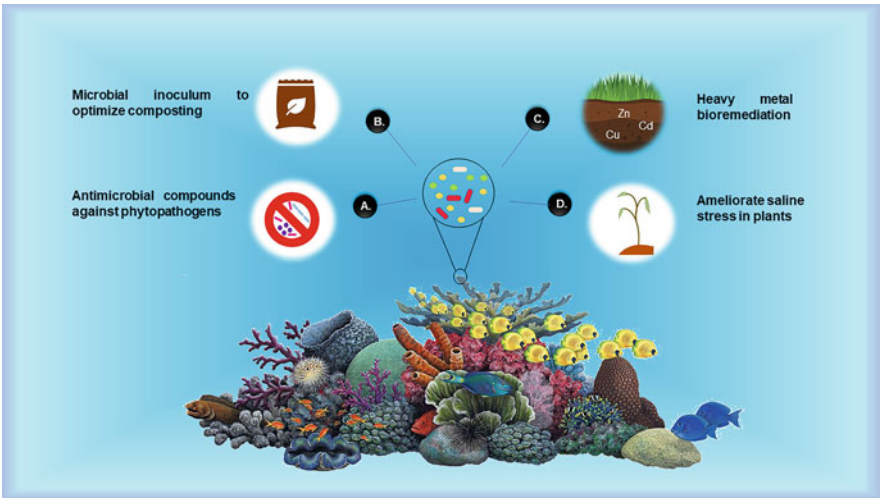


Fig. 14.1 Applications of coral microbiota to promote soil and plant health. (**a**) Antimicrobial compounds against phytopathogens. (**b**) Microbial inoculum to optimize composting. (**c**) Heavy metal bioremediation. (**d**) Ameliorate saline stress in plants

this complex relationship is the settlement of larvae of sea urchins and metamorphosis of corals under the regulation of benthic microorganisms (Webster et al. 2004; Huggett et al. 2008). The microorganisms in coral reefs can fix nitrogen, carry out photosynthesis (Lesser et al. 2004), oxidize ammonia (Wegley et al. 2007), and even produce antibiotics (Ritchie 2006). This multitude of biological functions carried out by coral reef microbiome attracted scientific community to explore biologically important compounds from coral ecosystems. Microorganisms in the marine environment are adapted to saline and high-pressure conditions due to which their biosynthetic pathways differ from microorganisms of terrestrial environment (Namikoshi et al. 2000). Bioactive compounds biosynthesized by coral microbiota have antimicrobial activity against pathogens of humans as well as aquatic animals (Kamel and Slattery 2005; Radjasa and Sabdono 2008). The following section discusses various applications of coral-associated microbes in agriculture (Fig. 14.1).

14.3.1 Antimicrobial and Antibiofilm Compounds from Coral Microbiota

The use of harmful pesticides for controlling phytopathogens has costed the environment drastically because of which biological compounds have been considered as a good alternative. Biosurfactants are bioactive compounds involved in plant-microbe interactions, and they can enhance the bioavailability of nutrients for the beneficial microbes of the plant (Sachdev and Cameotra 2013). Bacteria isolated

from corals have been found to synthesize potent biosurfactant molecules (Padmavathi and Pandian 2014). *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is a plant pathogen reported to colonize roots forming biofilms resistant to antibiotics and cause plant mortality (Walker et al. 2004). Coral-associated microorganisms from the Gulf of Mannar capable of producing biosurfactants were *Bacillus anthracis*, *Providencia rettgeri*, *Psychrobacter* sp., *Bacillus pumilus*, and *Bacillus flexus*. Among the biosurfactants synthesized by these bacteria, *Providencia rettgeri* and *Psychrobacter* sp. produced biosurfactant active against biofilms of *P. aeruginosa* even at high temperatures (Padmavathi and Pandian 2014). These biosurfactants being active in spite of such temperature fluctuations are more advantageous since they can be utilized for plants growing at different temperatures.

Insects act a vector in transmitting certain phytopathogens. For example, *Anasa tristis* commonly known as squash bug can transmit *Serratia marcescens* which results in cucurbit yellow vine disease in *Citrullus lanatus* and *Cucurbita pepo* (Bruton et al. 2003). Microorganisms seen on the mucus layer of corals are an important source of antimicrobial compounds. Eighty-three percent of bacteria isolated from Brazilian coral mucus exhibited antibacterial activity against *S. marcescens* (Pereira et al. 2017). *Aspergillus brevipes* RK06, a coral-associated fungus of Randayan Island, Kalimantan Barat, synthesized an antimicrobial product active against *P. aeruginosa* (Nofiani et al. 2011). Actinomycetes isolated from the mucus of the coral *Acropora digitifera* from the Gulf of Mannar also synthesized antimicrobial compounds against *P. aeruginosa* (Nithyanand et al. 2011). *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. from coral microbiota synthesized an antifungal compound alteramide A, at dark conditions. The compound interfered the production of mycotoxin citrinin and citrinadins of *Penicillium citrinum*, which is a coral pathogen (Moree et al. 2014) as well as a seed-borne pathogen (Marcenaro and Valkonen 2016). However, characterization of these antimicrobial compounds is necessary to conduct application studies in agriculture.

14.3.2 Coral Reef Microorganisms for Composting

Practices like composting are highly encouraged because it not only decreases the waste but also acts as organic fertilizer for agricultural purposes and improves the quality of soil. The extent of degradation of waste components in compost depends on the microbial inoculum added to it. Addition of ammonia-oxidizing bacteria was found to reduce the loss of nitrogen linked with emission of ammonia substantially enhancing the level of nitrogen content in compost (Zhang et al. 2016). Corals such as *Alcyonium gracillimum* and *Tubastraea coccinea* harbor phylogenetically distinct members of microorganisms which can oxidize ammonia and help in denitrification (Yang et al. 2013). The ascidian microbiota also contains ammonia oxidizing archaeal community which regulates the flux of nitrogen in reef ecosystems (Erwin et al. 2014). These microorganisms can be used for preparation of inoculum in waste composting. However, only very few microorganisms are cultivable from corals (Sun et al. 2016). Hence, development of new techniques and tools to culture

these microorganisms will improve exploration studies of coral-associated microorganisms. Besides there are no reports available regarding the use of ammonia-oxidizing bacteria from corals for terrestrial agriculture applications.

14.3.3 Coral Reef Microbiota for Soil Bioremediation

Soil is polluted by accumulation of heavy metals due to human activities. Heavy metals in soil obstruct the microbial activity in soil further affecting the health of plants (Jiang et al. 2008). Bacteria can be used to remove toxic metals from soil (Iyer et al. 2005), as their cell wall consists of functional group that can bind to metals (Daughney et al. 2002). Due to chemical precipitation, phosphorous remains immobilized in soil (Gyaneshwar et al. 2002), and phosphate-solubilizing microbes solubilize such insoluble phosphorous in soil which plants can utilize (Chandler et al. 2008). Phosphate-solubilizing bacteria can be implemental in agricultural practices for removal of heavy metals as well as solubilization of phosphate in soil. The bacteria *Cronobacter muytjensii* KSCAS2 isolated from coral reefs displayed excellent phosphate-solubilizing properties. The bacteria were found to synthesize exopolysaccharides which enabled the sequestration of heavy metals such as zinc, cadmium, copper, and chromium (Saranya et al. 2018). There is a very scarce information regarding the application of coral-associated microbes for bioremediation purposes and requires further exploration. More studies into the characteristics of metal-chelating compounds produced by coral microbial community can provide more insights regarding their bioremediation potential.

14.3.4 Coral Reef Microbes to Combat Salt Stress in Plants

Increased salt content in soil affects the soil health leading to crop failure (Rengasamy 2006), and studies estimate that the global saline soil generation is 7% (Tester and Davenport 2003). The high levels of salt in soil not only interfere photosynthetic productivity of plants (Cramer and Nowak 1992) but also wreck the microbial community of the soil. Halophilic microorganisms from saline soils have been used as plant growth-promoting bacteria to relieve saline stress in plants (Orhan 2016). Since corals survive in saline environments, their associated microbiota can be used for ameliorating saline stress in plants. *Salinispora arenicola* and *Actinobacteria* seen isolated from corals like *Porites lobata* and *Porites panamensis* from central Pacific exhibited a wide range of plant growth-promoting activities such as photoprotection and enhanced seed viability under saline conditions. *Actinobacteria* acted as an endosymbiont in the roots of wild tobacco plants and also produced 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase enzyme which could have inhibited the ethylene-mediated stress in plants (Ocampo-Alvarez et al. 2020). The potential of *S. arenicola* to fight saline stress in other important food crops needs to be inspected.

14.4 Conclusion

The use of chemical pesticides and fertilizers has more deleterious effect than benefit, and they are no longer reliable options in agriculture. The use of microorganisms in agriculture for heavy metal bioremediation, for plant growth promotion, and to control phytopathogens is much safer than the conventional methods used. The goals of sustainable agriculture should not focus only on increasing plant productivity to meet consumer demands. Instead, it should also aim for production of organic and safe food products. Microorganisms from terrestrial and marine environments have been analyzed for many agricultural and environmental applications. But the available information in literature elucidating agricultural applications of microorganisms from corals are insufficient. Coral reefs are no doubt a giant source of beneficial microorganisms which can aid in achieving sustainable agriculture. There are many emerging studies which focus on exploring the microbial community of corals to develop probiotics in order to promote coral health (ados Santos et al. 2015; Rosado et al. 2019). Such explorations can be coupled with application studies to discover their hidden potential. Initiatives for coral aquaculture to facilitate drug discovery have been suggested (Leal et al. 2013); a similar initiative for soil and agricultural applications needs to be proposed. Many techniques are arising in the research field to cultivate unculturable microorganisms, and we can expect many studies unveiling the potential of coral microbiota for terrestrial agriculture applications in the future.

Funding This research did not receive any specific grant from funding agencies in the public, commercial, or not-for-profit sectors.

References

Abd-Alla MH, El-Enany AWE, Nafady NA, Khalaf DM, Morsy FM (2014) Synergistic interaction of *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv. *viciae* and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi as a plant growth promoting biofertilizers for faba bean (*Vicia faba L.*) in alkaline soil. Microbiol Res 169(1): 49–58

ados Santos HF, Duarte GAS, da Costa Rachid CT, Chaloub RM, Calderon EN, de Barros Marangoni LF, Rosado AS et al (2015) Impact of oil spills on coral reefs can be reduced by bioremediation using probiotic microbiota. Sci Rep 5(1):1–11

Baker AC (2003) Flexibility and specificity in coral-algal symbiosis: diversity, ecology, and biogeography of *Symbiodinium*. Annu Rev Ecol Evol Syst 34(1):661–689

Beman JM, Roberts KJ, Wegley L, Rohwer F, Francis CA (2007) Distribution and diversity of archaeal ammonia monooxygenase genes associated with corals. Appl Environ Microbiol 73(17):5642–5647

Bengtsson J (1998) Which species? What kind of diversity? Which ecosystem function? Some problems in studies of relations between biodiversity and ecosystem function. Appl Soil Ecol 10(3):191–199

Bourett TM, Sweigard JA, Czymmek KJ, Carroll A, Howard RJ (2002) Reef coral fluorescent proteins for visualizing fungal pathogens. Fungal Genet Biol 37(3):211–220

Bruton BD, Mitchell F, Fletcher J, Pair SD, Wayadande A, Melcher U, Popham TW et al (2003) *Serratia marcescens*, a phloem-colonizing, squash bug-transmitted bacterium: causal agent of cucurbit yellow vine disease. Plant Dis 87(8):937–944

Carmona ML, Naganuma T, Yamaoka Y (2003) Identification by HPLC-MS of carotenoids of the *Thraustochytrium* CHN-1 strain isolated from the Seto Inland Sea. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 67(4):884–888

Carrillo-Castañeda G, Muños JJ, Peralta-Videa JR, Gomez E, Tiemannb KJ, Duarte-Gardea M, Gardea-Torresdey JL (2002) Alfalfa growth promotion by bacteria grown under iron limiting conditions. Adv Environ Res 6(3):391–399

Chandler D, Davidson G, Grant WP, Greaves J, Tatchell GM (2008) Microbial biopesticides for integrated crop management: an assessment of environmental and regulatory sustainability. Trends Food Sci Technol 19(5):275–283

Cheng SY, Huang KJ, Wang SK, Wen ZH, Chen PW, Duh CY (2010) Antiviral and anti-inflammatory metabolites from the soft coral *Sinularia capillosa*. J Nat Prod 73(4):771–775

Cramer GR, Nowak RS (1992) Supplemental manganese improves the relative growth, net assimilation and photosynthetic rates of salt-stressed barley. Physiol Plant 84(4):600–605

Cumbo VR, Baird AH (2013) *Chromera velia*: coral symbiont or parasite? Galaxea, J Coral Reef Stud 15(1):15–16

Daughney CJ, Siciliano SD, Rencz AN, Lean D, Fortin D (2002) Hg (II) adsorption by bacteria: a surface complexation model and its application to shallow acidic lakes and wetlands in Kejimkujik National Park, Nova Scotia, Canada. Environ Sci Technol 36(7):1546–1553

Erwin PM, Pineda MC, Webster N, Turon X, Lopez-Legentil S (2014) Down under the tunic: bacterial biodiversity hotspots and widespread ammonia-oxidizing archaea in coral reef ascidians. ISME J 8(3):575–588

Francis CA, Beman JM, Kuypers MM (2007) New processes and players in the nitrogen cycle: the microbial ecology of anaerobic and archaeal ammonia oxidation. ISME J 1(1):19–27

Glick BR, Penrose DM, Li J (1998) A model for the lowering of plant ethylene concentrations by plant growth-promoting bacteria. J Theor Biol 190(1):63–68

Góes-Neto A, Marcelino VR, Verbruggen H, da Silva FF, Badotti F (2020) Biodiversity of endolithic fungi in coral skeletons and other reef substrates revealed with 18S rDNA metabarcoding. Coral Reefs 39(1):229–238

Golpayegani A, Tilebeni HG (2011) Effect of biological fertilizers on biochemical and physiological parameters of basil (*Ocimum basilicum L.*) medicine plant. Am Eurasian J Agric Environ Sci 11(3):445–450

Gong Y, Bai JL, Yang HT, Zhang WD, Xiong YW, Ding P, Qin S (2018) Phylogenetic diversity and investigation of plant growth-promoting traits of *Actinobacteria* in coastal salt marsh plant rhizospheres from Jiangsu, China. Syst Appl Microbiol 41(5):516–527

Gyaneshwar P, Kumar GN, Parekh LJ, Poole PS (2002) Role of soil microorganisms in improving P nutrition of plants. Plant Soil 245(1):83–93

Harel M, Ben-Dov E, Rasoulouniriana D, Siboni N, Kramarsky-Winter E, Loya Y, Kushmaro A et al (2008) A new *Thraustochytrid*, strain *Fng1*, isolated from the surface mucus of the hermatypic coral Fungia granulosa. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 64(3):378–387

Huggett MJ, Crocetti GR, Kjelleberg S, Steinberg PD (2008) Recruitment of the sea urchin *Heliocidaris erythrogramma* and the distribution and abundance of inducing bacteria in the field. Aquat Microb Ecol 53(2):161–171

Ibarrola Rivas MJ, Nonhebel S (2016) Assessing changes in availability of land and water for food (1960–2050) an analysis linking food demand and available resources. Outlook Agric 45(2): 124–131

Iyer A, Mody K, Jha B (2005) Biosorption of heavy metals by a marine bacterium. Mar Pollut Bull 50(3):340–343

Jiang CY, Sheng XF, Qian M, Wang QY (2008) Isolation and characterization of a heavy metal-resistant *Burkholderia* sp. from heavy metal-contaminated paddy field soil and its potential in

promoting plant growth and heavy metal accumulation in metal-polluted soil. Chemosphere 72(2):157–164
Jorquera MA, Hernández MT, Rengel Z, Marschner P, de la Luz Mora M (2008) Isolation of culturable phosphobacteria with both phytate-mineralization and phosphate-solubilization activity from the rhizosphere of plants grown in a volcanic soil. Biol Fertil Soils 44(8):1025
Kamel HN, Slattery M (2005) Terpenoids of *Sinularia*: chemistry and biomedical applications. Pharm Biol 43(3):253–269
Kang SM, Khan AL, Waqas M, You YH, Kim JH, Kim JG, Lee IJ et al (2014) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria reduce adverse effects of salinity and osmotic stress by regulating phytohormones and antioxidants in *Cucumis sativus*. J Plant Interact 9(1):673–682
Kim K, Kim PD, Alker AP, Harvell CD (2000) Chemical resistance of gorgonian corals against fungal infections. Mar Biol 137(3):393–401
Kloepper JW (1978) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on radishes. In: Proceedings of the 4th International Conference on plant pathogenic Bacter, station de Pathologie Vegetale et Phytobacteriologie, INRA, Angers, France, 1978, vol 2, pp 879–882
Kohlmeyer J, Kohlmeyer E (1979) Marine mycology: the higher fungi. Academic Press, New York
Kohlmeyer J, Volkmann-Kohlmeyer B (1987) Koralionastetaceae fam. Nov. (*ascomycetes*) from coral rock. Mycologia 79(5):764–778
Kohlmeyer J, Volkmann-Kohlmeyer B (1988) *Halographis* (Opegraphales), a new endolithic lichenoid from corals and snails. Can J Bot 66(6):1138–1141
Kohlmeyer J, Volkmann-Kohlmeyer B (1989) A new *Lulworthia* (Ascomycotina) from corals. Mycologia 81(2):289–292
Kohlmeyer J, Volkmann-Kohlmeyer B (2003) Fungi from coral reefs: a commentary. Mycol Res 107(4):386–387
Könneke M, Bernhard AE, José R, Walker CB, Waterbury JB, Stahl DA (2005) Isolation of an autotrophic ammonia-oxidizing marine archaeon. Nature 437(7058):543–546
Leal MC, Calado R, Sheridan C, Alimonti A, Osinga R (2013) Coral aquaculture to support drug discovery. Trends Biotechnol 31(10):555–561
Lei LF, Chen MF, Wang T, He XX, Liu BX, Deng Y, Li W et al (2014) Novel cytotoxic nine-membered macrocyclic polysulfur cembranoid lactones from the soft coral *Sinularia* sp. Tetrahedron 70(38):6851–6858
Lesser MP, Mazel CH, Gorbunov MY, Falkowski PG (2004) Discovery of symbiotic nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria in corals. Science 305(5686):997–1000
Linares M, Carter D, Gould SB (2014) Chromera et al.: novel photosynthetic alveolates and apicomplexan relatives. In: Endosymbiosis. Springer, Vienna, pp 183–196
Liu H, Stephens TG, González-Pech RA, Beltran VH, Lapeyre B, Bongaerts P, Miller DJ et al (2018) Symbiodinium genomes reveal adaptive evolution of functions related to coral-dinoflagellate symbiosis. Commun Biol 1(1):1–11
Luske B (2010) Reduced GHG emissions due to compost production and compost use in Egypt
Marcenaro D, Valkonen JP (2016) Seedborne pathogenic fungi in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* cv. INTA Rojo) in Nicaragua. PLoS One 11(12):e0168662
Meenatchi R, Thinesh T, Brindangnanam P, Hassan S, Kiran GS, Selvin J (2020) Revealing the impact of global mass bleaching on coral microbiome through 16S rRNA gene-based metagenomic analysis. Microbiol Res 233:126408
Mishra D, Rajvir S, Mishra U, Kumar SS (2013) Role of bio-fertilizer in organic agriculture: a review. Res J Recent Sci 2277:2502
Moree WJ, McConnell OJ, Nguyen DD, Sanchez LM, Yang YL, Zhao X, Ballesteros J et al (2014) Microbiota of healthy corals are active against fungi in a light-dependent manner. ACS Chem Biol 9(10):2300–2308
Morrison-Gardiner S (2002) Dominant fungi from Australian coral reefs. Fungal Divers 9:105–121
Muscatine L, Porter JW (1977) Reef corals: mutualistic symbioses adapted to nutrient-poor environments. BioScience 27(7):454–460

Nafis A, Raklami A, Bechtaoui N, El Khalloufi F, El Alaoui A, Glick BR, Hassani L et al (2019) Actinobacteria from extreme niches in Morocco and their plant growth-promoting potentials. Diversity 11(8):139

Namikoshi M, Kobayashi H, Yoshimoto T, Meguro S, Akano K (2000) Isolation and characterization of bioactive metabolites form marine-derived filamentous fungi collected from tropical and sub-tropical coral reefs. Chem Pharm Bull 48(10):1452–1457

Nithyanand P, Manju S, Karutha Pandian S (2011) Phylogenetic characterization of culturable actinomycetes associated with the mucus of the coral *Acropora digitifera* from gulf of Mannar. FEMS Microbiol Lett 314(2):112–118

Nofiani R, Kurniadi R, Ardiningsih P (2011) Antimicrobial, antioxidant, hemolytic activities and toxicity of ethyl acetate extract from an unidentified coral-associated fungus, aspergillus brevipes RK06. Indones J Cancer Chemoprev 2(2):212–216

Oborník M, Lukeš J (2015) The organellar genomes of Chromera and Vitrella, the phototrophic relatives of apicomplexan parasites. Annu Rev Microbiol 69:129–144

Ocampo-Alvarez H, Meza-Canales ID, Mateos-Salmón C, Rios-Jara E, Rodríguez-Zaragoza FA, Robles-Murguía C, Becerril-Espinosa A et al (2020) Diving into reef ecosystems for land-agriculture solutions: coral microbiota can alleviate salt stress during germination and photosynthesis in terrestrial plants. Front Plant Sci 11:648

Oldeman LR (1994) The global extent of soil degradation. In: Soil resilience and sustainable land use. CAB International, Wallingford, pp 99–118

Orhan F (2016) Alleviation of salt stress by halotolerant and halophilic plant growth-promoting bacteria in wheat (*Triticum aestivum*). Braz J Microbiol 47(3):621–627

Padmavathi AR, Pandian SK (2014) Antibiofilm activity of biosurfactant producing coral associated bacteria isolated from gulf of Mannar. Indian J Microbiol 54(4):376–382

Penrose DM, Glick BR (2003) Methods for isolating and characterizing ACC deaminase-containing plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Physiol Plant 118(1):10–15

Pereira LB, Palermo BR, Carlos C, Ottoboni LM (2017) Diversity and antimicrobial activity of bacteria isolated from different Brazilian coral species. FEMS Microbiol Lett 364(16):fnx164

Pergola M, Persiani A, Palese AM, Di Meo V, Pastore V, D'Adamo C, Celano G (2018) Composting: the way for a sustainable agriculture. Appl Soil Ecol 123:744–750

Rädecker N, Meyer FW, Bednarz VN, Cardini U, Wild C (2014) Ocean acidification rapidly reduces dinitrogen fixation associated with the hermatypic coral *Seriatopora hystrix*. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 511:297–302

Radjasa OK (2004) Marine invertebrate-associated bacteria in coral reef ecosystems as a new source of bioactive compounds. J Coast Dev 7(2):65–70

Radjasa OK, Sabdono A (2008) Ecological role of a softcoral-associated bacterium Arthrobacter sp. on marine biofilm-forming bacteria. Microbiology 2(2):6–6

Rashad FM, Fathy HM, El-Zayat AS, Elghonaimy AM (2015) Isolation and characterization of multifunctional Streptomyces species with antimicrobial, nematicidal and phytohormone activities from marine environments in Egypt. Microbiol Res 175:34–47

Rengasamy P (2006) World salinization with emphasis on Australia. J Exp Bot 57(5):1017–1023

Rezzonico F, Zala M, Keel C, Duffy B, Moënne-Loccoz Y, Défago G (2007) Is the ability of biocontrol fluorescent pseudomonads to produce the antifungal metabolite 2, 4-diacetylphloroglucinol really synonymous with higher plant protection? New Phytol 173(4):861–872

Ritchie KB (2006) Regulation of microbial populations by coral surface mucus and mucus-associated bacteria. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 322:1–14

Rohwer F, Breitbart M, Jara J, Azam F, Knowlton N (2001) Diversity of bacteria associated with the Caribbean coral *Montastraeafranksi*. Coral Reefs 20(1):85–91

Rohwer F, Seguritan V, Azam F, Knowlton N (2002) Diversity and distribution of coral-associated bacteria. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 243:1–10

Rosado PM, Leite DC, Duarte GA, Chaloub RM, Jospin G, da Rocha UN, Peixoto RS et al (2019) Marine probiotics: increasing coral resistance to bleaching through microbiome manipulation. ISME J 13(4):921–936

Sachdev DP, Cameotra SS (2013) Biosurfactants in agriculture. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97(3): 1005–1016

Sang VT, Dat TTH, Vinh LB, Cuong LCV, Oanh PTT, Ha H, Yang SY et al (2019) Coral and coral-associated microorganisms: a prolific source of potential bioactive natural products. Mar Drugs 17(8):468

Saranya K, Sundaramanickam A, Shekhar S, Meena M, Sathishkumar RS, Balasubramanian T (2018) Biosorption of multi-heavy metals by coral associated phosphate solubilising bacteria *Cronobacter muytjensii* KSCAS2. J Environ Manage 222:396–401

Schwarz M, Bonhotal J (2018) Carbon footprint of a university compost facility: case study of Cornell farm services. Compost Sci Utilization 26(2):128–143

Shashar N, Banaszak AT, Lesser MP, Amrami D (1997) Coral endolithic algae: life in a protected environment. Pacif Sci 51:167–173

Sheridan C, Kramarsky-Winter E, Sweet M, Kushmaro A, Leal MC (2013) Diseases in coral aquaculture: causes, implications and preventions. Aquaculture 396:124–135

Siboni N, Ben-Dov E, Sivan A, Kushmaro A (2008) Global distribution and diversity of coral-associated archaea and their possible role in the coral holobiont nitrogen cycle. Environ Microbiol 10(11):2979–2990

Siboni N, Rasoulouniriana D, Ben-Dov E, Kramarsky-Winter E, Sivan A, Loya Y, Kushmaro A et al (2010) Stramenopile microorganisms associated with the massive coral Favia sp. J Eukaryot Microbiol 57(3):236–244

SubbaRoa NS (2001) An appraisal of biofertilizers in India. In: Kannaiyan S (ed) The biotechnology of biofertilizers. Narosa Pub. House, New Delhi, pp 1–8

Suksaard P, Pathom-aree W, Duangmal K (2017) Diversity and plant growth promoting activities of actinomycetes from mangroves. Chiang Mai J Sci 44(4):1210–1223

Sun W, Anbuchezhian R, Li Z (2016) Association of coral-microbes, and the ecological roles of microbial symbionts in corals. In: The Cnidaria, past, present and future. Springer, Cham, pp 347–357

Tester M, Davenport R (2003) Na+ tolerance and Na+ transport in higher plants. Ann Bot 91(5): 503–527

Tsavkelova EA, Klimova SY, Cherdyntseva TA, Netrusov AI (2006) Microbial producers of plant growth stimulators and their practical use: a review. Appl Biochem Microbiol 42(2):117–126

Volkmann-Kohlmeyer B, Kohlmeyer J (1992) *Corallicola nana* gen. & sp. nov. and other ascomycetes from coral reefs. Mycotaxon 44(2):417–424

Walker TS, Bais HP, Déziel E, Schweizer HP, Rahme LG, Fall R, Vivanco JM (2004) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*-plant root interactions. Pathogenicity, biofilm formation, and root exudation. Plant Physiol 134(1):320–331

Webster NS, Smith LD, Heyward AJ, Watts JE, Webb RI, Blackall LL, Negri AP (2004) Metamorphosis of a scleractinian coral in response to microbial biofilms. Appl Environ Microbiol 70(2):1213–1221

Wegley L, Yu Y, Breitbart M, Casas V, Kline DI, Rohwer F (2004) Coral-associated archaea. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 273:89–96

Wegley L, Edwards R, Rodriguez-Brito B, Liu H, Rohwer F (2007) Metagenomic analysis of the microbial community associated with the coral Porites astreoides. Environ Microbiol 9(11): 2707–2719

Whipps JM (2001) Microbial interactions and biocontrol in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 52(suppl_1): 487–511

Yang S, Sun W, Zhang F, Li Z (2013) Phylogenetically diverse denitrifying and ammonia-oxidizing bacteria in corals *Alcyonium gracillimum* and *Tubastraea coccinea*. Marine Biotechnol 15(5): 540–551

Zahran HH (2001) Rhizobia from wild legumes: diversity, taxonomy, ecology, nitrogen fixation and biotechnology. J Biotechnol 91(2–3):143–153

Zhang Y, Zhao Y, Chen Y, Lu Q, Li M, Wang X, Wei Z et al (2016) A regulating method for reducing nitrogen loss based on enriched ammonia-oxidizing bacteria during composting. Bioresour Technol 221:276–283

Soil Microbiome: Characteristics, Impact of Climate Change and Resilience

15

Anushara Prabhakaran, Ramu Meenatchi, Surajit Pal, Saqib Hassan, Pallaval Veera Bramhachari, George Seghal Kiran, and Joseph Selvin

Abstract

Soil contains a variety of biotic and abiotic substances and serves as a medium for plant growth as well as a habitat for microorganisms, all of which help maintain and contribute to ecosystem services, because they are involved in organic matter breakdown, nutrient cycles and soil health. Microorganisms in the soil are clearly an important part of both natural and managed ecosystems. Despite the difficulties of surviving in soil, a gram of soil may include hundreds of different microbial taxa, including viruses and organisms from all three domains of life. As soil environmental factors are so different, soil microbial populations are extremely diverse. There are many different microbial habitats in a single soil, each with its own microbial composition. The spatial variability of soil microbial community structure is generally greater than the temporal variability. Soil and site characteristics, such as soil pH, temperature and organic carbon availability,

A. Prabhakaran · S. Pal · J. Selvin (✉)
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

R. Meenatchi
Department of Biotechnology, SRM-Institute of Science and Technology (SRMIST), Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India

S. Hassan
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Division of Non-Communicable Diseases, Indian Council of Medical Research (ICMR), New Delhi, Delhi, India

P. V. Bramhachari
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

G. S. Kiran
Department of Food Science and Technology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_15

may frequently predict the composition of soil bacterial communities and the abundances of individual species. Recent advancements in marker gene, genomic and metagenomic studies have substantially increased our capacity to characterize the soil microbiome and uncover the factors that change soil microbial populations with time.

Keywords

Soil · Metagenomics · Microbiome · Climate · Resilience

15.1 Introduction

Soil contains an interacting population of bacteria, archaea, viruses, fungus and protozoa, collectively known as the 'soil microbiome'. The abiotic environment of soil is also highly diverse, with disconnected air-filled and/or water-filled pores, as well as patchy resources that might serve as microbial hotspots (Kuzyakov and Blagodatskaya 2015). The soil microbiome plays an important role in global nutrient cycle and plant nutrition, as well as supports a wide range of ecosystem processes that fluctuate depending on the environment. Soil is composed of minerals, organic matter, biological organisms, gas and water, all of which provide nutrition and shelter for microbes to thrive in (Needelman 2013). Thus, soil is a highly heterogeneous environment on both the micro and macro scales, which is reflected in the diversity of microorganisms that thrive there. Bacteria and fungi are the most common microorganisms in soil, with archaea being less abundant, followed by protists and viruses (Fierer 2017).

Soil microbiomes vary widely around the globe, with taxonomic and functional (gene) diversity of soil bacteria being highest in the mid-latitudes and lowest at the poles and equator (Bahram et al. 2018). The total amount of microbial biomass found in a soil at any given time can be influenced by a variety of biotic and abiotic factors, including the abundance of microbial predators (such as protists or nematodes) and the amount of accessible carbon. Soil moisture availability is the strongest predictor of total soil microbial biomass on a worldwide scale; wetter habitats (e.g. tropical rainforests) often have more standing microbial biomass (Serna-Chavez et al. 2013). For bacteria, pH, along with carbon and oxygen quality/quantity, soil moisture and N and P availability, is the most important environmental variable that influences community composition (Fierer 2017; Bahram et al. 2018). Researchers have been able to explore the full extent of soil microbial diversity and develop a more thorough understanding of specific microbial influences on soil processes thanks to recent methodological advancements. DNA- and RNA-based studies of the soil microbiome, in particular, have considerably expanded our understanding of the phylogenetic and taxonomic structure of soil microbial communities (Fierer et al. 2009; Torsvik and Øvreås 2002).

In this chapter we describe the characteristics of soil microbiome and factors influencing soil microbiome. We have also the discussed role of soil microbiome in

global nutrient cycling and ecosystem functioning. Types of soils and their microbial composition, plant-microbe interaction, significance of soil microbiome in bioremediation, impact of climate change on soil microbiome and metagenomic tools for soil microbiome studies have been delineated comprehensively.

15.2 Characteristics of Soil Microbiome

The major determinants that influence the establishment of soil material are climate, time of soil formation, parent material and organisms (Jenny 1994). One of the studies addresses that the microbial composition of soil not only depends on temperature; nevertheless it is more diverse because of moisture and nutrient content of soil. Moisture availability is considered as one of the best indicators of abundant microbial diversity all over the world. The geographical distribution which has the highest moisture content soil has an enormous microbial load when compared to others (Serna-Chavez et al. 2013). Uniform distribution of all microbial groups cannot be observed in the case of soil. Among the most prevalent ones are bacteria and fungi, and they are 10^2–10^4-fold higher in biomass when compared to protists, archaea, etc. If the structure of a particular community is only taken into consideration, nearly all bacterial and archaeal species are limited, and hardly one or two of them are ample (Lynch and Neufeld 2015). Moreover, a study conducted in the USA analysed 500 plus soil samples from the Central Park in New York and concluded that more than 80% of bacterial and archaeal groups were present in the samples (Ramirez et al. 2014). Predominance of a smaller number of fungal and protist groups is observed in soil, and majority of the specific groups are uncharacterized. Mahé et al. (2017) demonstrated that parasitic members like Apicomplexa are the preeminent species in Neotropical rainforest even though the ecosystem comprises distinct species. The studies by Rosenthal et al. (2017) also emphasized the above-discussed facts. Their studies on corticioid fungi accentuated fungi as geographically structured groups. Their work provided insights on the diversity of fungi over North American pine forests. However, biology and taxonomy of these fungal groups are hardly known.

The diversity and coexistence of different microbes in soil differs with respect to soil type. Surprisingly this point is valid although the sampling sites are very near ranging from centimetres (O'Brien et al. 2016). This difference in distribution of microbiota is mainly due to geographical irregularity in the soil surroundings and particular features of sites selected for sample collection. Alteration in soil microbiome structure can be identified from plant species distribution on that area. Various plant species may possess divergent microorganisms in the soil on which they grow, and these microorganisms particularly tend to form associations with distinct plant communities. For example, certain mycorrhizal fungi, fungal plant pathogens and nitrogen-fixing bacteria tend to form associations with peculiar plant groups (Berg and Smalla 2009, Van Der Heijden et al. 2008). Furthermore, Peay et al. (2013) demonstrated that fungal species distribution and richness are extensively associated with plants. By evaluating the composition of soil microbiota, the

alterations in plant community structure grown on the same soil can be identified (Barberán et al. 2015). Nevertheless, some studies showed that certain plant species do not influence soil microbiota of soil where they are grown (Lekberg and Waller 2016; Nunan et al. 2005). Bulgarelli et al. (2012) illustrated the context-specific interaction of microbes and plants. Moreover, a particular plant can interact with microbiota based on the soil type.

15.3 Soil Type and Its Microbiome

15.3.1 Grassland Soils

Grasslands are a type of geographical area where grass species dominate other groups of plants. They are also characterized by short growth and non-woody plant species (Gibson 2009). Microbes in soil are considered as crucial decomposers of these ecosystems, and they have a role in nutrient cycling (Freschet et al. 2013). Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi are extensively found in these grasslands, and they develop mutual plant-rhizome interactions with plants (Brundrett 2002). However, additional interactions comprising ecto- and ericoid mycorrhizal fungi are not frequent in these ecosystems since these interactions are particular to arboraceous and ericaceous plant species (Brundrett 2002). Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi benefit the host plant in many ways such as in the absorption of limiting nutrient (Smith and Read 2008), decomposition of organic matter (Hodge et al. 2001), embellishing the capacity to take in moisture (Ruiz-Lozano 2003), decreasing the occurrence of pathogenic diseases to plants (Newsham et al. 1995) and defence in opposition to herbivory (Johnson and Gilbert 2015).

Another group of microorganisms that dwell in grasslands are soil protists that belong to Eukarya and are single-celled organisms (Fiore-Donno et al. 2019). These organisms aid in developing community structure of flora and other groups of microbiotas like bacteria, fungi and algae (Trap et al. 2016; Geisen et al. 2018). Soil protist diversification is correlated with functional group diversity of the vegetation present in grasslands (Ledeganck et al. 2003). In contrast to other microorganisms, insights on protists are very constrained.

15.3.2 Forest Soil

If we calculate the overall forest area of earth, it will be around four billion hectares. Furthermore, the tropical rainforest (lungs of the planet) is a critical carbon sink on the globe. The whole forest architecture is influenced by climate and soil conditions. Zhou et al. (2016) demonstrated the bacterial and fungal varieties expand together with temperature gradient. When the temperature of the forest is very less, it freezes microbial functions, decay of carbon-containing compounds and nutrient cycling and further leads to carbon aggregation and nitrogen deficiency. However, increased temperature can lead to overall reversal of the above-mentioned processes (Reinsch

et al. 2017; Malhi et al. 1999). In forest ecosystems massive intricacies and heterogeneity of soil microbiota occur even regionally. This phenomenon may be due to huge trees that develop exclusive microhabitats and allows the survival of diverse microorganisms (Štursová and Baldrian 2011). Rhizome of trees tends to form mutual interactions with ectomycorrhizal fungi. Eighty percent of the fungal genera in forest belong to these ectomycorrhizal fungi, and this accounts for one-third of the overall microbiota of forest (Högberg and Högberg 2002). These ecosystems mostly carry elevated fungal/bacterial ratios. Moreover, bacterial varieties are lesser than grasslands or agricultural soils (Roesch et al. 2007; Delgado-Baquerizo and Eldridge 2019). Weathering of rocks and subsequent mineral deposition in soil is carried out by most of the microbes in the soil (Richardson and Simpson 2011). Fungal genera extensively accomplish this task. Nevertheless, only certain groups of forest bacteria have the ability to take part in this (Uroz et al. 2009; Adamo and Violante 2000).

15.3.3 Desert Soils

The initial groups that evade deserts are extremophiles which include bacteria and archaea (Mapelli et al. 2012) accounting to their ability to thrive in extreme conditions (Colica et al. 2014). During secondary succession other microbial groups such as fungi, lichens and mosses may resume their growth and development in deserts, and they constitute biological soil crusts (BSC) (Li et al. 2018). BSC aids desert ecosystems to attain soil stability and regulate carbon and nitrogen cycles and survival of vascular plants (Li et al. 2018). The endurance of desert fauna is also associated with bacterial diversity in soil where they grow (Shelef et al. 2013). Jorquera et al. (2012) demonstrated that fauna structure affects the constitution of microbial populations and positively regulates their growth and development.

15.3.4 Peatland Soils

The peatlands are remarkably marked by their aggregation of dead remnants on the surface. The water-clogged condition of land surface accounts to this, and overall degradation of litter is prevented (Joosten and Clarke 2002). Peatlands stock carbon and are involved in its cycling and also cause release of methane (Page et al. 2011). The crucial factors that affect the microbes which perform these functions are depth, redox condition and carbon quality (Morales et al. 2006). With the difference in fauna of each peatland, its microbial functions and degradation of organic matter differ (Fisk et al. 2003). Alteration of the fungal population structure of various peatlands depends on the litter type of that particular peatland (Andersen et al. 2013). Trinder et al. (2008) demonstrated that litter type is crucial than groundwater levels for underlying fungal population in peatlands.

15.3.5 Tundra Soil

These ecosystems are massively amalgamated with constantly changing hydrothermal features. Rhizome of these ecosystems plays a critical role in biogeochemical cycling. Evaluation of the microbiome of these regions aids in understanding environmental alterations and finding remedial ways to cope with it (Lydolph et al. 2005; Li et al. 2011). Microbiota is less prominent in the Arctic, Antarctic, Qinghai-Tibet Plateau and Siberian permafrost. Soil temperature is a crucial parameter in these ecosystems which influence soil respiration, degradation of litter, nitrogen metabolism, fauna characters and nutrient absorption (Callesen et al. 2003). However certain ecosystems are also influenced by total carbon (Ganzert et al. 2011). Carbon content can regulate the carbon metabolism and hence influence the soil microbiota (Jangid et al. 2008). Barns et al. (1999) showed that other factors like soil type and pH can also regulate microbial community alterations in this ecosystem (Barns et al. 1999). Organic acids in the soil mostly account for the pH in tundra region (Hobbie and Gough 2004).

15.4 Factors Influencing the Soil Microbiome

The growth and development of microorganisms on soil are highly restricted. Reasons may be abiotic stress, intra- and interspecific competition arising between different organisms and non-uniform dissemination of nutrients (Kuzyakov and Blagodatskaya 2015). It is not possible to point out a peculiar biotic or abiotic factor that contributes extensively to the constitution of soil microbiota. Jones et al. (2009) pointed out that even the carbon compounds that ooze out from rhizomes can influence microbiota. Furthermore, the exact quantity of carbon that reaches this way cannot be estimated. However, investigation of soils having a wide magnitude of pH values (from pH 4 to pH >8) indicated that pH is the suitable parameter for revealing the bacterial and archaeal population structure (Griffiths et al. 2011; Lauber et al. 2009). But a limited range of pH values sometimes will not influence the soil microbiome. Moreover, there is no possibility that every member of the microbiome will react to altered pH. Multiple determinants may affect the makeup of microbiomes in soil. But the factor which contributed extensively to alteration in soil microbiome is not yet confirmed. Along with pH, other crucial factors include nitrogen and phosphorus content of soil (Cederlund et al. 2014), organic carbon composition (Sul et al. 2013), temperature (Oliverio et al. 2017), soil oxygen and redox status (Pett-Ridge and Firestone 2005) and soil moisture (Maestre et al. 2015). The above-mentioned factors are not mutually exclusive, but they are correlated to each other in one or another way.

15.5 Plant-Soil Microbiome Interactions

Soil microbiota has a distinct and pivotal role in the soil ecosystem; it improves plant health, quality and fertility that contribute heavily to the quality and yield of agricultural products. Microbiota often encounters complex organic, dead-decaying matter having high energy, the nutritive value required for cell maintenance and stable growth (Dubey et al. 2020). Recent advancements in the food and agricultural industry predominantly depend on the usage of chemical-based fertilizers and pesticides which manipulate the quality of nutritional requirements, crop productivity and health status. However, the continuous exposure of these chemical-based constituents contributes to the accumulation of toxic compounds, which ultimately impacts human health. Hence, it is essential to come up with the alternatives to chemical pesticides and fertilizers for the overall wellbeing of agricultural products. The plant rhizosphere is a crucial ecological niche with an enormous diversity of microorganisms (Vishwakarma et al. 2020). The rhizospheric microbiome possesses the properties like plant growth promotion, disease suppression, removal of toxic materials and assimilation macro- and micronutrients in plants. Enabling such a beneficial microbiome for crop productivity represents an effective way out of modulating the overall crop yield and plant quality employing bio-formulations (Prasad et al. 2021). The microbiomes that colonize the plants can be categorized into two different categories, i.e. epiphytes, which are present onto the surface and endophytes, which are found within the plant tissues, phyllosphere and rhizosphere, close to the roots. The rhizosphere is considered to play the most dynamic and remarkable impact on the plant nutritional status and overall wellbeing (Thapa and Prasanna 2018). It mainly comprises of soil and roots along with root hairs that establish their interactions by communicating with a variety of microbes in the rhizosphere space, thereby significantly affecting the plant growth, and offer resistance against numerous environmental stresses (Vacheron et al. 2013). The whole system comprises plant roots interacting with the rhizomicrobiome facilitating the plant-root microbiome. The intertwining characteristics of host-microbial interactions open up the possibility of numerous signalling events, namely, plant root–root and root–microbe interactions. However, root–nematode communications may also serve as a determining mode to understand the overall behaviour of plants for such factors.

The recent technological advancements concerning genome and proteome-based analysis identify the mutual association between microbiome and plants, with emphasis on the mechanisms for improved production. Various compartments of plants harbour distinct endophyte signatures, which solely depend on the source allocation of a plant. Upon evaluating the structure of phyllosphere, it was observed that *Curtobacterium*, *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Methylobacterium*, *Frigoribacterium*, *Sphingomonas*, *Pantoea*, *Acinetobacter*, *Citrobacter*, *Enterobacter* and *Erwinia* are the predominant genera, whereas endophytes are occupied by a collection of *Burkholderia*, *Staphylococcus*, *Ralstonia*, *Mesorhizobium*, *Pseudomonas*, *Propionibacterium* and *Bacillus* (Rana et al. 2020). The dynamic nature of microbiome communities that are associated with the plant roots preferably

undergoes horizontal transfer, enriched from the soil-rich communities populated by *Bacteroidetes*, *Acidobacteria*, *Proteobacteria*, *Actinobacteria* and *Planctomycetes* (Ecker et al. 2019). On the contrary, the transfer of bacteria could also occur by modulating an essential source of dividing microbes from the plant roots up to its development. However, the narrow layers of soil microenvironment in the near vicinity of the root system are thought to be a highly active area for microbial movement, making it one of the most intricate environments.

15.6 Soil Enzymes and the Soil Microbiome

Microbes mainly degrade organic matter for their nutritional requirement and as their energy source. As a result, the organic matter is oxidized, and an electron is released and is used as an energy source to drive the microbial metabolic pathways. Biogeochemical cycles and biodegradation processes are interlinked. Different bacterial genes are responsible for mitigating the process of biodegradation. How a genetically modified organism can perform biodegradation process has become an interesting area of research. Degradation of an organic compound with the help of microbial enzymes in the process is widely known as biodegradation (Karigar and Rao 2011). Several classes of enzymes are present in the environment which help degrade the organic matter. Various organic compounds, viz., carbon, nitrogen, sulphur, phosphorus, chlorine and many other minerals, help the microorganism fulfil their nutritional requirements (Verma et al. 2014). A different type of organic matter disperses throughout the earth and in various habitats like marine, freshwater and terrestrial as well. Both prokaryotic and eukaryotic microbes can help degrade organic matter. Enormous organic matter found in nature includes the plant residues, animal wastes, microbial biomass, organic compost, detritus, pesticides, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) (Das and Chandran 2011).

Microbial enzymes are often called extracellular enzymes. Bacteria secrete different organic material-degrading enzymes such as polysaccharide-degrading enzymes, pesticide-degrading enzymes, PAH-degrading enzymes and so on. Biodegradation is helpful in several aspects such as bioremediation, biogeochemical cycling, etc. (Ortiz-Hernández et al. 2013). The microbial plasma membrane is selectively permeable and cannot allow large polymeric substances into the cell. So, microbes first degrade large polymeric organic substances to small nutrients that can be taken up by the microorganisms (Costa et al. 2018). Some of the most striking examples of microbial extracellular enzymes are amylases, cellulases, chitinases, hemicellulases, hyaluronidases, ligninases, lipases, pectinases, proteases and so on. Sulphate (SO_4^{2-}) is used as an electron acceptor for organic matter oxidation in marine water under anaerobic conditions. Sulphate-reducing bacteria (SRB) play a key role in degrading organic complex (Jørgensen et al. 2019). Sulphate-reducing bacteria have been divided into six major groups, *Desulfotomaculum*, *Desulfobulbus*, *Desulfobacterium*, *Desulfobacter*, *Desulfococcus-Desulfonema-Desulfosarcina* and *Desulfovibrio-Desulfomicrobium*.

Carbohydrate is a major component of organic matter and one of the major carbon and energy sources (Daly et al. 2000). To understand the biodegradation process, one must know about the microorganism that carries out the process. Microorganisms release several enzymes for this process (growth and co-metabolism). Organic matter is solely used as a carbon and energy source to support microbial growth. This process is crucial because it promotes complete mineralization or degradation. Different types of microbes need some growth substrate along with organic matter for supporting their growth; this is called co-metabolism. The process of biodegradation is diverse, but the end product is generally CO_2. It is carried out both aerobically and anaerobically. Moreover, different types of factors control the biodegradation process like temperature, pH, availability of nitrogen and phosphorus sources and genetic potential. The use of genetically modified organisms in biodegradation opens a new era in the field of bioremediation. The most striking feature of soil microbiota is to degrade hydrocarbons. Soil microflora contains an enormous amount of diverse microflora that includes bacteria, fungi, protozoa, algae and actinomycetes, possessing a capacity to degrade hydrocarbons (Sachidanand et al. 2019). The factors affecting microbial degradation are depicted in Fig. 15.1.

15.7 Degradation of Organic Matter by Microbial Enzymes

Plant root exudates may directly participate in the process of organic degradation by secreting several enzymes such as laccases, nitroreductases, phosphatases, dehalogenases, cytochrome P450 monooxygenases and peroxidases (Muratova et al. 2009). However, the research in microbial degradation of organic matter is limited and is evolving with time. It has been observed that in a phenanthrene-contaminated environment, the activity of oxidoreductases (e.g. peroxidises, tyrosinases, laccases) in sorghum (*Sorghum bicolor* (L.) Moench) root exudates increased as phenanthrene concentration increased in the soil (Hoang et al. 2020). A few investigations made on the degradation of petroleum hydrocarbons have shown that the plant enzymes were mainly involved in the oxidation of PAHs, and the initial attack on the contaminant was predominantly performed by soil microbial enzymes (Ghosal et al. 2016).

Plant roots can act upon the soil contaminants, but sometimes they are susceptible to contaminant-mediated stresses (Lareen et al. 2016). Vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhiza (VAM) fungi are ubiquitous and present as symbionts in plant roots (Bhattacharjee and Sharma 2011). The coexistence of these VAM fungi has prime importance when plants are under environmental stress such as contamination of petroleum or other PAHs. It has been found that the enzyme concentrations increase with increasing crude oil concentrations (Alarcón et al. 2019). Studies have also reported that some microbial enzymes take part in the degradation of crude oil and are able to withstand 20% (w/w) crude oil in the culture medium, and the tolerance could be explained by their ability to degrade and utilize the hydrocarbons as an energy source (Xu et al. 2018). Moreover, VAM may also cause induction of root

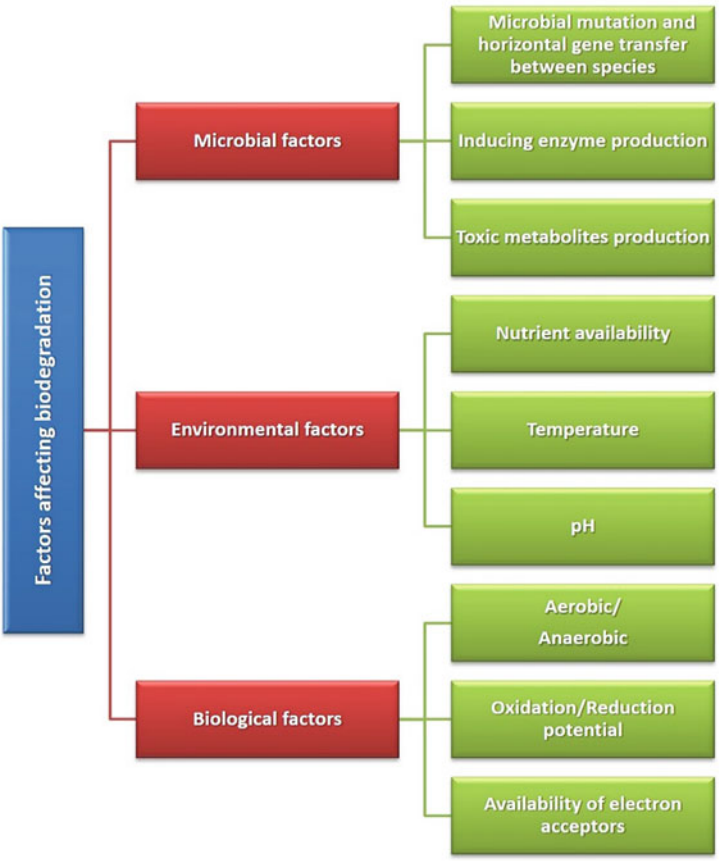


Fig. 15.1 Factors mediating biodegradation. (Adapted and modified from Boopathy 2000)

peroxidase production by their host plants, which are often involved in hydrocarbon metabolization (War et al. 2012). For example, wheat rhizosphere mycorrhized by *Rhizophagus irregularis* showed remarkably higher peroxidase activity than compared to the control (non-mycorrhized) (Pérez-de-Luque et al. 2017). A higher percentage of PAH and alkane degradation were also observed in *R. irregularis*-inoculated wheat in comparison to non-inoculated wheat (Ingrid et al. 2016). A detailed account of microbial enzymes and their role in the degradation of organic compounds have been summarized in Table 15.1.

Table 15.1 Secreted microbial enzymes and their role in the degradation of organic compounds (Adapted and modified from Hoang et al. 2021)

Enzymes	Catalytic functions	Microorganisms
Dehalogenase	It hydrolyses the chlorine (Cl) and fluorine (F) from the halogenated aliphatic hydrocarbon moieties (e.g. trichloroethylene) and aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g. DDT, PCBs, etc.)	Bacteria: *Xanthobacter autotrophicus*, *Sphingobium chlorophenolicum*
Dioxygenase	Degrades a variety of organic compound	Bacteria: *Pseudomonas* sp., *Mycobacterium* sp.
Peroxidase	Degrades various aromatic compounds; reductive dehalogenation of aliphatic hydrocarbon	Fungi: *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*, *Phanerochaete laevis*
Nitrilase	Digests the cyanide groups from aromatic and aliphatic nitriles	Fungi: *Aspergillus niger*
Nitroreductase	Reduces nitrogen group on aromatic compound bearing nitrogen	Bacteria: *Comamonas* sp., *Pseudomonas putida*
Phosphatase	Remove phosphate groups from organophosphates	Mostly soil bacterium and *Aspergillus* sp. fungi

15.8 Importance of Soil Microbiome in Bioremediation

Bioremediation is a microorganism-mediated process that degrades and detoxifies environmental pollutants in a sustainable and environmentally favourable manner. Soil microbiomes have clearly emerged as a significant component of bioremediation, as they are more stable and efficient than pure cultures, and have been identified as one of the scientific frontiers in the domains of soil environmental science and technology (Ying and Wei 2019).

Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) are extremely lipophilic in nature, and their biomagnification in the food chain has negative consequences for the ecosystem and human health (Chakraborty and Das 2016). Diverse soil microorganisms have shown the ability to flourish on harmful organic substances in soil, such as polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), pesticides and plastics, among others (Teng et al. 2015). Microbes use gene mutation, rearrangement and differential regulation to help them survive in unfavourable conditions such as contaminated environments (Thomas and Nielsen 2005). Several microbes including those belonging to bacterial genera such as *Pseudomonas*, *Burkholderia*, *Stenotrophomonas*, *Corynebacterium*, *Staphylococcus*, *Micrococcus*, *Mycobacterium*, *Rhodococcus*, *Sphingobium*, *Bacillus*, *Aeromicrobium*, *Brevibacterium*, *Desulfotomaculum*, *Desulfovibrio*, *Dietzia*, *Escherichia*, *Gordonia*, *Methanosaeta*, *Moraxella*, *Pandoraea* and *Pelatomaculum* have been found to show chemoorganotrophy for degradation of POPs (Chowdhury et al. 2008; De Roy et al.

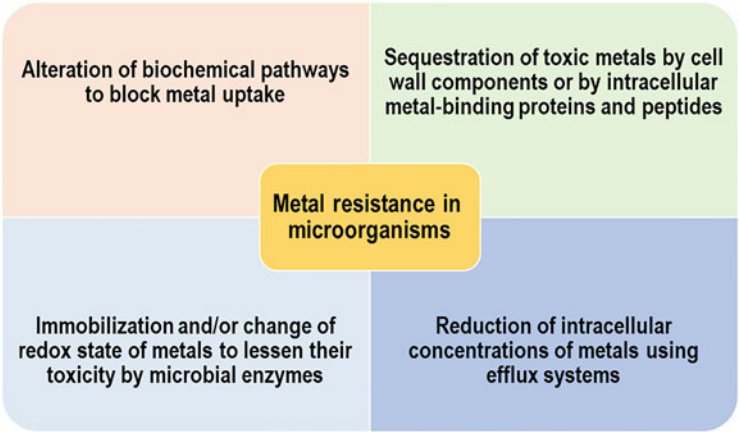


Fig. 15.2 Factors responsible for metal resistance in microorganisms

2014; Chakraborty and Das 2016). Similarly, fungal genera such as *Amorphotheca*, *Neosartorya*, *Talaromyces*, *Graphium* and *Irpex* have been identified as promising POC degraders (Gupta et al. 2016; Lenoir et al. 2016).

Heavy metal remediation may be hindered by their low bioavailability due to insolubility and soil-bound characteristics (Teng et al. 2015). Bioremediation using indigenous microorganisms to treat heavy metal-polluted soils by converting toxic heavy metals into non-hazardous forms is a cost-effective method (Gupta et al. 2016). Some soil microorganisms' metabolism could enhance metal bioavailability in soil by altering soil pH, resulting in the production of chelators (i.e. siderophores) and organic acids that can improve metal complexation and mobility (Schalk et al. 2011). Microbial volatilization is a preferred technique for metal bioremoval of metals like selenium and mercury, which can be accelerated by a variety of soil bacteria (Zhang et al. 2012). Factors responsible for metal resistance in microorganisms are shown in Fig. 15.2.

Microbes can assist phytoremediation by immobilizing or activating heavy metals (Ojuederie and Babalola 2017). Nitrogen fixation, phosphate solubilization, phytohormone synthesis, siderophore release and synthesis of indole acetic acid, 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase and volatile chemicals are all methods used by plant growth-promoting microbes in soil to stimulate plant growth (de Bashan et al. 2012; Hao et al. 2014). Furthermore, some findings suggest that consortia of bacterial strains exhibit better bioremediation of heavy metals than a single strain. For example, Kang et al. (2016) evaluated the bioremediation of combined lead, cadmium and copper-contaminated soils using a bacterial consortium composed of *Viridibacillus arenosi B-21*, *Sporosarcina soli B-22*, *Enterobacter cloacae KJ-46* and *Enterobacter cloacae KJ-47*. When compared to single strains, the bacterial consortium demonstrated higher heavy metal resistance and remediation efficacy. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) are common organic pollutants that, due to their hydrophobic character, persist in the

environment (Lamichhane et al. 2016). In the bioremediation of PAH-contaminated soils, soil microbiomes are commonly used. Wang et al. (2016) enriched a unique aerobic microbial community for complete phenanthrene degradation from a petrochemical-contaminated soil.

Crude oil is a complex mixture of hydrocarbons and other chemical compounds, as well as some organometallic components, especially vanadium and nickel (Varjani and Upasani 2017). A wide range of soil microorganisms have the potential to decompose oil sludge (Shankar et al. 2014). The use of consortia of microorganisms in bioremediation of oil spills in soil demands further investigation. Mariano et al. (2008) investigated the biodegradation of commercial and weathered diesel oils, concluding that consortia had greater biodegradation capability than pure cultures and that individual isolates might not help in degradation. Cerqueira et al. (2011) used a heterogeneous bacterial consortium and five pure petroleum-degrading isolates to examine the biodegradation potential of aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbons in petrochemical oily sludge. The results of the heterogeneous bacterial consortium exhibited excellent outcomes. In a similar manner, Shankar et al. (2014) identified 32 oil-degrading isolates that were positive and created a consortium to degrade the mixture of petrol, diesel and engine oil. They confirmed that consortia of microorganisms are superior bioremediation agents for oil-contaminated soil than individual microorganisms. Haque et al. (2021) in their study concluded that biosurfactant produced by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ENO14 has potential to be used as a crude oil bioremediation agent.

15.9 Factors Affecting Bioremediation by Soil Microbiomes

Microorganisms are extremely sensitive to their growing environment and react rapidly to changes (Varjani 2017). Decades of research have demonstrated that soil parameters, such as pH, organic carbon concentration, salinity, texture and available nutrient concentrations, have a broad range (Fierer 2017). In most soil environments, however, microbial survival and growth are often severely limited. There can be persistent abiotic stressors (such as low water availability, limited availability of organic carbon sources, acidic conditions and a wide range of pollutants), intense competition with other soil microbial groups, frequent disturbances (such as drying-rewetting and freezing-thawing events and predation by earthworms and/or other fauna) and unequal distribution of different kinds of resources across space and time (D'Costa et al. 2006; Kuzyakov and Blagodatskaya 2015).

15.9.1 Effect of Conditions of Soil Environment on Bioremediation

The soil environment, which includes soil type, aeration status, temperature, bioavailability of nutrients, presence of other inhibitory pollutants or co-contaminants, soil moisture, water activity and microbial competition, all have a significant impact

on a remedial system's efficiency and effectiveness (Varjani and Upasani 2017). To improve remedial efficiency and assure field-scale success, these parameters must be properly optimized. In bioremediation, temperature is crucial (Varjani et al. 2014). It has an impact on both the physical and chemical states of pollutants, as well as the microbiomes (i.e. microbial growth rate, gas solubilities, soil matrix, microbe metabolism and the physical and chemical state of contaminants) (Chandra et al. 2013; Varjani and Upasani 2017).

Thamer et al. (2013) found that soil microbes biodegraded crude oil (80% rate in 27 days), which they attributed to environmental conditions, the development of emulsion materials, the presence of bacterial enzyme and the availability of appropriate temperature. They hypothesized that temperature and nitrogen demand were critical factors in increasing microbial effectiveness in degrading crude oil components. Varjani (2017) reviewed that petroleum hydrocarbons lack important nutrients for microbial development, such as nitrogen and phosphorus. Studies have found that the best C/N/P ratio for promoting microbial development is 100:10:1 (Zhao et al. 2011; Dias et al. 2012). Furthermore, researchers have frequently observed that soil pH is the strongest predictor of bacterial and archaeal community composition while studying a collection of soils with a wide range of pH values (from pH 4 to pH $>$ 8) (Fierer 2017). They predicted that soil pH would have a significant impact on the diversity and richness of soil microbiome, which affects soil functioning, including biodegradation of pollutants and biotransformation.

15.9.2 Effect of Bioavailability of Pollutants and Biosurfactants in Soil on Bioremediation Process

The amount of a substance that is physico-chemically available to microorganisms is known as bioavailability (Souza et al. 2014). The longevity of POPs in the environment is attributed to their low water solubility and ability to be incorporated into soil organics, limiting their availability to degrading microbes (Chakraborty and Das 2016). It has been found that the bioavailability of a compound in different contaminants might cause it to be degraded to varying degrees by the same organism or consortium, rather than its chemical structure (Varjani 2017). Bioavailability is influenced by soil physico-chemical properties (such as composition, texture, water content, pH, sorption, occlusion and ageing) and has a significant impact on the feasibility of risk-based remediation, the type of microbial transformations that occur and whether POCs will be used as a primary, secondary or co-metabolic substrate or energy source (Kuppusamy et al. 2017). Varjani and Upasani (2016) observed that soil microorganisms can produce a variety of products (such as gases, biosurfactants, biopolymers, solvents and acids) to aid in remediation. Biosurfactants are among the products that have received a lot of attention since they play a key role in increasing hydrocarbon pollutant bioavailability (Souza et al. 2014). As a result, using biosurfactants to increase the bioavailability of POPs, particularly PAHs, is a promising strategy (Gupta et al. 2016).

15.9.3 Role of Indigenous Microorganisms of Soil in Bioremediation Process

Exogenous microorganisms struggle to survive and flourish in soil environments due to abiotic stresses as well as indigenous bacteria (Varjani and Upasani 2017). A significant degree of competition between inoculated microbes and indigenous soil microbes has been indicated, as evidenced by the widespread prevalence of antibiotic-producing and antibiotic-resistant soil bacteria (D'Costa et al. 2006). Microbial consortia exhibited an advantage over single strains in that their great diversity of microbes could aid exogenous microorganisms in surviving in new environments (Großkopf and Soyer 2014).

15.10 Soil Microbiome and Climate Change

Climate change is threatening the very existence of almost all the structures thriving on the earth surface (both biotic and abiotic structures). Any ecosystem, either it is terrestrial, aquatic or even a human body (can be considered as ecosystem as they harbour various microbes), should be in stability via homeostasis to accomplish competence in the changing environmental condition (e.g. climate change).

Soil, being an abiotic assembly that hosts vast majority of living organisms on the planet, right from the plants to animals, is also influenced by the climate change. Climate change affects the soil environment in various ways which includes elevated levels of carbon dioxide (CO_2), temperature rise, permafrost thaw, drought, elevated levels of rainfall and floods, increased frequency of wildfire, soil warming and so on (Jansson and Hofmockel 2020). Influence of climate change on soil environment also affects the soil microbiome (Fig. 15.3). Soil microbiome is crucial in the operation of various biogeochemical cycles and nutrient processing. Soil microbiome serves as the deciding authority of plants' health, and also, they play a key role in the decomposition of dead and decaying materials dumped into the soil. In fact, apart from the physical and chemical processes, the formation of soil structures is majorly influenced by the soil microbiome.

15.11 Effect of Elevated CO_2 and Temperature on Soil Microbiome

Dunbar et al. (2012) have reported that the elevated levels of CO_2 in the soils can increase the abundance of *Acidobacteria* through a 10-year cross-biome study. Elevation of CO_2 in the soils can initially increase the plant productivity; however, its long-term elevation in soil can cause detrimental effects by rapid decomposition of soil organic matter by soil microbes, which can inversely affect the soil health (Drake et al. 2011; Van Groenigen et al. 2014). Environmental disturbances caused due to climate change are being mitigated by the soil microbes as they have certain limits of tolerance threshold (microbes are existing in the earth surface since early

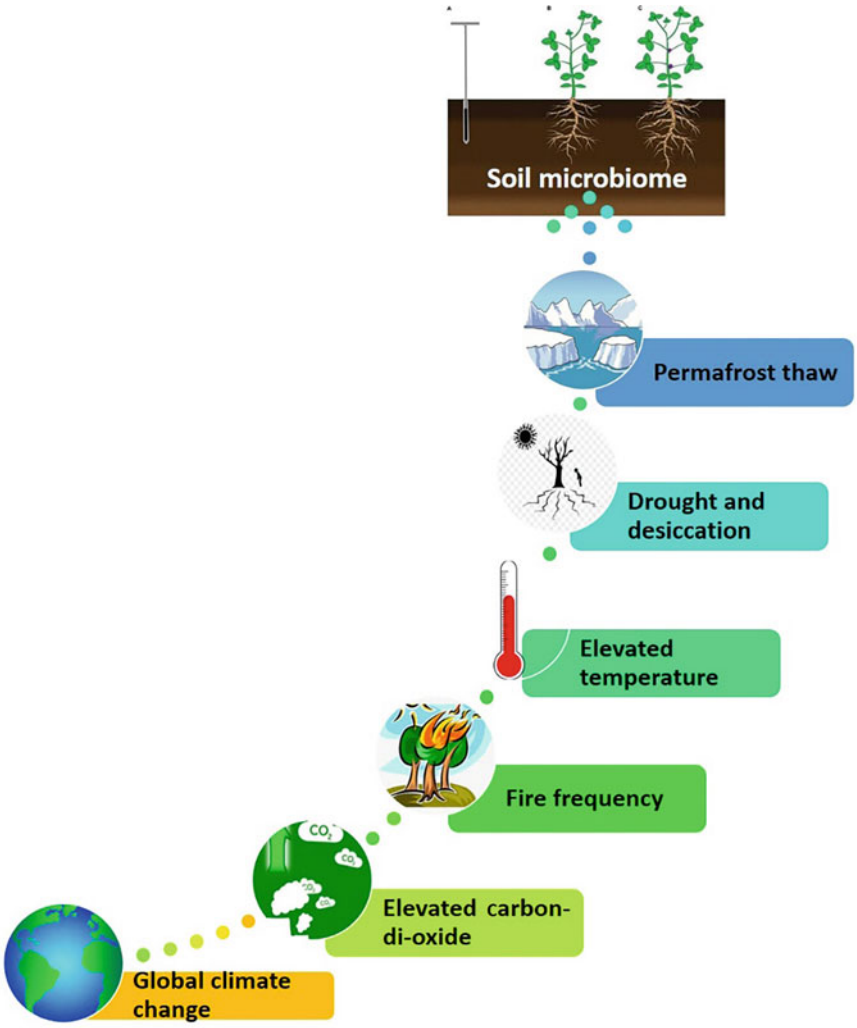


Fig. 15.3 Impact of climate change on various environmental factors that determines soil microbiome

Precambrian era mitigating various environmental perturbations). Microbes adapt certain cellular mechanisms to mitigate the environmental stresses. For instance, microbes thriving in high temperatures exert tolerance by changing the cell membrane lipid composition and also by producing heat-shock proteins (Jansson and Hofmockel 2020). Long-term soil warming study conducted by the Harvard Forest Ecological Research Station for a period of 26 years by increasing the temperature to 5 °C that has adversely affected the soil carbon degradation by increasing the microbial activity (i.e. degradation of recalcitrant soil carbon), which ultimately affects the sustainability of the soils.

15.12 Effect of Permafrost Thawing on Soil Microbiome

The serious consequence of global climate change is the thawing of permafrost. Permafrost thawing can lead to rise in the global sea level and also expose the dormant microbes in the permafrost soils into an active state (i.e. favourable condition for microbial growth). During permafrost thaw, frozen or dormant microbes become active by utilizing the available stored carbon from the arctic soils, thereby emitting greenhouse gases; in particular, methane can be more readily formed by microbes in the permafrost soils (Jansson and Hofmockel 2020). Moisture is one of the main factors that determines the microbial activity, and permafrost thaw gifts this advantage to the microbes that are ever-dormant in the freezing condition. Redox conditions in the permafrost soils encourage iron reduction by microbes, as evidenced by Alaskan permafrost (Hultman et al. 2015). Mostly, *Actinobacteria* are found to be increased during permafrost thaw; however, there is a difference in microbial community with respect to the location of the study (Taş et al. 2018; Müller et al. 2018). Genome-centric metagenomics exploiting the technology of metagenome-assembled genomes (MAGs) for studying the permafrost soil microbiome has revealed the presence of various functional genes responsible for cold-shock proteins, heat-shock proteins, cryoprotectants, DNA repair-related proteins, methanogenesis, plant polysaccharide degrading enzymes and so on (Woodcroft et al. 2018).

15.13 Effect of Drought on Soil Microbiome

Drought which directly implies the loss of moisture in the environment is negatively impacting the microbial growth. Drought leads to loss of microbial activity, thereby suppressing the soil respiration. Surface-dwelling photoautotrophs dominate the dryland systems as they possess adaptive mechanisms such as dormancy/reactivation, osmoregulation, extracellular polymer production, etc., to cope up with moisture and carbon limitations (Jansson and Hofmockel 2020). Mostly *Actinobacteria* and *Bacilli* are well adapted as they can become dormant (conserving their bioactivity) during desiccation.

15.14 Effect of Elevated Precipitation and Increased Fire Frequency on Soil Microbiome

Elevated rainfall (precipitation) and excessive flooding can cause depletion of nutritional resources for the soil microbiome, thereby decreasing the microbial diversity and functioning. On the other hand, excessive precipitation can fill the soil pores due to increase in moisture and results in an anaerobic environment. The anaerobic condition can facilitate the process of methanogenesis and denitrification, thereby releasing methane and N_2O to the atmosphere, adding up the burden in managing global warming (Jansson and Hofmockel 2020). Increasing wildfire

frequency can intensify the effect of CO_2 elevation. Wildfire can cause depletion of soil carbon. Fire directly attacks the microbial activity by protein denaturation; however, archaea can counteract heat as they possess heat-resistant cell walls. Hinojosa et al. (2019) reported the decrease in proportion of fungi, whereas the proportion of *Actinobacteria* is highly increased post fire in in a Mediterranean shrubland exposed experimentally to drought stress. Moreover, the fungal diversity was initially found to be increasing due to decrease in pH post fire, but later diversity started to decrease due to prolonged fire exposure. Hence, with focused insights into the combinatorial effect of elevated CO_2 with respect to changes in temperature, precipitation is essential to better understand the impact of soil microbes on the health status of the terrestrial ecosystem.

There are several ways by which soil microbes can mitigate the consequence of climate change, namely, sequestration of carbon by necromass (dead microbial biomass) formation, water retainment by production of extracellular polymeric substances (EPS) to mitigate drought stress, PGPR (plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria) inoculation to promote plant growth by producing phytohormones to overcome the stressful conditions, mycological association of plants with beneficial arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi to reduce water stress by producing aquaporins and so on (Jansson and Hofmockel 2020).

15.15 Resistance and Resilience of Soil Microbiome

Disturbance can be defined as the process by which the stability of an environment is negatively affected by various stress factors, viz., natural or anthropogenic stresses (Shade et al. 2012). Based on the time span, environmental disturbances are grouped into two types, namely, pulse disturbance and press disturbance. In pulse disturbance, the time span is short and discrete, whereas press disturbance lasts constantly for a longer period. Soil environment experiences both pulse and press disturbances globally, either naturally or due to anthropogenic actions. For instance, Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC 2007) has predicted the CO_2 elevation and ocean acidification as press disturbance and extremities in weather conditions (elevated rainfall or temperature) and fire frequency as pulse disturbance. Either it is pulse or press disturbance, environment tends to maintain its homeostasis to certain extent by responding to the disturbance through the process of stability (Rykiel 1985). While studying the environmental perturbations, it is essential to understand three key terms, namely, resistance, resilience and functional redundancy (Fig. 15.4).

15.15.1 Soil Resistance

The process by which the microbe, macro-organism (plant or animal) or an environment retains its potential without being affected (intact) by the prevailing stressful condition is termed as resistance. For example, drought-resistant microbes produce

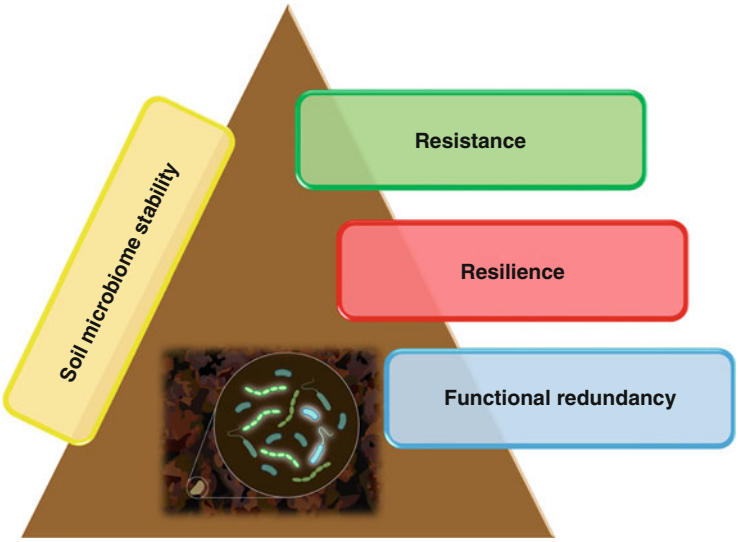


Fig. 15.4 Soil microbiome stability determining factors—resistance, resilience and functional redundancy

EPS to manage desiccation caused due to drought stress (Jansson and Hofmockel 2020). Resistance against environmental disturbance is mainly influenced by the ability of the microbial cell to tolerate the perturbation by acquiring various tolerance mechanisms such as physiological plasticity (ability of the cell to adapt to different environmental conditions in a short period of time), dormancy and so on. Microbial entities in the soil, forming a resistance community that maintains the soil in the undisturbed state (insensitive to environmental disturbances) despite pulse or press disturbance, and the soil in which this phenomenon occurs exerts soil resistance.

15.15.2 Soil Resilience

The process by which the cells or any ecosystem that is recurring back to its original state by overcoming the environmental disturbance is called as resilience (Pimm 1984). Soil resilience studies are gaining focus in the recent years which employs the experimentally induced pulse as well as pressing disturbances. Hartmann et al. (2014) have reported that the soil compaction experimentation by using harvesting machine (cultural practices) showed decrease in soil permeability and water infiltration. In terms of microbial diversity, resilience is limited and there is a significant increase in abundance of sulphur reducers, and fungi is said to be the most affected species (especially ectomycorrhizal fungi; Longepierre et al. (2021). Application of vinasse (an organic fertilizer obtained from sugarcane industry as a by-product in the production of ethanol) as fertilizer into the soil has shown good resilience property of the soil microbiome. In addition to these stresses, metal dumping (Azarbad et al.

2016) and agro-land deposition of organic and inorganic contaminants (Jiao et al. 2019) also showed notable soil resilience.

Resilience is mainly dependent on the R-K strategist microbes. R strategists show rapid growth rate with less resource exploitation, and they are highly resilient but shows less resistance. K strategists in the contrary exhibit comparatively slower growth rate with higher resource utilization, and K-strategists exhibit lesser resilience but higher resistance (Shade et al. 2012). Functional redundancy is the ability of microbes to retain the community functions despite changes in the microbial diversity (Allison and Martiny 2008).

15.16 Metagenomic Tools to Study Soil Microbiome

Improvements in metagenomic analysis have revolutionized the study of microbiomes in various ecosystems of our planet. Metagenomics comprises of various sequencing platforms which can analyse short (Illumina) or long (PacBio and Nanopore platforms) reads. The process of metagenomic analysis involves the following steps: environmental DNA extraction, library preparation, sequencing, quality check, assembly, annotation, taxonomic profiling, binning, statistical analysis, gene prediction, etc. (Fig. 15.5). There are various web-based databases and locally installed software and programs available to analyse the sequenced data (Taş et al. 2021). Metagenomic analysis of soil microbiome involves several bioinformatic tools for its analysis.

15.16.1 Quality Tools

The raw data obtained after high-throughput sequencing is subjected to various quality checks to diminish the sequencing bias by removing primer and adapter sequences, reducing low-quality base calls and contaminating sequence reads. The sequence read quality tools includes the following: (1) FastQC which runs some realistic quality control statistical data, (2) MultiQC tool is the collection of data outcomes from multiple samples and forms as a single report, (3) FastQ Screen

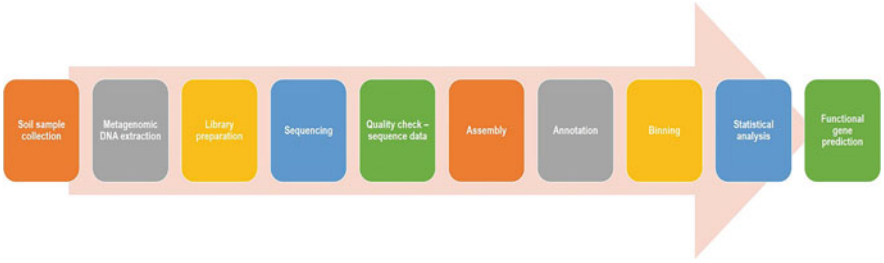


Fig. 15.5 Processes involved in metagenomic analysis of soil

works by aligning the query sequence data against a reference data set, (4) BBDuk tool removes the contaminating sequences with respect to k-mer-based analysis and (5) Khmer tool normalizes the sequences by trimming unwanted sequences by using k-mer analysis (Taş et al. 2021).

15.16.2 Assembly Tools

The high-quality sequence reads obtained after quality check were assembled using the following tools (Taş et al. 2021): (1) CLC Assembler creates assembly based on the de-Bruijn graph, (2) Meta-IDBA aims to contain high- as well as low-abundant genomes through k-mer size-based iteration, (3) MetaVelvet-SL modification of Velvet assembler integrating a support vector machine to improve the performance, (4) megahit exploits the k-mer as well as de-Bruijn strategies to obtain computationally cost-effective analysis tool and (5) MetaSPAdes is the modification of SPAdes for high-throughput sequence assembly. There are several assembly quality check tools such as QUAST (which evaluates genome or gene-centric metagenome assemblies by calculating contig length, N50, GC content), dnAQET (runs by Java programming to determine the contigs or scaffolds with respect to reference data and GenomeQC (which integrates multiple quality parameters to illustrate both gene assembly and annotation).

15.16.3 Annotation Tools

There are several web-based annotation tools available which include EBI metagenomics, MG-RAST, KBase and IMG/M A platforms. Several tools require local installation which include MetAMOS, MOCAT2 and Anvi'o (integrated analysis of genomics, metagenomics, metatranscriptomics, pangenomics, metapangenomics, phylogenomics, microbial population genetics; Taş et al. 2021).

15.16.4 Binning and Metagenome-Assembled Genome Refinement Tools

Binning is the process of grouping contigs with reference to genomes. Metagenome-assembled genome (MAG) refinement is the combinatorial strategy which exploits the metagenomic, metatranscriptomic and metametabolomic data of a particular environment to assemble the genome of a specific organism.

MetaBAT2 clustering is based on binning of contigs by determining pairwise distance. Maxbin2 uses an expectation-maximization algorithm for contig clustering. CONCOCT is a blinded contig binning method utilizing the nucleotide composition, k-mer content and coverage data. GroopM is an automated binning strategy that exploits differential data coverage to acquire high-quality bins. DAS Tool cumulates the reports of various binning algorithms to obtain defined results by

calculating improved and unclassified bins. CheckM is the common tool used to quality check the MAGs (Taş et al. 2021).

15.16.5 Statistical Tools

Metagenomic data analysed with statistical tools are considered to be highly reliable data. The tools include the following: (1) Metastats is the specific statistical method developed particularly to handle two different population data instantaneously (Paulson et al. 2011), (2) LefSe employs the method of genetic biomarker (Segata et al. 2011), (3) ShotgunFunctionalizeR compares the functional roles of genetically identified reads and (4) SourceTracker employs Bayesian method for estimation of the portion of a novel community from a group of source environments (Knights et al. 2011).

15.16.6 Gene Prediction Tool

FragGeneScan is the most predominantly used tools for gene prediction from short reads which combines the sequence error model with that of codon usage statistics to predict gene function. Glimmer-MG utilizes the interpolated Markov models (IMMs) to detect the coding regions. Prodigal helps in prediction of genes in the prokaryotic reference-based genomes as well as metagenome analysis. MetaGeneMark investigates the metagenomic analysis-based protein coding genes. Prokka is the hub for assessing a series of external databases to annotate genomes of bacteria, fungi and viral genomes (Taş et al. 2021).

15.17 Conclusion

Soil microbiomes are extremely diverse, and their constituent communities differ substantially in both form and function between habitats. It has an impact on the substrate and surroundings while also being impacted by it, resulting in a complex whole that is more than the sum of its parts. Many microbiome constituents are indigenous to their specific location, making soils a great reservoir of biodiversity. Soil microbiomes are a promising soil remediation approach. We need to figure out how to manipulate and manage soil microbiomes to improve remediation efficiency while also increasing soil fertility. Advances in community characterization and analysis will continue to shed light on the complexity of this diverse and heterogeneous environment, allowing for a better understanding of how the soil microbiome changes as the climate changes.

References

Adamo P, Violante P (2000) Weathering of rocks and neogenesis of minerals associated with lichen activity. Appl Clay Sci 16(5–6):229–256

Alarcón A, García-Díaz M, Hernández-Cuevas LV, Esquivel-Cote R, Ferrera-Cerrato R, Almaraz-Suarez JJ, Ferrera-Rodríguez O (2019) Impact of crude oil on functional groups of culturable bacteria and colonization of symbiotic microorganisms in the *Clitoria-Brachiaria* rhizosphere grown in mesocosms. Acta Biol Colombiana 24(2):343–353

Allison SD, Martiny JB (2008) Resistance, resilience, and redundancy in microbial communities. Proc Natl Acad Sci 105(Supplement 1):11512–11519

Andersen R, Chapman SJ, Artz RRE (2013) Microbial communities in natural and disturbed peatlands: a review. Soil Biol Biochem 57:979–994

Azarbad H, Van Gestel CA, Niklińska M, Laskowski R, Röling WF, Van Straalen NM (2016) Resilience of soil microbial communities to metals and additional stressors: DNA-based approaches for assessing "stress-on-stress" responses. Int J Mol Sci 17(6):933

Bahram M, Hildebrand F, Forslund SK, Anderson JL, Soudzilovskaia NA, Bodegom PM, Bork P et al (2018) Structure and function of the global topsoil microbiome. Nature 560(7717):233–237

Barberán A, McGuire KL, Wolf JA, Jones FA, Wright SJ, Turner BL, Fierer N et al (2015) Relating belowground microbial composition to the taxonomic, phylogenetic, and functional trait distributions of trees in a tropical forest. Ecol Lett 18(12):1397–1405

Barns SM, Takala SL, Kuske CR (1999) Wide distribution and diversity of members of the bacterial kingdom *Acidobacterium* in the environment. Appl Environ Microbiol 65(4):1731–1737

Berg G, Smalla K (2009) Plant species and soil type cooperatively shape the structure and function of microbial communities in the rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 68(1):1–13

Bhattacharjee S, Sharma GD (2011) The vesicular arbuscular mycorrhiza associated with three cultivars of Rice (*Oryza sativa L.*). Indian J Microbiol 51(3):377–383

Boopathy R (2000) Factors limiting bioremediation technologies. Bioresour Technol 74:63–67

Brundrett MC (2002) Coevolution of roots and mycorrhizas of land plants. New Phytol 154(2): 275–304

Bulgarelli D, Rott M, Schlaeppi K, van Themaat EVL, Ahmadinejad N, Assenza F, Schulze-Lefert P et al (2012) Revealing structure and assembly cues for *Arabidopsis* root-inhabiting bacterial microbiota. Nature 488(7409):91–95

Callesen I, Liski J, Raulund-Rasmussen K, Olsson MT, Tau-Strand L, Vesterdal L, Westman CJ (2003) Soil carbon stores in Nordic well-drained forest soils—relationships with climate and texture class. Glob Chang Biol 9(3):358–370

Cederlund H, Wessén E, Enwall K, Jones CM, Juhanson J, Pell M, Hallin S et al (2014) Soil carbon quality and nitrogen fertilization structure bacterial communities with predictable responses of major bacterial phyla. Appl Soil Ecol 84:62–68

Cerqueira VS, Hollenbach EB, Maboni F, Vainstein MH, Camargo FA, Maria do Carmo, R. P., & Bento, F. M. (2011) Biodegradation potential of oily sludge by pure and mixed bacterial cultures. Bioresour Technol 102(23):11003–11010

Chakraborty J, Das S (2016) Molecular perspectives and recent advances in microbial remediation of persistent organic pollutants. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23(17):16883–16903

Chandra S, Sharma R, Singh K, Sharma A (2013) Application of bioremediation technology in the environment contaminated with petroleum hydrocarbon. Ann Microbiol 63(2):417–431

Chowdhury A, Pradhan S, Saha M, Sanyal N (2008) Impact of pesticides on soil microbiological parameters and possible bioremediation strategies. Indian J Microbiol 48(1):114–127

Colica G, Li H, Rossi F, Li D, Liu Y, De Philippis R (2014) Microbial secreted exopolysaccharides affect the hydrological behavior of induced biological soil crusts in desert sandy soils. Soil Biol Biochem 68:62–70

Costa OY, Raaijmakers JM, Kuramae EE (2018) Microbial extracellular polymeric substances: ecological function and impact on soil aggregation. Front Microbiol 9:1636

D'Costa VM, McGrann KM, Hughes DW, Wright GD (2006) Sampling the antibiotic resistome. Science 311:374–377

Daly K, Sharp RJ, McCarthy AJ (2000) Development of oligonucleotide probes and PCR primers for detecting phylogenetic subgroups of sulfate-reducing bacteria. Microbiology 146(7): 1693–1705

Das N, Chandran P (2011) Microbial degradation of petroleum hydrocarbon contaminants: an overview. Biotechnol Res Int 2011:941810

de Bashan LE, Hernandez JP, Bashan Y (2012) The potential contribution of plant growth-promoting bacteria to reduce environmental degradation–a comprehensive evaluation. Appl Soil Ecol 61:171–189

De Roy K, Marzorati M, Van den Abbeele P, Van de Wiele T, Boon N (2014) Synthetic microbial ecosystems: an exciting tool to understand and apply microbial communities. Environ Microbiol 16(6):1472–1481

Delgado-Baquerizo M, Eldridge DJ (2019) Cross-biome drivers of soil bacterial alpha diversity on a worldwide scale. Ecosystems 22(6):1220–1231

Dias RL, Ruberto L, Hernández E, Vázquez SC, Balbo AL, Del Panno MT, Mac Cormack WP (2012) Bioremediation of an aged diesel oil-contaminated Antarctic soil: evaluation of the "on site" biostimulation strategy using different nutrient sources. Int Biodeter Biodegr 75:96–103

Drake JE, Gallet-Budynek A, Hofmockel KS, Bernhardt ES, Billings SA, Jackson RB, Finzi AC et al (2011) Increases in the flux of carbon belowground stimulate nitrogen uptake and sustain the long-term enhancement of forest productivity under elevated CO_2. Ecol Lett 14(4):349–357

Dubey RK, Tripathi V, Prabha R, Chaurasia R, Singh DP, Rao CS, Abhilash PC et al (2020) Unravelling the soil microbiome: perspectives for environmental sustainability. Springer, Cham

Dunbar J, Eichorst SA, Gallegos-Graves LV, Silva S, Xie G, Hengartner NW et al (2012) Common bacterial responses in six ecosystems exposed to 10 years of elevated atmospheric carbon dioxide. Environ Microbiol 14(5):1145–1158

Ecker G, Porto L, Arias RS, Cano LM, Rott P, Urashima AS (2019) Sugarcane cultivars susceptible to orange rust can host sub-populations of *Puccinia kuehnii* capable of infecting resistant cultivars. The American Phytopathological Society, Saint Paul, MN

Fierer N (2017) Embracing the unknown: disentangling the complexities of the soil microbiome. Nat Rev Microbiol 15(10):579–590

Fierer N, Strickland MS, Liptzin D, Bradford MA, Cleveland CC (2009) Global patterns in belowground communities. Ecol Lett 12(11):1238–1249

Fiore-Donno AM, Richter-Heitmann T, Degrune F, Dumack K, Regan KM, Marhan S, Bonkowski M et al (2019) Functional traits and spatio-temporal structure of a major group of soil protists (*Rhizaria: Cercozoa*) in a temperate grassland. Front Microbiol 10:1332

Fisk MC, Ruether KF, Yavitt JB (2003) Microbial activity and functional composition among northern peatland ecosystems. Soil Biol Biochem 35(4):591–602

Freschet GT, Cornwell WK, Wardle DA, Elumeeva TG, Liu W, Jackson BG, Cornelissen JH et al (2013) Linking litter decomposition of above-and below-ground organs to plant–soil feedbacks worldwide. J Ecol 101(4):943–952

Ganzert L, Lipski A, Hubberten HW, Wagner D (2011) The impact of different soil parameters on the community structure of dominant bacteria from nine different soils located on Livingston Island, south Shetland archipelago, Antarctica. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 76(3):476–491

Geisen S, Mitchell EA, Adl S, Bonkowski M, Dunthorn M, Ekelund F, Lara E et al (2018) Soil protists: a fertile frontier in soil biology research. FEMS Microbiol Rev 42(3):293–323

Ghosal D, Ghosh S, Dutta TK, Ahn Y (2016) Current state of knowledge in microbial degradation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs): a review. Front Microbiol 7:1369

Gibson DJ (2009) Grasses and grassland ecology. Oxford University Press, Oxford

Griffiths RI, Thomson BC, James P, Bell T, Bailey M, Whiteley AS (2011) The bacterial biogeography of British soils. Environ Microbiol 13(6):1642–1654

Großkopf T, Soyer OS (2014) Synthetic microbial communities. Curr Opin Microbiol 18:72–77

Gupta A, Joia J, Sood A, Sood R, Sidhu C, Kaur G (2016) Microbes as potential tool for remediation of heavy metals: a review. J Microb Biochem Technol 8(4):364–372
Hao X, Taghavi S, Xie P, Orbach MJ, Alwathnani HA, Rensing C, Wei G (2014) Phytoremediation of heavy and transition metals aided by legume-rhizobia symbiosis. Int J Phytoremediation 16(2):179–202
Haque E, Riyaz MAB, Shankar S, Hassan S (2021) Compositional characterization of biosurfactant produced from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ENO14-MH271625 and its application in crude oil bioremediation. Int J Pharmaceut Invest 11(2):204–207
Hartmann M, Niklaus PA, Zimmermann S, Schmutz S, Kremer J, Abarenkov K et al (2014) Resistance and resilience of the forest soil microbiome to logging-associated compaction. ISME J 8(1):226–244
Hinojosa MB, Laudicina VA, Parra A, Albert-Belda E, Moreno JM (2019) Drought and its legacy modulate the post-fire recovery of soil functionality and microbial community structure in a Mediterranean shrubland. Glob Chang Biol 25(4):1409–1427
Hoang DTT, Maranguit D, Kuzyakov Y, Razavi BS (2020) Accelerated microbial activity, turnover and efficiency in the drilosphere is depth dependent. Soil Biol Biochem 147:107852
Hoang SA, Lamb D, Seshadri B, Sarkar B, Choppala G, Kirkham MB, Bolan NS (2021) Rhizoremediation as a green technology for the remediation of petroleum hydrocarbon-contaminated soils. J Hazard Mater 401(June):123282
Hobbie SE, Gough L (2004) Litter decomposition in moist acidic and non-acidic tundra with different glacial histories. Oecologia 140(1):113–124
Hodge A, Campbell CD, Fitter AH (2001) An arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus accelerates decomposition and acquires nitrogen directly from organic material. Nature 413(6853):297–299
Högberg MN, Högberg P (2002) Extramatrical ectomycorrhizal mycelium contributes one-third of microbial biomass and produces, together with associated roots, half the dissolved organic carbon in a forest soil. New Phytol 154(3):791–795
Hultman J, Waldrop MP, Mackelprang R, David MM, McFarland J, Blazewicz SJ et al (2015) Multi-omics of permafrost, active layer and thermokarst bog soil microbiomes. Nature 521(7551):208–212
Ingrid L, Sahraoui ALH, Frédéric L, Yolande D, Joël F (2016) Arbuscular mycorrhizal wheat inoculation promotes alkane and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon biodegradation: microcosm experiment on agedcontaminated soil. Environ Pollut 213:549–560
Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (2007) In: Pachauri RK, Reisinger A (eds) Climate change 2007 synthesis report. IPCC, Geneva
Jangid K, Williams MA, Franzluebbers AJ, Sanderlin JS, Reeves JH, Jenkins MB, Whitman WB et al (2008) Relative impacts of land-use, management intensity and fertilization upon soil microbial community structure in agricultural systems. Soil Biol Biochem 40(11):2843–2853
Jansson JK, Hofmockel KS (2020) Soil microbiomes and climate change. Nat Rev Microbiol 18(1): 35–46
Jenny H (1994) Factors of soil formation: a system of quantitative pedology. Courier Corporation, Chelmsford, MA
Jiao S, Chen W, Wei G (2019) Resilience and assemblage of soil microbiome in response to chemical contamination combined with plant growth. Appl Environ Microbiol 85(6):e02523–e02518
Johnson D, Gilbert L (2015) Interplant signalling through hyphal networks. New Phytol 205(4): 1448–1453
Jones DL, Nguyen C, Finlay RD (2009) Carbon flow in the rhizosphere: carbon trading at the soil–root interface. Plant and Soil 321(1):5–33
Joosten H, Clarke D (2002) Wise use of mires and peatlands. International Mire Conservation Group and International Peat Society, Greifswald and Jyväskylä, p 304
Jørgensen BB, Findlay AJ, Pellerin A (2019) The biogeochemical sulfur cycle of marine sediments. Front Microbiol 10:849

Jorquera MA, Shaharoona B, Nadeem SM, de la Luz Mora M, Crowley DE (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria associated with ancient clones of creosote bush (*Larrea tridentata*). Microb Ecol 64(4):1008–1017

Kang CH, Kwon YJ, So JS (2016) Bioremediation of heavy metals by using bacterial mixtures. Ecol Eng 89:64–69

Karigar CS, Rao SS (2011) Role of microbial enzymes in the bioremediation of pollutants: a review. Enzyme Res 2011:1

Knights D, Kuczynski J, Charlson ES, Zaneveld J, Mozer MC, Collman RG et al (2011) Bayesian community-wide culture-independent microbial source tracking. Nat Methods 8(9):761–763

Kuppusamy S, Thavamani P, Venkateswarlu K, Lee YB, Naidu R, Megharaj M (2017) Remediation approaches for polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) contaminated soils: technological constraints, emerging trends and future directions. Chemosphere 168:944–968

Kuzyakov Y, Blagodatskaya E (2015) Microbial hotspots and hot moments in soil: concept & review. Soil Biol Biochem 83:184–199

Lamichhane S, Krishna KB, Sarukkalige R (2016) Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) removal by sorption: a review. Chemosphere 148:336–353

Lareen A, Burton F, Schäfer P (2016) Plant root-microbe communication in shaping root microbiomes. Plant Mol Biol 90(6):575–587

Lauber CL, Hamady M, Knight R, Fierer N (2009) Soil pH as a predictor of soil bacterial community structure at the continental scale: a pyrosequencing-based assessment. Appl Environ Microbiol 75(15):5111–5120

Ledeganck P, Nijs I, Beyens L (2003) Plant functional group diversity promotes soil protist diversity. Protist 154(2):239–249

Lekberg Y, Waller LP (2016) What drives differences in arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal communities among plant species. Fungal Ecol 24:135–138

Lenoir I, Lounes-Hadj Sahraoui A, Fontaine J (2016) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungal-assisted phytoremediation of soil contaminated with persistent organic pollutants: *a review*. Eur J Soil Sci 67(5):624–640

Li M, Feng H, Yang Z, Liu C, Xia X, Wang C, Jiang H et al (2011) Diversity of culturable bacteria in the typical frozen soil areas in China. Acta Microbiol Sin 51(12):1595–1604

Li XR, Jia RL, Zhang ZS, Zhang P, Hui R (2018) Hydrological response of biological soil crusts to global warming: a ten-year simulative study. Glob Chang Biol 24(10):4960–4971

Longepierre M, Widmer F, Keller T, Weisskopf P, Colombi T, Six J, Hartmann M (2021) Limited resilience of the soil microbiome to mechanical compaction within four growing seasons of agricultural management. ISME Commun 1(1):1–13

Lydolph MC, Jacobsen J, Arctander P, Gilbert MTP, Gilichinsky DA, Hansen AJ, Lange L et al (2005) Beringian paleoecology inferred from permafrost-preserved fungal DNA. Appl Environ Microbiol 71(2):1012–1017

Lynch MD, Neufeld JD (2015) Ecology and exploration of the rare biosphere. Nat Rev Microbiol 13(4):217–229

Maestre FT, Delgado-Baquerizo M, Jeffries TC, Eldridge DJ, Ochoa V, Gozalo B, Singh BK et al (2015) Increasing aridity reduces soil microbial diversity and abundance in global drylands. Proc Natl Acad Sci 112(51):15684–15689

Mahé F, de Vargas C, Bass D, Czech L, Stamatakis A, Lara E, Dunthorn M et al (2017) Parasites dominate hyperdiverse soil protist communities in Neotropical rainforests. Nat Ecol Evol 1(4): 1–8

Malhi Y, Baldocchi DD, Jarvis PG (1999) The carbon balance of tropical, temperate and boreal forests. Plant Cell Environ 22(6):715–740

Mapelli F, Marasco R, Balloi A, Rolli E, Cappitelli F, Daffonchio D, Borin S (2012) Mineral–microbe interactions: biotechnological potential of bioweathering. J Biotechnol 157(4):473–481

Mariano AP, Bonotto DM, Angelis DDFD, Pirôllo MPS, Contiero J (2008) Biodegradability of commercial and weathered diesel oils. Braz J Microbiol 39(1):133–142

Morales SE, Mouser PJ, Ward N, Hudman SP, Gotelli NJ, Ross DS, Lewis TA (2006) Comparison of bacterial communities in New England sphagnum bogs using terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism (T-RFLP). Microb Ecol 52(1):34–44

Müller O, Bang-Andreasen T, White RA III, Elberling B, Taş N, Kneafsey T et al (2018) Disentangling the complexity of permafrost soil by using high resolution profiling of microbial community composition, key functions and respiration rates. Environ Microbiol 20(12): 4328–4342

Muratova A, Pozdnyakova N, Golubev S, Wittenmayer L, Makarov O, Merbach W, Turkovskaya O (2009) Oxidoreductase activity of sorghum root exudates in a phenanthrene-contaminated environment. Chemosphere 74(8):1031–1036

Needelman BA (2013) What are soils. Nat Educ Knowl 4(3):2

Newsham KK, Fitter AH, Watkinson AR (1995) Arbuscular mycorrhiza protects an annual grass from root pathogenic fungi in the field. J Ecol 83:991–1000

Nunan N, Daniell TJ, Singh BK, Papert A, McNicol JW, Prosser JI (2005) Links between plant and rhizoplane bacterial communities in grassland soils, characterized using molecular techniques. Appl Environ Microbiol 71(11):6784–6792

O'Brien SL, Gibbons SM, Owens SM, Hampton-Marcell J, Johnston ER, Jastrow JD, Antonopoulos DA et al (2016) Spatial scale drives patterns in soil bacterial diversity. Environ Microbiol 18(6):2039–2051

Ojuederie OB, Babalola OO (2017) Microbial and plant-assisted bioremediation of heavy metal polluted environments: a review. Int J Environ Res Public Health 14(12):1504

Oliverio AM, Bradford MA, Fierer N (2017) Identifying the microbial taxa that consistently respond to soil warming across time and space. Glob Chang Biol 23(5):2117–2129

Ortiz-Hernández ML, Sánchez-Salinas E, Dantán-González E, Castrejón-Godínez ML (2013) Pesticide biodegradation: mechanisms, genetics and strategies to enhance the process. In: Biodegradation life of science, pp 251–287

Page SE, Rieley JO, Banks CJ (2011) Global and regional importance of the tropical peatland carbon pool. Glob Chang Biol 17(2):798–818

Paulson JN, Pop M, Bravo HC (2011) Metastats: an improved statistical method for analysis of metagenomic data. Genome Biol 12(1):1–27

Peay KG, Baraloto C, Fine PV (2013) Strong coupling of plant and fungal community structure across western Amazonian rainforests. ISME J 7(9):1852–1861

Pérez-de-Luque A, Tille S, Johnson I, Pascual-Pardo D, Ton J, Cameron DD (2017) The interactive effects of arbuscular mycorrhiza and plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria synergistically enhance host plant defences against pathogens. Sci Rep 7(1):16409

Pett-Ridge J, Firestone MK (2005) Redox fluctuation structures microbial communities in a wet tropical soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 71(11):6998–7007

Pimm SL (1984) The complexity and stability of ecosystems. Nature 307(5949):321–326

Prasad S, Malav LC, Choudhary J, Kannojiya S, Kundu M, Kumar S, Yadav AN (2021) Soil microbiomes for healthy nutrient recycling. In: Current trends in microbial biotechnology for sustainable agriculture. Springer, Singapore, pp 1–21

Ramirez KS, Leff JW, Barberán A, Bates ST, Betley J, Crowther TW, Fierer N et al (2014) Biogeographic patterns in below-ground diversity in New York City's Central Park are similar to those observed globally. Proc R Soc B Biol Sci 281(1795):20141988

Rana KL, Kour D, Kaur T, Devi R, Yadav N, Rastegari AA, Yadav AN (2020) Biodiversity, phylogenetic profiling, and mechanisms of colonization of seed microbiomes. In: New and future developments in microbial biotechnology and bioengineering. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 99–125

Reinsch S, Koller E, Sowerby A, De Dato G, Estiarte M, Guidolotti G, Emmett BA et al (2017) Shrubland primary production and soil respiration diverge along European climate gradient. Sci Rep 7(1):1–7

Richardson AE, Simpson RJ (2011) Soil microorganisms mediating phosphorus availability: phosphorus plant physiology. Plant Physiol 156(3):989–996

Roesch LF, Fulthorpe RR, Riva A, Casella G, Hadwin AK, Kent AD, Triplett EW et al (2007) Pyrosequencing enumerates and contrasts soil microbial diversity. ISME J 1(4):283–290
Rosenthal LM, Larsson KH, Branco S, Chung JA, Glassman SI, Liao HL, Bruns TD et al (2017) Survey of corticioid fungi in north American pinaceous forests reveals hyperdiversity, underpopulated sequence databases, and species that are potentially ectomycorrhizal. Mycologia 109(1):115–127
Ruiz-Lozano JM (2003) Arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis and alleviation of osmotic stress. New perspectives for molecular studies. Mycorrhiza 13(6):309–317
Rykiel EJ Jr (1985) Towards a definition of ecological disturbance. Aust J Ecol 10(3):361–365
Sachidanand B, Ng M, Kumar V, Roy R, Bb M (2019) Soil as a huge laboratory for microorganisms. Agric Res Technol 22(4):556205
Schalk IJ, Hannauer M, Braud A (2011) New roles for bacterial siderophores in metal transport and tolerance. Environ Microbiol 13(11):2844–2854
Segata N, Izard J, Waldron L, Gevers D, Miropolsky L, Garrett WS, Huttenhower C (2011) Metagenomic biomarker discovery and explanation. Genome Biol 12(6):1–18
Serna-Chavez HM, Fierer N, Van Bodegom PM (2013) Global drivers and patterns of microbial abundance in soil. Glob Ecol Biogeogr 22(10):1162–1172
Shade A, Peter H, Allison SD, Baho D, Berga M, Bürgmann H et al (2012) Fundamentals of microbial community resistance and resilience. Front Microbiol 3:417
Shankar S, Kansrajh C, Dinesh MG, Satyan RS, Kiruthika S, Tharanipriya A (2014) Application of indigenous microbial consortia in bioremediation of oil-contaminated soils. Int J Environ Sci Technol 11(2):367–376
Shelef O, Helman Y, Friedman ALL, Behar A, Rachmilevitch S (2013) Tri-party underground symbiosis between a weevil, bacteria and a desert plant. PLoS One 8(11):e76588
Smith SE, Read DJ (2008) Mycorrhizal symbiosis, 3rd edn. Academic Press, New York
Souza EC, Vessoni-Penna TC, de Souza Oliveira RP (2014) Biosurfactant-enhanced hydrocarbon bioremediation: an overview. Int Biodeter Biodegr 89:88–94
Šťursová M, Baldrian P (2011) Effects of soil properties and management on the activity of soil organic matter transforming enzymes and the quantification of soil-bound and free activity. Plant and Soil 338(1):99–110
Sul WJ, Asuming-Brempong S, Wang Q, Tourlousse DM, Penton CR, Deng Y, Tiedje JM et al (2013) Tropical agricultural land management influences on soil microbial communities through its effect on soil organic carbon. Soil Biol Biochem 65:33–38
Taş N, Prestat E, Wang S, Wu Y, Ulrich C, Kneafsey T et al (2018) Landscape topography structures the soil microbiome in arctic polygonal tundra. Nat Commun 9(1):1–13
Taş N, de Jong AE, Li Y, Trubl G, Xue Y, Dove NC (2021) Metagenomic tools in microbial ecology research. Curr Opin Biotechnol 67:184–191
Teng Y, Wang X, Li L, Li Z, Luo Y (2015) Rhizobia and their bio-partners as novel drivers for functional remediation in contaminated soils. Front Plant Sci 6:32
Thamer M, Al-Kubaisi AR, Zahraw Z, Abdullah HA, Hindy I, Abd Khadium A (2013) Biodegradation of Kirkuk light crude oil by *Bacillus thuringiensis*, Northern of Iraq. Nat Sci 5:865–873
Thapa S, Prasanna R (2018) Prospecting the characteristics and significance of the phyllosphere microbiome. Ann Microbiol 68(5):229–245
Thomas CM, Nielsen KM (2005) Mechanisms of, and barriers to, horizontal gene transfer between bacteria. Nat Rev Microbiol 3(9):711–721
Torsvik V, Øvreås L (2002) Microbial diversity and function in soil: from genes to ecosystems. Curr Opin Microbiol 5(3):240–245
Trap J, Bonkowski M, Plassard C, Villenave C, Blanchart E (2016) Ecological importance of soil bacterivores for ecosystem functions. Plant and Soil 398(1–2):1–24
Trinder CJ, Johnson D, Artz RR (2008) Interactions among fungal community structure, litter decomposition and depth of water table in a cutover peatland. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 64(3): 433–448

Uroz S, Calvaruso C, Turpault MP, Sarniguet A, de Boer W, Leveau JHJ, Frey-Klett P (2009) Efficient mineral weathering is a distinctive functional trait of the bacterial genus *Collimonas*. Soil Biol Biochem 41(10):2178–2186

Vacheron J, Desbrosses G, Bouffaud ML, Touraine B, Moënne-Loccoz Y, Muller D, Prigent-Combaret C et al (2013) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria and root system functioning. Front Plant Sci 4:356

Van Der Heijden MG, Bardgett RD, Van Straalen NM (2008) The unseen majority: soil microbes as drivers of plant diversity and productivity in terrestrial ecosystems. Ecol Lett 11(3):296–310

Van Groenigen KJ, Qi X, Osenberg CW, Luo Y, Hungate BA (2014) Faster decomposition under increased atmospheric CO2 limits soil carbon storage. Science 344(6183):508–509

Varjani SJ (2017) Microbial degradation of petroleum hydrocarbons. Bioresour Technol 223:277–286

Varjani SJ, Upasani VN (2016) Core flood study for enhanced oil recovery through ex-situ bioaugmentation with thermo-and halo-tolerant rhamnolipid produced by Pseudomonas aeruginosa NCIM 5514. Bioresour Technol 220:175–182

Varjani SJ, Upasani VN (2017) A new look on factors affecting microbial degradation of petroleum hydrocarbon pollutants. Int Biodeter Biodegr 120:71–83

Varjani SJ, Thaker MB, Upasani VN (2014) Optimization of growth conditions of native hydrocarbon utilizing bacterial consortium "HUBC" obtained from petroleum pollutant contaminated sites. Indian J Appl Res 4(10):474–476

Verma JP, Jaiswal DK, Sagar R (2014) Pesticide relevance and their microbial degradation: a-state-of-art. Rev Environ Sci Biotechnol 13(4):429–466

Vishwakarma K, Kumar N, Shandilya C, Mohapatra S, Bhayana S, Varma A (2020) Revisiting plant–microbe interactions and microbial consortia application for enhancing sustainable agriculture: a review. Front Microbiol 11:3195

Wang F, Li C, Wang H, Chen W, Huang Q (2016) Characterization of a phenanthrene-degrading microbial consortium enriched from petrochemical contaminated environment. Int Biodeter Biodegr 115:286–292

War AR, Paulraj MG, Ahmad T, Buhroo AA, Hussain B, Ignacimuthu S, Sharma HC (2012) Mechanisms of plant defense against insect herbivores. Plant Signal Behav 7(10):1306–1320

Woodcroft BJ, Singleton CM, Boyd JA, Evans PN, Emerson JB, Zayed AA et al (2018) Genome-centric view of carbon processing in thawing permafrost. Nature 560(7716):49–54

Xu X, Liu W, Tian S, Wang W, Qi Q, Jiang P, Gao X, Li F, Li H, Yu H (2018) Petroleum hydrocarbon-degrading bacteria for the remediation of oil pollution under aerobic conditions: a perspective analysis. Front Microbiol 9:2885

Ying T, Wei C (2019) Soil microbiomes—a promising strategy for contaminated soil remediation: a review. Pedosphere 29(3):283–297

Zhang W, Chen L, Liu D (2012) Characterization of a marine-isolated mercury-resistant pseudomonas putida strain SP1 and its potential application in marine mercury reduction. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 93(3):1305–1314

Zhao D, Liu C, Liu L, Zhang Y, Liu Q, Wu WM (2011) Selection of functional consortium for crude oil-contaminated soil remediation. Int Biodeter Biodegr 65(8):1244–1248

Zhou J, Deng Y, Shen L, Wen C, Yan Q, Ning D, Brown JH et al (2016) Temperature mediates continental-scale diversity of microbes in forest soils. Nat Commun 7(1):1–10

Rhizobacteriome: Plant Growth-Promoting Traits and Its Functional Mechanism in Plant Growth, Development, and Defenses

16

Reema Prakash, Ramesh Subramani, Krodi, Anusha, Chanda Vikrant Berde, Thummala Chandrasekhar, A. M. V. N. Prathyusha, Ekamber Kariali, and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari

Abstract

The rhizomicrobiome comprises a wide variety of microorganisms that are essential for microbial colonization and root development in a wide variety of plants. A plant's growth, development, and defense mechanisms would be impossible without the rhizomicrobiome's microbes. In order to develop and operate properly, roots are essential to plants because they give structural support and aid in the intake of water and nutrients. This rhizobacteriome, a diverse bacterial population with particular roles that affect plant health, may be found in plant root exudates due to the complex variety of elements present. There are

Reema Prakash, Ramesh Subramani, Krodi, Anusha, Chanda Vikrant Berde, Thummala Chandrasekhar, A. M. V. N. Prathyusha, Ekamber Kariali and Pallaval Veera Bramhachari contributed equally with all other contributors.

R. Prakash · R. Subramani
Faculty of Science, Technology and Environment, School of Biological and Chemical Sciences, The University of the South Pacific, Suva, Republic of Fiji

Krodi · Anusha · A. M. V. N. Prathyusha · P. V. Bramhachari (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Andhra Pradesh, India

C. V. Berde
Marine Microbiology, School of Earth, Ocean and Atmospheric Sciences (SEOAS), Goa University, Taleigao Plateau, Goa, India

T. Chandrasekhar
Department of Environment Science, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

E. Kariali
Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Sambalpur University, Sambalpur, Burla, Odisha, India

P. Veera Bramhachari (ed.), *Understanding the Microbiome Interactions in Agriculture and the Environment*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-3696-8_16

several metabolites produced by the plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) in the rhizosphere near the plant roots that stimulate the plant's development. Many PGPRs have the ability to solubilize phosphate, fix N2, produce biosynthesis of hydrolytic enzymes (hydrolase), produce phytohormones (phytoestrogens), produce siderophores (antibiotics), and more. Climate change, population growth, and the use of herbicides and insecticides have all had a significant influence on crop productivity in recent decades. Studies show that PGPR can boost plant growth and yield in a variety of species. As a result, PGPR dynamic microorganisms can be used as biofertilizers or biopesticides in agricultural techniques, which is critical to alleviating the urgent call for sustainable production. Rhizobacteriome, in particular PGPR found in the rhizosphere, and their many strategies for enhancing plant production are summarized in this chapter.

Keywords

Microbiome · Plant–microbe interactions · Rhizobacteriome · Biocontrol · PGPR · Rhizobacteria

16.1 Introduction

To decompose organic matter, cycle nutrients, and grow crops in a sustainable manner, the soil microbiome is essential (Chandler et al. 2008; Ahemad et al. 2009). Researchers have found a substantially larger concentration of bacteria in the rhizosphere (the area around the roots; the rhizomicrobiome) than in free soil. In the rhizosphere, 1011 cells per gram of soil contain more than 30,000 different bacterial species, according to Berendsen et al. (2012). Figure 16.1 shows that the roots of plants release a wide range of nutrients, including sugars; vitamins; amino acids; enzymes; nucleosides; organic acids; inorganic ions; organic compounds; and gaseous molecules (Fig. 16.1) (Dakora and Phillips 2002). In addition, the microbiome in the rhizosphere is fed by these tiny root exudate chemicals (Babalola 2010; Carvalhais et al. 2015). Rhizobacteria, or the rhizobacteriome, is the community of rhizobacteria living in the rhizosphere, where they are known for their role in promoting plant growth and rhizoremediation, which is why they are referred to as plant growth-promoting bacteria or PGPB (Olanrewaju et al. 2017) or plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR). Rhizobacteria that promote plant health are also known as PGPR or nodule-promoting rhizobacteria (NPR).

Plants and PGPR can interact in a variety of ways, including an endophytic, epiphytic, or symbiotic connection with the roots and the surrounding soil (Souza et al. 2015). When the PGPR colonizes root cells, it generates an environment that is ideal for its activity. The rhizobacteriome uses the same processes to promote plant development as the endophytic bacteria (Santoyo et al. 2016). Non-symbiotic PGPR

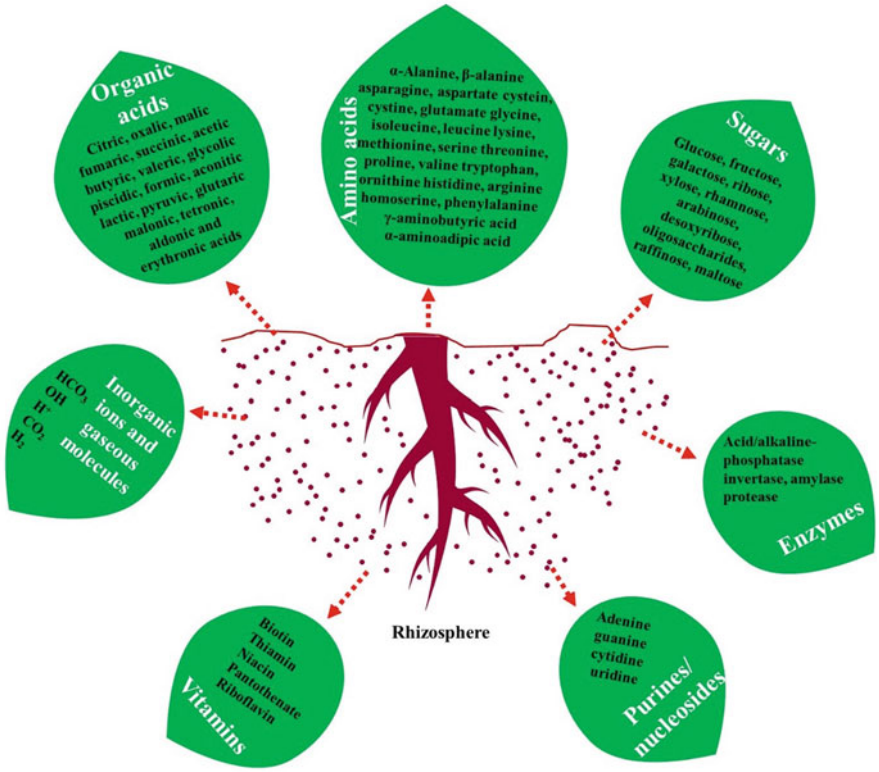


Fig. 16.1 Secretion of different organic compounds in root exudates of different plant species

such as Azotobacter, Klebsiella, Pseudomonas, Bacillus, Azospirillum, and Azomonas have also been frequently employed as biocontrol agents for improving plant development (Ahemad and Kibret 2014). Biocontrol agents and biofertilizers based on many PGPR are now commercially available (Reed and Glick 2013; Calvo et al. 2014; Olanrewaju et al. 2017). PGPR has been widely documented for promoting and managing plant development, but its whole mechanism has yet to be established. In addition, there is a lack of consistent outcomes in laboratory, greenhouse, and field research when it comes to the application of PGPR for sustainable plant development (Gouda et al. 2018). The most recent research on PGPR and its processes for promoting plant development is presented in this chapter.

16.2 Rhizosphere: A Warehouse of Rich Microbiomes

Known as the "warehouse" of soil microorganisms, the rhizosphere is a dynamic area of soil that surrounds the root zone and is immediately controlled by root exudations (Walker et al. 2003). In addition, the term "rhizobacteria" refers to a group of bacteria capable of colonizing the root system of a plant or animal (Kloepper et al. 1991). In addition to supporting the plant's structure, the root system is a chemical factory that creates a wide range of substances (Walker et al. 2003). The rhizomicrobiome comprises an immense number of different heterotrophic microbial communities in soil is attracted to plant roots by these tiny chemicals (Ahemad and Kibret 2014). A soil environment's chemical composition is influenced by the physical qualities of the compounds, the kind of plant species, and the sorts of microbes present (Kang et al. 2010). Microbes in the rhizosphere transform tiny carbon and nitrogen compounds released by plants into microbe-oriented chemicals that plants may use to grow and develop (Kang et al. 2010). Root exudation, according to Marschner (1995), transfers 5–21% of the carbon ingested by photosynthesis to the rhizosphere environment. Therefore, the rhizosphere can be recognized by plant roots and its connected root hairs and root secretions (Dessaux et al. 2009). Three different parts such as the rhizosphere soil, the rhizoplane, and the root only are recognized in the rhizosphere, of which, the microbial function affected by substances secreted in the soil of the rhizosphere is regulated by roots. Besides, the root surface known as rhizoplane is where the soil particles firmly attach for microbial colonization (Barea et al. 2005), whereas numerous microorganisms that can colonize plant inner tissues are known as endophytes (Santoyo et al. 2016). The rhizosphere environment has a 1000× higher concentration of bacteria than free soil (Gouda et al. 2018). Soil microbiome must be competent with rhizomicrobiome for nutrients produced by root to sustain their healthy root environment. Plant and the roots interactions are crucial to obtaining macronutrients and micronutrients from the soil. These interactions are also advantageous to the plants and the soil microbiome.

16.3 Different Types of PGPR

Various bacterial species are found in the rhizobacteriome, which is beneficial to plants. There are varying degrees of closeness and proximity between plant roots and the rhizosphere PGPR. PGPR can be classified as extracellular (ePGPR), which occurs outside of cells, or intracellular (iPGPR), which occurs within cells, based on their position in the rhizosphere (Viveros et al. 2010). Rhizobacteria occurring on the rhizoplane or in the root cortex intracellular spaces can be categorized as ePGPR. Several bacterial genera are classified as ePGPR such as *bacillus, Pseudomonas, Micrococcous, Serratia, Agrobacterium, Arthrobacter, Azotobacter, Azospirillum, Burkholderia, Caulobacter, Chromobacterium, Erwinia, Flavobacterium,* and *Cellulomonas flavigena*. PGPR which occurs inside specialized nodular structures of root cells is classified as iPGPR. These bacteria usually produce specific structures such as nodules and reside inside them. Bacteria that belong to iPGPR consist of

rhizobium, Allorhizobium, Sinorhizobium, Bradyrhizobium, Mesorhizobium, Azorhizobium, and *Frankia*. Growth facilitated by nitrogen fixation in higher plants is one of the positive influences of endophytic iPGPR (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). In addition, the actinomycetes group of bacteria is generally recognized for the production of antibiotics and other pharmaceutically important molecules (Genilloud 2017). However, actinobacteria genera *Streptomyces, Micromonospora, Streptosporangium,* and *Thermobifida* have widely been reported for their immense potential to control various plant pathogens therefore prospects to use of effective biocontrol agents (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). Recently, Vurukonda et al. (2018) reviewed and summarized the perspective of actinomycetes especially *Streptomyces* species-derived bioactive compounds and commercial products that are being used as biofertilizers, and biopesticides, or consortiums of plant beneficial microbes to suppress plant pathogens. Several studies have reported and experimentally demonstrated the ability of actinomycetes in plant growth promotion, hence focusing on actinomycetes as a biocontrol agent will enhance agricultural production and ensure food security (Vurukonda et al. 2018).

16.4 Functional Mechanisms of PGPR in Plant Growth Enhancement

No single mechanism has been influenced to induce plant growth as the rhizobacteriome produces abroad range of substances that influence plant growth-promoting (PGP) attributes and it varies among the types of bacterial species and host plants (Table 16.1). Besides, different pH, soil temperature, and environmental conditions are also critical for PGPR activity toward plant growth promotion (Olanrewaju et al. 2017). In general, PGPR enhances plant growth by influencing it directly and indirectly (Glick 1995). Production of various plant hormones (auxin, cytokinin, and gibberellin), enzymes (ACC deaminase), and other traits such as siderophore production, nitrogen fixation, and phosphorous solubilization are recognized as direct mechanisms as they directly influence the plant growth (Olanrewaju et al. 2017). Indirect mechanisms are identified as bacterial attributes that suppress the growth of different phytopathogenic fungi and bacteria. The bacterial attributes implied in indirect mechanisms comprise the production of antibiotics, siderophores,1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase, lytic enzymes and hydrogen cyanide, competition, quorum quenching, and induced systemic resistance (Olanrewaju et al. 2017). None of the individual strains of PGPR is capable of producing all the bacterial traits involved in both direct and indirect mechanisms. However, a few or some traits will take part in prompting plant development(Saharan and Nehra 2011; Reed and Glick 2013).

Table 16.1 Rhizobacteriome and their plant growth-promoting (PGP) traits in plant growth and productivity (Ahemad and Kibret 2014; Gouda et al. 2018)

PGPR strain	Host plant	PGP traits and effects in plants	Reference
Pseudomonas cepacia	*Phaseolus vulgaris*	Inhibit *Sclerotium rolfsii*	Montano et al. (2014)
	Gossypium hirsutum	Prevent *Rhizoctonia solani*	Montano et al. (2014)
	Cucumis sativus	Inhibit *Pythium ultimum*	Montano et al. (2014)
Pseudomonas fluorescens	*Medicago sativa*	Increase metabolism, sequester cadmium from solution and biodegradation	Ramadan et al. (2016)
	Triticum aestivum	Inhibit *Fusarium culmorum*	Santoro et al. (2016)
	Phaseolus vulgaris	Prevent halo blight	Ramadan et al. (2016)
	Gossypium hirsutum	Inhibit damping off of cotton	Ramadan et al. (2016) and Santoro et al. (2016)
	Maize	Increase plant height, seed weight	Gholami et al. (2009)
	Maize	Promote plant growth, facilitate soil metal mobilization, enhance Cr and Pb uptake	Braud et al. (2009)
	Soybean	Increase plant growth	Gupta et al. (2005)
	Peanut	Enhance pod and haulm yield and nodule dry weight over the control	Dey et al. (2004)
	Alfalfa	Improve Cu and Fe translocation from root to shoot	Carrillo-Castaneda et al. (2003)
	Pea	Production of ACC-deaminase	Zahir et al. (2008)
Pseudomonas putida	*Cynara scolymus*	Nitrogen fixation, increase plant yield	Jahanian et al. (2012)
	Arabidopsis thaliana	Enhance utilization of plant secondary metabolites	Ahemad and Khan (2012b)
	Maize	Increase plant height, seed weight, shoot dry weight, leaf area, and number of seeds	Gholami et al. (2009)
	Lectuca sativa L.	Significant increase in shoot and root length	Rekha et al. (2007)
	Mung bean	Stimulate the plant growth, reduce Pb and Cd uptake	Tripathi et al. (2005)

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

PGPR strain	Host plant	PGP traits and effects in plants	Reference
	Vigna radiata L.	Ethylene production	Mayak et al. (1999)
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Maize	Improve plant growth, facilitate soil metal mobilization, enhance Cr and Pb uptake	Braud et al. (2009)
	Black gram	Decrease plant cadmium accumulation, widespread rooting, and improved plant growth	Ganesan (2008)
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Mustard and pumpkin	Stimulate plant growth, reduce Cd uptake	Sinha and Mukherjee (2008)
	Solanum lycopersicum L., *Abelmoschus esculentus, Amaranthus* sp.	Increase dry biomass	Adesemoye et al. (2008)
	Cicer arietinum	Kindle potassium and phosphorus uptake	Ahemad and Kibret (2014)
	Vigna radiata	Inhibit root knot establishment	Ngumbi and Kloepper (2016)
Pseudomonas pieketti	Peanut	Enhance pod and haulm productivity and nodule dry weight	Dey et al. (2004)
Pseudomonas jessenii	Chickpea	Nitrogen fixing and P-solubilizing	Valverde et al. (2006)
Pseudomonas gladioli	*Gossypium hirsutum*	Resistance against *Helicoverpa armigera*	Ross et al. (1995)
Pseudomonas spp.	Soybean, mung bean, wheat	Promote growth of plants	Gupta et al. (2002)
	Brassica napus	Enhance plant growth and increase cadmium accumulation	Sheng and Xia (2006)
	Rice, maize	Biocontrol control activity	Lawongsa et al. (2008)
	Chickpea	Increase fresh and dry weight of plants at 2 mM nickel	Tank and Saraf (2009)
	Brassica juncea	Increase the biomass	Ma et al. (2009a)
	Soybean, wheat	Increase soil enzyme actions, total yield, and nutrient absorption	Sharma et al. (2011)
	Alyssum serpyllifolium, Brassica juncea	Enhance biomass under stress	Ma et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

PGPR strain	Host plant	PGP traits and effects in plants	Reference
	Greengram	Increase plant dry weight, nodule numbers, total chlorophyll content, leghaemoglobin, root N, shoot N, root P, shoot P, seed yield, and seed protein	Ahemad and Khan (2010a, 2011b, 2012a)
	Triticum aestivum	Prevent till disease	Richa et al. (2013)
	Dianthus caryophyllus	Inhibit *Fusarium* wilt	Rathore (2015)
Bacillus subtilis	*Brassica juncea*	Facilitate Ni accumulation	Zaidi et al. (2006)
	Hordeum vulgare	Prevent powdery mildew	Oyedele and Ogunbanwo (2014)
	Gossypium hirsutum	Inhibit from *Meloidogyne incognita* and *M. arenaria*	Oyedele and Ogunbanwo (2014)
Bacillus megaterium	*Camellia sinensis*	Phosphate solubilization	Stefanescu (2015)
Bacillus megaterium	*Brassica juncea*	Protect plant from metal toxicity, stimulate plant growth	Wu et al. (2006)
Bacillus licheniformis	*Piper nigrum*	Protection from *Myzus persicae*	Kumar et al. (2015)
Bacillus edaphicus	*Brassica juncea*	Stimulate plant growth, facilitate soil Pb mobilization, enhance Pb accumulation	Sheng et al. (2008)
Bacillus weihenstephanensis	*Helianthus annuus*	Increase biomass and the accumulation of Cu and Zn in the root and shoot systems	Rajkumar et al. (2008)
Bacillus amyloliquefaciens	*Solanum lycopersicum*	Prevent tomato molt virus	Oteino et al. (2015)
Bacillus circulans	*Vigna radiata*	Phosphate solubilization	Oteino et al. (2015)
Bacillus mucilaginosus	*Piper nigrum, Cucumis sativus*	Improve potassium intake capacity	Liu et al. (2012)
Bacillus spp.	Chickpea	Improve growth, nodule formation, chlorophyll, leghaemoglobin, seed production, and grain protein	Wani and Khan (2010)
	Rice	Increase the root and shoot growth	Beneduzi et al. (2008)
Azospirillium brasilence	*Festuca arundinacea*	High plant tolerance to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons	Orlandini et al. (2014)

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

PGPR strain	Host plant	PGP traits and effects in plants	Reference
	Common bean	Root growth increase	Remans et al. (2008)
Azospirillum amazonense	Rice	Grain dry matter accumulation	Rodrigues et al. (2008)
Azotobacter chroococcum	*Brassica juncea, Triticuma estivum*	Stimulate plant growth and phosphate solubilization	Narozna et al. (2014) and Bhattacharyya and Jha (2012)
	Cotton	Increase seed productivity, plant height, and microbial population in soil	Anjum et al. (2007)
Azotobacter aceae	*Fagopyrum esculentum*	Nitrogen fixation	Bhattacharyya and Jha (2012)
Bradyrhizobium japonicum	*Glycine max*	Phosphate solubilization	Rathore (2015)
Bradyrhizobium sp.	*Vigna radiata*	Increase the nodule numbers, leghaemoglobin, seed harvest, and enhanced grain protein	Wani et al. (2007)
Bradyrhizobium sp.	*Lupinus luteus*	Increase both biomass, nitrogen content, and accumulation of metals	Dary et al. (2010)
Mesorhizobium sp.	Chickpea	Increase nodulation and leghemoglobin content, root N, shoot N, root P, shoot P, seed productivity, and seed protein	Ahemad and Khan (2009, 2010b, c)
Rhizobium leguminosarum	*Phaseolus vulgaris*	Phosphate solubilization	Ahemad and Kibret (2014)
Rhizobium sp.	Lentil	Increase nodule numbers and leghemoglobin content, root N, shoot N, root P, shoot P, seed harvest, and high seed protein	Ahemad and Khan (2010b, 2010c, 2011a)
Rhizobium phaseoli	*Vigna radiata* L.	Increase the plant height, number of nodules per plant, plant biomass, grain yield, and grain nitrogen concentration	Zahir et al. (2010)
Paenibacillus polymyxa	Pepper	Increase the biomass of plants and elicit induced systemic resistance against pathogen	Phi et al. (2010)
Rhodococcus sp., *Flavobacterium, Variovox paradoxus*	*Brassica juncea*	Stimulate root elongation	Belimov et al. (2005)

(continued)

Table 16.1 (continued)

PGPR strain	Host plant	PGP traits and effects in plants	Reference
Ochrobactrum intermedium	Sunflower	Increased plant growth and decreased Cr uptake	Faisal and Hasnain (2005)
Brevibacillus	*Trifolium repens*	Enhance plant growth and nutrition of plants	Vivas et al. (2006)
Sinorhizobium sp.	*Brassica juncea*	Increase the efficiency of lead phytoextraction	Di Gregorio et al. (2006)
Klebsiella pneumonia	*Triticum aestivum*	Increase the root length and shoot length	Sachdev et al. (2009)
Achromobacter xylosoxidans	*Brassica juncea*	Improve Cu uptake by plants and increased the root length, shoot length, fresh weight, and dry weight	Ma et al. (2009b)

16.5 Direct Mechanisms: Rhizobacteriome Traits Involved in PGP

16.5.1 Biosynthesis of Plant Hormones or Growth Regulators

A wide range of organic chemicals, including auxins, cytokines, gibberellins, and brassinosteroids, is generated by plants at low quantities to stimulate and control plant development (Damam et al. 2016). Lately developing roots and root hairs release a variety of plant growth regulators (PGRs) that favorably affect the microbes that live inside their environment (Sureshbabu et al. 2016). There are a surprising number of phytohormone-producing bacteria in the plant's rhizosphere. Most of the microorganisms that live in the rhizosphere are capable of producing auxins in the form of secondary compounds (Patten and Glick 1996). According to Souza et al. (2013), roughly 80% of the rhizobacteriome was sourced from rice that generated indole-containing chemicals. Biosynthesis of auxins, indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), Indole-3-acetamide, indole-3-pyruvate, and indole-3-acetaldehyde is carried out by a variety of microorganisms. In plant–microbe interactions, indolic chemicals play a critical function, varying from disease development to phytostimulation (Spaepen et al. 2007). Higher levels of indolic chemicals are produced by PGPR colonized by the rhizosphere than by free soil and endophytes (Khalid et al. 2004; Costa et al. 2014). L-tryptophan, the primary precursor for IAA biosynthesis, is found in root exudates and is essential for IAA production. Indole-3-pyruvic acid (IAA) was mostly produced by PGPR via the indole route. L-tryptophan is a key component of this alternate route. IAA is synthesized by plant pathogens through the indol-acetoamide pathway (Souza et al. 2015). It is possible for some species of *Erwinia* and *Agrobacterium* to manufacture IAA through the indole-3-pyruvic acid and indole-3-acetic aldehyde pathways. However, indolic chemicals are produced by pseudomonads and *Azospirillum* spp. via indole-3-acetic aldehyde (Glick 2012). The

indole-3-acetamide is synthesized by a variety of bacteria, including the pathogens *P. fluorescens,* P. putida, and *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. To make IAA from tryptophan, the cyanobacterium *Synechocystis* creates indole-3-acetonitrile by turning tryptophan into indole (Ahemad and Kibret 2014). It is crucial for nodule development because IAA causes cell division, differentiation, and the creation of vascular bundles in plants. When it comes to nodule development in legumes, a high concentration of auxin is essential (Glick 2012; Spaepen et al. 2007). There have been reports of IAA synthesis in all *Rhizobium* species (Ahemad and Khan 2011a; Ahemad and Khan 2012a). *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* and Pseudomonas putida, among others, create IAA and use it in their metabolic processes, which may promote plant development and protect plants against infection (Jensen et al. 1995; Leveau and Lindow 2005).

There have been reports of the synthesis of cytokines and gibberellins by many soil bacteria, including PGPR (Tien et al. 1979; Williams and de Mallorca 1982; Taller and Wong 1989; Timmusk et al. 1999; Olanrewaju et al. 2017). Bacteria, algae, and higher plants are all known to contain cytokinins. It has been shown that many rhizobacteria, including those belonging to the *Pseudomonas* and *Rhizobium* families, as well as those belonging to the *Paenibacillus* and *Azotobacter* families, have been found to be capable of producing cytokinins in the cell-free media (Atzorn et al. 1988; Yahalom et al. 1990; Lorteau et al. 2001; Joo et al. 2005; Kang et al. 2009). However, nothing is known about the function of cytokinins generated by bacteria. This normally occurs in the root tips, where cytokinins are produced before being transported down the xylem to the plant's stems. Cell division, differentiation of xylem and chloroplasts, elongation of roots, seed germination, growth of flowers and fruits, signaling of nutrient mobilization, senescence process, and plant–pathogen interactions are all regulated by this protein (Sakakibara 2006; De Rybel et al. 2016). Most significant phytohormone and transducer of elicitor signals utilized to stimulate plant growth, such as seed germination and blooming and stem lengthening and fruit formation and increasing photosynthesis by decreasing chlorophyll breakdown are gibberellins (You et al. 2012; Zaidi et al. 2015; Khan et al. 2015). So far, bacteria have produced four gibberellins: GA1, GA3, GA4, and GA20 (Gupta et al. 2016). GA1 and GA4 have been shown to be the most active of these hormones, although nothing is known about their function or bioactivity (Nelson and Steber 2016). In order to produce gibberellin, several PGPR species have been identified, including Rhizobia sp. species, Azotobacter species, Bacillus species, Achroma sp. species, glucobacter diazotrophicus species, calcoaceticus species, herbaspirillum seropedicae species, and azospirillum species (Dodd et al. 2010; Deka et al. 2015).

16.5.2 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-Carboxylate (ACC) Deaminase Activity

Low amounts of ethylene, a vital gaseous phytohormone for plant growth, development, and senescence, are generated in the majority of higher plants. Plants are

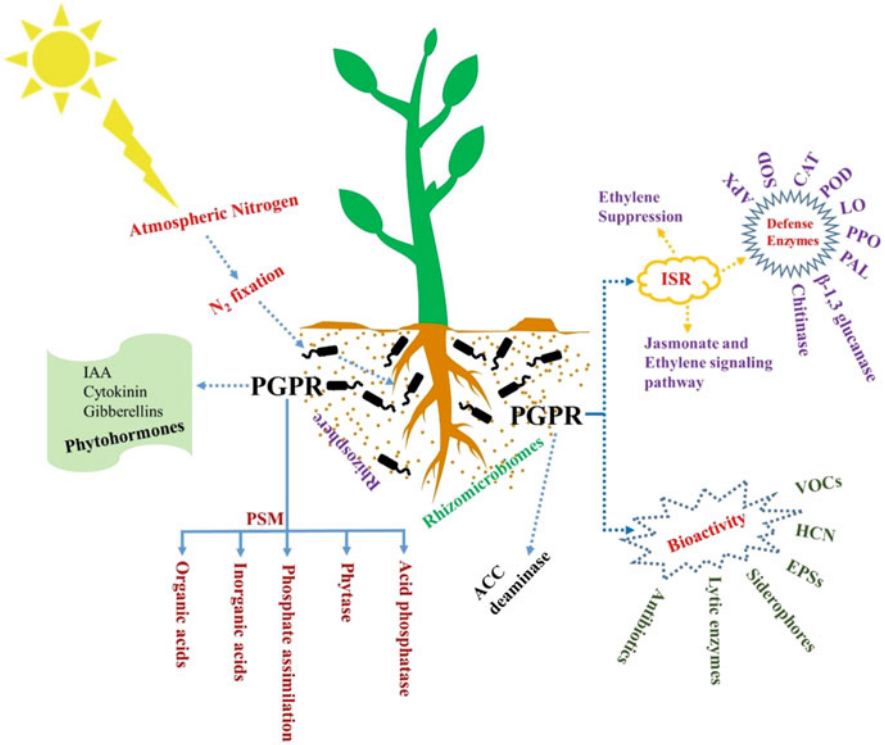


Fig. 16.2 Schematic representation of the effect of plant–microbiome interactions for plant growth promotion

protected from a variety of biotic and abiotic stressors as well (Abeles et al. 1992; Shaharoona et al. 2006; Saleem et al. 2007). When plants are exposed to environmental stresses such as drought, salt, and waterlogging and biotic stresses such as predator damage, pathogen infection, and organic and inorganic pollution, their roots and ultimately the entire plant suffer. Ethylene is a stress-responsible hormone (Barnawal et al. 2012; Ali et al. 2014). Ethylene concentrations in plants have also been studied extensively. Reduces plant ethylene levels by inhibiting the bacterial enzyme ACC deaminase that is found in soil (Glick 2005; Jalili et al. 2009; Farajzadeh et al. 2012). Plant 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate is converted to -ketobutyric acid and ammonia by bacterial ACC deaminase (Arshad et al. 2007; Saleem et al. 2007) which regulates ethylene production in higher plants (Fig. 16.2). As a result, microbial communities in the soil use ACC deaminase to hydrolyze the extra quantity of ACC released by plant roots, helping to keep the rhizosphere and the environment free of ACC (Glick et al. 2007). According to Yim et al. (2013), high levels of ACC may have an impact on plant development by triggering senescence, chlorosis, and leaf abscission in plants.

Soil microbiome activity, including PGPR, is evaluated by the amount of ACC deaminase produced in the soil (Glick 2005). There may be an overall reduction in the amount of ethylene manufactured by the plant if there is a large concentration of ACC deaminase-producing microorganisms on a wide variety of plant surfaces such as the rhizosphere, phyllosphere, and endophytes. Ethylene levels can be reduced by bacteria that produce tiny quantities of ACC deaminase, which bind to particular plants and are found in certain tissues (Glick 2005; Souza et al. 2015). The ACC deaminase is produced by a number of bacterial species from *Enterobacter, Acinetobacter* and *Bacillus, Pseudomonas, Azospirillum* and *Bradyrhizobium,* as well as *Ralstonia* and *Burkholderia* (Shaharoona et al. 2006; Bal et al. 2013; Ahemad and Kibret 2014; Souza et al. 2015). ACC 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate, which is the ethylene precursor, is successfully used by these bacterial species, which catabolize it into 2-oxobutanoate and ammonia (Arshad et al. 2007; Souza et al. 2015). In order to alleviate stress on plants and improve their health, using isolated PGPR containing active ACC deaminase from rhizosphere, phyllosphere, or endophytes might be a viable option (Glick 2010).

16.6 Biological Nitrogen Fixation

For plant development, nitrogen is one of the most important nutrients. There is a lot of nitrogen in the Earth's atmosphere, yet plants are unable to use it. Approximately two-thirds of the world's nitrogen is fixed by bacteria living symbiotically with plants and non-symbiotic microbes (the phytomicrobiome) (Shridhar 2012). Through the biological nitrogen fixation process, nitrogenase microorganisms transform atmospheric nitrogen into plant-usable compounds (Fig. 16.2). Symbiotic PGPR, like rhizobia with all legume plants and Frankia species with non-leguminous trees, is the most common nitrogen-fixing bacterium (Ahemad and Khan 2012a; Zahran 2001). Nitrogen-fixing symbiotic bacteria can improve soil quality and stimulate nodule development by inoculating the soil with them. Azoarcus, Burkholderia, and Frankia are some of the bacteria that can be found in soils that are infected with these microorganisms. *Rhizobium spp., Azorhizobium* spp., *Allorhizobium spp.,* and *Sinorhizobium* are some of the other bacteria that can be found in soil that are infected with these microorganisms (Babalola 2010; Perez-Montano et al. 2014; Ahemad and Kibret 2014; Turan et al. 2016). The quantity of nitrogen provided to the host plant by non-symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria is minimal, therefore the two organisms must work together (Glick 2012). Free-living, associative, and endophytic bacteria are the most common types of non-symbiotic nitrogen fixers (Ahemad and Kibret 2014). *Anabaena, Nostoc, Azospirillum*, *Azotobacter, Gluconoacetobacter diazotrophicus*, and Azocarus are some examples of non-symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). Nitrogenase (nif) genes control biological nitrogen fixation in nitrogen-fixing bacteria, whether they are symbiotic or not. Iron protein, iron-molybdenum cofactor, electron donation, and other regulatory genes that are critical for enzyme production and control are triggered by gene nif in conjunction with other structural genes (Reed et al.

2011). The majority of nif genes in nitrogen-fixing bacteria are found in a cluster of more than 20–24 kb with seven operons expressing 20 different proteins (Glick 2012). A complicated regulatory mechanism has made genetic methods to improving nitrogen fixation confusing. Finding the right N2-fixing PGPR from the rhizosphere and using it to inoculate crops or apply it to crops and fields would unquestionably improve the soil's fertility, promote plant development, and reduce numerous phytopathogens.

16.7 Phosphate Solubilization

One of the most important nutrients for plants is phosphorous (P), which makes up less than 1% of the plant's dry weight. Plant development and production are negatively impacted by a lack of P in the soil. At the molecular level, phosphorous is involved in the production of macromolecular structures like those found in the phospholipid and nucleic acid cycles, as well as the energy transfer and signal transduction pathways (Khan et al. 2009; Richardson and Simpson 2011; Anand et al. 2016). Soil has a profound amount of P, about 400–1200 mg per kg of soil, of which approximately 99% of them are insoluble and precipitated as either an inorganic or an organic form. As an inorganic mineral known as apatite, it is difficult for plants to absorb the accessible forms of P in soils, such as inositol phosphate and phosphomonoester and phosphodiester (Glick 2012). Phosphate ions are highly reactive and undergo P fixation where they react with other minerals in the soil such as aluminum, iron oxides, and calcium resulting in insoluble compounds (Mahdi et al. 2012). P fixation predominates in acidic soils (reacting with oxides of iron, aluminum, and manganese) and in alkaline soils (reacting with calcium), resulting in unavailability to plants (Malhotra et al. 2018).

Plants may absorb both monobasic (H_2PO_4) and dibasic (HPO_4^{2-}) soluble forms of P. (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012). As a result, the use of phosphatic fertilizers to soils lacking in P is a standard agricultural practice. Although plants may absorb a limited amount of phosphatic fertilizer supplied to soil, the remainder stays as insoluble complexes that cannot be absorbed by plants (Mckenzie and Roberts 1990). As a result, the cost of applying P fertilizers to the soil is high. In addition, it poses a danger to both human and environmental health. There is a pressing need to find a long-term solution for increasing agricultural yields on soils with low P. Soil microbes known as phosphate solubilizing bacteria may be found in this setting (Alori et al. 2017), which is one of the key properties of PGPR. It is possible to convert insoluble organic and inorganic P into more readily accessible forms of P that can be utilized by plants and are not damaging to the environment and are a viable alternative to chemical fertilizers (Khan et al. 2006). Phosphorus inorganic in soil can be dissolved in organic acids synthesized by soil microorganisms such as bacteria, fungus, and actinomycetes (Table 16.2) (Sharma et al. 2013). By producing organic acids, siderophores, and hydroxyl ions, bacteria have dissolved inorganic soil phosphates such as calcium, iron, and aluminum phosphates (Jones 1998; Chen et al. 2006; Rodriguez et al. 2006; Sharma et al. 2013). *Klebsiella, Enterobacter*, and

Table 16.2 Different groups of phosphate solubilizing microorganisms (PSM) and their organic acids production

Different PSM (Sharma et al. 2013)			
Bacteria	Fungi	Actinomycetes	Cyanobacteria
Alcaligenes sp., *Aerobactor aerogenes, Achromobacter* sp., *Actinomadura oligospora, Agrobacterium* sp., *Azospirillum brasilense, Bacillus* sp., *Bacillus circulans, B.cereus, B. fusiformis, B. pumils, B. megaterium, B. mycoides, B. polymyxa, B. coagulans, B. chitinolyticus, B. subtilis, Bradyrhizobium* sp., *Brevibacterium* sp., *Citrobacter* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp., *P. putida, P. striata, P. fluorescens, P. calcis, Flavobacterium* sp., *Nitrosomonas* sp., *Erwinia* sp., *Micrococcus* sp., *Escherichia intermedia, Enterobacter asburiae, Serratia phosphoticum, Nitrobacter* sp., *Thiobacillus ferroxidans, T. thioxidans, Rhizobium meliloti,* and *Xanthomonas* sp.	*Aspergillus awamori, A. niger, A. tereus, A. flavus, A. nidulans, A. foetidus, A. wentii. Fusarium oxysporum, Alternaria teneius, Achrothcium sp. Penicillium digitatum, P. lilacinium, P. balaji, P. funicolosum, Cephalosporium* sp., *Cladosprium* sp., *Curvularia lunata, Cunnighamella, Candida* sp., *Chaetomium globosum, Humicola inslens, Humicola lanuginosa, Helminthosporium* sp., *Paecilomyces fusisporous, Pythium* sp., *Phoma* sp., *Populospora mytilina, Myrothecium roridum, Morteirella* sp., *Micromonospora* sp., *Oideodendron* sp., *Rhizoctonia solani, Rhizopus* sp., *Mucor* sp., *Trichoderma viridae, Torula thermophila, Schwanniomyces occidentalis,* and *Sclerotium rolfsii*	*Actinomyces* and *Streptomyces*	*Anabena* sp., *Calothrix braunii, Nostoc* sp., and *Scytonema* sp.
Organic acids produced by PSM (Alori et al. 2017)			
α-Ketobutyric acid, tartaric acid, fumaric acid, glycoxalic acid, malic acid, citric acid, oxalic acid, acetic acid, isobutyric acid, isovaleric acid, itaconic acid, 2-ketogluconic acid, propionic acid, lactic acid, succinic acid, gluconic acid, aspartic acid, maleic acid, glutamic acid, glycolic acid, and malonic acid			

Pantoea rhizobacteria successfully dissolve calcium phosphate in soil more effectively than other forms of inorganic phosphorus (Chung et al. 2005). Solubilizing bacteria employ acids such as carboxylic and citric, as well as succinic and propionic to break down inorganic phosphates found in soil and slurry (Rodriguez and Fraga 1999; Souza et al. 2015). The capacity to dissolve tricalcium phosphate was found in 101 out of 336 rice plant-isolated bacteria. *Cronobacter, Cedecea,* and *Enterobacter* were some of the bacterial genera detected in this investigation. The bulk of bacteria

capable of dissolving phosphates are found in plant roots and rhizosphere soil (Ambrosini et al. 2012; Farina et al. 2012; Costa et al. 2013; Granada et al. 2013; Souza et al. 2014).

A number of PGPR genera including such *Pseudomonas, Bacillus, Enterobacter*, *Flavobacterium, Beijerinckia, Burkholderia, Arthrobacter, Azotobacter, Microbacterium, Erwinia, Rhizobium, Mesorhizobium, Serratia,* and *Rhodococcus* have been reported as potential phosphate solubilizing bacteria and have been used in sustainable agriculture as soil biocontrol agents to promote plant growth and productivity (Oteino et al. 2015). Some studies have confirmed that endophytic bacteria are also involved in phosphate solubilization. Parmar and Sindhu (2013) reported that *Mesorhizobium* spp. isolated from chickpea nodules showed significant phosphate solubilizing characters. An endophytic bacterium, *Pantoea dispersa* was isolated *Manihot esculenta* (cassava) roots, effectively solubilizes calcium phosphate, iron phosphate, and aluminum phosphate through the production of salicylate, benzene-acetic, and other organic acids (Chen et al. 2014). Therefore, the involvement of PGPR in soil and plants will certainly improve the P deficient soil and the release of readily available P for plant growth.

16.8 Siderophores Production

In addition to being a critical element for plants and bacteria, siderophores are tiny peptide molecules (400–1500 Da) (Goswami et al. 2016). The metabolic processes of carbon absorption, cellular respiration, chlorophyll production, and N_2 fixation all rely on the presence of iron (Fe) (Dixon and Kahn 2004). When it comes to soils that aren't easily digested by bacteria or plants, iron is the fourth most common element. As a result of its intractable nature, ferric ion (Fe+3) is only available in restricted quantities to living organisms for absorption and use (Ma 2005). Molecular siderophores with a high affinity for Fe+3 are produced by soil microbiomes, as are membrane receptors capable of binding the iron-siderophore complex. Microorganisms in iron-starved habitats are able to absorb iron by this mechanism (Neilands 1981; Hider and Kong 2010). More than 500 siderophore-compounds produced by microbes have been discovered thus far, with the chemical structures of 270 of these compounds being known (Hider and Kong 2010). The majority of siderophores are generated by plant-associated bacteria, according to several studies. Enterobacter and Burkholderia isolated from rice roots were shown to produce considerable amounts of siderophores, according to Souza et al. (2013, 2014). Costa et al. (2014) described that among the PGPR *Grimontella, Burkholderia,* and *Enterobacter,* species exhibit high siderophore production whereas species belonging to *Rhizobium, Klebsiella, Herbaspirillum, Stenotrophomonas,* and *Citrobacter* synthesis low amount of siderophores. PGPR produces siderophores to prevent the growth of phytopathogens. Due to its high iron affinity traits, siderophores strongly bind to a majority of the Fe^{3+} available in the rhizosphere soil, so either the host plant or rhizosphere bacterial communities (rhizobacteriome) acquire sufficient iron for their growth. In addition, this leads to depletion of iron in

the rhizosphere soil, hence it would be unable for the plant pathogens to proliferate in that environment. Therefore, the efficacy of biocontrol depends upon the magnitude of the PGPR siderophores and their affinity for iron (Kloepper et al. 1980).

16.9 Indirect Mechanisms: Rhizobacteriome Traits Involved in PGP

Rhizobacteriome especially PGPR acts as biocontrol agents and is the key player in the indirect mechanism of plant growth promotion (Glick 2012). PGPR produces repressive biomolecules against plant pathogens that naturally boost host plant resistance (Singh and Jha 2015). In addition, the involvement of PGPR in the indirect mechanism includes various cell wall degrading enzymes, a wide array of antibiotics against phytopathogens, synthesis of siderophores, volatile organic metabolites, exopolysaccharides, and induction of systematic resistance against various pathogens and pests (Nivya 2015; Gupta et al. 2014).

16.10 Antibiotics and Hydrolytic Enzymes

One of the primary mechanisms of PGPR is the production of a wide spectrum of antibiotics that inhibit or kill phytopathogens (Raaijmakers et al. 2002; Compant et al. 2005; Mazurier et al. 2009; Couillerot et al. 2009; Raaijmakers and Mazzola 2012). Several antibiotics synthesized by PGPR exhibit effective bioactivity and many of these potential strains have been commercialized. A disadvantage of frequent and increased application of antibiotic-producing bacteria as biocontrol agents in soil stimulates some plant pathogens to establish a resistance to particular antibiotics. Therefore, researchers reported that PGPR producing hydrogen cyanide (HCN) along with one or more antibiotics can be suggested as potential biocontrol agents to overcome the antibiotic resistance of phytopathogens since HCN synergistically acts with bacterially encoded antibiotics (Glick 2012). Several PGPRs are reported for producing a broad range of antibiotics, however, the genera *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* are the predominant antibiotic producers among the PGPR. Antifungal, antibacterial, antiparasitic, antihelminthic, antiviral, phytotoxic, antioxidant, cytotoxic, and antitumor agents are only some of the various metabolites they create (Olanrewaju et al. 2017). The bioactive compounds Tas A and sublancin, subtilosin, and bacilysin have been reported from *Bacillus* species while ecomycins and 2,4-diacetyl phloroglucinol have been isolated from ecomycins, pseudomonic acid and phenazine-1-carboxylic acid, pyoluteorin, and pyrrolnitrin as well as oomycin A, cepaciamide A, viscosinamide, butyrolactones, zwittermycin A, aerugine, azomycin, rhamnolipids, cepafungins, kanosamine, and karalicin were isolated from *Pseudomonas spp*. for controlling a broad range of plant-associated pathogens (Goswami et al. 2016; Olanrewaju et al. 2017).

PGPR secrete various types of hydrolytic enzymes such as proteases, chitinase, cellulase, β-1,3 glucanases, and lipases. These extracellular enzymes mainly break

down a part of the cell wall of diverse plant fungal pathogens (Husson et al. 2017). PGPR produce either one or many cell wall degrading enzymes for their biocontrol activity against different plant pathogenic fungi such as *Botrytis* spp., *Sclerotium* spp., *Fusarium* spp., *Phytophthora* spp., *Rhizoctonia* spp., and *Pythium* spp. (Singh et al. 1999; Frankowski et al. 2001; Kim et al. 2008).

16.11 Hydrogen Cyanide Production by PGPRS

Production of hydrogen cyanide or HCN in high amounts by PGPR accelerates the effectiveness of the biocontrol mechanism. Most of the PGPR can produce HCN. However, less amount of HCN produced by PGPR may not be potent in suppressing the growth of a majority of plant pathogens (Olanrewaju et al. 2017). Besides, it is frequently noted that the biocontrol mechanisms of PGPR are a synergistic action of producing HCN along with one or more antibiotics and hydrolytic enzymes (Ramette et al. 2006). HCN is toxic to many microbes including bacteria, fungi, and algae so PGPR survives by competing with its counterparts with this trait. Due to its host-specificity, PGPR may serve as a biological control agent by inoculating the plant with HCN (Zeller et al. 2007). Numerous PGPR taxa, including *Rhizobium, Pseudomonas, Alcaligenes, Bacillus*, and *Aeromonas*, have been shown to produce antifungal metabolites like HCN (Ahmad et al. 2008; Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Das et al. 2017; Zachow et al. 2017). By blocking the activity of cytochrome C oxidase and other metallo-enzymes in phytopathogens, HCN effectively halts respiration (Nandi et al. 2017). A variety of plant diseases and pests have been shown to be suppressed by HCN (Siddiqui et al. 2006; Kumar et al. 2015).

16.12 Production of Exopolysaccharides and Volatile Compounds

Exopolysaccharides (EPSs) are long chains of high molecular mass constituting monosaccharide residues and sugar derivatives produced by microorganisms and plants (Sanlibaba and Cakmak 2016). Biosynthesis of EPSs by rhizobacteriomes such as PGPR plays a critical role in enhancing plant development and production by retaining water, aggregating soil particles, and ensuring contact and interaction between rhizobacteria and plant roots (Pawar et al. 2016). They also aid the host plant to sustain under unfavorable conditions that alter the soil environment such as an increase in soil salinity, water deficit stress, and waterlogging conditions (Pawar et al. 2016). Several EPSs biosynthesized by PGPR such as *Rhizobium* spp., *Bacillus* sp., *Agrobacterium* sp., *Azotobacter* sp., *Enterobacter* sp., and *Xanthomonas* sp. (Mahmood et al. 2016), have been described for proliferating soil fertility and promoting crop yield.

Small volatile organic compounds (VOCs) produced by PGPR belonging to the *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas, Serratia, Arthrobacter*, and *Stenotrophomonas* families have been shown to inhibit numerous plant pathogenic bacteria and fungi. In

addition, plants develop systemic resistance against phytopathogens as a result of the creation of VOCs (Raza et al. 2016a). Therefore, this coordinated activity, such as producing antimicrobial volatile metabolites that activate systemic resistance in plants, has a favorable influence on plant health indirectly (Raza et al. 2016b). VOCs 2,3-butanediol and acetoin generated by Bacillus spp. were found by Santoro et al. (2016). Furthermore, Sharifi and Ryu (2016) determined that PGPR-derived VOCs act as an elicitor to initiate plant-induced systemic resistance. VOCs such as dodecane, benzene(1-methylnonadecyl), benzene, methyl, tetradecane, 2,6,10-trimethyl, dotriacontane, 11-decyldocosane, cyclohexane, 2-(benzyloxy) ethanamine, morpholinocyclohexene, 1-(N-phenylcarbamyl)-2-decane, and 1-chlorooctadecane isolated from different PGPR strains participate in inducing systematic resistance in plants either direct or indirect mode to promote their growth, productivity, pathogen resistance and stress tolerance (Kanchiswamy et al. 2015; Gouda et al. 2018).

16.13 Induced Systemic Resistance

Interaction between plant roots and rhizomicrobiomes induces a systemic mechanism in plants which is evoked in response to environmental stimulus against various plant pathogenic organisms. This physiological condition of enriched defensive aptitude of the plant is known as induced systemic resistance (ISR) (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009; Prathap and Ranjitha 2015). ISR induces jasmonate and ethylene hormone signaling pathways to trigger the host plant's defense mechanism against different types of pathogens (Glick 2012). ISR stimulates plants to resist not only one type of pathogen but numerous diseases (Kamal et al. 2014). Several bacterial appendages, secretions, and metabolites such as flagella, lipopolysaccharides, lipopeptides, siderophores, homoserine lactones, cyclic 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol, and VOCs like acetoin and 2,3-butanediol can induce the ISR in plants (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009). The signal for induced systemic defense mechanism in plants is stimulated through the vascular system during pathogen invasion. It leads to the activation of various defense and antioxidative enzymes such as chitinase, β-1,3 glucanase, phenylalanine ammonia-lyase (PAL), polyphenol oxidase (PPO), lipoxygenase (LO), peroxidase (POD), catalase (CAT), superoxide dismutase (SOD), ascorbate peroxidase (APX) including proteinase inhibitors to protect plant health (Gouda et al. 2018). Several researchers demonstrated the jasmonic acid/ethylene-dependent ISR activation by *Pseudomonas* spp. along with many other PGPR (Pieterse et al. 1998; Abo-Elyousr et al. 2009; Weller et al. 2012; Yi et al. 2013; Lucas et al. 2014). Application of PGPR to induce ISR in the plant could be an effective approach to sustainable agriculture and crop protection nevertheless, appropriate techniques and contemporary tools to carry plants from lab to field are still lacking.

16.14 Application of PGPR as Biocontrol Agents

Soil is a complex medium and an uncertain habitat hence targeting the desirable outcome from this medium is challenging. Although, PGPR can survive in any type of soil and its relative stress conditions, their role in plant growth and productivity differs in experiments conducted in a lab, greenhouse, and in-field conditions (Ahemad and Kibret 2014). Emerging climate change is also a concern on the efficacy of PGPR on crop production (Zaidi et al. 2009). The PGPR biocontrol traits that influence plant growth and productivity is not governed by an individual mechanism, rather they involve interaction among several mechanisms. The synergistic action of biological N_2 fixation, phosphate solubilization, phytohormones, enzymes, secondary metabolites, and other small molecules overall results in plant growth enhancement and biomass yield (Dakora and Phillips 2002; Ahemad and Kibret 2014). However, the application of PGPR under either natural or controlled soil environments effectively increased the productivity of many different crop plants (Ahemad and Kibret 2014). As people around the world embrace and prefer more organic foods, employing PGPR for controlling plant pathogens and promoting plant growth is advantageous. Several PGPR strains belonging to genera *Agrobacterium, Azospirillum, Azotobacter, Bacillus, Burkholderia, Delfitia, Paenobacillus, Pantoea, Pseudomonas, Serratia, Streptomyces,* and *Rhizobia* have already been commercialized for plant growth-promoting traits. Among them, *Streptomyces*, *Bacillus,* and *Pseudomonas* are more predominantly reported as potential biocontrol agents (Glick 2012; Ahemad and Kibret 2014; Vurukonda et al. 2018) (Table 16.1). PGPR can more exhaustively be commercialized nevertheless, some of the concerns need to be addressed (Glick 2012).

16.15 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

Researchers around the globe have executed intensive research for the last three decades on rhizobacteriome that how to plant growth-promoting bacteria (PGPR) influence plant health and the possibility of application of these microbes as biocontrol agents. It is undoubtedly revealed that employing PGPR as biopesticides, biofertilizers or biocontrol agents has shown remarkable improvement in plant growth, protection, and productivity. However, PGPR has synergistic direct and indirect actions on plant growth promotion. Besides, with more research on the application of PGPR, optimization of their growth and metabolites production and improvement of their adaptation to unpredictable soil environments would certainly increase its plant-growth-promoting and protecting traits. Further multidisciplinary research on PGPR for ecological and functional biological approaches is anticipated to substitute the chemical fertilizers, and pesticides and provide sustainable farming practices to decrease production costs in the future.

Acknowledgments RS and RP are thankful to the University of the South Pacific and PVB, TCS, CVB, EK are thankful to Krishna University, Machilipatnam, Yogi Vemana University Kadapa, Goa University, Goa Sambalpur University, Odidha for their support and facilities.

References

Abeles F, Morgan P, Saltveit M Jr (1992) Ethylene in plant biology, 2nd edn. Academic Press, New York

Abo-Elyousr KAM, Hashem M, Ali EH (2009) Integrated control of cotton root rot disease by mixing fungal biocontrol agents and resistance inducers. Crop Prot 28:295–301

Adesemoye AO, Obini M, Ugoji EO (2008) Comparison of plant growth-promotion with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Bacillus subtilis* in three vegetables. Braz J Microbiol 39:423–426

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2009) Effect of insecticide-tolerant and plant growth promoting *Mesorhizobium* on the performance of chickpea grown in insecticide stressed alluvial soils. J Crop Sci Biotechnol 12:213–222

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2010a) Phosphate-solubilizing and plant growth-promoting *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PS1 improves green gram performance in quizalafop-p-ethyl and clodinafop amended soil. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 58:361–372

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2010b) Insecticide-tolerant and plant growth promoting *rhizobium* improves the growth of lentil (*Lens esculentus*) in insecticide-stressed soils. Pest Manag Sci 67:423–429

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2010c) Growth promotion and protection of lentil (*Lens esculenta*) against herbicide stress by *rhizobium* species. Ann Microbiol 60:735–745

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2011a) Plant growth promoting fungicide tolerant *rhizobium* improves growth and symbiotic characteristics of lentil (*Lens esculentus*) in fungicide-applied soil. J Plant Growth Regul 30:334–342

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2011b) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strain PS1 enhances growth parameters of greengram [*Vigna radiata* (L.) Wilczek] in insecticide-stressed soils. J Pestic Sci 84:123–131

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012a) Alleviation of fungicide-induced phytotoxicity in greengram [*Vigna radiata* (L.) Wilczek] using fungicide-tolerant and plant growth promoting *pseudomonas* strain. Saudi J Biol Sci 19:451–459

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2012b) Evaluation of plant-growth promoting activities of rhizobacterium *pseudomonas putida* under herbicide stress. Ann Microbiol 62:1531–1540

Ahemad M, Kibret M (2014) Mechanisms and applications of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: current perspective. J King Saud Univ Sci 26:1–20

Ahemad M, Khan MS, Zaidi A, Wani PA (2009) Remediation of herbicides contaminated soil using microbes. In: Khan MS, Zaidi A, Musarrat J (eds) Microbes in sustainable agriculture. Nova Science, New York

Ahmad F, Ahmad I, Khan MS (2008) Screening of free-living rhizospheric bacteria for their multiple plant growth promoting activities. Microbiol Res 163:173–181

Ali S, Charles TC, Glick BR (2014) Amelioration of high salinity stress damage by plant growth-promoting bacterial endophytes that contain ACC deaminase. Plant Physiol Biochem 80:160–167

Alori ET, Glick BR, Babalola OO (2017) Microbial phosphorus solubilisation and its potential for use in sustainable agriculture. Front Microbiol 8:971

Ambrosini A, Beneduzi A, Stefanski T, Pinheiro FG, Vargas LK, Passaglia LMP (2012) Screening of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from sunflower (*Helianthus annuus* L.). Plant and Soil 356:245–264

Anand K, Kumari B, Mallick MA (2016) Phosphate solubilizing microbes: an effective and alternative approach as bio-fertilizers. Int J Pharm Sci 8:37–40

Anjum MA, Sajjad MR, Akhtar N, Qureshi MA, Iqbal A, Rehman JA, Mahmud-ul-Hasan (2007) Response of cotton to plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) inoculation under different levels of nitrogen. J Agric Res 45:135–143

Arshad M, Saleem M, Hussain S (2007) Perspectives of bacterial ACC deaminase in phytoremediation. Trends Biotechnol 25:356–362

Atzorn R, Crozier A, Wheeler AT, Sandberg G (1988) Production of gibberellins and indole-3-acetic acid by *rhizobium phaseoli* in relation to nodulation of *Phaseolus vulgaris* roots. Planta 175:532–538

Babalola OO (2010) Beneficial bacteria of agricultural importance. Biotechnol Lett 32:1559–1570

Bal HB, Nayak L, Das S, Adhya TK (2013) Isolation of ACC deaminase producing PGPR from rice rhizosphere and evaluating their plant growth promoting activity under salt stress. Plant and Soil 366:93–105

Barea JM, Pozo MJ, Azcon R, Aguilar CA (2005) Microbial co-operation in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 56:1761–1778

Barnawal D, Bharti N, Maji D, Chanotiya CS, Kalra A (2012) 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC) deaminase-containing rhizobacteria protect *Ocimum sanctum* plants during waterlogging stress via reduced ethylene generation. Plant Physiol Biochem 58:227–235

Belimov AA, Hontzeas N, Safronova VI, Demchinskaya SV, Piluzza G, Bullitta S, Glick BR (2005) Cadmium-tolerant plant growth promoting rhizobacteria associated with the roots of Indian mustard (*Brassica juncea* L. Czern.). Soil Biol Biochem 37:241–250

Beneduzi A, Peres D, Vargas LK, Bodanese-Zanettini MH, Passaglia LMP (2008) Evaluation of genetic diversity and plant growth promoting activities of nitrogen-fixing *bacilli* isolated from rice fields in South Brazil. Appl Soil Ecol 39:311–320

Berendsen RL, Pieterse CMJ, Bakker PAHM (2012) The rhizosphere microbiome and plant health. Trends Plant Sci 17:478–486

Bhattacharyya PN, Jha DK (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. World J Microbial Biotechnol 28:1327–1350

Braud A, Jezequel K, Bazot S, Lebeau T (2009) Enhanced phytoextraction of an agricultural Cr-, hg- and Pb-contaminated soil by bioaugmentation with siderophore producing bacteria. Chemosphere 74:280–286

Calvo P, Nelson L, Kloepper JW (2014) Agricultural uses of plant biostimulants. Plant and Soil 383:3–41

Carrillo-Castaneda G, Munoz JJ, Peralta-Videa JR, Gomez E, Gardea-Torresdey JL (2003) Plant growth-promoting bacteria promote copper and iron translocation from root to shoot in alfalfa seedlings. J Plant Nutr 26:1801–1814

Carvalhais LC, Dennis PG, Badri DV, Kidd BN, Vivanco JM, Schenk PM (2015) Linking jasmonic acid signaling, root exudates, and rhizosphere microbiomes. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 28: 1049–1058

Chandler D, Davidson G, Grant WP, Greaves J, Tatchell GM (2008) Microbial biopesticides for integrated crop management: an assessment of environmental and regulatory sustainability. Trends Food Sci Technol 19:275–283

Chen YP, Rekha PD, Arun AB, Shen FT, Lai WA, Young CC (2006) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria from subtropical soil and their tricalcium phosphate solubilizing abilities. Appl Soil Ecol 34:33–41

Chen Y, Fan JB, Du L, Xu H, Zhang QY, He YQ (2014) The application of phosphate solubilizing endophyte *Pantoea dispersa* triggers the microbial community in red acidic soil. Appl Soil Ecol 84:235–244

Chung H, Park M, Madhaiyana M, Seshadri S, Song J, Cho H, Sa T (2005) Isolation and characterization of phosphate solubilizing bacteria from the rhizosphere of crop plants of Korea. Soil Biol Biochem 3:1970–1974

Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clement C, Ait Barka E (2005) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4951–4959

Costa P, Beneduzi A, Souza R, Schoenfeld R, Vargas LK, Passaglia LMP (2013) The effects of different fertilization conditions on bacterial plant growth promoting traits: guidelines for directed bacterial prospection and testing. Plant and Soil 368:267–280

Costa PB, Granada CE, Ambrosini A, Moreira F, Souza R, Passos JFM, Arruda L, Passaglia LMP (2014) A model to explain plant growth promotion traits: a multivariate analysis of 2,211 bacterial isolates. PLoS One 9:e116020

Couillerot O, Prigent-Combaret C, Caballero-Mellado J, Moenne-Loccoz Y (2009) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and closely-related fluorescent pseudomonads as biocontrol agents of soil-borne phytopathogens. Lett Appl Microbiol 48:505–512

Dakora FD, Phillips DA (2002) Root exudates as mediators of mineral acquisition in low-nutrient environments. Plant and Soil 245:35–47

Dakora FD, Phillips DA (2002) Root exudates as mediators of mineral acquisition in low-nutrient environments. In: Food security in nutrient-stressed environments: exploiting plants' genetic capabilities, pp 201–213

Damam M, Kaloori K, Gaddam B, Kausar R (2016) Plant growth promoting substances (phytohormones) produced by rhizobacterial strains isolated from the rhizosphere of medicinal plants. Int J Pharm Sci Rev 37:130–136

Dary M, Chamber-Perez MA, Palomares AJ, Pajuelo E (2010) "In situ" phytostabilisation of heavy metal polluted soils using *Lupinus luteus* inoculated with metal resistant plant-growth promoting rhizobacteria. J Hazard Mater 177:323–330

Das K, Prasanna R, Saxena AK (2017) Rhizobia: a potential biocontrol agent for soil borne fungal pathogens. Folia Microbiol 62:425–435

De Rybel B, Mahonen AP, Helariutta Y, Weijers D (2016) Plant vascular development: from early specification to differentiation. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 17:30

Deka H, Deka S, Baruah C (2015) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for value addition: mechanism of action. In: Plant-growth promoting rhizobacteria (pgpr) and medicinal plants. Springer, New York, pp 305–321

Dessaux Y, Hinsinger P, Lemanceau P (2009) Rhizosphere: so many achievements and even more challenges. Plant and Soil 321:1–3

Dey R, Pal KK, Bhatt DM, Chauhan SM (2004) Growth promotion and yield enhancement of peanut (*Arachis hypogaea* L.) by application of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Microbiol Res 159:371–394

Di Gregorio S, Barbafieri M, Lampis S, Sanangelantoni AM, Tassi E, Vallini G (2006) Combined application of triton X-100 and *Sinorhizobium* sp. Pb002 inoculum for the improvement of lead phytoextraction by *Brassica juncea* in EDTA amended soil. Chemosphere 63:293–299

Dixon R, Kahn D (2004) Genetic regulation of biological nitrogen fixation. Nat Rev Microbiol 2: 621–631

Dodd IC, Zinovkina NY, Safronova VI, Belimov AA (2010) Rhizobacterial mediation of plant hormone status. Ann Appl Biol 157:361–379

Faisal M, Hasnain S (2005) Bacterial Cr (VI) reduction concurrently improves sunflower (*Helianthus annuus* L.) growth. Biotechnol Lett 27:943–947

Farajzadeh D, Yakhchali B, Aliasgharzad N, Sokhandan-Bashir N, Farajzadeh M (2012) Plant growth promoting characterization of indigenous Azotobacteria isolated from soils in Iran. Curr Microbiol 64:397–403

Farina RA, Beneduzi A, Ambrosini A, Campos SB, Lisboa BB, Wendisch V, Vargas LK, Passaglia LMP (2012) Diversity of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria communities associated with the stages of canola growth. Appl Soil Ecol 55:44–52

Frankowski J, Lorito M, Scala F, Schmid R, Berg G, Bahl H (2001) Purification and properties of two chitinolytic enzymes of *Serratia plymuthica* HRO-C48. Arch Microbiol 176:421–426

Ganesan V (2008) Rhizoremediation of cadmium soil using a cadmium-resistant plant growth-promoting rhizopseudomonad. Curr Microbiol 56:403–407

Genilloud O (2017) Actinomycetes: still a source of novel antibiotics. Nat Prod Rep 34:1203–1232

Gholami A, Shahsavani S, Nezarat S (2009) The effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on germination, seedling growth and yield of maize. Int J Biol Life Sci 1:35–40

Glick BR (1995) The enhancement of plant growth by free-living bacteria. Can J Microbiol 41:109–117

Glick BR (2005) Modulation of plant ethylene levels by the bacterial enzyme ACC deaminase. FEMS Microbiol Lett 251:1–7

Glick BR (2010) Using soil bacteria to facilitate phytoremediation. Biotechnol Adv 28:367–374

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica (Cairo) 2012:963401

Glick BR, Cheng Z, Czarny J, Duan J (2007) Promotion of plant growth by ACC deaminase-producing soil bacteria. In: New perspectives and approaches in plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria research. Springer, New York, pp 329–339

Goswami D, Thakker JN, Dhandhukia PC, Tejada Moral M (2016) Portraying mechanics of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): a review. Cogent Food Agric 2:1127500

Gouda S, Kerry RG, Das G, Paramithiotis S, Shin HS, Patra JK (2018) Revitalization of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for sustainable development in agriculture. Microbiol Res 206: 131–140

Granada C, Costa PB, Lisboa BB, Vargas LK, Passaglia LMP (2013) Comparison among bacterial communities present in arenized and adjacent areas subjected to different soil management regimes. Plant and Soil 373:339–358

Gupta A, Meyer JM, Goel R (2002) Development of heavy metal resistant mutants of phosphate solubilizing *pseudomonas* sp. NBRI4014 and their characterization. Curr Microbiol 45:323–332

Gupta A, Rai V, Bagdwal N, Goel R (2005) In situ characterization of mercury resistant growth promoting fluorescent pseudomonads. Microbiol Res 160:385–388

Gupta S, Meena MK, Datta S (2014) Isolation, characterization of plant growth promoting bacteria from the plant *Chlorophytum borivilianum* and *in-vitro* screening for activity of nitrogen fixation, phosphate solubilization and IAA production. Int J Curr Microbial Appl Sci 3:1082–1090

Gupta S, Seth R, Sharma A (2016) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria play a role as phytostimulators for sustainable agriculture. In: Choudhary DK, Varma A, Tuteja N (eds) Plant-microbe interaction: an approach to sustainable agriculture. Springer, Singapore, pp 475–493

Hider RC, Kong X (2010) Chemistry and biology of siderophores. Nat Prod Rep 27:637–657

Husson E, Hadad C, Huet G, Laclef S, Lesur D, Lambertyn V, Jamali A, Gottis S, Sarazin C, Nguyen Van Nhien A (2017) The effect of room temperature ionic liquids on the selective biocatalytic hydrolysis of chitin via sequential or simultaneous strategies. Green Chem 19: 4122–4131

Jahanian A, Chaichi MR, Rezaei K, Rezayazdi K, Khavazi K (2012) The effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on germination and primary growth of artichoke (*Cynara scolymus*). Int J Agric Crop Sci 4:923–929

Jalili F, Khavazi K, Pazira E, Nejati A, Rahmani HA, Sadaghiani HR, Miransari M (2009) Isolation and characterization of ACC deaminase-producing fluorescent pseudomonads, to alleviate salinity stress on canola (*Brassica napus* L.) growth. J Plant Physiol 166:667–674

Jensen JB, Egsgaard H, Onckelen HV, Jochimsen BU (1995) Catabolism of indole-3- acetic acid and 4- and 5-chloroindole-3-acetic acid in *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. J Bacteriol 177:5762–5766

Jones DL (1998) Organic acids in the rhizosphere—a critical review. Plant and Soil 205:25–44

Joo GJ, Kim YM, Kim JT, Rhee IK, Kim JH, Lee IJ (2005) Gibberellins-producing rhizobacteria increase endogenous gibberellins content and promote growth of red peppers. J Microbiol 43: 510–515

Kamal R, Gusain YS, Kumar V (2014) Interaction and symbiosis of fungi, Actinomycetes and plant growth promoting rhizobacteria with plants: strategies for the improvement of plants health and defense system. Int J Curr Microbial Appl Sci 3:564–585

Kanchiswamy CN, Malnoy M, Maffei ME (2015) Chemical diversity of microbial volatiles and their potential for plant growth and productivity. Front Plant Sci 6:151

Kang SM, Joo GJ, Hamayun M, Na CI, Shin DH, Kim HY, Hong JK, Lee IJ (2009) Gibberellin production and phosphate solubilisation by newly isolated strain of *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* and its effect on plant growth. Biotechnol Lett 31:277–281

Kang BG, Kim WT, Yun HS, Chang SC (2010) Use of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria to control stress responses of plant roots. Plant Biotechnol Rep 4:179–183

Khalid A, Tahir S, Arshad M, Zahir ZA (2004) Relative efficiency of rhizobacteria for auxin biosynthesis in rhizosphere and non-rhizosphere soils. Soil Res 42:921–926

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Wani PA (2006) Role of phosphate solubilizing microorganisms in sustainable agriculture – a review. Agron Sustain Dev 27:29–43

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Wani PA, Oves M (2009) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in the remediation of metal contaminated soils. Environ Chem Lett 7:1–19

Khan AL, Waqas M, Hussain J, Al-Harrasi A, Hamayun M, Lee IJ (2015) Phytohormones enabled endophytic fungal symbiosis improve aluminum phytoextraction in tolerant *Solanum lycopersicum*: an examples of *Penicillium janthinellum* LK5 and comparison with exogenous GA 3. J Hazard Mater 295:70–78

Kim YC, Jung H, Kim KY, Park SK (2008) An effective biocontrol bioformulation against Phytophthora blight of pepper using growth mixtures of combined chitinolytic bacteria under different field conditions. Eur J Plant Pathol 120:373–382

Kloepper JW, Leong J, Teintze M, Schroth MN (1980) Enhanced plant growth by siderophores produced by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Nature 286:885–886

Kloepper JW, Zablotowick RM, Tipping EM, Lifshitz R (1991) Plant growth promotion mediated by bacterial rhizosphere colonizers. In: Keister DL, Cregan PB (eds) The rhizosphere and plant growth. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht, pp 315–326

Kumar A, Bahadur I, Maurya B, Raghuwanshi R, Meena V, Singh D, Dixit J (2015) Does a plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance agricultural sustainability. J Pure Appl Microbiol 9: 715–724

Lawongsa P, Boonkerd N, Wongkaew S, O'Gara F, Teaumroong N (2008) Molecular and phenotypic characterization of potential plant growth-promoting *pseudomonas* from rice and maize rhizospheres. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1877–1884

Leveau JHJ, Lindow SE (2005) Utilization of the plant hormone indole-3-acetic acid for growth by *pseudomonas putida* strain 1290. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:2365–2371

Liu D, Lian B, Dong H (2012) Isolation of *Paenibacillus* sp. and assessment of its potential for enhancing mineral weathering. J Geom 29:413–421

Lorteau MA, Ferguson BJ, Guinel FC (2001) Effects of cytokinin on ethylene production and nodulation in pea (*Pisum sativum*) cv. Sparkle. Physiol Plant 112:421–428

Lucas JA, Garcia-Cristobal J, Bonilla A, Ramos B, Gutierrez-Manero J (2014) Beneficial rhizobacteria from rice rhizosphere confers high protection against biotic and abiotic stress inducing systemic resistance in rice seedlings. Plant Physiol Biochem 82:44–53

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63: 541–556

Ma JF (2005) Plant root responses to three abundant soil minerals: silicon, aluminum and iron. Crit Rev Plant Sci 24:267–281

Ma Y, Rajkumar M, Freitas H (2009a) Isolation and characterization of Ni mobilizing PGPR from serpentine soils and their potential in promoting plant growth and Ni accumulation by *brassica* spp. Chemosphere 75:719–725

Ma Y, Rajkumar M, Freitas H (2009b) Inoculation of plant growth promoting bacterium *Achromobacter xylosoxidans* strain Ax10 for the improvement of copper phytoextraction by *Brassica juncea*. J Environ Manage 90:831–837

Ma Y, Rajkumar M, Luo Y, Freitas H (2011) Inoculation of endophytic bacteria on host and non-host plants-effects on plant growth and Ni uptake. J Hazard Mater 195:23–237

Mahdi SS, Talat MA, Hussain Dar M, Hamid A, Ahmad L (2012) Soil phosphorus fixation chemistry and role of phosphate solubilizing bacteria in enhancing its efficiency for sustainable cropping—a review. J Pure Appl Microbiol 6:1–7

Mahmood S, Daur I, Al-Solaimani SG, Ahmad S, Madkour MH, Yasir M, Hirt H, Ali S, Ali Z (2016) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and silicon synergistically enhance salinity tolerance of mung bean. Front Plant Sci 7:1–14

Malhotra H, Sharma S, Pandey R (2018) Phosphorus nutrition: plant growth in response to deficiency and excess. In: Plant nutrients and abiotic stress tolerance. Springer, Singapore, pp 171–190

Marschner H (1995) Mineral nutrition of higher plants. Academic Press, London

Mayak S, Tirosh T, Glick BR (1999) Effect of wild-type and mutant plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on the rooting of mung bean cuttings. J Plant Growth Regul 18:49–53

Mazurier S, Corberand T, Lemanceau P, Raaijmakers JM (2009) Phenazine antibiotics produced by fuorescent pseudomonads contribute to natural soil suppressiveness to fusarium wilt. ISME J 3: 977–991

Mckenzie RH, Roberts TL (1990) Soil and fertilizers phosphorus update. In: Proceedings of Alberta soil science workshop proceedings, Feb. 20–22, Edmonton, Alberta. pp 84–104

Montano FP, Villegas CA, Bellogia RA, Cerro PD, Espuny MR, Guerrero IJ, Lopez-Baena FJ, Ollero FJ, Cubo T (2014) Plant growth promotion in cereals and leguminous agricultural important plants from microorganisms capacities to crop production. Microbiol Res 169:325–336

Nandi M, Selin C, Brawerman G, Fernando WGD, de Kievit T (2017) Hydrogen cyanide, which contributes to *pseudomonas chlororaphis* strain PA23 biocontrol, is upregulated in the presence of glycine. Biol Control 108:47–54

Narozna D, Pudełko K, Kroliczak J, Golinska B, Sugawara M, Madrzak CJ, Sadowsky MJ (2014) Survival and competitiveness of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* strains 20 years after introduction into field locations in Poland. Appl Environ Microbiol 81:5552–5559

Neilands BB (1981) Iron absorption and transport in microorganisms. Annu Rev Nutr 1:27–46

Nelson SK, Steber CM (2016) Gibberellin hormone signal perception: down-regulating DELLA repressors of plant growth and development. Annu Plant Rev 49:153–188

Ngumbi E, Kloepper J (2016) Bacterial-mediated drought tolerance: current and future prospects. Appl Soil Ecol 105:109–125

Nivya RM (2015) A study on plant growth promoting activity of the endophytic bacteria isolated from the root nodules of *Mimosa pudica* plant. Int J Innov Res Sci Er Technol 4:6959–6968

Olanrewaju OS, Glick BR, Babalola OO (2017) Mechanisms of action of plant growth promoting bacteria. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 33:19

Orlandini V, Emiliani G, Fondi M, Maida E, Perrin E, Fani R (2014) Network analysis of plasmidomes: the *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 case. Int J Evol Biol 2014:951035

Oteino N, Lally RD, Kiwanuka S, Lloyd A, Ryan D, Germaine KJ, Dowling DN (2015) Plant growth promotion induced by phosphate solubilizing endophytic *pseudomonas* isolates. Front Microbiol 6:745

Oyedele AO, Ogunbanwo ST (2014) Antifungal activities of *Bacillus subtilis* isolated from some condiments and soil. Afr J Microbiol Res 8:1841–1849

Parmar P, Sindhu SS (2013) Potassium solubilisation by rhizosphere bacteria: influence of nutritional and environmental conditions. J Microbial Res 3:25–31

Patten CL, Glick BR (1996) Bacterial biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid. Can J Microbiol 42:207–220

Pawar ST, Bhosale AA, Gawade TB, Nale TR (2016) Isolation, screening and optimization of exo-polysaccharide producing bacterium from saline soil. J Microbiol Biotechnol Res 3:24–31

Perez-Montano F, Alias-Villegas C, Bellogín RA, del Cerro P, Espuny MR, Jimenez-Guerrero I, Lopez-Baena FJ, Ollero FJ, Cubo T (2014) Plant growth promotion in cereal and leguminous agricultural important plants: from microorganism capacities to crop production. Microbiol Res 169:325–336

Phi QT, Park YM, Seul KJ, Ryu CM, Par SH, Kim JG, Ghim AY (2010) Assessment of root-associated *Paenibacillus polymyxa* groups on growth promotion and induced systemic resistance in pepper. J Microbiol Biotechnol 20:1605–1613

Pieterse CMJ, van Wees SCM, van Pelt JA, Knoester M, Laan R, Gerrits H, Weisbeek PJ, van Loon LC (1998) A novel signaling pathway controlling induced systemic resistance in Arabidopsis. Plant Cell 10:1571–1580

Prathap M, Ranjitha KBD (2015) A critical review on plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. J Plant Pathol Microbiol 6:1–4

Raaijmakers JM, Mazzola M (2012) Diversity and natural functions of antibiotics produced by beneficial and plant pathogenic bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 50:403–424

Raaijmakers JM, Vlami M, de Souza TJ (2002) Antibiotic production by bacterial biocontrol agents. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81:537–547

Rajkumar M, Ma Y, Freitas H (2008) Characterization of metal resistant plant-growth promoting *bacillus weihenstephanensis* isolated from serpentine soil in Portugal. J Basic Microbiol 48: 500–508

Ramadan EM, AbdelHafez AA, Hassan EA, Saber FM (2016) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and their potential for biocontrol of phytopathogens. Afr J Microbiol Res 10: 486–504

Ramette A, Moenne-Loccoz Y, Defago G (2006) Genetic diversity and biocontrol potential of fluorescent pseudomonads producing phloroglucinols and hydrogen cyanide from Swiss soils naturally suppressive or conducive to *Thielaviopsis basicola*-mediated black root rot of tobacco. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 55:369–381

Rathore P (2015) A review on approaches to develop plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Int J Recent Sci Res 5:403–407

Raza W, Yousaf S, Rajer FU (2016a) Plant growth promoting activity of volatile organic compounds produced by bio-control strains. Sci Lett 4:40–43

Raza W, Ling N, Yang L, Huang Q, Shen Q (2016b) Response of tomato wilt pathogen *Ralstonia solanacearum* to the volatile organic compounds produced by a biocontrol strain *bacillus amyloliquefaciens* SQR-9. Sci Rep 6:24856

Reed M, Glick BR (2013) Applications of plant growth-promoting bacteria for plant and soil systems. Appl Microb Eng CT:181–229

Reed SC, Cleveland CC, Townsend AR (2011) Functional ecology of free-living nitrogen fixation: a contemporary perspective. Annu Rev Ecol Environ Syst 42:489–512

Rekha PD, Lai W, Arun AB, Young C (2007) Effect of free and encapsulated *pseudomonas putida* CC-R2-4 and *Bacillus subtilis* CC-pg104 on plant growth under gnotobiotic conditions. Bioresour Technol 98:447–451

Remans R, Beebe S, Blair M, Manrique G, Tovar E, Rao I, Croonenborghs A, Torres-Gutierrez R, El-Howeity M, Michiels J, Vanderleyden J (2008) Physiological and genetic analysis of root responsiveness to auxin-producing plant growth-promoting bacteria in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). Plant and Soil 302:149–161

Richa S, Subhash C, Singh A (2013) Isolation of microorganism from soil contaminated with degraded paper in Jharna village. J Soil Sci Environ Manag 4:23–27

Richardson AE, Simpson RJ (2011) Soil microorganisms mediating phosphorus availability. Plant Physiol 156:989–996

Rodrigues EP, Rodrigues LS, de Oliveira ALM, Baldani VLD, Teixeira KRS, Urquiaga S, Reis VM (2008) *Azospirillum amazonense* inoculation: effects on growth, yield and N_2 fixation of rice (*Oryza sativa* L.). Plant and Soil 302:249–261

Rodriguez H, Fraga R (1999) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria and their role in plant growth promotion. Biotechnol Adv 17:319–339

Rodriguez H, Fraga R, Gonzalez T, Bashan Y (2006) Genetics of phosphate solubilization and its potential applications for improving plant growth-promoting bacteria. Plant and Soil 287:15–21

Ross PJ, Holland SM, Gill VJ, Gallin JI (1995) Severe *Burkholderia (pseudomonas) gladioli* infection in chronic granulomatous disease: report of two successfully treated cases. Clin Infect Dis 21:1291–1293

Sachdev DP, Chaudhari HG, Kasure VM, Dahavale DD, Chopade BA (2009) Isolation and characterization of indole acetic acid (IAA) producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* strains from

rhizosphere of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) and their effect on plant growth. Indian J Exp Biol 47: 993–1000
Saharan BS, Nehra V (2011) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria: a critical review. Life Sci Med Res 21:1–30
Sakakibara H (2006) Cytokinins: activity, biosynthesis, and translocation. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57: 431–449
Saleem M, Arshad M, Hussain S, Bhatti AS (2007) Perspective of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) containing ACC deaminase in stress agriculture. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 34:635–648
Sanlibaba P, Cakmak GA (2016) Exo-polysaccharides production by lactic acid bacteria. Appl Microbiol 2:1–5
Santoro MV, Bogino PC, Nocelli N, Cappellari LR, Giordano WF, Banchio E (2016) Analysis of plant growth promoting effects of fluorescent pseudomonas strains isolated from *Mentha piperita* rhizosphere and effects of their volatile organic compounds on essential oil composition. Front Microbiol 7:1–17
Santoyo G, Moreno-Hagelsiebb G, Orozco-Mosquedac MC, Glick BR (2016) Plant growth-promoting bacterial endophytes. Microbiol Res 183:92–99
Shaharoona B, Arshad M, Zahir ZA (2006) Effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria containing ACC-deaminase on maize (*Zea mays* L.) growth under axenic conditions and on nodulation in mung bean (*Vigna radiata* L.). Lett Appl Microbiol 42:155–159
Sharifi R, Ryu CM (2016) Are bacterial volatile compounds poisonous odors to a fungal pathogen *Botrytis cinerea*, alarm signals to *Arabidopsis* seedlings for eliciting induced resistance, or both? Front Microbiol 7:1–10
Sharma SK, Johri BN, Ramesh A, Joshi OP, Prasad SVS (2011) Selection of plant growth-promoting pseudomonas spp. that enhanced productivity of soybean-wheat cropping system in Central India. J Microbiol Biotechnol 21:1127–1142
Sharma A, Johri BN, Sharma AK, Glick BR (2013) Plant growth-promoting bacterium *pseudomonas* sp. strain GRP3 influences iron acquisition in mung bean (*Vigna radiata* L. Wilzeck). Soil Biol Biochem 35:887–894
Sheng XF, Xia JJ (2006) Improvement of rape (*Brassica napus*) plant growth and cadmium uptake by cadmium-resistant bacteria. Chemosphere 64:1036–1042
Sheng XF, Jiang CY, He LY (2008) Characterization of plant growth-promoting *Bacillus edaphicus* NBT and its effect on lead uptake by Indian mustard in a lead-amended soil. Can J Microbiol 54: 417–422
Shridhar BS (2012) Review: nitrogen fixing microorganisms. Int J Microbial Res 3:46–52
Siddiqui IA, Shaukat SS, Sheikh IH, Khan A (2006) Role of cyanide production by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0 in the suppression of root-knot nematode, *Meloidogyne javanica* in tomato. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 22:641–650
Singh RP, Jha PN (2015) Molecular identification and characterization of rhizospheric bacteria for plant growth promoting ability. Int J Curr Biotechnol 3:12–18
Singh PP, Shin YC, Park CS, Chung YR (1999) Biological control of fusarium wilt of cucumber by chitinolytic bacteria. Phytopathology 89:92–99
Sinha S, Mukherjee SK (2008) Cadmium-induced siderophore production by a high cd-resistant bacterial strain relieved cd toxicity in plants through root colonization. Curr Microbiol 56:55–60
Souza R, Beneduzi A, Ambrosini A, Costa PB, Meyer J, Vargas LK, Schoenfeld R, Passaglia LMP (2013) The effect of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on the growth of rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) cropped in southern Brazilian fields. Plant and Soil 366:585–603
Souza R, Meyer J, Schoenfeld R, Costa PB, Passaglia LMP (2014) Characterization of plant growth-promoting bacteria associated with rice cropped in iron-stressed soils. Ann Microbiol 65:951–964
Souza R, Ambrosini R, Passaglia LMP (2015) Plant growth-promoting bacteria as inoculants in agricultural soils. Genet Mol Biol 38:401–419

Spaepen S, Vanderleyden J, Remans R (2007) Indole-3-acetic acid in microbial and microorganism-plant signaling. FEMS Microbiol Rev 31:425–448

Stefanescu IA (2015) Bioaccumulation of heavy metals by *Bacillus megaterium* from phosphogypsum waste. Sci Study Res 16:093–097

Sureshbabu K, Amaresan N, Kumar K (2016) Amazing multiple function properties of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in the rhizosphere soil. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 5:661–683

Taller BJ, Wong TT (1989) Cytokinins in *Azotobacter vinelandii* culture medium. Appl Environ Microbiol 55:266–267

Tank N, Saraf M (2009) Enhancement of plant growth and decontamination of nickel-spiked soil using PGPR. J Basic Microbiol 49:195–204

Tien T, Gaskin M, Hubbel D (1979) Plant growth substances produced by *Azospirillum brasilense* and their effect on the growth of pearl millet (*Pennisetum americanum* L.). Appl Environ Microbiol 37:1016–1024

Timmusk S, Nicander B, Granhall U, Tillberg E (1999) Cytokinin production by *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Soil Biol Biochem 31:1847–1852

Tripathi M, Munot HP, Shouch Y, Meyer JM, Goel R (2005) Isolation and functional characterization of siderophore-producing lead- and cadmium-resistant *pseudomonas putida* KNP9. Curr Microbiol 5:233–237

Turan M, Kitir N, Alkaya U, Gunes A, Tufenkci S, Yildirim E, Nikerel E (2016) Making soil more accessible to plants: the case of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria, vol 5. IntechOpen, Rijeka, pp 61–69

Valverde A, Burgos A, Fiscella T, Rivas R, Velazquez E, Rodrıguez-Barrueco C, Cervantes E, Chamber M, Igual JM (2006) Differential effects of coinoculations with *pseudomonas jessenii* PS06 (a phosphate-solubilizing bacterium) and *Mesorhizobium ciceri* C-2/2 strains on the growth and seed yield of chickpea under greenhouse and field conditions. Plant and Soil 287: 43–50

Vivas A, Biro B, Ruiz-Lozano JM, Barea JM, Azcon R (2006) Two bacterial strains isolated from a Zn-polluted soil enhance plant growth and mycorrhizal efficiency under Zn toxicity. Chemosphere 52:1523–1533

Viveros OM, Jorquera MA, Crowley DE, Gajardo G, Mora ML (2010) Mechanisms and practical considerations involved in plant growth promotion by rhizobacteria. J Soil Sci Plant Nutr 10: 293–319

Vurukonda SSKP, Giovanardi D, Stefani E (2018) Plant growth promoting and biocontrol activity of *Streptomyces* spp. as endophytes. Int J Mol Sci 19:952

Walker TS, Bais HP, Grotewold E, Vivanco JM (2003) Root exudation and rhizosphere biology. Plant Physiol 132:44–51

Wani PA, Khan MS (2010) *Bacillus* species enhance growth parameters of chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.) in chromium stressed soils. Food Chem Toxicol 48:3262–3267

Wani PA, Khan MS, Zaidi A (2007) Effect of metal tolerant plant growth promoting *Bradyrhizobium* sp. (vigna) on growth, symbiosis, seed yield and metal uptake by green gram plants. Chemosphere 70:36–45

Weller DM, Mavrodi DV, van Pelt JA, Pieterse CM, van Loon LC, Bakker PA (2012) Induced systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana* against *pseudomonas syringae* pv. Tomato by 2, 4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Phytopathology 102:403–412

Williams PM, de Mallorca MS (1982) Abscisic acid and gibberellin-like substances in roots and root nodules of *Glycine max*. Plant and Soil 65:19–26

Wu CH, Wood TK, Mulchandani A, Chen W (2006) Engineering plant-microbe symbiosis for rhizoremediation of heavy metals. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:1129–1134

Yahalom E, Okon Y, Dovrat A (1990) Possible mode of action of *Azospirillum brasilense* strain cd on the root morphology and nodule formation in burr medic (*Medicago polymorpha*). Can J Microbiol 36:10–14

Yi HS, Yang JW, Ryu CM (2013) ISR meets SAR outside: additive action of the endophyte *Bacillus pumilus* INR7 and the chemical inducer, benzothiadiazole, on induced resistance against bacterial spot in field-grown pepper. Front Plant Sci 4:122

Yim W, Seshadri S, Kim K, Lee G, Sa T (2013) Ethylene emission and PR protein synthesis in ACC deaminase producing *Methylobacterium* spp. inoculated tomato plants (*Lycopersicon esculentum* mill.) challenged with *Ralstonia solanacearum* under greenhouse conditions. Plant Physiol Biochem 67:95–104

You YH, Yoon H, Kang SM, Shin JH, Choo TS, Lee IJ, Lee JM, Kim KG (2012) Fungal diversity and plant growth promotion of endophytic fungi from six halophytes in Suncheon Bay. J Microbiol Biotechnol 22:1549–1556

Zachow C, Muller H, Monk J, Berg G (2017) Complete genome sequence of *pseudomonas brassicacearum* strain L13-6-12, a biological control agent from the rhizosphere of potato. Stand Genomic Sci 12:6

Zahir ZA, Munir A, Asghar HN, Shaharoona B, Arshad M (2008) Effectiveness of rhizobacteria containing ACC-deaminase for growth promotion of pea (*Pisum sativum*) under drought conditions. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:958–963

Zahir ZA, Shah MK, Naveed M, Akhter MJ (2010) Substrate dependent auxin production by *rhizobium phaseoli* improves the growth and yield of *Vigna radiata* L. under salt stress conditions. J Microbiol Biotechnol 20:1288–1294

Zahran HH (2001) Rhizobia from wild legumes: diversity, taxonomy, ecology, nitrogen fixation and biotechnology. J Biotechnol 91:143–153

Zaidi S, Usmani S, Singh BR, Musarrat J (2006) Significance of *Bacillus subtilis* strain SJ 101 as a bioinoculant for concurrent plant growth promotion and nickel accumulation in *Brassica juncea*. Chemosphere 64:991–997

Zaidi A, Khan MS, Ahemad M, Oves M (2009) Plant growth promotion by phosphate solubilizing bacteria. Acta Microbiol Immunol Hung 56:263–284

Zaidi A, Ahmad E, Khan MS, Saif S, Rizvi A (2015) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in sustainable production of vegetables: current perspective. Sci Hortic 193:231–239

Zeller SL, Brand H, Schmid B (2007) Host-plant selectivity of rhizobacteria in a crop/weed model system. PLoS One 2:846